CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

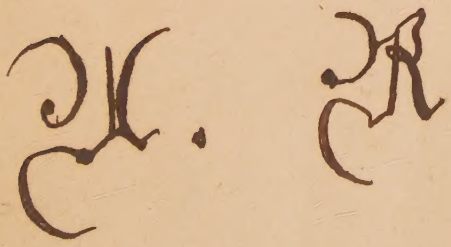
BENNETT

April 28, 1916

Harold W = Salutatory.
Rwa L = Mr. Ford's Peace Party.
Katie E. = Imagional Wrongs.
Orville F = Booker T. Washington.
Vera R = Class Prophecy
Vida S = Altruism
Vertie S = Valedictory

83

Miss Dora Ridgely.



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2025

https://archive.org/details/bwb_Y0-DTA-425

GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR.

From the bust in the Palazzo dei Conservatori at Rome.

BENNETT'S LATIN SERIES

Caesar's Gallic War

Books I–IV

WITH INTRODUCTION, NOTES, AND VOCABULARY

BY

CHARLES E. BENNETT

PROFESSOR OF LATIN IN CORNELL UNIVERSITY

Allyn and Bacon

Boston and Chicago

COPYRIGHT, 1903, BY
CHARLES E. BENNETT.

ADN

Norwood Press
J. S. Cushing & Co. — Berwick & Smith Co.
Norwood, Mass., U.S.A.

PREFACE.

The text of this edition is independent, being based upon a comparison of our best manuscript readings. *J* has been printed instead of *i* where the character has consonantal value, since without such differentiation the pupil must be entirely at a loss to know whether *i* before a vowel is consonantal or vocalic.

The Vocabulary has been prepared with great care upon the basis of the Menge-Preuss *Lexicon Caesarianum*. The illustrations are taken mainly from Stoffel and Rheinhard.

Grateful acknowledgments are hereby tendered to friends who have helped me with their criticisms and suggestions on the notes of this volume.

CHARLES E. BENNETT.

Ithaca, April, 1903.

In reprinting this volume, I have changed the marking of most vowels before *gn*. Recent investigation has shown that, except in *rēgnum*, *rēgnō*, and a few other words, the vowel is regularly short before *gn*. I also now regard the *a* of *maximus*, *maximē* as short, and have so marked it.

C. E. B.

March, 1907.

MAPS AND PLANS.

		PAGE
Gaul in the Time of Caesar		*Frontispiece*
Campaign Map for 58 b.c.	*facing*	6
Battle with the Helvetii	"	17
Battle with Ariovistus	"	37
Campaign Map for 57 b.c.	"	40
Battle on the Aisne	"	45
Battle on the Sambre	"	51
Campaign against the Veneti	"	68
Campaign Map for 55 b.c.	"	80
Plan of Caesar's Bridge	"	89

INTRODUCTION.

SKETCH OF CAESAR'S LIFE.

1. Early Years. — Gaius Julius Caesar was born July 12, 102[1] B.C. Upon his father's side he was a nephew of that Julia who had married the famous popular leader Marius, — a fact which doubtless determined Caesar's own political affiliations. From his very earliest years his fortunes were closely bound up with those of the democratic party (the *populares*). At the age of fifteen (87 B.C.) he was appointed by Marius *flamen dialis*, or special priest of Jupiter, and four years later (83 B.C.) he married Cornelia, daughter of Cinna, another distinguished democratic leader and at one time the colleague of Marius in the consulship. Marius had died in 86, and Sulla, returning in triumph from the Mithridatic War, had established himself as perpetual dictator in 82 B.C. Representing, as he did, the aristocrats (or *optimates*), Sulla naturally looked askance at this alliance of the nephew of one great popular leader with the daughter of another, and commanded Caesar to put away his wife. The young man refused, and chose rather to submit to the loss of his priesthood, of his own property, and the dowry of his wife. Sulla later yielded a reluctant consent to Caesar's pardon, justifying his misgivings by the oft-quoted utterance, "They are fools who fail to see in this lad many a Marius." Caesar soon departed for Asia, where he served his first campaign. In 80 B.C. he fought with distinction at Mytilene and won a civic crown (*corona civica*) for saving the life of a fellow soldier. Upon Sulla's death in 78 B.C. he returned to Rome. Here he availed himself of a common method of securing

[1] This is the most probable date; 101 and 100 B.C. are also given.

entrance into public life. This was to arraign some recent office holder on a criminal charge. Such prosecutions gave an opportunity for the exhibition of oratorical ability and thus paved the way for political advancement. The object of Caesar's attack was Cn. Dolabella, who in 80 B.C. had been the proconsular governor of the province of Cilicia in Asia Minor. Caesar arraigned Dolabella on the charge of extortion, and produced a profound impression by his oratory. Yet owing to the fact that the judges were aristocrats, Dolabella, who belonged to the same party, was acquitted.

Caesar's first success in oratory determined him to devote especial study to perfecting himself in this branch, and for that purpose he withdrew from Rome in 76 B.C. and placed himself under the instruction of Molo of Rhodes, the rhetorician, who was also the teacher of Cicero. It was on the voyage thither that Caesar's well-known adventure with the pirates occurred. He had fallen into their hands as prisoner, and was wont to while away the days of his captivity by writing speeches and poems and reading these to his pirate audience. When his captors failed to show appreciation of his literary efforts, he jokingly threatened to hang them all, — a threat which, after being ransomed, he is said to have made good.

2. Public Offices. — Returning from his oratorical studies to Rome, he held the offices of military tribune, pontifex (74 B.C.), quaestor (68), aedile (65), praetor (62). In 63 B.C. he had been chosen pontifex maximus, — a life office.

3. Aedileship. — Notable was his year as aedile. The aediles were primarily charged with the supervision of public buildings, baths, taverns, markets, *etc.* Incidentally they also had charge of two annual festivals, the *Megalesia* and the *Ludi Romani*. In connection with these festivals, it was customary for the aediles, at their own expense, to prepare imposing spectacles for the entertainment of the

populace. Aspirants for political advancement had, in Caesar's day, come to vie with one another in the magnificence of these exhibitions. Caesar, in his aedileship, eclipsed all his predecessors in the splendor of the entertainments provided for the people, exhibiting on one occasion the unheard-of number of 320 pairs of gladiators. The money for these expenditures he borrowed from Marcus Crassus, with whom his political fortunes were soon to be more closely linked. At one time he is said to have owed a million and a half of dollars. By virtue of his control over the temples, which fell to him as aedile, he ventured further to appeal to the popular sentiment by restoring to the Capitol the statue of Marius and the trophies which Marius had captured in his victories over Jugurtha and the Cimbri. Sulla had ordered these removed from public view; and great was the enthusiasm of the populace to see them placed once more in Rome's greatest temple.

4. The Conspiracies of Catiline. — In the years 65 and 63 B.C. occurred the two attempts of Catiline to overthrow the government. Both these conspiracies were thwarted. To what extent Caesar was actively engaged in them cannot be determined. But both were the outcome of the waxing democracy of the day, to which he stood so near; and it is unlikely that either of the two movements was conducted without his knowledge. Most probably both had his sympathy. Caesar seems early to have recognized, what was undoubtedly true, that the existing constitution of Rome was no longer adequate for the new social and political conditions of the Roman people. The old order had been outgrown, and the existing political machinery was no longer adequate for present needs. In political convictions Caesar probably sympathized with neither of the two great parties of the Roman commonwealth. He saw the need of something larger than was contemplated by the political programme of

either. The aristocrats held tenaciously to the old order of things. The democratic party, while ready to tear down the old order, lacked the constructive capacity to replace the old with something better. Yet Caesar allied himself with the popular party, rightly persuaded that only thereby could he achieve the power at which his ambition aimed; hoping too, perhaps, to supply a solution of the political problems of the time.

5. Propraetorship. — After his year as praetor, he received as propraetor the province of Hither Spain (Spain beyond the Ebro), the government of which he administered with great distinction, adding to his civil triumphs the subjugation of some hostile Lusitanian tribes.

6. Elected Consul. — Returning to Rome in 60 B.C., he appealed to the aristocratic Senate for the honor of a triumph. At the same time he offered himself as a candidate for the highest magistracy in the Roman state, the consulship. In order to conduct his canvass for this office, it was essential that Caesar should be in Rome itself. On the other hand, Roman precedent required that a general, waiting to celebrate a triumph, should remain outside the limits of the city. Caesar begged for a suspension of this rule, and, when the hostile Senate refused, hoping he would thus be impelled to abandon his candidacy, he promptly renounced his claims to the triumph and entered the city. He was soon after chosen consul for the year 59 B.C. As his colleague, the aristocrats succeeded in electing Bibulus, a man of so little force that the wags of the day, instead of speaking of the consulship as that of Caesar and Bibulus, characterized it as that of Julius and Caesar.

7. The First Triumvirate and Caesar's Proconsulate. — To about this time belongs the formation of the political alliance between Caesar, Pompey, and Crassus, known as the First Triumvirate, designed to advance the political fortunes

of its three members. Through the help of his two powerful allies, Caesar after his year as consul secured the important provinces of Illyricum, Cisalpine and Farther Gaul as his proconsular command. Such power was ordinarily assigned for but a single year, but Caesar was appointed for the extraordinary term of five years. He entered upon his duties in 58 B.C., and the month of March found him facing an invasion of nearly 370,000 Helvetians and other barbarians. For the next nine years he was busily engaged in the conquest of Gaul, and in paving the way for its organization as a Roman province. But during the whole period of his Gallic campaigns he never once lost touch with affairs at Rome. While the nature of his proconsular command forbade his return to the capital or even his passing south of the Rubicon, the boundary of his province of Cisalpine Gaul, he nevertheless held frequent conferences with the political leaders of the day, thus solidly intrenching his power. In the spring of 56 B.C. occurred the famous conference of Luca, at which all the triumvirs were present and where the destinies of the Roman world were decided. Caesar's command in the North was to be prolonged for another period of five years after its expiration at the end of 54 B.C. The number of his legions was to be increased from six to ten, and these were to receive their pay from the public treasury. Pompey and Crassus were to hold the consulship for 55 B.C., and later to receive five-year commands, the former of Spain, the latter of Syria.

8. The Civil War. — Caesar's second term, however, did not elapse before civil war began. Crassus perished in 53 B.C. on his ill-starred expedition against the Parthians. Julia, the daughter of Caesar, who had been married to Pompey, had died the year before. These two events roused the latent rivalry between Pompey and Caesar, and stimulated their partisans to the keenest activity in behalf of

these two leaders. Earnest endeavors were made to avert the impending contest, but they were fruitless. The Senate, dominated by Pompey, espoused his cause, and demanded that Caesar should disband his troops. Caesar refused. Early in 49 B.C. he crossed the Rubicon, the southern boundary of his province of Cisalpine Gaul, and entered Italy at the head of his legions, thus precipitating civil war. The struggle continued for several years. Caesar rapidly became master of Italy, and then followed Pompey to Greece, where against overwhelming odds he gained the brilliant victory of Pharsālus, August 9, 48 B.C. Pompey fled to Egypt, where he was assassinated by the order of the eunuch Pothinus, who was acting sovereign of the country. Arriving in Egypt in pursuit of Pompey, Caesar became involved in the Alexandrine War, caused by the strife for the throne between Ptolemy and his sister Cleopatra. Caesar settled Cleopatra on the throne, after which (in 47 B.C.) he set out for Pontus, where Pharnaces, the son of Mithridates, had defeated a Roman general, and was endeavoring further to extend his power. He defeated Pharnaces at Zela, in the engagement which he reported in his famous despatch, *Veni, vidi, vici*, after which he returned to Africa, and at Thapsus, in Numidia, April 6, 46 B.C., defeated the remainder of the senatorial forces still in arms.

9. Caesar's Reforms. — After these achievements, he returned to Rome and addressed his attention to the restoration of public order and to the inauguration of needed reforms. Less than two years of life remained to him, and even this was interrupted by the war in Spain, where the sons of Pompey had again raised the standard of the senatorial party, only to be defeated in the hard-fought battle of Munda (45 B.C.). Yet even in this brief period Caesar made vast progress in restoring public confidence and in relieving the condition of anarchy into which Rome had been

plunged by civil war. He himself was appointed dictator, at first for ten years, and later for life. The calendar was rectified, the administration of the wretchedly governed provinces was reformed, while the bitterness begotten by the recent strife was largely allayed by the clemency and generosity of the victor. The progress of these beneficent measures was interrupted by Caesar's assassination in the entrance hall of Pompey's theatre, March 15, 44 B.C.

But though struck down thus early, he had accomplished the task his lofty genius had set itself. He had put an end to the disorder which had been practically incessant at Rome for two generations, a condition which, as he truly saw, was the result of an antiquated political system that had long since served its day. In the place of disorder, he paved the way for a stable centralized government, the Empire, destined to bless the world with more than two centuries of better government than any considerable portion of it had ever enjoyed for an equal length of time. This was his great service to civilization and to mankind.

10. Caesar's Personality. — As we contemplate Caesar's personality we are struck with his extraordinary versatility. He was general, statesman, orator, and man of letters; and in each of these fields he displayed consummate genius. His military campaigns have evoked the admiration of masters of the art of war; his statesmanship brought order out of anarchy; as an orator he was magnetic; as a man of letters he has left us the accounts of the Gallic and Civil Wars, admirable for their directness and luminous simplicity of statement. His essential qualities were those of the man of action, — clearness of vision, promptness of decision, energy in execution, and indefatigable perseverance. Needless cruelty and bloodshed at times stained his conduct, but these cannot obscure the greatness of his personality or essentially alter the measure of his achievements.

ROMAN MILITARY ANTIQUITIES.

The Legion.

Membership of the Legion.

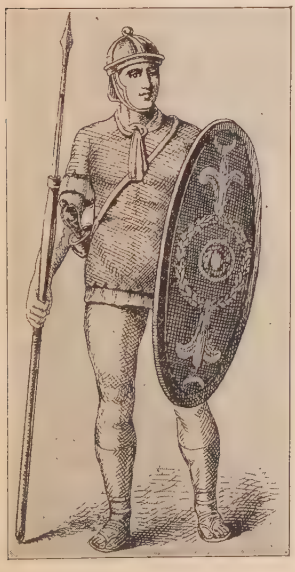
11. General Organization. — In Caesar's time a Roman legion consisted of 10 cohorts. Each cohort comprised 3 maniples, and each maniple 2 centuries. The legion, therefore, contained 30 maniples and 60 centuries. As the normal strength of a century was 100 men, the normal strength of a legion was 6000. But apparently this number was seldom actually realized. Usually it was much smaller. As a rule the legions of Caesar's Gallic campaigns probably did not contain over 3600 men. In a legion of this strength, the cohort contained 360 men, the maniple 120, and the century 60.

All the members of the legion were Roman citizens and were heavily armed (*milites gravis armaturae*). For details of their armament, see below, § 28.

12. Cavalry. — The earlier Roman army had comprised a certain quota of cavalry, but in Caesar's army there were no regularly enlisted horsemen. Horsemen were ordinarily provided by the allies. Thus the Haedui and others are stated to have furnished 4000 cavalry in Caesar's first campaign. The next year the Treveri sent a contingent. The total number of cavalry at Caesar's disposal in his Gallic campaigns probably never exceeded 5000. The organization of the cavalry was on a Roman basis. The largest divisions were known as *alae;* these were again subdivided into *turmae*, and the *turmae* into companies of ten, known as *decuriae* and commanded by *decuriones*. As a rule the horsemen furnished by the Gallic states were not of great service. They could not always be trusted, and in hard fighting they lacked both discipline and courage. In the battle

on the Sabis the cavalry sent by the Treveri fled at the critical juncture, while in Book iv. some 5000 allied cavalry are routed by a force of only 800 mounted Germans. The chief use of Caesar's cavalry seems to have been to pursue and cut to pieces a defeated enemy.

13. Auxiliaries. — Besides cavalry, the allies also often furnished infantry, while from Numidia and Crete came archers, and from the Balearic Isles skilful slingers. Most of the auxiliaries usually clung to their native organization, just as they retained their native



LIGHT-ARMED SOLDIER.

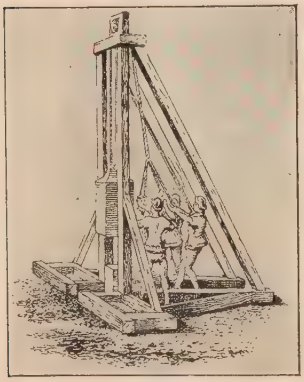
SLINGER.

weapons and modes of fighting. But the allied infantry was frequently organized into cohorts in the Roman fashion. All the auxiliaries were regularly lightly armed (*milites levis armaturae*), and were adapted rather to rapid evolutions against small detachments than to withstanding the shock of battle.

14. Evocati. — The *evocati* were men who returned to

voluntary service after their period of enlistment had expired and they had withdrawn from military life. They enjoyed special privileges upon their reëntry into the army. Among these were exemption from the severer duties, such as work on fortifications, night watches, *etc.* They also received higher pay and had a certain prospect of advancement. In one passage they are mentioned as being mounted when on the march.

15. Engineers. — In the early Roman army there had been a separate corps of engineers (*fabri*), but this organization had been abandoned before Caesar's time. In his army, engineering work, such as the construction of camps, the building of bridges, the construction of siege works, was performed by the Roman legionaries. Among these there must of course have been some men of special engineering training who assumed the direction of important works.



PILE DRIVER (*festuca*).

16. Scouts and Spies. — These were not a separate corps. They were simply individual soldiers detailed for special service. The spies (*speculatores*) probably acted singly, using disguise when necessary. The scouts (*exploratores*) seem to have been reconnoitering parties of horsemen.

17. Camp-followers and Sutlers. — The camp-followers (*calones*) were officers' servants or persons charged with supervision of the baggage. They were probably slaves. The sutlers (*lixae*) sold provisions and supplies.

18. Praetorian Cohort. — The praetorian cohort (*cohors praetoria*) was the general's body-guard. Caesar had no

such body-guard, though it is repeatedly mentioned in connection with other commanders in contemporary military history.

Officers of the Legion.

19. Commander-in-Chief. — Caesar commanded the Roman army in Gaul by virtue of his authority as proconsul. Like the consul, the proconsul also had the military *imperium* when outside the city, *i.e.* he possessed absolute military authority.

20. Quaestor. — The quaestor was the paymaster. In military dignity he ranked next to the commander-in-chief, having special quarters (the *quaestorium*) in the camp; see the plan in § 38. Ordinarily the quaestor's duties were financial; yet at times he was intrusted with responsible commands. Thus in the battle against Ariovistus the quaestor had charge of one of the six legions.

21. Legati. — The *legati* were men deputed or commissioned (*lēgō*, 'depute,' 'commission') as advisers of the commanding general. This made it possible for the commander to secure a valuable staff of advisers, who might also, when occasion required, be intrusted with responsible command of a portion of the army. Caesar introduced the custom of using his *legati* as legionary commanders, a duty which up to his time had been regularly exercised by the *tribuni militum* (§ 22). The *legati* were of senatorial rank, *i.e.* they consisted of persons who had at least filled the office of *quaestor* at Rome.

22. Tribuni militum. — There were six *tribuni militum* in a legion. Till Caesar's time these had commanded the legion in succession, each holding office for two months. But the *tribuni* in Caesar's legions consisted largely of inexperienced persons owing their appointment to political influence or personal friendship. Hence Caesar introduced the custom of employing the *legati* (§ 21) as legionary commanders, re-

serving the *tribuni* for less responsible duties. The *tribuni* were of equestrian rank, *i.e.* they were persons enjoying the equestrian property rating, — 400,000 sesterces (about $20,000).

23. Praefecti. — The term *praefectus* was loosely applied. Usually it designates a commander of auxiliaries, such as slingers, archers, cavalry, or the allied infantry organized in cohorts.

24. Centurions. — The centurions were commanders of centuries (§ 11). There were, accordingly, 60 centurions in each legion. The centurions rose from the ranks, being simply common soldiers who had given evidence of courage and capacity to command. Hence they are often compared to the non-commissioned officers of our modern armies. They were of different grades or classes, and could rise by promotion within their own body, but were ineligible for advancement owing to their lack of the necessary social or official standing (equestrian or senatorial rank; §§ 21, 22).

The rank of individual centurions seems to have been determined in accordance with the following principles:[1] Each of the ten cohorts was, as already stated (§ 11), divided into three maniples. Of these the soldiers of one were designated as *triarii* or *pilani*, those of another as *principes*, those of the third as *hastati*. The *triarii* or *pilani* ranked highest, the *hastati* lowest. These names had once applied to the position of troops in the phalanx when marshalled for battle. But long before Caesar's day they had lost their original significance and were now merely convenient designations of military rank. There was, then, in each cohort one maniple of *triarii*, one of *principes*, one of *hastati*. Each of these maniples, furthermore, was divided into two centuries. It was these centuries that the centurions commanded. Of the two centurions in a maniple, one

[1] The matter is by no means certain. Other views have their advocates.

was called *centurio prior*, the other *centurio posterior*. The *centurio prior* was the commander of the whole maniple; the *centurio posterior* was his subordinate. It will therefore be apparent that there were thirty *centuriones priores* and thirty *centuriones posteriores* in each legion. Of each class, the centurions of the *hastati* were lowest, those of the *triarii* (or *pilani*) the highest. Promotion was from the lowest grade (*hastati*) in the *posteriores* to the highest (*triarii*). From the *triarii* of the *posteriores* the centurion might then advance to the *priores* of the lowest grade (*hastati*) and then through the *principes* to the *triarii*. There were, of course, ten centurions in each of these six grades, — one for each cohort. The highest grade, as has been said, comprised the ten *priores triarii*. Of these ten *priores triarii*, the highest in rank was the centurion of the first cohort. He was called *primipili centurio* ('centurion of the first division') or *primipilus*, and ranked as the first centurion of the entire legion. His position was one of the greatest importance and responsibility. For in battle his cohort was posted in front on the right, and he naturally led the fighting of the whole legion. The ten *priores* of the *triarii*, *i.e.* the ten highest centurions of each of the ten cohorts, seem to have formed a special class. Apparently it is to these that Caesar refers as the *centuriones primorum ordium* (i. 41), an expression in which *ordines* is used in the sense of 'centuries.'

The centurions enforced strict discipline. Flogging seems to have been a frequent punishment for misconduct. It was administered by the centurions themselves, a vine switch being the usual instrument by which it was inflicted.

In actual conflict the conduct of the centurions was a vital element of the encounter. It virtually rested with them to win or lose the day. Hence only men of character and force were chosen for these responsible positions, — men whose courage and hope never sank and whose natural capacity for leadership was able to inspire hope and courage

in the men of their command. The *Gallic War* abounds in repeated illustrations of the magnificent heroism and gallant service rendered by these officers.

25. Decurions. — These were cavalry officers. As the name implies, they each had charge of a squad of ten horsemen.

Enlistment, Term of Service, Pay.

26. In the earlier periods of Roman history only property holders assessed for 11,000 *asses* or more were eligible to military service. These were liable to serve for ten campaigns, between the ages of seventeen and forty-six. The poorest citizens were not only not called upon to serve; they were not even permitted to. But as time went on, there manifested itself a growing disinclination to military life on the part of the wealthier classes. By tacit consent Roman citizens of the lower classes were admitted to the army, and by Caesar's day these had come to be the only Roman soldiers.

The term of enlistment is uncertain. Not long after Caesar's time, however, the period was twenty years, and it is probable that in Caesar's army the term of enlistment did not differ greatly from this.

The pay of the common soldier was 225 denarii per annum, — about $45. Centurions received twice as much.

Clothing, Armor, and Weapons.

27. Clothing. — The regular dress of the legionary soldier consisted (1) of a sleeveless tunic; (2) the *sagum* or *sagulum*, a loose cloak for rough weather; (3) heavy shoes (*caligae*) laced part way up the calf.

The commanding general was specially distinguished by the purple military cloak, *paludamentum*. This was decorated with gold embroidery.

28. Armor. — The armor of the legionary consisted, (1) of a leathern helmet (*galea*) decorated with a crest (*crista*). On

the march the helmet was worn suspended by a band at the breast. The crest was detachable and was fitted to the helmet when the soldier prepared for fighting; (2) a coat of mail (*lorica*), consisting of leather overlaid with metal bands, designed to protect the vital parts. Sometimes the *lorica* was of chain armor (*lorica hamata*) or of overlapping metal plates (*lorica squamata*); (3) a shield (*scutum*), semi-cylindrical in shape, with four square corners. This was made of two layers of wood, and was covered with rawhide. The upper and lower edges were protected by metal rims. The dimensions were about 30 by 48 inches, and the weight was 16 to 20 lbs. A metal boss or button (*umbo*) marked the centre. On the march the shield was often carried in a case to protect it from the weather. At such times, too, the shield was not carried in the hand, but was probably slung from the shoulder.

ROMAN LEGIONARY SOLDIERS.

Cavalrymen wore a metal helmet (*cassis*) and carried a small round shield (*parma*).

29. Weapons. — The offensive weapons of the legionary were, (1) the *pilum*, a heavy lance with an iron point (often

barbed) measuring about two feet, securely fastened in a stout wooden shaft over four feet long. The total length of the weapon was thus about $6\frac{1}{2}$ feet. Except at the very tip, the iron was soft and easily bent, a fact which made the weapon unfit for use after it had once struck an opposing object with force; (2) the sword (*gladius*). After hurling the *pilum*, the legionary had recourse to his sword. This was a heavy, straight, two-edged weapon, worn in a metal-mounted scabbard hanging at the right hip. The blade of the sword was short, not exceeding 10 inches probably; but the weapon must have been a most effective one, since, after the *pila* were hurled at the beginning of an encounter, the sword was the soldiers' sole reliance.

Sword.

Scabbard.

Baggage.

30. Sarcinae. — The Roman soldier carried all of his personal belongings, including rations for many days, saw, axe, spade, basket, cooking utensils, along with several heavy stakes to be used in constructing the palisade of the camp. The combined weight of all these articles must have been 40 lbs. To facilitate the bearing of such a burden, it was customary to fasten it at the end of a pole, which was carried over the shoulder. Before battle the packs of the soldiers were deposited together, and a special guard was detailed to protect them during the engagement.

31. Impedimenta. — This name was given to the heavy baggage belonging to the army as a whole. It was hauled by pack animals and formed a regular baggage train, consisting of tents, mills for grinding the corn of the soldiers, engines of war, *etc.*

Aquila.

THE STANDARDS.

32. The Eagle. — The standard of the legion was a bronze or silver eagle mounted on a staff. Often the eagle was represented as holding in its talons golden or silver thunderbolts, emblematical of the power of the god (Jupiter) to whom the eagle was sacred. The eagle (*aquila*) was borne by a special *aquilifer* under the direction of the first centurion, the *primipilus*. (§ 24.)

Aquila.

33. Standards of the Maniples. — These were designated by the general name *signa*, and are illustrated in the accompanying cuts.

Signum.

Signum.

Vexillum.

34. Vexilla. — These were carried by the auxiliaries and were cloth banners, hanging from a cross-piece surmounting a staff. The commanding general seems to have had a special crimson *vexillum*, which was hoisted as a signal for battle.

Musical Instruments.

35. The musical instruments of Caesar's army were the *bucina*, *tuba*, *lituus*, and *cornu*. The first three of these are shown in the accompanying illustrations. They were of metal. The *cornu* is said by some authorities to have been made of an ox horn, fitted with a metal mouthpiece. Others describe it as wholly of metal. All these instruments were used exclusively for military signals. Martial music is not mentioned.

Bucina.

Marching Order of the Troops.

36. On the march the Roman troops regularly proceeded in column, *i.e.* the front was much narrower than that presented in battle formation. First came the cavalry, who acted as a reconnoitering party. Then came the legions, marching one behind another, each followed by its heavy baggage. If, however, the army were nearing the enemy, about two-thirds of the legions marched in advance of the baggage, the remaining third acting as a rear guard. Sometimes, when the appearance of the enemy was momentarily expected, the march was in regular battle order (§ 37). The packs of the soldiers were then laid aside, and all preparations made for a prompt commencement of fighting.

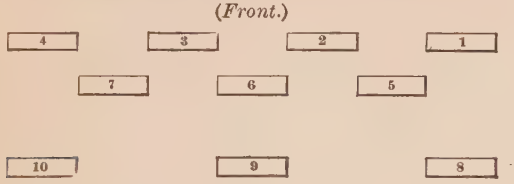
Tuba.

Lituus.

Battle Order.

37. The usual battle formation of Caesar's troops was the *triplex acies*. The legions stood side by side, and the cohorts were drawn up as indicated in the accompanying illustration. The depth of the formation of cohorts must have varied with circumstances. Of the three lines in the

triplex acies, one only was ordinarily engaged. The first began the fighting and continued it till relieved by the



Formation of Legion by Cohorts.

second. The third acted as a reserve, ready either to engage in the fighting at the front or to meet an attack made by the enemy on the flank. Less frequently we read of a *duplex acies*. In this the legion was drawn up in two lines, each of five cohorts. The cavalry and allies were usually stationed on the wings. Ordinarily they participated but slightly in the engagement, being held in reserve for a critical emergency.

(*Front*)

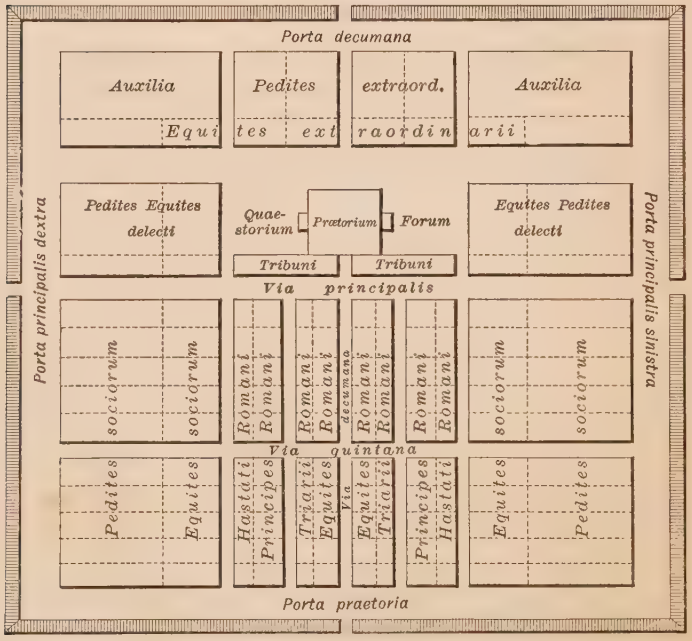
III Manip.	II Manip.	I Manip.
I Cent.	I Cent.	I Cent.
II Cent.	II Cent.	II Cent.

Formation of Cohort by Maniples and Centuries.

The Roman Camp.

38. At the end of each day's march a Roman army regularly constructed a strongly fortified camp. Most of the details of such a camp are obvious from the accompanying illustration. Where possible a sloping hillside was chosen, in near proximity to wood and water. The earthen rampart thrown up around the camp was probably not less than 10 feet high and 10 feet broad at the top. Often it was surmounted by a palisade of stout wooden stakes (*valli*). A further protection was afforded by a ditch (*fossa*) running around the camp. One such ditch mentioned by Caesar was 18 feet broad and probably 12 feet deep, though usually the

dimensions were smaller. Various additional defenses at times appear, such as redoubts, towers, *etc.* Constant practice made the construction of such camps a relatively easy task for the Roman legionaries. All shared in the work, which was thus rapidly brought to completion. Within the enclosure were set up the tents of the soldiers and officers.



PLAN OF ROMAN CAMP.

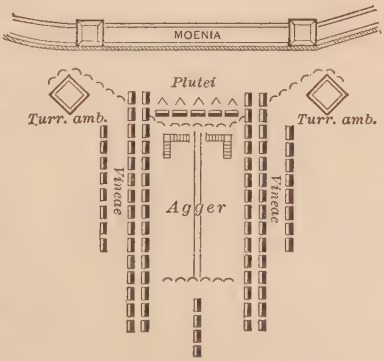
Each of the four main exits of the camp was guarded by a cohort, and at night special sentries (*vigiliae*) patrolled the outer rampart. There were four shifts of these; hence the name *vigiliae* was applied to the four periods into which the time from sunset to sunrise was divided. These varied in duration, of course, with the time of year.

39. Winter Camps. — Winter camps (*castra hiberna*, or simply *hiberna*) were laid out on the same general plan as the ordinary camp. Doubtless more space was utilized, and the soldiers were protected from the severity of the weather by the erection of thatched wooden huts, while suitable shelters were also provided for the horses and pack animals.

Sieges and Siege Works.

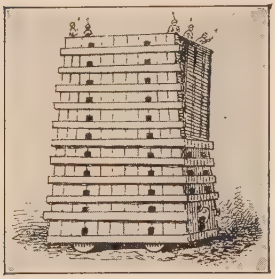
40. The systematic investment and siege of fortified places was an important feature of military art in Caesar's campaigns. At times a persistent blockade, strictly maintained by lines of circumvallation, was sufficient to bring about the capitulation of a stronghold. At other times vigorous assault with all available appliances was necessary. The most important of these are the following: —

41. The Agger. — The agger or siege-terrace was a huge embankment of earth and timber, of the same height as the hostile fortifications against which it was directed. It was begun at some distance from the enemy's walls, and, as its construction continued, gradually neared them at right angles. Its breadth was sometimes over 300 feet. The object, of course, was to provide an avenue of approach over which the besieging party could effect an entrance within the works of the besieged. As the head of the agger neared the wall, the workmen became more and more exposed to assaults from within. To cope with these attacks, protection was sought by the following devices: —



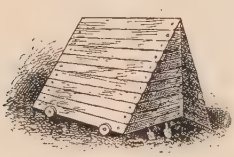
Mode of Advancing Agger.

42. Turres Ambulatoriae. — These were movable towers on rollers. They were regularly of several stories and were stationed at the head of the agger. From the lower story a battering-ram (§ 46) was operated, with the design of making a breach in the enemy's wall. In the upper stories were posted archers, catapults, or ballistae. Not infrequently the enemy, by hurling brands, attempted to set fire to the towers. Such efforts were met by protecting the sides with moistened hides.

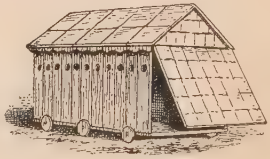


TURRIS AMBULATORIA.

43. Vineae. — *Vineae* (literally, 'grape arbors,') were sheds designed to protect the workmen on the agger as they neared



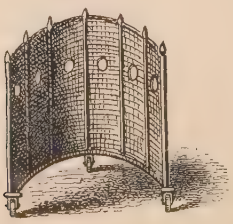
VINEA.



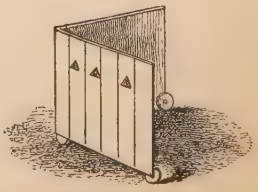
VINEA.

the enemy's wall. Vegetius, a Roman writer on military affairs, gives their dimensions as 16 feet long, 7 feet high, and 8 feet wide. The top and sides were protected by hides.

44. Plutei. — These were heavy frames covered with skins and mounted on rollers.



PLUTEUS.



PLUTEUS.

45. Musculi. — The *musculus* ('little mouse') seems to have been similar to the *vinea*, but it was larger and more heavily built. Vitruvius, a Roman writer on architecture, gives the dimensions as 25 feet square. The *musculus* was used by men undertaking to undermine the enemy's wall.

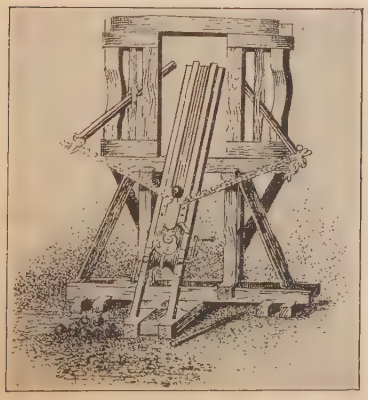
In actual assault upon the walls the following served:

46. The Aries. — The *aries*, or battering-ram, was a huge beam provided with a heavy iron head. The total length varied from 60 feet to more than 100 feet. The beam was suspended by ropes or chains, and could thus be driven with terrific impact against a hostile wall. It was often operated under the protection of a special shed called *testudo arietaria*.

TESTUDO ARIETARIA.

ARIES.

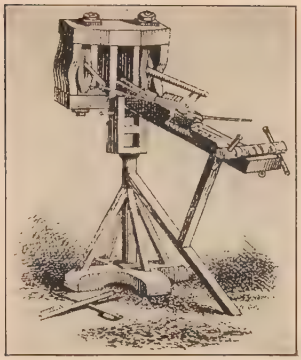
47. The Falx Muralis. — This was a heavy iron hook on the end of a long pole, used for tearing down walls.



BALLISTA.

48. Artillery. — The various engines used for hurling heavy missiles were designated by the general name of *tormenta*, from *torqueo*, 'twist,' since the propelling power by which they were operated was developed from twisted ropes. The most important contrivances belonging under this head are: —

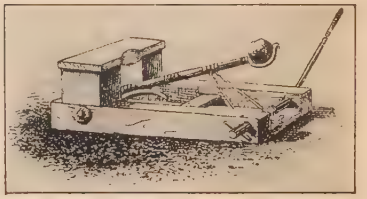
a) The *Ballista*, an engine used for hurling heavy stones;



CATAPULT.

b) The *Catapult* (*catapulta*), used for hurling heavy javelins;

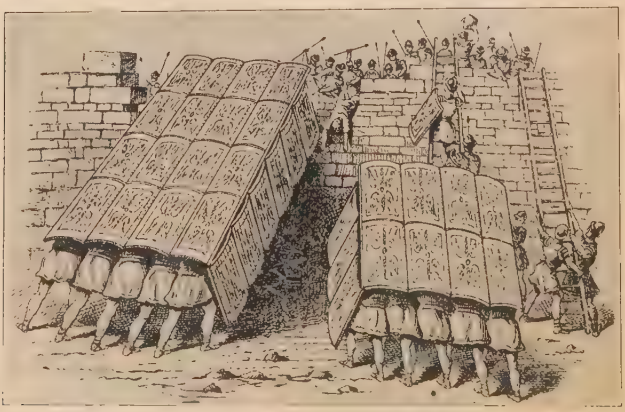
c) The *Scorpio*, similar to the catapult, but lighter;



ONAGER.

d) The *Onager* (literally, 'wild ass'), used for hurling stones.

49. The Testudo. — In assaults upon fortified places, the Romans also sometimes made use of the *testudo* (literally,



TESTUDO.

'tortoise'), a formation illustrated in the accompanying cut. It received its name from the overlapping shields of the soldiers, which thus resembled the scales of a tortoise.

The Navy.

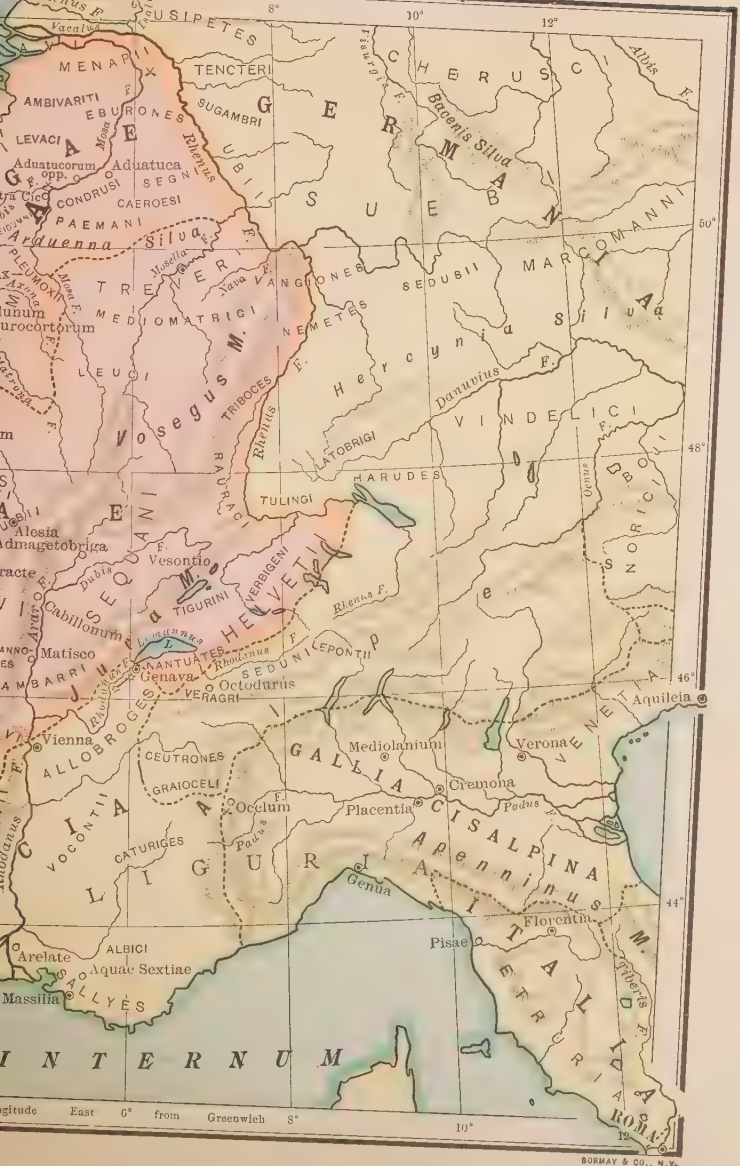
50. Ships play an unimportant part in Caesar's campaigns. There was no regular Roman fleet in Gallic waters. When vessels were necessary, they were either constructed to meet the exigency or were obtained from allied and friendly tribes. The fighting ships were called *naves longae*, so designated from their relatively great length, which was ordinarily eight or ten times their breadth of beam. Thus a ship of 15 feet beam would measure 120 feet in length. The draught was ordinarily light, about 3 feet; for the war against the Veneti vessels of even lighter draught were built, owing to the shoal water in which they were to be used. Vessels were propelled partly by sails, but mainly by oars. There was usually but a single mast, equipped with one square-sail. In battle even this was hauled down. According to the number of tiers of oars, ships were designated as *biremes* (ships with two banks) or *triremes* (ships with three banks). The *triremes* were the commoner.

In combat various tactics were employed. Sometimes the hostile ship was made fast by grappling irons, a gangplank was lowered across the enemy's bulwarks, and the ship was boarded. Sometimes by clever seamanship the oars of a hostile ship were swept from its side. Of special importance were bronze or iron beaks fitted to the bows of the galleys, with which great damage was often inflicted by ramming.

Smaller boats were attached to the larger ones, available for use in reconnoitering or in less important undertakings. These were known as *naves speculatoriae* and were equipped with both sails and oars.

As transports the Romans used vessels of a heavier build and broader beam, known as *naves onerariae*.

GAUL
IN THE TIME OF
CAESAR.
SCALE OF ROMAN MILES
0 20 40 60 80 100 150
BRITANNIA
OCEANUS
CELTICA
AQUITANIA
HISPANIA
CITERIOR
Pyrenaei
M. GERMA
Cassivellauni opp.
CASSI
Londinium
Tamesis F.
ANCALITES
SEGONTIACI
Cantium
BELGAE
BIBROCI
Itius Portus
MORIN
ATREBATES
AMBILIATI
AMBIANI
Samarobriva
CALETES
Bratuspantium
BELLOVA
VELIOCASSES
Isara F.
Sequana
LEXOBII
VENELLI
EBUROVICES
Lutetia
PARIS
ESUBII
DIABLINTES
OSISMI
CURIOSOLITES
AMBIBARII
Vellaunodunum
CARNUTES
Cenabum
AVENETI
REDONES
CENOMANI
ANDES
NAMNETES
Liger F.
Condivincum
TURONI
Noviodunum
Liger
BITURIGES
CUBI
PICTONES
Lemonum
LEMOVICES
SANTONI
PETROCORII
Vesunna
Garumna F.
ELEUTETI
Uxellodunum
NITIOBROGES
CADURCI
COCOSATES
VOCATES
Sotiates
SIBUZATES
ELUSATES
GATES
AUSCI
TOLOSATES
Tolosa
TARUSATES
PTIANII
TARBELLI
BIGERRIONES
GARUMNI
TECTOSAC
CANTABRI
4° Longitude West 2° from Greenwich 0°
6°
4°
2°
0°
2°
50°
48°
46°
44°



Rhenus F.
Vacalus
Isala
USIPETES
8°
10°
12°
MENAPII
TENCTERI
CHERUSCI
Albis F.
AMBIVARITI
EBURONES
SUGAMBRI
GERMANIA
Visurgis F.
Bacenis Silva
LEVACI
Mosa F.
Rhenus
UBII
Aduatucorum
Aduatuca
SEGNI
CONDRUSI
CAEROESI
PAEMANI
SUEBI
Arduenna Silva
Mosella F.
MARCOMANNI
50°
PLEUMOXII
Mosa F.
TREVERI
Nava F.
VANGIONES
SEDUSII
MEDIOMATRICI
NEMETES
Hercynia Silva
LEUCI
Vosegus M.
TRIBOCES
Danuvius F.
VINDELICI
Rhenus F.
LATOBRIGI
48°
RAURACI
HARUDES
Ovnus F.
BOII
TULINGI
NORICI
Alesia
Admagetobriga
SEQUANI
Vesontio
Dubis
VERBIGENI
HELVETII
TIGURINI
Rhenus F.
Cabillonum
Arar F.
Matisco
Lemannus L.
NANTUATES
Rhodanus F.
LEPONTII
SEDUNI
Genava
Octodurus
VERAGRI
46°
Aquileia
Vienna
ALLOBROGES
CEUTRONES
GRAIOCELI
Mediolanium
Verona
VENETIA
GALLIA CISALPINA
Cremona
Occlum
Placentia
Padus F.
VOCONTII
CATURIGES
Padus
LIGURIA
Apenninus
Genua
44°
Florentia
Pisae
ITALIA
Arelate
ALBICI
Aquae Sextiae
Massilia
SALLYES
ETRURIA
Tiberis F.
INTERNUM
ROMA
gitude East 6° from Greenwich 8°
10°
12°
BORMAY & CO., N.Y.

CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR.

BOOK I.

Chapters 1–29. — The Campaign against the Helvetii.

Gaul and its three divisions.

1. Gallia est omnis dīvīsa in partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquītānī, tertiam, quī ipsōrum linguā Celtae, nostrā Gallī appellantur. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. Gallōs ab Aquītānīs Garumna flūmen, ā Belgīs Matrona et Sēquana dīvidit.

Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae, propterea quod ā cultū atque hūmānitāte prōvinciae longissimē absunt, minimēque ad eōs mercātōrēs saepe commeant, atque ea, quae ad effēminandōs animōs pertinent, important; proximīque sunt Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Quā dē causā Helvētiī quoque reliquōs Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt, quod ferē cotīdiānīs proeliīs cum Germānīs contendunt, cum aut suīs fīnibus eōs prohibent, aut ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt.

Eōrum ūna pars, quam Gallōs obtinēre dictum est, initium capit ā flūmine Rhodanō; continētur Garumnā flūmine, Ōceanō, fīnibus Belgārum; attingit etiam ab

Sēquanīs et Helvētiīs flūmen Rhēnum; vergit ad septentriōnēs. Belgae ab extrēmīs Galliae fīnibus oriuntur; pertinent ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis Rhēnī; spectant in septentriōnem et orientem sōlem. Aquītānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad Pȳrēnaeōs montēs et eam partem Ōceanī, quae est ad Hispāniam, pertinet; spectat inter occāsum sōlis et septentriōnēs.

Orgetorix induces the Helvetii to migrate.

2. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit et dītissimus Orgetorīx. Is, M. Messālā, M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus, rēgnī cupiditāte inductus conjūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit, et cīvitātī persuāsit, ut dē fīnibus suīs cum omnibus cōpiīs exīrent; perfacile esse, cum virtūte omnibus praestārent, tōtīus Galliae imperiō potīrī. Id hōc facilius eīs persuāsit, quod undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur: ūnā ex parte flūmine Rhēnō, lātissimō atque altissimō, quī agrum Helvētium ā Germānīs dīvidit; alterā ex parte monte Jūrā altissimō, quī est inter Sēquanōs et Helvētiōs; tertiā, lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō, quī prōvinciam nostram ab Helvētiīs dīvidit. Hīs rēbus fīēbat, ut et minus lātē vagārentur et minus facile fīnitimīs bellum īnferre possent. Quā ex parte hominēs bellandī cupidī magnō dolōre afficiēbantur. Prō multitūdine autem hominum et prō glōriā bellī atque fortitūdinis angustōs sē fīnēs habēre arbitrābantur, quī in longitūdinem mīlia passuum CCXL, in lātitūdinem CLXXX patēbant.

The Helvetii make ready. Orgetorix conspires to become king.

3. Hīs rēbus adductī et auctōritāte Orgetorīgis permōtī cōnstituērunt ea, quae ad proficīscendum pertinē-

rent, comparāre, jūmentōrum et carrōrum quam maximum numerum coëmere, sēmentēs quam maximās facere, ut in itinere cōpia frūmentī suppeteret, cum proximīs cīvitātibus pācem et amīcitiam cōnfīrmāre. Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās biennium sibi satis esse dūxērunt; in tertium annum profectiōnem lēge cōnfīrmant.

Ad eās rēs cōnficiendās Orgetorīx dēligitur. Is sibi lēgātiōnem ad cīvitātēs suscēpit. In eō itinere persuādet Casticō, Catamantāloedis fīliō, Sēquanō, cūjus pater rēgnum in Sēquanīs multōs annōs obtinuerat et ā senātū populī Rōmānī amīcus appellātus erat, ut rēgnum in cīvitāte suā occupāret, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorīgī Haeduō, frātrī Dīvitiācī, quī eō tempore prīncipātum in cīvitāte obtinēbat ac maximē plēbī acceptus erat, ut idem cōnārētur, persuādet, eīque fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dat. Perfacile factū esse illīs probat cōnāta perficere, propterea quod ipse suae cīvitātis imperium obtentūrus esset; nōn esse dubium, quīn tōtīus Galliae plūrimum Helvētiī possent; sē suīs cōpiīs suōque exercitū illīs rēgna conciliātūrum cōnfīrmat. Hāc ōrātiōne adductī inter sē fidem et jūs jūrandum dant, et rēgnō occupātō per trēs potentissimōs ac fīrmissimōs populōs tōtīus Galliae imperiō sēsē potīrī posse spērant.

Trial and death of Orgetorix.

4. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. Mōribus suīs Orgetorīgem ex vinculīs causam dīcere coēgērunt; damnātum poenam sequī oportēbat, ut īguī cremārētur. Diē cōnstitūtā causae dictiōnis Orgetorīx ad jūdicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum mīlia decem, undique coēgit, et omnēs clientēs obaerātōsque suōs, quōrum magnum numerum habēbat, eōdem condūxit;

per eōs, nē causam dīceret, sē ēripuit. Cum cīvitās ob eam rem incitāta armīs jūs suum exsequī cōnārētur, multitūdinemque hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs cōgerent, Orgetorīx mortuus est; neque abest suspīciō, ut Helvētiī arbitrantur, quīn ipse sibi mortem cōnscīverit.

The Helvetii continue their preparations.

5. Post ejus mortem nihilō minus Helvētiī id, quod cōnstituerant, facere cōnantur, ut ē fīnibus suīs exeant. Ubi jam sē ad eam rem parātōs esse arbitrātī sunt, oppida sua omnia, numerō ad duōdecim, vīcōs ad quadringentōs, reliqua prīvāta aedificia incendunt; frūmentum omne, praeter quod sēcum portātūrī erant, combūrunt, ut domum reditiōnis spē sublātā parātiōrēs ad omnia perīcula subeunda essent; trium mēnsium molita cibāria sibi quemque domō efferre jubent. Persuādent Rauracīs et Tulingīs et Latobrīgīs fīnitimīs, utī eōdem ūsī cōnsiliō, oppidīs suīs vīcīsque exūstīs, ūnā cum eīs proficīscantur; Bōjōsque, quī trāns Rhēnum incoluerant et in agrum Nōricum trānsierant Nōrēiamque oppugnārant, receptōs ad sē sociōs sibi ascīscunt.

They decide to go by way of the Roman Province.

6. Erant omnīnō itinera duo, quibus itineribus domō exīre possent: ūnum per Sēquanōs, angustum et difficile, inter montem Jūram et flūmen Rhodanum, vix quā singulī carrī dūcerentur; mōns autem altissimus impendēbat, ut facile perpaucī prohibēre possent; alterum per prōvinciam nostram, multō facilius atque expedītius, propterea quod inter fīnēs Helvētiōrum et Allobrogum, quī nūper pācātī erant, Rhodanus fluit, isque nōnnūllīs locīs vadō trānsītur. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum

est proximumque Helvētiōrum fīnibus Genava. Ex eō oppidō pōns ad Helvētiōs pertinet. Allobrogibus sēsē vel persuāsūrōs, quod nōndum bonō animō in populum Rōmānum vidērentur, exīstimābant, vel vī coāctūrōs, ut per suōs fīnēs eōs īre paterentur. Omnibus rēbus ad profectiōnem comparātīs diem dīcunt, quā diē ad rīpam Rhodanī omnēs conveniant. Is diēs erat a. d. V. Kal. Apr., L. Pīsōne, A. Gabīniō cōnsulibus.

Caesar hurries to the scene of action. He parleys with the Helvetian chieftains.

7. Caesarī cum id nūntiātum esset, eōs per prōvinciam nostram iter facere cōnārī, mātūrat ab urbe proficīscī et, quam maximīs potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriōrem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Prōvinciae tōtī quam maximum potest mīlitum numerum imperat (erat omnīnō in Galliā ulteriōre legiō ūna); pontem, quī erat ad Genavam, jubet rescindī. Ubi dē ejus adventū Helvētiī certiōrēs factī sunt, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, nōbilissimōs cīvitātis, cūjus lēgātiōnis Nammēius et Verucloetius prīncipem locum obtinēbant, quī dīcerent, sibi esse in animō sine ūllō maleficiō iter per prōvinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter habērent nūllum; rogāre, ut ejus voluntāte id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memoriā tenēbat, L. Cassium cōnsulem occīsum exercitumque ejus ab Helvētiīs pulsum et sub jugum missum, concēdendum nōn putābat; neque hominēs inimīcō animō, datā facultāte per prōvinciam itineris faciundī, temperātūrōs ab injūriā et maleficiō exīstimābat. Tāmen, ut spatium intercēdere posset, dum mīlitēs, quōs imperāverat, convenīrent, lēgātīs respondit, diem sē ad dēlīberandum sūmptūrum; sī quid vellent, ad Īdūs Aprīlēs reverterentur.

In the interval he bars the passage to the Province.

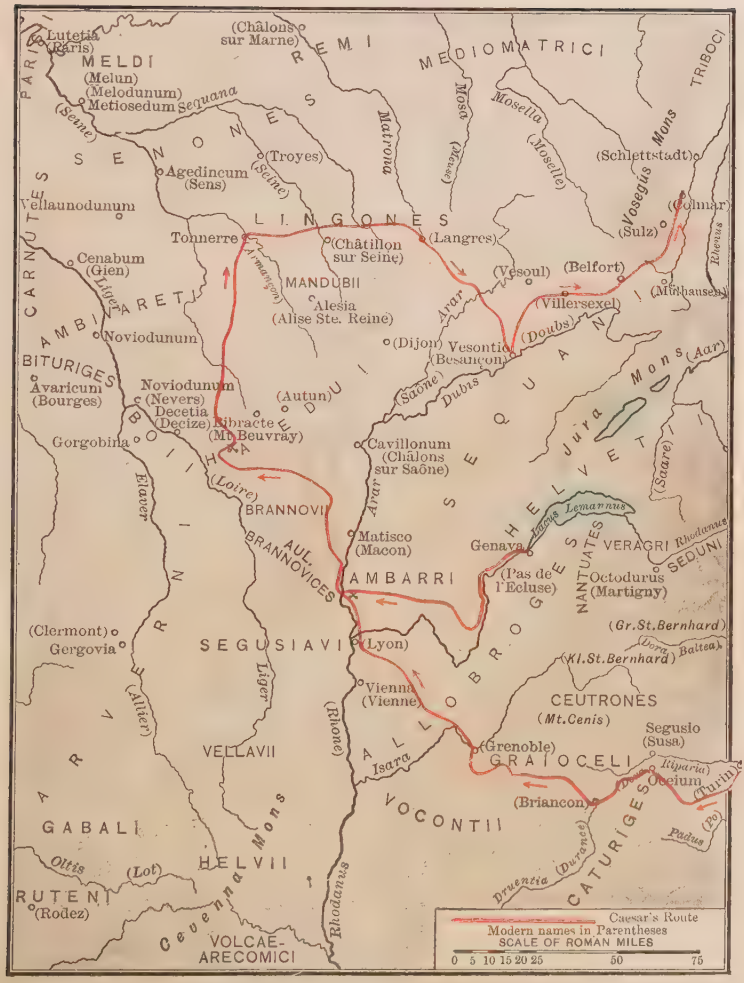
8. Intereā eā legiōne, quam sēcum habēbat, mīlitibusque, quī ex prōvinciā convēnerant, ā lacū Lemannō, quī in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit, ad montem Jūram, quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, mīlia passuum XVIIII mūrum in altitūdinem pedum sēdecim fossamque perdūcit. Eō opere perfectō praesidia dispōnit, castella commūnit, quō facilius, sī sē invītō trānsīre cōnārentur, prohibēre possit.

Ubi ea diēs, quam cōnstituerat cum lēgātīs, vēnit, et lēgātī ad eum revertērunt, negat, sē more et exemplō populī Rōmānī posse iter ūllī per prōvinciam dare; et, sī vim facere cōnentur, prohibitūrum ostendit. Helvētiī, eā spē dējectī, nāvibus jūnctīs ratibusque complūribus factīs, aliī vadīs Rhodanī, quā minima altitūdō flūminis erat, nōnnumquam interdiū, saepius noctū, sī perrumpere possent, cōnātī, operis mūnītiōne et mīlitum concursū et tēlīs repulsī hōc cōnātū dēstitērunt.

The Helvetii secure permission to go through the territory of the Sequani.

9. Relinquēbātur ūna per Sēquanōs via, quā Sēquanīs invītīs propter angustiās īre nōn poterant. Hīs cum suā sponte persuādēre nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Dumnorīgem Haeduum mittunt, ut eō dēprecātōre ā Sēquanīs impetrārent. Dumnorīx grātiā et largītiōne apud Sēquanōs plūrimum poterat, et Helvētiīs erat amīcus, quod ex eā cīvitāte Orgetorīgis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat, et cupiditāte rēgnī adductus novīs rēbus studēbat, et quam plūrimās cīvitātēs suō beneficiō habēre obstrictās volēbat. Itaque rem suscipit, et ā Sēquanīs impetrat, ut per fīnēs suōs Helvētiōs īre patiantur, obsidēsque utī inter sēsē

Campaign Map for 58 B.C.



To face p. 6

dent, perficit: Sēquanī, nē itinere Helvētiōs prohibeant; Helvētiī, ut sine maleficiō et injūriā trānseant.

Caesar resolves to prevent this. He enrolls fresh legions.

10. Caesarī renūntiātur, Helvētiīs esse in animō per agrum Sēquanōrum et Haeduōrum iter in Santonum fīnēs facere, quī nōn longē ā Tolōsātium fīnibus absunt, quae cīvitās est in prōvinciā. Id sī fieret, intellegēbat magnō cum perīculō prōvinciae futūrum, ut hominēs bellicōsōs, populī Rōmānī inimīcōs, locīs patentibus maximēque frūmentāriīs fīnitimōs habēret. Ob eās causās eī mūnītiōnī, quam fēcerat, T. Labiēnum lēgātum praefēcit; ipse in Italiam magnīs itineribus contendit duāsque ibi legiōnēs cōnscrībit, et trēs, quae circum Aquilēiam hiemābant, ex hībernīs ēdūcit et, quā proximum iter in ulteriōrem Galliam per Alpēs erat, cum hīs quīnque legiōnibus īre contendit. Ibi Ceutronēs et Graiocelī et Caturīgēs, locīs superiōribus occupātīs, itinere exercitum prohibēre cōnantur. Complūribus hīs proeliīs pulsīs, ab Ocelō, quod est oppidum citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, in fīnēs Vocontiōrum ulteriōris prōvinciae diē septimō pervenit; inde in Allobrogum fīnēs, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvōs exercitum dūcit. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum prīmī.

The Helvetii ravage the lands of the Gauls. Caesar surprises them and cuts one division to pieces.

11. Helvētiī jam per angustiās et fīnēs Sēquanōrum suās cōpiās trādūxerant, et in Haeduōrum fīnēs pervēnerant eōrumque agrōs populābantur. Haeduī cum sē suaque ab eīs dēfendere nōn possent, lēgātōs ad Caesarem mittunt rogātum auxilium: Ita sē omnī tempore dē populō

Rōmānō meritōs esse, ut, paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī, agrī vāstārī, līberī eōrum in servitūtem abdūcī, oppida expugnārī nōn dēbuerint. Eōdem tempore, quō Haeduī, Ambarrī, necessāriī et cōnsanguineī Haeduōrum, Caesarem certiōrem faciunt, sēsē, dēpopulātīs agrīs, nōn facile ab oppidīs vim hostium prohibēre. Item Allobrogēs quī trāns Rhodanum vīcōs possessiōnēsque habēbant, fugā sē ad Caesarem recipiunt, et dēmōnstrant, sibi praeter agrī solum nihil esse reliquī. Quibus rēbus adductus Caesar nōn exspectandum sibi statuit, dum, omnibus fortūnīs sociōrum cōnsūmptīs, in Santonōs Helvētiī pervenīrent.

12. Flūmen est Arar, quod per fīnēs Haeduōrum et Sēquanōrum in Rhodanum īnfluit, incrēdibilī lēnitāte, ita ut oculīs, in utram partem fluat, jūdicārī nōn possit. Id Helvētiī ratibus ac lintribus jūnctīs trānsībant. Ubi per explōrātōrēs Caesar certior factus est, trēs jam partēs cōpiārum Helvētiōs id flūmen trādūxisse, quārtam ferē partem citrā flūmen Ararim reliquam esse, dē tertiā vigiliā cum legiōnibus tribus ē castrīs profectus ad eam partem pervēnit, quae nōndum flūmen trānsierat. Eōs impedītōs et inopīnantēs aggressus magnam partem eōrum concīdit; reliquī sēsē fugae mandārunt atque in proximās silvās abdidērunt. Is pāgus appellābātur Tigurīnus; nam omnis cīvitās Helvētia in quattuor pāgōs dīvīsa est. Hīc pāgus ūnus, cum domō exīsset patrum nostrōrum memoriā, L. Cassium cōnsulem interfēcerat et ejus exercitum sub jugum mīserat. Ita sīve cāsū sīve cōnsiliō deōrum immortālium, quae pars cīvitātis Helvētiae īnsignem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat, ea prīnceps poenās persolvit. Quā in rē Caesar nōn sōlum pūblicās, sed etiam prīvātās injūriās ultus est, quod ejus socerī L.

Pīsōnis avum, L. Pīsōnem lēgātum, Tigurīnī eōdem proeliō, quō Cassium, interfēcerant.

Caesar bridges the Arar. The Helvetii send envoys, who proclaim their defiance.

13. Hōc proeliō factō, reliquās cōpiās Helvētiōrum ut cōnsequī posset, pontem in Ararī faciendum cūrat atque ita exercitum trādūcit. Helvētiī repentīnō ejus adventū commōtī, cum id, quod ipsī diēbus xx aegerrimē cōnfēcerant, ut flūmen trānsīrent, illum ūnō diē fēcisse intellegerent, lēgātōs ad eum mittunt; cūjus lēgātiōnis Dīvicō prīnceps fuit, quī bellō Cassiānō dux Helvētiōrum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare egit: Sī pācem populus Rōmānus cum Helvētiīs faceret, in eam partem ītūrōs atque ibi futūrōs Helvētiōs, ubi eōs Caesar cōnstituisset atque esse voluisset; sīn bellō persequī persevērāret, reminīscerētur et veteris incommodī populī Rōmānī et prīstinae virtūtis Helvētiōrum. Quod improvīsō ūnum pāgum adortus esset, cum eī, quī flūmen trānsīssent, suīs auxilium ferre nōn possent, nē ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtūtī tribueret aut ipsōs dēspiceret; sē ita ā patribus majōribusque suīs didicisse, ut magis virtūte contenderent, quam dolō aut īnsidiīs nīterentur. Quārē nē committeret, ut is locus, ubi cōnstitissent, ex calamitāte populī Rōmānī et interneciōne exercitūs nōmen caperet aut memoriam prōderet.

Caesar protests, but offers terms, which the Helvetii reject.

14. Hīs Caesar ita respondit: Eō sibi minus dubitātiōnis darī, quod eās rēs, quās lēgātī Helvētiī commemorāssent, memoriā tenēret, atque eō gravius ferre, quō minus meritō populī Rōmānī accidissent; quī sī alicūjus injūriae

sibi cōnscius fuisset, nōn fuisse difficile cavēre; sed eō dēceptum, quod neque commissum ā sē intellegeret, quārē timēret, neque sine causā timendum putāret. Quod sī veteris contumēliae oblīvīscī vellet, num etiam recentium injūriārum, quod eō invītō iter per prōvinciam per vim temptāssent, quod Haeduōs, quod Ambarrōs, quod Allobrogēs vexāssent, memoriam dēpōnere posse? Quod suā victōriā tam īnsolenter glōriārentur, quodque tam diū sē impūne injūriās tulisse admīrārentur, eōdem pertinēre. Cōnsuēsse enim deōs immortālēs, quō gravius hominēs ex commūtātiōne rērum doleant, quōs prō scelere eōrum ulcīscī velint, hīs secundiōrēs interdum rēs et diūturniōrem impūnitātem concēdere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, sī obsidēs ab eīs sibi dentur, utī ea, quae polliceantur, factūrōs intellegat, et sī Haeduīs dē injūriīs, quās ipsīs sociīsque eōrum intulerint, item sī Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sēsē cum eīs pācem esse factūrum.

Dīvicō respondit: Ita Helvētiōs ā majōribus suīs īnstitūtōs esse, utī obsidēs accipere, nōn dare, cōnsuērint; ejus reī populum Rōmānum esse testem. Hōc respōnsō datō discessit.

Caesar follows the Helvetii.

15. Posterō diē castra ex eō locō movent. Idem facit Caesar equītātumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor mīlium, quem ex omnī prōvinciā et Haeduīs atque eōrum sociīs coāctum habēbat, praemittit, quī videant, quās in partēs hostēs iter faciant. Quī cupidius novissimum agmen īnsecūtī aliēnō locō cum equitātū Helvētiōrum proelium committunt, et paucī dē nostrīs cadunt. Quō proeliō sublātī Helvētiī, quod quīngentīs equitibus tantam multitūdinem equitum prōpulerant, audācius subsistere nōnnumquam et novissimō agmine proeliō nostrōs laces-

sere coepērunt. Caesar suōs ā proeliō continēbat, ac satis habēbat in praesentia hostem rapīnīs, pābulātiōnibus populātiōnibusque prohibēre. Ita diēs circiter quīndecim iter fēcērunt, utī inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum prīmum nōn amplius quīnīs aut sēnīs mīlibus passuum interesset.

The Haedui fail to furnish promised supplies. Liscus explains why.

16. Interim cotīdiē Caesar Haeduōs frūmentum, quod essent pūblicē pollicitī, flāgitāre. Nam propter frīgora, quod Gallia sub septentriōnibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, nōn modo frūmenta in agrīs mātūra nōn erant, sed nē pābulī quidem satis magna cōpia suppetēbat; eō autem frūmentō, quod flūmine Ararī nāvibus subvexerat, propterea minus ūtī poterat, quod iter ab Ararī Helvētiī āverterant, ā quibus discēdere nōlēbat. Diem ex diē dūcere Haeduī; cōnferrī, comportārī, adesse dīcere.

Ubi sē diūtius dūcī intellēxit et diem īnstāre, quō diē frūmentum mīlitibus mētīrī oportēret, convocātīs eōrum prīncipibus, quōrum magnam cōpiam in castrīs habēbat, in hīs Dīvitiācō et Liscō, quī summō magistrātuī praeerat, quem vergobretum appellant Haeduī, quī creātur annuus et vītae necisque in suōs habet potestātem, graviter eōs accūsat, quod, cum neque emī neque ex agrīs sūmī posset, tam necessāriō tempore, tam propinquīs hostibus, ab eīs nōn sublevētur; praesertim cum magnā ex parte eōrum precibus adductus bellum suscēperit, multō etiam gravius, quod sit dēstitūtus, queritur.

17. Tum dēmum Liscus ōrātiōne Caesaris adductus, quod anteā tacuerat, prōpōnit: Esse nōnnūllōs, quōrum auctōritās apud plēbem plūrimum valeat, quī prīvātim

plūs possint quam ipsī magistrātūs. Hōs sēditiōsā atque improbā ōrātiōne multitūdinem dēterrēre, nē frūmentum cōnferant, quod dēbeant: praestāre, sī jam prīncipātum Galliae obtinēre nōn possint, Gallōrum quam Rōmānōrum imperia perferre; neque dubitāre dēbēre, quīn, sī Helvētiōs superāverint Rōmānī, ūnā cum reliquā Galliā Haeduīs lībertātem sint ēreptūrī. Ab eīsdem nostra cōnsilia, quaeque in castrīs gerantur, hostibus ēnūntiārī; hōs ā sē coercērī nōn posse. Quīn etiam, quod necessāriō rem coāctus Caesarī ēnūntiārit, intellegere sēsē, quantō id cum perīculō fēcerit, et ob eam causam, quam diū potuerit, tacuisse.

Dumnorix shown to be hostile to the Romans.

18. Caesar hāc ōrātiōne Liscī, Dumnorīgem, Dīvitiācī frātrem, dēsignārī sentiēbat; sed, quod plūribus praesentibus eās rēs jactārī nōlēbat, celeriter concilium dīmittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex sōlō ea, quae in conventū dīxerat; dīcit līberius atque audācius. Eadem sēcrētō ab aliīs quaerit, reperit esse vēra: Ipsum esse Dumnorīgem, summā audāciā, magnā apud plēbem propter līberālitātem grātiā, cupidum rērum novārum. Complūrēs annōs portōria reliquaque omnia Haeduōrum vectīgālia parvō pretiō redēmpta habēre, propterea quod illō licente contrā licērī audeat nēmō. Hīs rēbus et suam rem familiārem auxisse et facultātēs ad largiendum magnās comparāsse; magnum numerum equitātūs suō sūmptū semper alere et circum sē habēre, neque sōlum domī, sed etiam apud fīnitimās cīvitātēs largiter posse, atque hūjus potentiae causā mātrem in Biturīgibus hominī illīc nōbilissimō ac potentissimō collocāsse; ipsum ex Helvētiīs uxōrem habēre, sorōrem ex mātre et propinquās suās nūptum in

aliās cīvitātēs collocāsse. Favēre et cupere Helvētiīs propter eam affīnitātem, ōdisse etiam suō nōmine Caesarem et Rōmānōs, quod eōrum adventū potentia ējus dēminūta et Dīvitiācus frāter in antīquum locum grātiae atque honōris sit restitūtus. Sī quid accidat Rōmānīs, summam in spem per Helvētiōs rēgnī obtinendī venīre; imperiō populī Rōmānī nōn modo dē rēgnō, sed etiam dē eā, quam habeat, grātiā dēspērāre.

Reperiēbat etiam in quaerendō Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucīs ante diēbus esset factum, initium ejus fugae factum ā Dumnorīge atque ejus equitibus (nam equitātuī, quem auxiliō Caesarī Haeduī mīserant, Dumnorīx praeerat), eōrum fugā reliquum esse equitātum perterritum.

Caesar proposes punishing Dumnorix.

19. Quibus rēbus cognitīs, cum ad hās suspīciōnēs certissimae rēs accēderent, quod per fīnēs Sēquanōrum Helvētiōs trādūxisset, quod obsidēs inter eōs dandōs cūrāsset, quod ea omnia nōn modo injussū suō et cīvitātis, sed etiam īnscientibus ipsīs fēcisset, quod ā magistrātū Haeduōrum accūsārētur, satis esse causae arbitrābātur, quārē in eum aut ipse animadverteret, aut cīvitātem animadvertere jubēret.

Hīs omnibus rēbus ūnum repugnābat, quod Dīvitiācī frātris summum in populum Rōmānum studium, summam in sē voluntātem, ēgregiam fidem, jūstitiam, temperantiam cognōverat; nam, nē ejus suppliciō Dīvitiācī animum offenderet, verēbātur. Itaque priusquam quicquam cōnārētur, Dīvitiācum ad sē vocārī jubet et, cotīdiānīs interpretibus remōtīs, per C. Valerium Troucillum, prīncipem Galliae prōvinciae, familiārem suum, cui sum-

mam omnium rērum fidem habēbat, cum eō colloquitur; simul commonefacit, quae ipsō praesente in conciliō Gallōrum dē Dumnorīge sint dicta, et ostendit, quae sēparātim quisque dē eō apud sē dīxerit. Petit atque hortātur, ut sine ejus offēnsiōne animī vel ipse dē eō causā cognitā statuat, vel cīvitātem statuere jubeat.

At the solicitation of Divitiacus, Caesar pardons Dumnorix.

20. Dīvitiācus multīs cum lacrimīs Caesarem complexus obsecrāre coepit, nē quid gravius in frātrem statueret: Scīre sē, illa esse vēra, nec quemquam ex eō plūs quam sē dolōris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse grātiā plūrimum domī atque in reliquā Galliā, ille minimum propter adulēscentiam posset, per sē crēvisset; quibus opibus ac nervīs nōn sōlum ad minuendam grātiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam ūterētur. Sēsē tamen et amōre frāternō et exīstimātiōne vulgī commovērī. Quod sī quid eī ā Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amīcitiae apud eum tenēret, nēminem exīstimātūrum, nōn suā voluntāte factum; quā ex rē futūrum, utī tōtius Galliae animī ā sē āverterentur.

Haec cum plūribus verbīs flēns ā Caesare peteret, Caesar ejus dextram prendit; cōnsōlātus rogat, fīnem ōrandī faciat; tantī ejus apud sē grātiam esse ostendit, utī et reī pūblicae injūriam et suum dolōrem ejus voluntātī ac precibus condōnet. Dumnorīgem ad sē vocat, frātrem adhibet; quae in eō reprehendat, ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae cīvitās querātur, prōpōnit; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnēs suspīciōnēs vītet; praeterita sē Dīvitiācō frātrī condōnāre dīcit. Dumnorīgī cūstōdēs pōnit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquātur, scīre possit.

Caesar plans a flank movement.

21. Eōdem diē ab explōrātōribus certior factus, hostēs sub monte cōnsēdisse mīlia passuum ab ipsīus castrīs octō, quālis esset nātūra montis et quālis in circuitū ascēnsus, quī cognōscerent, mīsit. Renūntiātum est, facilem esse. Dē tertiā vigiliā T. Labiēnum, lēgātum prō praetōre, cum duābus legiōnibus et eīs ducibus, quī iter cognōverant, summum jugum montis ascendere jubet; quid sūī cōnsilī sit, ostendit. Ipse dē quārtā vigiliā eōdem itinere, quō hostēs ierant, ad eōs contendit equitātumque omnem ante sē mittit. P. Cōnsidius, quī reī mīlitāris perītissimus habēbātur et in exercitū L. Sullae et posteā in M. Crassī fuerat, cum explōrātōribus praemittitur.

The plan fails in consequence of Considius's blunder.

22. Prīmā lūce, cum summus mōns ā Labiēnō tenērētur, ipse ab hostium castrīs nōn longius mīlle et quīngentīs passibus abesset, neque, ut posteā ex captīvīs comperit, aut ipsīus adventus aut Labiēnī cognitus esset, Cōnsidius equō admissō ad eum accurrit, dīcit montem, quem ā Labiēnō occupārī voluerit, ab hostibus tenērī; id sē ā Gallicīs armīs atque īnsignibus cognōvisse. Caesar suās cōpiās in proximum collem subdūcit, aciem īnstruit. Labiēnus, ut erat eī praeceptum ā Caesare, nē proelium committeret, nisi ipsīus cōpiae prope hostium castra vīsae essent, ut undique ūnō tempore in hostēs impetus fieret, monte occupātō nostrōs exspectābat proeliōque abstinēbat. Multō dēnique diē per explōrātōrēs Caesar cognōvit, et montem ā suīs tenērī et Helvētiōs castra mōvisse et Cōnsidium timōre perterritum, quod nōn vīdisset, prō vīsō sibi renūntiāsse. Eō diē, quō cōnsuē-

rat intervāllō, hostēs sequitur et mīlia passuum tria ab eōrum castrīs castra pōnit.

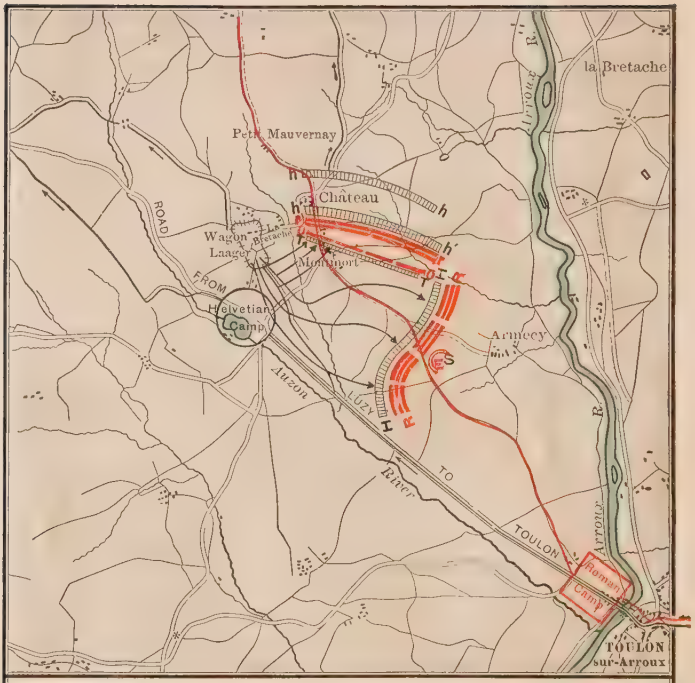
Caesar turns to Bibracte. The Helvetii follow.

23. Postrīdiē ejus diēī, quod omnīnō bīduum supererat, cum exercituī frūmentum mētīrī oportēret, et quod ā Bibracte, oppidō Haeduōrum longē maximō et cōpiōsissimō, nōn amplius mīlibus passuum XVIII aberat, reī frūmentāriae prōspiciendum exīstimāvit; iter ab Helvētiīs āvertit ac Bibracte īre contendit. Ea rēs per fugitīvōs L. Aemilī, decuriōnis equitum Gallōrum, hostibus nūntiātur. Helvētiī, seu quod timōre perterritōs Rōmānōs discēdere ā sē exīstimārent (eō magis quod prīdiē, superiōribus locīs occupātīs, proelium nōn commīsissent), sīve eō, quod rē frūmentāriā interclūdī posse cōnfīderent, commūtātō cōnsiliō atque itinere conversō nostrōs ā novissimō agmine īnsequī ac lacessere coepērunt.

Crushing defeat of the Helvetii.

24. Postquam id animum advertit, cōpiās suās Caesar in proximum collem subdūcit equitātumque, quī sustinēret hostium impetum, mīsit. Ipse interim in colle mediō triplicem aciem īnstrūxit legiōnum quattuor veterānārum; sed in summō jugō duās legiōnēs quās in Galliā citeriōre proximē cōnscrīpserat et omnia auxilia collocārī ac tōtum montem hominibus complērī, et intereā sarcinās in ūnum locum cōnferrī et eum ab hīs quī in superiōre aciē cōnstiterant, mūnīrī jussit. Helvētiī cum omnibus suīs carrīs secūtī impedīmenta in ūnum locum contulērunt; ipsī, cōnfertissimā aciē rejectō nostrō equitātū, phalange factā sub prīmam nostram aciem successērunt.

25. Caesar, prīmum suō, deinde omnium ex cōnspectū



EXPLANATION

S.....Summit of hill of Armecy.
RR....Four Legions in line of battle.
r r.....1st and 2nd Roman lines, facing Helvetii.
o o....3rd Roman line, facing Boji and Tulingi.
E.....Entrenchment for protection of baggage.
HH....Helvetii in first attack.
h h....Helvetii forced to retreat to hill.
h′ h′....Helvetii renewing attack.
T T.....Boji and Tulingi.

SCALE OF ROMAN MILES

0 ½ 1 1½ 2

To face p. 17

remōtīs equīs, ut aequātō omnium perīculō spem fugae tolleret, cohortātus suōs proelium commīsit. Mīlitēs ē locō superiōre pīlīs missīs facile hostium phalangem perfrēgērunt. Eā disjectā, gladiīs dēstrictīs in eōs impetum fēcērunt. Gallīs magnō ad pugnam erat impedīmentō, quod, plūribus eōrum scūtīs ūnō ictū pīlōrum trānsfīxīs et colligātīs, cum ferrum sē īnflexisset, neque ēvellere neque sinistrā impedītā satis commodē pugnāre poterant, multī ut diū jactātō bracchiō praeoptārent scūtum manū ēmittere et nūdō corpore pugnāre.

Tandem vulneribus dēfessī et pedem referre et, quod mōns suberat circiter mīlle passuum eō sē recipere coepērunt. Captō monte et succēdentibus nostrīs, Bōjī et Tulingī, quī hominum mīlibus circiter xv agmen hostium claudēbant et novissimīs praesidiō erant, ex itinere nostrōs ab latere apertō aggressī circumvenīre, et id cōnspicātī Helvētiī, quī in montem sēsē recēperant, rūrsus īnstāre et proelium redintegrāre coepērunt. Rōmānī conversa signa bipertītō intulērunt, prīma et secunda aciēs, ut victīs ac summōtīs resisteret, tertia, ut venientēs sustinēret.

26. Ita ancipitī proeliō diū atque ācriter pugnātum est. Diūtius cum sustinēre nostrōrum impetūs nōn possent, alterī sē, ut coeperant, in montem recēpērunt, alterī ad impedīmenta et carrōs suōs sē contulērunt. Nam hōc tōtō proeliō, cum ab hōrā septimā ad vesperum pugnātum sit, āversum hostem vidēre nēmō potuit. Ad multam noctem, etiam ad impedīmenta pugnātum est, proptereā quod prō vāllō carrōs objēcerant et ē locō superiōre in nostrōs venientēs tēla coniciēbant, et nōnnūllī inter carrōs raedāsque matarās ac trāgulās subiciēbant nostrōsque vulnerābant. Diū cum esset pugnātum, impedīmentīs

castrīsque nostrī potītī sunt. Ibi Orgetorīgis fīlia atque ūnus ē fīliīs captus est.

Ex eō proeliō circiter hominum mīlia cxxx superfuērunt eāque tōtā nocte continenter iērunt; nūllam partem noctis itinere intermissō, in fīnēs Lingonum diē quārtō pervēnērunt, cum et propter vulnera mīlitum et propter sepultūram occīsōrum nostrī trīduum morātī eōs sequī nōn potuissent. Caesar ad Lingonas litterās nūntiōsque mīsit, nē eōs frūmentō nēve aliā rē juvārent; quī sī jūvissent, sē eōdem locō, quō Helvētiōs, habitūrum. Ipse trīduō intermissō cum omnibus cōpiīs eōs sequī coepit.

The Helvetii and their allies surrender.

27. Helvētiī omnium rērum inopiā adductī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad eum mīsērunt. Quī cum eum in itinere convēnissent sēque ad pedēs prōjēcissent suppliciterque locūtī, flentēs pācem petīssent, atque eōs in eō locō, quō tum essent, suum adventum exspectāre jussisset, pārurērunt. Eō postquam Caesar pervēnit, obsidēs, arma, servōs, quī ad eōs perfūgissent, poposcit. Dum ea conquīruntur et cōnferuntur, nocte intermissā, circiter hominum mīlia vi ejus pāgī, quī Verbigenus appellātur, sīve timōre perterritī, nē armīs trāditīs suppliciō afficerentur, sīve spē salūtis inductī, quod in tantā multitūdine dēditīciōrum suam fugam aut occultārī aut omnīnō ignōrārī posse exīstimārent, prīmā nocte ē castrīs Helvētiōrum ēgressī ad Rhēnum fīnēsque Germānōrum contendērunt.

Caesar orders them to return to their homes.

28. Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quōrum per fīnēs ierant, hīs, utī conquīrerent et redūcerent, sī sibi pūrgātī esse

vellent, imperāvit; reductōs in hostium numerō habuit; reliquōs omnēs, obsidibus, armīs, perfugīs trāditīs, in dēditiōnem accēpit. Helvētiōs, Tulingōs, Latobrīgōs in fīnēs suōs, unde erant profectī, revertī jussit; et, quod omnibus frūgibus āmissīs domī nihil erat, quō famem tolerārent, Allobrogibus imperāvit, ut eīs frūmentī cōpiam facerent; ipsōs oppida vīcōsque, quōs incenderant, restituere jussit.

Id eā maximē ratiōne fēcit, quod nōluit eum locum, unde Helvētiī discesserant, vacāre, nē propter bonitātem agrōrum Germānī, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, ē suīs fīnibus in Helvētiōrum fīnēs trānsīrent et fīnitimī Galliae prōvinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Bōjōs, petentibus Haeduīs, quod ēgregiā virtūte erant cognitī, ut in fīnibus suīs collocārent, concessit; quibus illī agrōs dedērunt, quōsque posteā in parem jūris lībertātisque condiciōnem, atque ipsī erant, recēpērunt.

The number of the Helvetii and their allies.

29. In castrīs Helvētiōrum tabulae repertae sunt litterīs Graecīs cōnfectae et ad Caesarem relātae, quibus in tabulīs nōmināti*m* ratiō cōnfecta erat, quī numerus domō exīsset eōrum quī arma ferre possent, et item sēparātim puerī, senēs mulierēsque. Quārum omnium rērum summa erat capitum Helvētiōrum mīlia CCLXIII, Tulingōrum mīlia XXXVI, Latobrīgōrum XIIII, Rauracōrum XXIII, Bōjōrum XXXII; ex hīs, quī arma ferre possent, ad mīlia nōnāgintā duo. Summa omnium fuērunt ad mīlia CCCLXVIII. Eōrum, quī domum rediērunt, cēnsū habitō, ut Caesar imperāverat, repertus est numerus mīlium c et x.

Chapters 30–54. — The War with Ariovistus.

The Gallic chiefs request a conference with Caesar.

30. Bellō Helvētiōrum cōnfectō tōtīus ferē Galliae lēgātī, prīncipēs cīvitātum, ad Caesarem grātulātum convēnērunt: Intellegere sēsē, tametsī prō veteribus Helvētiōrum injūriīs populī Rōmānī ab hīs poenās bellō repetīsset, tamen eam rem nōn minus ex ūsū terrae Galliae quam populī Rōmānī accidisse, proptereā quod eō cōnsiliō flōrentissimīs rēbus domōs suās Helvētiī relīquissent, utī tōtī Galliae bellum īnferrent imperiōque potīrentur locumque domiciliō ex magnā cōpiā dēligerent, quem ex omnī Galliā opportūnissimum ac frūctuōsissimum jūdicāssent, reliquāsque cīvitātēs stīpendiāriās habērent.

Petiērunt, utī sibi concilium tōtīus Galliae in diem certam indīcere idque Caesaris voluntāte facere licēret; sēsē habēre quāsdam rēs, quās ex commūnī cōnsēnsū ab eō petere vellent. Eā rē permissā diem conciliō cōnstituērunt et jūre jūrandō, nē quis ēnūntiāret, nisi quibus commūnī cōnsiliō mandātum esset, inter sē sānxērunt.

The conference. The Gauls complain of Ariovistus's tyranny and beg for Caesar's help.

31. Eō conciliō dīmissō īdem prīncipēs cīvitātum, quī ante fuerant, ad Caesarem revertērunt petiēruntque, ut sibi sēcrētō dē suā omniumque salūte cum eō agere licēret. Eā rē impetrātā sēsē omnēs flentēs Caesarī ad pedēs prōjēcērunt: Nōn minus sē id contendere et labōrāre, nē ea, quae dīxissent, ēnūntiārentur, quam utī ea, quae vellent, impetrārent, proptereā quod, sī ēnūntiātum esset, summum in cruciātum sē ventūrōs vidērent.

Locūtus est prō hīs Dīvitiācus Haeduus: Galliae tōtīus factiōnēs esse duās; hārum alterius prīncipātum tenēre Haeduōs, alterius Arvernōs. Hī cum tantopere dē potentātū inter sē multōs annōs contenderent, factum esse, utī ab Arvernīs Sēquanīsque Germānī mercēde arcesserentur. Hōrum prīmō circiter mīlia xv Rhēnum trānsīsse; posteāquam agrōs et cultum et cōpiās Gallōrum hominēs ferī ac barbarī adamāssent, trāductōs plūrēs; nunc esse in Galliā ad centum et xx mīlium numerum. Cum hīs Haeduōs eōrumque clientēs semel atque iterum armīs contendisse; magnam calamitātem pulsōs accēpisse, omnem nōbilitātem, omnem senātum, omnem equitātum āmīsisse. Quibus proeliīs calamitātibusque frāctōs, quī et suā virtūte et populī Rōmānī hospitiō atque amīcitiā plūrimum ante in Galliā potuissent, coāctōs esse Sēquanīs obsidēs dare nōbilissimōs cīvitātis et jūre jūrandō cīvitātem obstringere, sēsē neque obsidēs repetītūrōs neque auxilium ā populō Rōmānō implōrātūrōs, neque recūsātūrōs, quō minus perpetuō sub illōrum diciōne atque imperiō essent. Ūnum sē esse ex omnī cīvitāte Haeduōrum, quī adduci nōn potuerit, ut jūrāret aut līberōs suōs obsidēs daret. Ob eam rem sē ex cīvitāte profūgisse et Rōmam ad senātum vēnisse auxilium postulātum, quod sōlus neque jūre jūrandō neque obsidibus tenērētur.

Sed pejus victōribus Sēquanīs quam Haeduīs victīs accidisse, propterea quod Ariovistus, rēx Germānōrum, in eōrum fīnibus cōnsēdisset tertiamque partem agrī Sēquanī, quī esset optimus tōtīus Galliae, occupāvisset, et nunc dē alterā parte tertiā Sēquanōs dēcēdere jubēret, propterea quod paucīs mēnsibus ante Harūdum mīlia hominum XXIIII ad eum vēnissent, quibus locus ac sēdēs parārentur. Futūrum esse paucīs annīs, utī omnēs ex Galliae fīnibus

pellerentur atque omnēs Germānī Rhēnum trānsīrent; neque enim cōnferendum esse Gallicum cum Germānōrum agrō, neque hanc cōnsuētūdinem vīctūs cum illā comparandam.

Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallōrum cōpiās proeliō vīcerit, quod proelium factum sit Admagetobrigae, superbē et crūdēliter imperāre, obsidēs nōbilissimī cūjusque līberōs poscere et in eōs omnia exempla cruciātūsque ēdere, sī qua rēs nōn ad nūtum aut ad voluntātem ejus facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, īrācundum, temerārium; nōn posse ejus imperia diūtius sustinēre. Nisi quid in Caesare populōque Rōmānō sit auxilī, omnibus Gallīs idem esse faciendum, quod Helvētiī fēcerint, ut domō ēmigrent, aliud domicilium, aliās sēdēs, remōtās ā Germānīs, petant fortūnamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. Haec sī ēnūntiāta Ariovistō sint, nōn dubitāre, quīn dē omnibus obsidibus, quī apud eum sint, gravissimum supplicium sūmat. Caesarem vel auctōritāte suā atque exercitūs vel recentī victōriā vel nōmine populī Rōmānī dēterrēre posse, nē major multitūdō Germānōrūm Rhēnum trādūcātur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovistī injūriā posse dēfendere.

Plight of the Sequani.

32. Hāc ōrātiōne ab Dīvitiācō habitā, omnēs, quī aderant, magnō flētū auxilium ā Caesare petere coepērunt. Animadvertit Caesar, ūnōs ex omnibus Sēquanōs nihil eārum rērum facere, quās cēterī facerent, sed trīstēs capite dēmissō terram intuērī. Ejus reī quae causa esset, mīrātus ex ipsīs quaesīit. Nihil Sēquanī respondēre, sed in eādem trīstitiā tacitī permānēre. Cum ab hīs saepius quaereret neque ūllam omnīnō vōcem exprimere posset, īdem Dīvitiācus Haeduus respondit: Hōc esse miseriōrem et graviō-

rem fortūnam Sēquanōrum quam reliquōrum, quod sōlī nē in occultō quidem querī neque auxilium implōrāre audērent absentisque Ariovistī crūdēlitātem, velut sī cōram adesset, horrērent, propterea quod reliquīs tamen fugae facultās darētur, Sēquanīs vērō, quī intrā fīnēs suōs Ariovistum recēpissent, quōrum oppida omnia in potestāte ejus essent, omnēs cruciātūs essent perferendī.

Caesar decides that Ariovistus's present power is dangerous.

33. Hīs rēbus cognitīs Caesar Gallōrum animōs verbīs cōnfīrmāvit pollicitusque est, sibi eam rem cūrae futūram; magnam sē habēre spem, et beneficiō suō et auctōritāte adductum Ariovistum fīnem injūriīs factūrum. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā concilium dīmīsit. Et secundum ea multae rēs eum hortābantur, quārē sibi eam rem cōgitandam et suscipiendam putāret, in prīmīs, quod Haeduōs, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque saepenumerō ā senātū appellātōs, in servitūte atque in diciōne vidēbat Germānōrum tenērī, eōrumque obsidēs esse apud Ariovistum ac Sēquanōs intellegēbat; quod in tantō imperiō populī Rōmānī turpissimum sibi et reī pūblicae esse arbitrābātur. Paulātim autem Germānōs cōnsuēscere Rhēnum trānsīre, et in Galliam magnam eōrum multitūdinem venīre, populō Rōmānō perīculōsum vidēbat; neque sibi hominēs ferōs ac barbarōs temperātūrōs exīstimābat, quīn, cum omnem Galliam occupāvissent, ut ante Cimbrī Teutonīque fēcissent, in prōvinciam exīrent atque inde in Italiam contenderent, praesertim cum Sēquanōs ā prōvinciā nostrā Rhodanus dīvideret; quibus rēbus quam mātūrrimē occurrendum putābat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantōs sibi spīritūs, tantam arrogantiam sūmpserat, ut ferendus nōn vidērētur.

Ariovistus rejects Caesar's request for a conference.

34. Quam ob rem placuit eī, ut ad Ariovistum lēgātōs mitteret, quī ab eō postulārent, utī aliquem locum medium utrīusque colloquiō dēligeret; velle sēsē dē rē pūblicā et summīs utrīusque rēbus cum eō agere. Eī lēgātiōnī Ariovistus respondit: Sī quid ipsī ā Caesare opus esset, sēsē ad eum ventūrum fuisse; sī quid ille sē velit, illum ad sē venīre oportēre. Praeterēā sē neque sine exercitū in eās partēs Galliae venīre audēre, quās Caesar possidēret, neque exercitum sine magnō commeātū atque mōlīmentō in ūnum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mīrum vidērī, quid in suā Galliā, quam bellō vīcisset, aut Caesarī aut omnīnō populō Rōmānō negōtī esset.

Caesar's demands.

35. Hīs respōnsīs ad Caesarem relātīs, iterum ad eum Caesar lēgātōs cum hīs mandātīs mittit: Quoniam tantō suō populīque Rōmānī beneficiō affectus (cum in cōnsulātū suō rēx atque amīcus ā senātū appellātus esset) hanc sibi populōque Rōmānō grātiam referret, ut in colloquium venīre invītātus gravārētur neque dē commūnī rē dīcendum sibi et cognōscendum putāret, haec esse, quae ab eō postulāret: prīmum, nē quam multitūdinem hominum amplius trāns Rhēnum in Galliam trādūceret; deinde, obsidēs, quōs habēret ab Haeduīs, redderet, Sēquanīsque permitteret, ut, quōs illī habērent, voluntāte ejus reddere illīs licēret; nēve Haeduōs injūriā lacesseret, nēve hīs sociīsque eōrum bellum īnferret.

Sī id ita fēcisset, sibi populōque Rōmānō perpetuam grātiam atque amīcitiam cum eō futūram; sī nōn impetrāret, sēsē, quoniam M. Messālā, M. Pīsōne cōnsulibus senātus cēnsuisset, utī, quīcumque Galliam prōvinciam

obtinēret, quod commodō reī pūblicae facere posset, Haeduōs cēterōsque amīcōs populī Rōmānī dēfenderet, sē Haeduōrum injūriās nōn neglēctūrum.

Ariovistus condemns Caesar's interference, and defies his power.

36. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Jūs esse bellī, ut, quī vīcissent, eīs, quōs vīcissent, quem ad modum vellent, imperārent; item populum Rōmānum victīs nōn ad alterius praescrīptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperāre cōnsuēsse. Sī ipse populō Rōmānō nōn praescrīberet, quem ad modum suō jūre ūterētur, nōn oportēre sē ā populō Rōmānō in suō jūre impedīrī.

Haeduōs sibi, quoniam bellī fortūnam temptāssent et armīs congressī ac superātī essent, stīpendiāriōs esse factōs. Magnam Caesarem injūriam facere, quī suō adventū vectīgālia sibi dēteriōra faceret. Haeduīs sē obsidēs redditūrum nōn esse, neque hīs neque eōrum sociīs injūriā bellum illātūrum, sī in eō manērent, quod convēnisset, stīpendiumque quotannīs penderent; sī id nōn fēcissent, longē eīs frāternum nōmen populī Rōmānī āfutūrum. Quod sibi Caesar dēnūntiāret, sē Haeduōrum injūriās nōn neglēctūrum, nēminem sēcum sine suā perniciē contendisse. Cum vellet, congrederētur; intellēctūrum, quid invictī Germānī, exercitātissimī in armīs, quī inter annōs XIIII tēctum nōn subīssent, virtūte possent.

Fresh complaints of German aggression.

37. Haec eōdem tempore Caesarī mandāta referēbantur, et lēgātī ab Haeduīs et ā Trēverīs veniēbant: Haeduī questum, quod Harūdēs, quī nūper in Galliam trānsportātī essent, fīnēs eōrum populārentur; sēsē nē obsidibus quidem datīs pācem Ariovistī redimere potuisse;

Trēverī autem, pāgōs centum Suēbōrum ad rīpās Rhēnī cōnsēdisse, quī Rhēnum trānsīre cōnārentur; hīs praeesse Nasuam et Cimberium frātrēs. Quibus rēbus Caesar vehementer commōtus mātūrandum sibi exīstimāvit, nē, sī nova manus Suēbōrum cum veteribus cōpiīs Ariovistī sēsē conjūnxisset, minus facile resistī posset. Itaque rē frūmentāriā, quam celerrimē potuit, comparātā, magnīs itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

Importance of Vesontio as a military base. Its situation.

38. Cum trīduī viam prōcessisset, nūntiātum est eī, Ariovistum cum suīs omnibus cōpiīs ad occupandum Vesontiōnem, quod est oppidum maximum Sēquanōrum, contendere, trīduīque viam ā suīs fīnibus prōcessisse. Id nē accideret, magnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar exīstimābat. Namque omnium rērum, quae ad bellum ūsuī erant, summa erat in eō oppidō facultās, idque nātūrā locī sīc mūniēbātur, ut magnam ad dūcendum bellum daret facultātem, propterea quod flūmen Dubis ut circinō circumductum paene tōtum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est nōn amplius pedum mīlle sexcentōrum, quā flūmen intermittit, mōns continet magnā altitūdine, ita, ut rādīcēs montis ex utrāque parte rīpae flūminis contingant. Hunc mūrus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppidō conjungit. Hūc Caesar magnīs nocturnīs diurnīsque itineribus contendit occupātōque oppidō ibi praesidium collocat.

Panic seizes the Roman army.

39. Dum paucōs diēs ad Vesontiōnem reī frūmentāriae commeātūsque causā morātur, ex percontātiōne nostrōrum vōcibusque Gallōrum ac mercātōrum, quī ingentī magnitūdine corporum Germānōs, incrēdibilī virtūte atque ex-

ercitātiōne in armīs esse praedicābant (saepenumerō sēsē cum hīs congressōs, nē vultum quidem atque aciem oculōrum dīcēbant ferre potuisse), tantus subitō timor omnem exercitum occupāvit, ut nōn mediocriter omnium mentēs animōsque perturbāret. Hīc prīmum ortus est ā tribūnīs mīlitum, praefectīs reliquīsque, quī ex urbe amīcitiae causā Caesarem secūtī nōn magnum in rē mīlitārī ūsum habēbant; quōrum alius aliā causā illātā, quam sibi ad proficīscendum necessāriam esse dīceret, petēbat, ut ejus voluntāte discēdere licēret; nōnnūllī pudōre adductī, ut timōris suspīciōnem vītārent, remanēbant. Hī neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimās tenēre poterant; abditī in tabernāculīs aut suum fātum querēbantur aut cum familiāribus suīs commūne perīculum miserābantur. Vulgō tōtīs castrīs testāmenta obsignābantur. Hōrum vōcibus ac timōre paulātim etiam eī, quī magnum in castrīs ūsum habēbant, mīlitēs centuriōnēsque, quīque equitātuī praeerant, perturbābantur. Quī sē ex hīs minus timidōs exīstimārī volēbant, nōn sē hostem verērī, sed angustiās itineris et magnitūdinem silvārum, quae intercēderent inter ipsōs atque Ariovistum, aut rem frūmentāriam, ut satis commodē supportārī posset, timēre dīcēbant. Nōnnūllī etiam Caesarī nūntiābant, cum castra movērī ac signa ferrī jussisset, nōn fore dictō audientēs mīlitēs neque propter timōrem signa lātūrōs.

Caesar rebukes the timidity of his troops. Their courage is restored.

40. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocātō cōnsiliō omniumque ōrdinum ad id cōnsilium adhibitīs centuriōnibus, vehementer eōs incūsāvit: prīmum, quod, aut quam in partem aut quō cōnsiliō dūcerentur, sibi quaerendum

aut cōgitandum putārent. Ariovistum sē cōnsule cupidissimē populī Rōmānī amīcitiam appetīsse; cūr hunc tam temere quisquam ab officiō discessūrum jūdicāret? Sibi quidem persuādērī, cognitīs suīs postulātīs atque aequitāte condiciōnum perspectā, eum neque suam neque populī Rōmānī grātiam repudiātūrum. Quod sī furōre atque āmentiā impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem verērentur? aut cūr dē suā virtūte aut dē ipsīus dīligentiā dēspērārent? Factum ejus hostis perīculum patrum nostrōrum memoriā, cum Cimbrīs et Teutonīs ā Gāiō Mariō pulsīs, nōn minōrem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperātor meritus vidēbātur; factum etiam nūper in Italiā servīlī tumultū, quōs tamen aliquid ūsus ac disciplīna, quae ā nōbīs accēpissent, sublevārent. Ex quō jūdicārī posse, quantum habēret in sē bonī cōnstantia, propterea quod, quōs aliquamdiū inermēs sine causā timuissent, hōs posteā armātōs ac victōrēs superāssent.

Dēnique hōs esse eōsdem Germānōs, quibuscum saepenumerō Helvētiī congressī nōn sōlum in suīs, sed etiam in illōrum fīnibus, plērumque superāssent, quī tamen parēs esse nostrō exercituī nōn potuerint. Sī quōs adversum proelium et fuga Gallōrum commovēret, hōs, sī quaererent, reperīre posse, diūturnitāte bellī dēfatīgātīs Gallīs, Ariovistum, cum multōs mēnsēs castrīs sē ac palūdibus tenuisset neque suī potestātem fēcisset, dēspērantēs jam dē pugnā et dispersōs, subitō adortum, magis ratiōne et cōnsiliō quam virtūte vīcisse. Cui ratiōnī contrā hominēs barbarōs atque imperītōs locus fuisset, hāc nē ipsum quidem spērāre nostrōs exercitūs capī posse.

Quī suum timōrem in reī frūmentāriae simulātiōnem angustiāsque itineris cōnferrent, facere arroganter, cum aut dē officiō imperātōris dēspērāre aut praescrībere vidē-

rentur. Haec sibi esse cūrae; frūmentum Sēquanōs, Leucōs, Lingonēs sumministrāre, jamque esse in agrīs frūmenta mātūra; dē itinere ipsōs brevī tempore jūdicātūrōs.

Quod nōn fore dictō audientēs neque signa lātūrī dīcantur, nihil sē eā rē commovērī; scīre enim, quibuscumque exercitus dictō audiēns nōn fuerit, aut male rē gestā fortūnam dēfuisse, aut aliquō facinore compertō avāritiam esse convictam; suam innocentiam perpetuā vītā, fēlīcitātem Helvētiōrum bellō esse perspectam.

Itaque sē, quod in longiōrem diem collātūrus fuisset, repraesentātūrum et proximā nocte dē quārtā vigiliā castra mōtūrum, ut quam prīmum intellegere posset, utrum apud eōs pudor atque officium an timor plūs valēret. Quod sī praetereā nēmō sequātur, tamen sē cum sōlā decimā legiōne itūrum, dē quā nōn dubitāret, sibique eam praetōriam cohortem futūram. Huic legiōnī Caesar et indulserat praecipuē et propter virtūtem cōnfīdēbat maximē.

41. Hāc ōrātiōne habitā mīrum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentēs, summaque alacritās et cupiditās bellī gerendī innāta est, prīncepsque decima legiō per tribūnōs mīlitum eī grātiās ēgit, quod dē sē optimum jūdicium fēcisset, sēque esse ad bellum gerendum parātissimam cōnfīrmāvit. Deinde reliquae legiōnēs cum tribūnīs mīlitum et prīmōrum ōrdinum centuriōnibus ēgērunt, utī Caesarī satis facerent; sē neque umquam dubitāsse neque timuisse, neque dē summā bellī suum jūdicium, sed imperātōris esse exīstimāvisse. Eōrum satisfactiōne acceptā et itinere exquīsītō per Dīvitiācum, quod ex Gallīs eī maximam fidem habēbat, ut mīlium amplius quīnquāgintā circuitū locīs apertīs exercitum

dūceret, dē quārtā vigiliā, ut dīxerat, profectus est. Septimō diē, cum iter nōn intermitteret, ab explōrātōribus certior factus est, Ariovistī cōpiās ā nostrīs mīlibus passuum quattuor et xx abesse.

Ariovistus at length proposes a conference.

42. Cognitō Caesaris adventū Ariovistus lēgātōs ad eum mittit: Quod anteā dē colloquiō postulāsset, id per sē fierī licēre, quoniam propius accessisset sēque id sine perīculō facere posse exīstimāret. Nōn respuit condiciōnem Caesar, jamque eum ad sānitātem revertī arbitrābātur, cum id, quod anteā petentī dēnegāsset, ultrō pollicērētur, magnamque in spem veniēbat, prō suīs tantīs populīque Rōmānī in eum beneficiīs, cognitīs suīs postulātīs, fore, utī pertināciā dēsisteret.

Diēs colloquiō dictus est, ex eō diē quīntus. Interim saepe cum lēgātī ultrō citrōque inter eōs mitterentur, Ariovistus postulāvit, nē quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar addūceret: Verērī sē, nē per īnsidiās ab eō circumvenīrētur; uterque cum equitātū venīret; aliā ratiōne sēsē nōn esse ventūrum. Caesar, quod neque colloquium interpositā causā tollī volēbat neque salūtem suam Gallōrum equitātuī committere audēbat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equīs Gallīs equitibus dētrāctīs, eō legiōnāriōs mīlitēs legiōnis decimae, cui quam maximē cōnfīdēbat, impōnere, ut praesidium quam amīcissimum, sī quid opus factō esset, habēret. Quod cum fieret, nōn irrīdiculē quīdam ex mīlitibus decimae legiōnis dīxit: Plūs, quam pollicitus esset, Caesarem facere pollicitum, sē in cohortis praetōriae locō decimam legiōnem habitūrum, ad equum rescrībere.

Caesar insists that Ariovistus shall cease his oppression of the Haedui.

43. Plānitiēs erat magna et in eā tumulus terrēnus satis grandis. Hīc locus aequō ferē spatiō ā castrīs utrīusque aberat. Eō, (ut erat dictum,) ad colloquium vēnērunt. Legiōnem Caesar, quam equīs dēvexerat, passibus ducentīs ab eō tumulō cōnstituit. Item equitēs Ariovistī parī intervāllō cōnstitērunt. Ariovistus, ex equīs ut colloquerentur et praeter sē dēnōs ut ad colloquium addūcerent, postulāvit.

Ubi eō ventum est, Caesar initiō ōrātiōnis sua senātūsque in eum beneficia commemorāvit, quod rēx appellātus esset ā senātū, quod amīcus, quod mūnera amplissimē missa; quam rem et paucīs contigisse et ā Rōmānīs prō magnīs hominum officiīs cōnsuēsse tribuī docēbat; illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandī jūstam habēret, beneficiō ac līberālitāte suā ac senātūs ea praemia cōnsecūtum. Docēbat etiam, quam veterēs quamque jūstae causae necessitūdinis ipsīs cum Haeduīs intercēderent, quae senātūs cōnsulta, quotiēns, quamque honōrifica in eōs facta essent, ut omnī tempore tōtīus Galliae prīncipātum Haeduī tenuissent, prius etiam quam nostram amīcitiam appetīssent. Populī Rōmānī hanc esse cōnsuētūdinem, ut sociōs atque amīcōs nōn modo suī nihil dēperdere, sed grātiā, dignitāte, honōre auctiōrēs vellet esse; quod vērō ad amīcitiam populī Rōmānī attulissent, id eīs ēripī quis patī posset? Postulāvit deinde eadem, quae lēgātīs in mandātīs dederat: nē aut Haeduīs aut eōrum sociīs bellum īnferret; obsidēs redderet; sī nūllam partem Germānōrum domum remittere posset, at nē quōs amplius Rhēnum trānsīre paterētur.

Ariovistus claims prior rights in Gaul. He demands that Caesar withdraw.

44. Ariovistus ad postulāta Caesaris pauca respondit, dē suīs virtūtibus multa praedicāvit: Trānsīsse Rhēnum sēsē nōn suā sponte, sed rogātum et arcessītum ā Gallīs; nōn sine magnā spē magnīsque praemiīs domum propinquōsque relīquisse; sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsīs concessās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs; stīpendium capere jūre bellī, quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōnsuērint. Nōn sēsē Gallīs, sed Gallōs sibi bellum intulisse; omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs ad sē oppugnandum vēnisse ac contrā sē castra habuisse; eās omnēs cōpiās ā sē ūnō proeliō pulsās ac superātās esse. Sī iterum experīrī velint, sē iterum parātum esse dēcertāre; sī pāce ūtī velint, inīquum esse dē stīpendiō recūsāre, quod suā voluntāte ad id tempus pependerint. Amīcitiam populī Rōmānī sibi ōrnāmentō et praesidiō, nōn dētrīmentō esse oportēre, atque sē hāc spē petīsse. Sī per populum Rōmānum stīpendium remittātur et dēditīciī subtrahantur, nōn minus libenter sēsē recūsātūrum populī Rōmānī amīcitiam quam appetierit.

Quod multitūdinem Germānōrum in Galliam trādūcat, id sē suī mūniendī, nōn Galliae impugnandae causā facere; ejus reī testimōnium esse, quod nisi rogātus nōn vēnerit, et quod bellum nōn intulerit, sed dēfenderit. Sē prius in Galliam vēnisse quam populum Rōmānum. Numquam ante hōc tempus exercitum populī Rōmānī Galliae prōvinciae fīnibus ēgressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cūr in suās possessiōnēs venīret? Prōvinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sīcut illam nostram. Ut ipsī concēdī nōn oportēret, sī in nostrōs fīnēs impetum faceret, sīc item nōs esse inīquōs, quod in suō jūre sē interpellārēmus.

Quod frātrēs ā senātū Haeduōs appellātōs dīceret, nōn sē tam barbarum neque tam imperītum esse rērum, ut nōn scīret, neque bellō Allobrogum proximō Haeduōs Rōmānīs auxilium tulisse, neque ipsōs in hīs contentiōnibus, quās Haeduī sēcum et cum Sēquanīs habuissent, auxiliō populī Rōmānī ūsōs esse.

Dēbēre sē suspicārī, simulātā Caesarem amīcitiā, quod exercitum in Galliā habeat, suī opprimendī causā habēre. Quī nisi dēcēdat atque exercitum dēdūcat ex hīs regiōnibus, sēsē illum nōn prō amīcō, sed prō hoste habitūrum. Quod sī eum interfēcerit, multīs sēsē nōbilibus prīncipibusque populī Rōmānī grātum esse factūrum (id sē ab ipsīs per eōrum nūntiōs compertum habēre), quōrum omnium grātiam atque amīcitiam ejus morte redimere posset. Quod sī dēcessisset et līberam possessiōnem Galliae sibi trādidisset, magnō sē illum praemiō remūnerātūrum et, quaecumque bella gerī vellet, sine ūllō ejus labōre et perīculō cōnfectūrum.

Caesar gives his reasons for refusing.

45. Multa ā Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quārē negōtiō dēsistere nōn posset: Neque suam neque populī Rōmānī cōnsuētūdinem patī, utī optimē merentēs sociōs dēsereret, neque sē jūdicāre, Galliam potius esse Ariovistī quam populī Rōmānī. Bellō superātōs esse Arvernōs et Rutēnōs ab Quīntō Fabiō Māximō, quibus populus Rōmānus ignōvisset neque in prōvinciam redēgisset neque stīpendium imposuisset. Quod sī antīquissimum quodque tempus spectārī oportēret, populī Rōmānī jūstissimum esse in Galliā imperium; sī jūdicium senātūs observārī oportēret, līberam dēbēre esse Galliam, quam bellō victam suīs lēgibus ūtī voluisset.

The conference is broken up by the treachery of Ariovistus's attendants.

46. Dum haec in colloquiō geruntur, Caesarī nūntiātum est, equitēs Ariovistī propius tumulum accēdere et ad nostrōs adequitāre, lapidēs tēlaque in nostrōs conicere. Caesar loquendī fīnem fecit sēque ad suōs recēpit suīsque imperāvit, nē quod omnīnō tēlum in hostēs reicerent. Nam etsī sine ūllō perīculō legiōnis dēlēctae cum equitātū proelium fore vidēbat, tamen committendum nōn putābat, ut pulsīs hostibus dīcī posset, eōs ab sē per fidem in colloquiō circumventōs. Posteāquam in vulgus mīlitum ēlātum est, quā arrogantiā in colloquiō Ariovistus ūsus omnī Galliā Rōmānīs interdīxisset, impetumque ut in nostrōs ejus equitēs fēcissent, eaque rēs colloquium ut dirēmisset, multō major alacritās studiumque pugnandī majus exercituī injectum est.

Caesar refuses a second conference, but sends envoys.

47. Bīduō post Ariovistus ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīsit: Velle sē dē hīs rēbus, quae inter eōs agī coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eō; utī aut iterum colloquiō diem cōnstitueret aut, sī id minus vellet, ex suīs lēgātīs aliquem ad sē mitteret.

Colloquendī Caesarī causa vīsa nōn est, et eō magis, quod prīdiē ejus diēī Germānī retinērī nōn potuerant, quīn in nostrōs tēla conicerent. Lēgātum ex suīs sēsē (magnō cum perīculō) ad eum missūrum et hominibus ferīs objectūrum exīstimābat. Commodissimum vīsum est Gāium Valerium Procillum, C. Valerī Cabūrī fīlium, summā virtūte et hūmānitāte adulēscentem, cūjus pater ā Gāiō Valeriō Flaccō cīvitāte dōnātus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam (quā multā

jam Ariovistus longinquā cōnsuētūdine ūtēbātur) et quod in eō peccandī Germānīs causa nōn esset, ad eum mittere, et ūnā Mārcum Metium, quī hospitiō Ariovistī ūtēbātur. Hīs mandāvit, ut, quae dīceret Ariovistus, cognōscerent et ad sē referrent. Quōs cum apud sē in castrīs Ariovistus cōnspexisset, exercitū suō praesente conclāmāvit: Quid ad sē venīrent? an speculandī causā? Cōnantēs dīcere prohibuit et in catēnās conjēcit.

Ariovistus plans to cut off Caesar's supplies. Cavalry practice of the Germans.

48. Eōdem diē castra prōmōvit et mīlibus passuum sex ā Caesaris castrīs sub monte cōnsēdit. Postrīdiē ejus diēī praeter castra Caesaris suās cōpiās trādūxit et mīlibus passuum duōbus ultrā eum castra fēcit eō cōnsiliō, utī frūmentō commeātūque, quī ex Sēquanīs et Haeduīs supportārētur, Caesarem interclūderet. Ex eō diē diēs continuōs quīnque Caesar prō castrīs suās cōpiās prōdūxit et aciem īnstrūctam habuit, ut, sī vellet Ariovistus proeliō contendere, eī potestās nōn deesset.

Ariovistus hīs omnibus diēbus exercitum castrīs continuit, equestrī proeliō cotīdiē contendit. Genus hōc erat pugnae quō sē Germānī exercuerant. Equitum mīlia erant sex, totidem numerō peditēs vēlōcissimī ac fortissimī, quōs ex omnī cōpiā singulī singulōs suae salūtis causā dēlēgerant; cum hīs in proeliīs versābantur. Ad eōs sē equitēs recipiēbant; hī, sī quid erat dūrius, concurrēbant; sī quī, graviōre vulnere acceptō, equō dēciderat, circumsistēbant; si quō erat longius prōdeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat hōrum exercitātiōne celeritās, ut jubīs equōrum sublevātī cursum adaequārent.

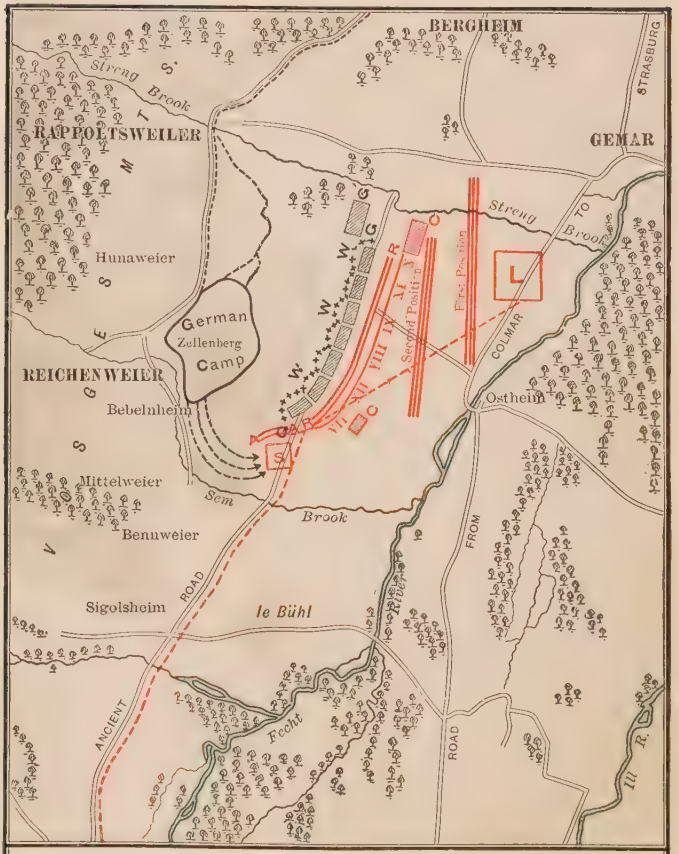
Caesar marches past the Germans. He fortifies a second camp.

49. Ubi eum castrīs sē tenēre Caesar intellēxit, nē diūtius commeātū prohibērētur, ultrā eum locum, quō in locō Germānī cōnsēderant, circiter passūs sexcentōs ab hīs, castrīs idōneum locum dēlēgit aciēque triplicī īnstrūctā ad eum locum vēnit. Prīmam et secundam aciem in armīs esse, tertiam castra mūnīre jussit. Hīc locus ab hoste circiter passūs sexcentōs, utī dictum est, aberat. Eō circiter hominum sēdecim mīlia expedīta cum omnī equitātū Ariovistus mīsit, quae cōpiae nostrōs terrērent et mūnītiōne prohibērent. Nihilō sētius Caesar, ut ante cōnstituerat, duās aciēs hostem prōpulsāre, tertiam opus perficere jussit. Mūnītīs castrīs duās ibi legiōnēs relīquit et partem auxiliōrum; quattuor reliquās in castra majōra redūxit.

The Germans are afraid to fight before the new moon, but engage with part of their troops.

50. Proximō diē institūtō suō Caesar ē castrīs utrīsque cōpiās suās ēdūxit paulumque ā majōribus castrīs prōgressus aciem īnstrūxit, hostibusque pugnandī potestātem fēcit. Ubi nē tum quidem eōs prōdīre intellēxit, circiter merīdiem exercitum in castra redūxit. Tum dēmum Ariovistus partem suārum cōpiārum, quae castra minōra oppugnāret, mīsit. Ācriter utrimque ūsque ad vesperum pugnātum est. Sōlis occāsū suās cōpiās Ariovistus multīs et illātīs et acceptīs vulneribus in castra redūxit.

Cum ex captīvīs quaereret Caesar, quam ob rem Ariovistus proeliō nōn dēcertāret, hanc reperiēbat causam, quod apud Germānōs ea cōnsuētūdō esset, ut mātrēs familiae eōrum sortibus et vāticinātiōnibus dēclārārent,



EXPLANATION

R R.....Roman troops.
C C.....Roman cavalry.
A A.....Roman auxiliaries.
L.....Caesar's large camp.
S.....Caesar's small camp.
G G.....German line of battle.
G'.....German cavalry.
WWW Wagons of the Germans.

SCALE OF ROMAN MILES

0 ½ 1 1½ 2

To face p. 37

utrum proelium committī ex ūsū esset necne; eās ita dīcere, Nōn esse fās Germānōs superāre, sī ante novam lūnam proeliō contendissent.

The Romans and Germans fight a pitched battle.

51. Postrīdiē ejus diēī Caesar praesidiō utrīsque castrīs, quod satis esse vīsum est, relīquit; omnēs ālāriōs in cōnspectū hostium prō castrīs minōribus cōnstituit, quod minus multitūdine mīlitum legiōnāriōrum prō hostium numerō valēbat, ut ad speciem ālāriīs ūterētur; ipse triplicī īnstrūctā aciē ūsque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum dēmum necessāriō Germānī suās cōpiās castrīs ēdūxērunt generātimque cōnstituērunt paribus intervāllīs, Harūdēs, Marcomannōs, Tribocōs, Vangionēs, Nemetēs, Sedusiōs, Suēbōs omnemque aciem suam raedīs et carrīs circumdedērunt, nē qua spēs in fugā relinquerētur. Eō mulierēs imposuērunt, quae ad proelium proficīscentēs passīs manibus flentēs implōrābant, nē sē in servitūtem Rōmānīs trāderent.

52. Caesar singulīs legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs et quaestōrem praefēcit, utī eōs testēs suae quisque virtūtis habēret; ipse ā dextrō cornū, quod eam partem minimē firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commīsit. Ita nostrī ācriter in hostēs signō datō impetum fēcērunt, itaque hostēs repente celeriterque prōcurrērunt, ut spatium pīla in hostēs coniciendī nōn darētur. Rejectīs pīlīs comminus gladiīs pugnātum est. At Germānī celeriter ex cōnsuētūdine suā phalange factā impetūs gladiōrum excēpērunt. Repertī sunt complūrēs nostrī, quī in phalangem īnsilīrent et scūta manibus revellerent et dēsuper vulnerārent. Cum hostium aciēs ā sinistrō cornū pulsa atque in fugam conjecta esset, ā dextrō

cornū vehementer multitūdine suōrum nostram aciem premēbant. Id cum animadvertisset Pūblius Crassus adulēscēns, quī equitātuī praeerat, quod expedītior erat quam eī, quī inter aciem versābantur, tertiam aciem labōrantibus nostrīs subsidiō mīsit.

Defeat and rout of the Germans.

53. Ita proelium restitūtum est, atque omnēs hostēs terga vertērunt neque prius fugere dēstitērunt, quam ad flūmen Rhēnum, mīlia passuum ex eō locō circiter quīnque, pervēnērunt. Ibi perpaucī aut vīribus cōnfīsī trānāre contendērunt aut lintribus inventīs sibi salūtem repperērunt. In hīs fuit Ariovistus, quī nāviculam dēligātam ad rīpam nactus eā profūgit; reliquōs omnēs cōnsecūtī equitēs nostrī interfēcērunt.

Duae fuērunt Ariovistī uxōrēs, ūna Suēba nātiōne, quam domō sēcum dūxerat, altera Nōrica, rēgis Vocciōnis soror, quam in Galliā dūxerat, ā frātre missam; utraque in eā fugā periit. Duae fīliae hārum altera occīsa, altera capta est.

C. Valerius Procillus, cum ā cūstōdibus in fugā trīnīs catēnīs vinctus traherētur, in ipsum Caesarem hostīs equitātū īnsequentem incidit. Quae quidem rēs Caesarī nōn minōrem quam ipsa victōria voluptātem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum prōvinciae Galliae, suum familiārem et hospitem, ēreptum ē manibus hostium, sibi restitūtum vidēbat, neque ejus calamitāte dē tantā voluptāte et grātulātiōne quicquam fortūna dēminuerat. Hīc sē praesente dē sē ter sortibus cōnsultum dīcēbat, utrum īgnī statim necārētur an in aliud tempus reservārētur; sortium beneficiō sē esse incolumem. Item M. Metius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

Caesar places his troops in winter quarters. He himself sets out for cisalpinē Gaul.

54. Hōc proeliō trāns Rhēnum nūntiātō Suēbī, quī ad rīpās Rhēnī vēnerant, domum revertī coepērunt; quōs, Ubiī quī proximī Rhēnum incolunt, perterritōs īnsecūtī magnum ex hīs numerum occīdērunt.

Caesar, ūnā aestāte duōbus maximīs bellīs cōnfectīs, mātūrius paulō, quam tempus annī postulābat, in hīberna in Sēquanōs exercitum dēdūxit; hībernīs Labiēnum praeposuit; ipse in citeriōrem Galliam ad conventūs agendōs profectus est.

BOOK II.

Chapters 1–28. — War against the Belgian Confederacy

League of the Belgians against Caesar.

1. Cum esset Caesar in citeriōre Galliā, ita utī suprā dēmōnstrāvimus, crēbrī ad eum rūmōrēs afferēbantur, litterīsque item Labiēnī certior fīēbat, omnēs Belgās, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dīxerāmus, contrā populum Rōmānum conjūrāre obsidēsque inter sē dare. Conjūrandī hās esse causās: prīmum, quod verērentur, nē omnī pācātā Galliā ad eōs exercitus noster addūcerētur; deinde, quod ab nōnnūllīs Gallīs sollicitārentur, partim quī, ut Germānōs diūtius in Galliā versārī nōluerant, ita populī Rōmānī exercitum hiemāre atque inveterāscere in Galliā molestē ferēbant, partim quī mōbilitāte et levitāte animī novīs imperiīs studēbant; ab nōnnūllīs etiam, quod in Galliā ā potentiōribus atque eīs, quī ad condūcendōs hominēs facultātēs habēbant, vulgō rēgna occupābantur, quī minus facile eam rem imperiō nostrō cōnsequī poterant.

Caesar advances to meet the crisis.

2. Hīs nūntiīs litterīsque commōtus Caesar duās legiōnēs in citeriōre Galliā novās cōnscrīpsit et initā aestāte, in ulteriōrem Galliam quī dēdūceret, Quīntum Pedium lēgātum mīsit. Ipse, cum prīmum pābulī cōpia esse inciperet, ad exercitum vēnit. Dat negōtium Senonibus reliquīsque Gallīs, quī fīnitimī Belgīs erant, utī ea, quae

CAMPAIGN MAP FOR 57 B.C.

To face p. 40

apud eōs gerantur, cognōscant sēque dē hīs rēbus certiōrem faciant. Hī cōnstanter omnēs nūntiāvērunt, manūs cōgī, exercitum in ūnum locum condūcī. Tum vērō dubitandum nōn exīstimāvit, quīn ad eōs proficīscerētur. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā castra movet diēbusque circiter quīndecim ad fīnēs Belgārum pervenit.

The Remi espouse the Roman cause.

3. Eō cum dē improvīsō celeriusque omnī opīniōne vēnisset, Rēmī, quī proximī Galliae ex Belgīs sunt, ad eum lēgātōs Iccium et Andecumborium, prīmōs cīvitātis, mīsērunt, quī dīcerent, sē suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestātem populī Rōmānī permittere, neque sē cum Belgīs reliquīs cōnsēnsisse neque contrā populum Rōmānum omnīnō conjūrāsse, parātōsque esse et obsidēs dare et imperāta facere et oppidīs recipere et frūmentō cēterīsque rēbus juvāre; reliquōs omnēs Belgās in armīs esse, Germānōsque quī cis Rhēnum incolant, sēsē cum hīs conjūnxisse, tantumque esse eōrum omnium furōrem, ut nē Suessiōnēs quidem, frātrēs cōnsanguineōsque suōs, quī eōdem jūre et īsdem lēgibus ūtantur, ūnum imperium ūnumque magistrātum cum ipsīs habeant, dēterrēre potuerint, quīn cum hīs cōnsentīrent.

Fighting strength of the Belgian tribes.

4. Cum ab hīs quaereret, quae cīvitātēs quantaeque in armīs essent et quid in bellō possent, sīc reperiēbat: Plērōsque Belgās esse ortōs ā Germānīs Rhēnumque antīquitus trāductōs propter locī fertilitātem ibi cōnsēdisse, Gallōsque, quī ea loca incolerent, expulisse, sōlōsque esse, quī patrum nostrōrum memoriā omnī Galliā vexātā Teutonōs Cimbrōsque intrā suōs fīnēs ingredī prohibuerint;

quā ex rē fierī, utī eārum rērum memoriā magnam sibi auctōritātem magnōsque spīritūs in rē mīlitārī sūmerent.

Dē numerō eōrum omnia sē habēre explōrāta Rēmī dīcēbant, propterea quod propinquitātibus affīnitātibusque conjūnctī, quantam quisque multitūdinem in commūnī Belgārum conciliō ad id bellum pollicitus sit, cognōverint. Plūrimum inter eōs Bellovacōs et virtūte et auctōritāte et hominum numerō valēre; hōs posse cōnficere armāta mīlia centum, pollicitōs ex eō numerō ēlēcta mīlia sexāgintā, tōtīusque bellī imperium sibi postulāre. Suessiōnēs suōs esse fīnitimōs; fīnēs lātissimōs ferācissimōsque agrōs possidēre. Apud eōs fuisse rēgem nostrā etiam memoriā Dīvitiācum, tōtīus Galliae potentissimum, quī cum magnae partis hārum regiōnum, tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse rēgem Galbam; ad hunc propter jūstitiam prūdentiamque summam tōtīus bellī omnium voluntāte dēferrī; oppida habēre numerō XII, pollicērī mīlia armāta quīnquāgintā; totidem Nerviōs, quī maximē ferī inter ipsōs habeantur longissimēque absint; quīndecim mīlia Atrebātēs, Ambiānōs decem mīlia, Morinōs XXV mīlia, Menapiōs VII mīlia, Caletōs X mīlia, Veliocassēs et Viromanduōs totidem, Aduatucōs decem et novem mīlia; Condrūsōs, Eburōnēs, Caerōsōs, Paemānōs, quī ūnō nōmine Germānī appellantur, arbitrārī ad XL mīlia.

Caesar takes up a position on the Axona.

5. Caesar Rēmōs cohortātus līberāliterque ōrātiōne prōsecūtus omnem senātum ad sē convenīre prīncipumque līberōs obsidēs ad sē addūcī jussit. Quae omnia ab hīs dīligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Dīvitiācum Haeduum magnopere cohortātus docet, quantō opere reī pūblicae

commūnisque salūtis intersit, manūs hostium distinērī, nē cum tantā multitūdine ūnō tempore cōnflīgendum sit. Id fierī posse, sī suās cōpiās Haeduī in fīnēs Bellovacōrum intrōdūxerint et eōrum agrōs populārī coeperint. Hīs datīs mandātīs eum ab sē dīmittit.

Postquam omnēs Belgārum cōpiās in ūnum locum coāctās ad sē venīre vīdit, neque jam longē abesse, ab eīs, quōs mīserat, explōrātōribus et ab Rēmīs cognōvit, flūmen Axonam, quod est in extrēmīs Rēmōrum fīnibus, exercitum trādūcere mātūrāvit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae rēs et latus ūnum castrōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat et, post eum quae erant, tūta ab hostibus reddēbat et, commeātūs ab Rēmīs reliquīsque cīvitātibus ut sine perīculō ad eum portārī possent, efficiēbat. In eō flūmine pōns erat. Ibi praesidium pōnit et in alterā parte flūminis Quīntum Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitūdinem pedum duodecim vāllō fossāque duodēvīgintī pedum mūnīrī jubet.

Bibrax, a town of the Remi, attacked by the Belgae.

6. Ab hīs castrīs oppidum Rēmōrum nōmine Bibrax aberat mīlia passuum octō. Id ex itinere magnō impetū Belgae oppugnāre coepērunt. Aegrē eō diē sustentātum est. Gallōrum eadem atque Belgārum oppugnātiō est haec. Ubi, circumjectā multitūdine hominum tōtīs moenibus, undique in mūrum lapidēs jacī coeptī sunt mūrusque dēfēnsōribus nūdātus est, testūdine factā portās succendunt mūrumque subruunt. Quod tum facile fīēbat. Nam cum tanta multitūdō lapidēs ac tēla conicerent, in mūrō cōnsistendī potestās erat nūllī. Cum fīnem oppugnandī nox fēcisset, Iccius Rēmus, summā nōbilitāte et grātiā inter suōs, quī tum oppidō praefuerat, ūnus ex eīs, quī

lēgātī dē pāce ad Caesarem vēnerant, nūntium ad eum mittit, nisi subsidium sibi summittātur, sēsē diūtius sustinēre nōn posse.

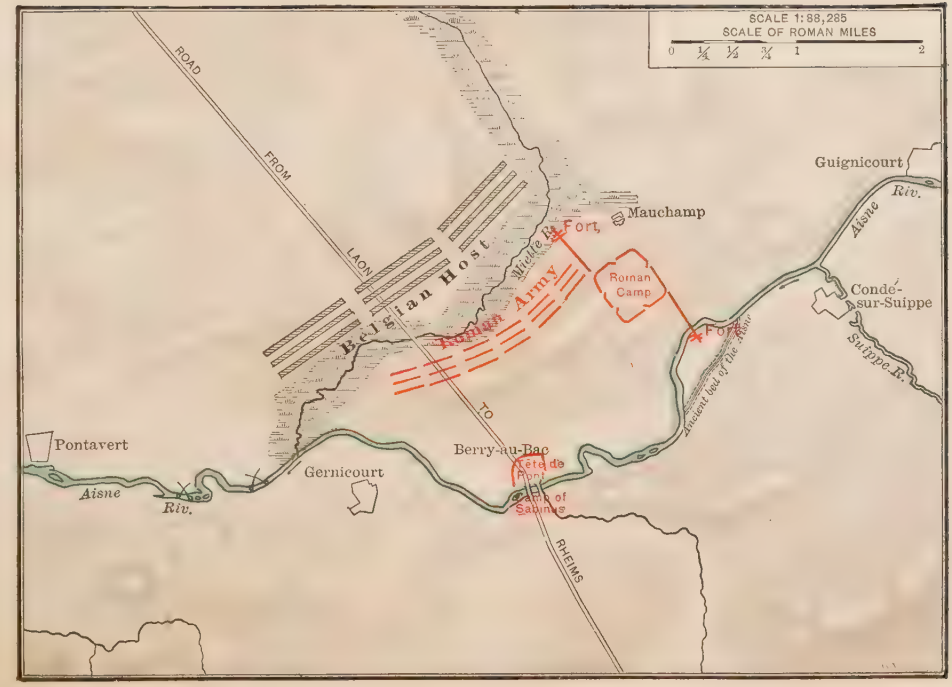
The Belgae abandon the assault on Bibrax.

7. Eō dē mediā nocte Caesar īsdem ducibus ūsus, quī nūntiī ab Icciō vēnerant, Numidās et Crētas sagittāriōs et funditōrēs Baleārēs subsidiō oppidānīs mittit; quōrum adventū et Rēmīs cum spē dēfēnsiōnis studium prōpugnandī accessit, et hostibus eādem dē causā spēs potiundī oppidī discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morātī agrōsque Rēmōrum dēpopulātī, omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque, quō adīre potuerant, incēnsīs, ad castra Caesaris omnibus cōpiīs contendērunt et ā mīlibus passuum minus duōbus castra posuērunt; quae castra, ut fūmō atque īgnibus significābātur, amplius mīlibus passuum octō in lātitūdinem patēbant.

Caesar prepares for an engagement.

8. Caesar prīmō et propter multitūdinem hostium et propter eximiam opīniōnem virtūtis proeliō supersedēre statuit; cotīdiē tamen equestribus proeliīs, quid hostis virtūte posset et quid nostrī audērent, perīclitābātur. Ubi nostrōs nōn esse īnferiōrēs intellēxit, locō prō castrīs ad aciem īnstruendam nātūrā opportūnō atque idōneō, quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex plānitiē ēditus tantum adversus in lātitūdinem patēbat, quantum locī aciēs īnstrūcta occupāre poterat, atque ex utrāque parte lateris dējectūs habēbat et in frontem lēniter fastīgātus paulātim ad plānitiem redībat, ab utrōque latere ejus collis trānsversam fossam obdūxit circiter passuum quadringentōrum et ad extrēmās fossās castella

BATTLE ON THE AISNE



To face p. 45

cōnstituit ibique tormenta collocāvit, nē, cum aciem īnstrūxisset, hostēs, quod tantum multitūdine poterant, ab lateribus pugnantēs suōs circumvenīre possent. Hōc factō duābus legiōnibus, quās proximē cōnscrīpserat, in castrīs relictīs, ut, sī quō opus esset, subsidiō dūcī possent, reliquās sex legiōnēs prō castrīs in aciē cōnstituit. Hostēs item suās cōpiās ex castrīs ēductās īnstrūxerant.

The Belgae attempt to cut off Caesar's supplies.

9. Palūs erat nōn magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc sī nostrī trānsīrent, hostēs exspectābant; nostrī autem, sī ab illīs initium trānseundī fieret, ut impedītōs aggrederentur, parātī in armīs erant. Interim proeliō equestrī inter duās aciēs contendēbātur. Ubi neutrī trānseundī initium faciunt, secundiōre equitum proeliō nostrīs, Caesar suōs in castra redūxit. Hostēs prōtinus ex eō locō ad flūmen Axonam contendērunt, quod esse post nostra castra dēmōnstrātum est. Ibi vadīs repertīs partem suārum cōpiārum trādūcere cōnātī sunt, eō cōnsiliō, ut, sī possent, castellum, cui praeerat Quīntus Titūrius lēgātus, expugnārent pontemque interscinderent; sī minus potuissent, agrōs Rēmōrum populārentur, quī magnō nōbīs ūsuī ad bellum gerendum erant, commeātūque nostrōs prohibērent.

The Belgae are defeated and disperse to their homes with further losses.

10. Caesar certior factus ab Titūriō, omnem equitātum et levis armātūrae Numidās, funditōrēs sagittāriōsque ponte trādūcit atque ad eōs contendit. Ācriter in eō locō pugnātum est. Hostēs impedītōs nostrī in flūmine

aggressī magnum eōrum numerum occīdērunt; per eōrum corpora reliquōs audācissimē trānsīre cōnantēs multitūdine tēlōrum reppulērunt; prīmōs, quī trānsierant, equitātū circumventōs interfēcērunt.

Hostēs, ubi et dē expugnandō oppidō et dē flūmine trānseundō spem sē fefellisse intellēxērunt neque nostrōs in locum inīquiōrem prōgredī pugnandī causā vīdērunt, atque ipsōs rēs frūmentāria dēficere coepit, cōnsiliō convocātō cōnstituērunt, optimum esse, domum suam quemque revertī, et, quōrum in fīnēs prīmum Rōmānī exercitum intrōdūxissent, ad eōs dēfendendōs undique convenīrent, ut potius in suīs quam in aliēnīs fīnibus dēcertārent et domesticīs cōpiīs reī frūmentāriae ūterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquīs causīs haec quoque ratiō eōs dēdūxit, quod Dīvitiācum atque Haeduōs fīnibus Bellovacōrum appropinquāre cognōverant. Hīs persuādērī, ut diūtius morārentur neque suīs auxilium ferrent, nōn poterat.

11. Eā rē cōnstitūtā, secundā vigiliā magnō cum strepitū ac tumultū castrīs ēgressī nūllō certō ōrdine neque imperiō, cum sibi quisque prīmum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenīre properāret, fēcērunt, ut cōnsimilis fugae profectiō vidērētur. Hāc rē statim Caesar per speculātōrēs cognitā, īnsidiās veritus, quod, quā dē causā discēderent, nōndum perspexerat, exercitum equitātumque castrīs continuit. Prīmā lūce cōnfīrmātā rē ab explōrātōribus, omnem equitātum, quī novissimum agmen morārētur, praemīsit.

Hīs Quīntum Pedium et Lūcium Aurunculēium Cottam lēgātōs praefēcit; Titum Labiēnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus subsequī jussit. Hī novissimōs adortī et multa mīlia passuum prōsecūtī magnam multitūdinem

eōrum fugientium concīdērunt, cum ab extrēmō agmine, ad quōs ventum erat, cōnsisterent fortiterque impetum nostrōrum mīlitum sustinērent, priōrēs, quod abesse ā perīculō vidērentur neque ūllā necessitāte neque imperiō continērentur, exaudītō clāmōre perturbātīs ōrdinibus omnēs in fugā sibi praesidium pōnerent. Ita sine ūllō perīculō tantam eōrum multitūdinem nostrī interfēcērunt, quantum fuit diēī spatium; sub occāsum sōlis sequī dēstitērunt sēque in castra, ut erat imperātum, recēpērunt.

Noviodunum surrenders.

12. Postrīdiē ejus diēī Caesar, priusquam sē hostēs ex terrōre ac fugā reciperent, in fīnēs Suessiōnum, quī proximī Rēmīs erant, exercitum dūxit et magnō itinere ad oppidum Noviodūnum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnāre cōnātus, quod vacuum ab dēfēnsōribus esse audiēbat, propter lātitūdinem fossae mūrīque altitūdinem, paucīs dēfendentibus, expugnāre nōn potuit. Castrīs mūnītīs vīneās agere, quaeque ad oppugnandum ūsuī erant, comparāre coepit. Interim omnis ex fugā Suessiōnum multitūdō in oppidum proximā nocte convēnit. Celeriter vīneīs ad oppidum āctīs, aggere jactō turribusque cōnstitūtīs, magnitūdine operum, quae neque vīderant ante Gallī neque audierant, et celeritāte Rōmānōrum permōtī lēgātōs ad Caesarem dē dēditiōne mittunt et petentibus Rēmīs, ut cōnservārentur, impetrant.

Submission of the Bellovaci.

13. Caesar obsidibus acceptīs prīmīs cīvitātis atque ipsīus Galbae rēgis duōbus fīliīs, armīsque omnibus ex oppidō trāditīs, in dēditiōnem Suessiōnēs accēpit exerci-

tumque in Bellovacōs dūcit. (Quī cum) sē suaque omnia in oppidum Brātuspantium contulissent, atque ab eō oppidō Caesar cum exercitū circiter mīlia passuum quīnque abesset, omnēs (majōrēs nātū) ex oppidō ēgressī manūs ad Caesarem tendere et vōce significāre coepērunt, sēsē in ejus fidem ac potestātem venīre neque contrā populum Rōmānum armīs contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi pōneret, puerī mulierēsque ex mūrō passīs manibus suō mōre pācem ab Rōmānīs petiērunt.

14. Prō hīs Dīvitiācus (nam post discessum Belgārum, dīmissīs Haeduōrum cōpiīs, ad eum reverterat) facit verba: Bellovacōs omnī tempore in fidē atque amīcitiā cīvitātis Haeduae fuisse; impulsōs ab suīs prīncipibus, quī dīcerent, Haeduōs ā Caesare in servitūtem redāctōs omnēs indignitātēs contumēliāsque perferre, et ab Haeduīs dēfēcisse et populō Rōmānō bellum intulisse. Quī ejus cōnsilī prīncipēs fuissent, quod intellegerent, quantam calamitātem cīvitātī intulissent, in Britanniam profūgisse. Petere nōn sōlum Bellovacōs, sed etiam prō hīs Haeduōs, ut suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine in eōs ūtātur. Quod sī fēcerit, Haeduōrum auctōritātem apud omnēs Belgās amplificātūrum, quōrum auxiliīs atque opibus, sī qua bella inciderint, sustentāre cōnsuērint.

15. Caesar honōris Dīvitiācī atque Haeduōrum causā sēsē eōs in fidem receptūrum et cōnservātūrum dīxit; et quod erat cīvitās magnā inter Belgās auctōritāte atque hominum multitūdine praestābat, sexcentōs obsidēs poposcit. Hīs trāditīs omnibusque armīs ex oppidō collātīs, ab eō locō in fīnēs Ambiānōrum pervēnit; quī sē suaque omnia sine morā dēdidērunt.

Description of the Nervii.

Eōrum fīnēs Nerviī attingēbant; quōrum dē nātūrā mōribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sīc reperiēbat: Nūllum aditum esse ad eōs mercātōribus; nihil patī vīnī reliquārumque rērum ad lūxuriam pertinentium īnferrī, quod hīs rēbus relanguēscere animōs et remittī virtūtem exīstimārent; esse hominēs ferōs magnaeque virtūtis; increpitāre atque incūsāre reliquōs Belgās, quī sē populō Rōmānō dēdidissent patriamque virtūtem prōjēcissent; cōnfīrmāre, sēsē neque lēgātōs missūrōs neque ūllam condiciōnem pācis acceptūrōs.

The Nervii and their allies plan to attack Caesar by surprise.

16. Cum per eōrum fīnēs trīduum iter fēcisset, inveniēbat ex captīvīs, Sabim flūmen ā castrīs suīs nōn amplius mīlia passuum x abesse; trāns id flūmen omnēs Nerviōs cōnsēdisse adventumque ibi Rōmānōrum exspectāre ūnā cum Atrebātibus et Viromanduīs, fīnitimīs suīs (nam hīs utrīsque persuāserant, utī eandem bellī fortūnam experīrentur); exspectārī etiam ab hīs Aduatucōrum cōpiās atque esse in itinere; mulierēs, quīque per aetātem ad pugnam inūtilēs vidērentur, in eum locum cōnjēcisse, quō propter palūdēs exercituī aditus nōn esset.

17. Hīs rēbus cognitīs explōrātōrēs centuriōnēsque praemittit, quī locum idōneum castrīs dēligant. Cum ex dēditīciīs Belgīs reliquīsque Gallīs complūrēs Caesarem secūtī ūnā iter facerent, quīdam ex hīs, ut posteā ex captīvīs cognitum est, eōrum diērum cōnsuētūdine itineris nostrī exercitūs perspectā, nocte ad Nerviōs pervēnērunt atque hīs dēmōnstrārunt, inter singulās legiōnēs impedīmentōrum magnum numerum intercēdere, neque esse quicquam negōtī, cum prīma legiō in castra vēnisset

reliquaeque legiōnēs magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinīs adorīrī; quā pulsā impedīmentīsque dīreptīs futūrum, ut reliquae contrā cōnsistere nōn audērent.

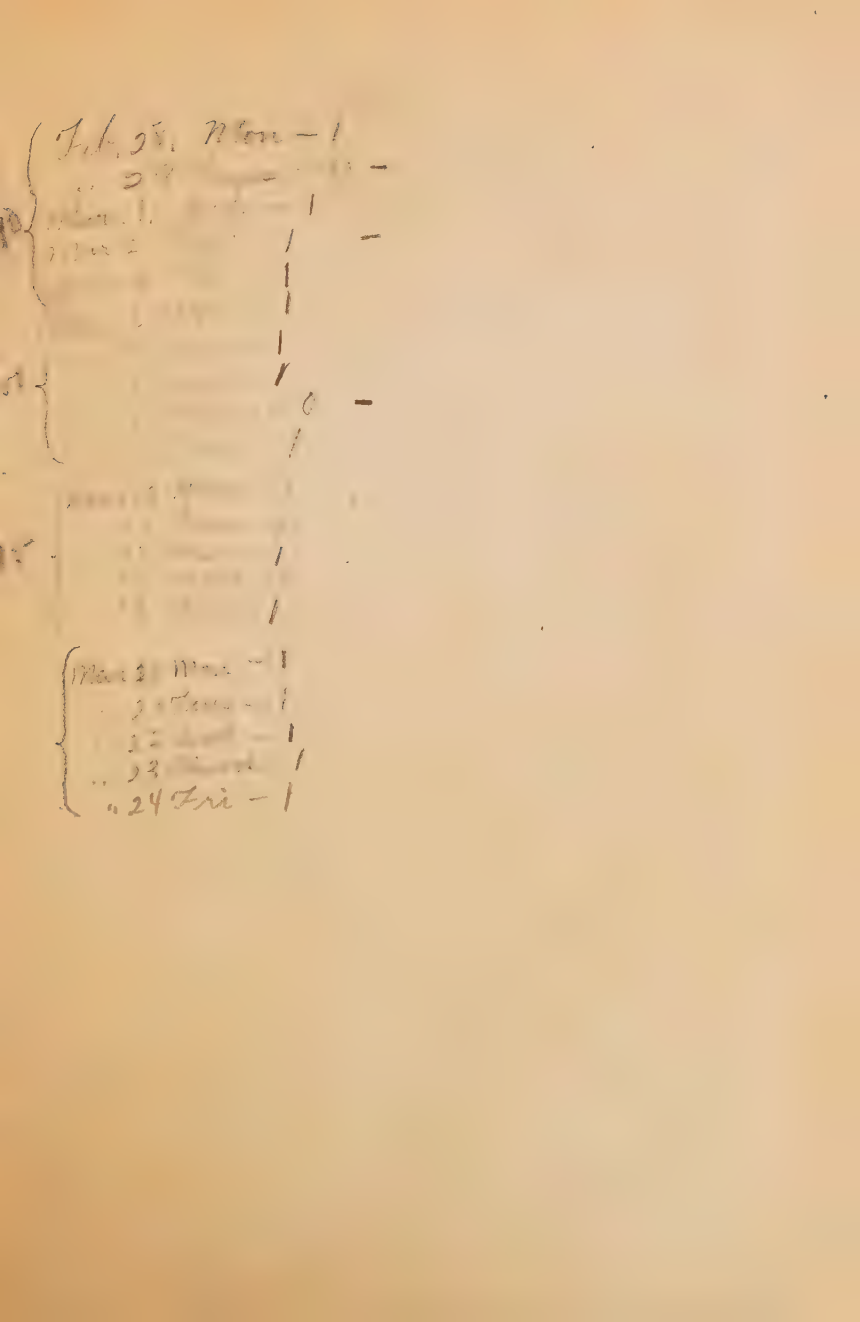
Adjuvābat etiam eōrum cōnsilium quī rem dēferēbant, quod Nerviī antīquitus, cum equitātū nihil possent neque enim ad hōc tempus eī reī student, sed, quicquid possunt, pedestribus valent cōpiīs, quō facilius fīnitimōrum equitātum, sī praedandī causā ad eōs vēnissent, impedīrent, tenerīs arboribus incīsīs atque īnflexīs crēbrīsque in lātitūdinem rāmīs ēnātīs et rubīs sentibusque interjectīs effēcerant, ut īnstar mūrī hae saepēs mūnīmentum praebērent, quō nōn modo nōn intrārī, sed nē perspicī quidem posset. Hīs rēbus cum iter agminis nostrī impedīrētur, nōn omittendum sibi cōnsilium Nerviī exīstimāvērunt.

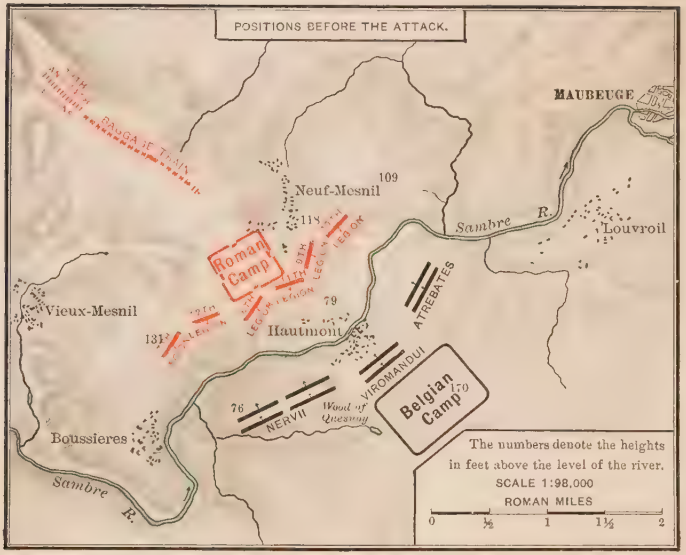
Site of Caesar's camp on the Sabis.

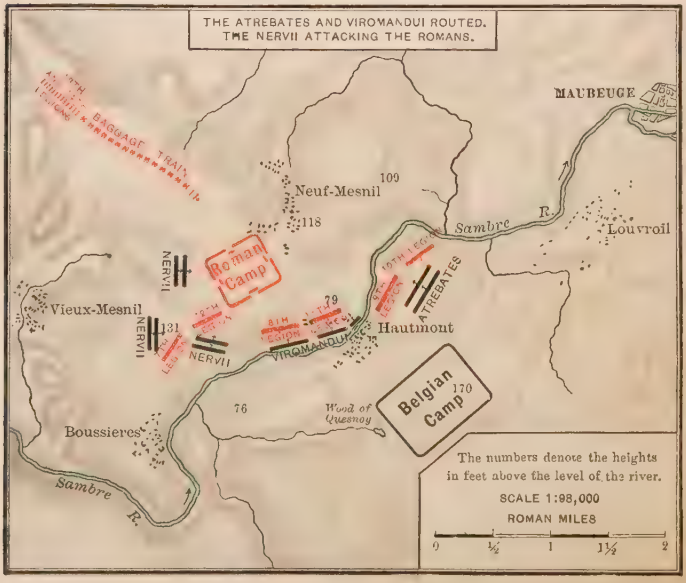
18. Locī nātūra erat haec, quem locum nostrī castrīs dēlēgerant. Collis ab summō aequāliter dēclīvis ad flūmen Sabim, quod suprā nōminávimus, vergēbat. Ab eō flūmine parī acclīvitāte collis nāscēbātur adversus huic et contrārius, passūs circiter ducentōs īnfimus apertus, ab superiōre parte silvestris, ut nōn facile intrōrsus perspicī posset. Intrā eās silvās hostēs in occultō sēsē continēbant; in apertō locō secundum flūmen paucae statiōnēs equitum vidēbantur. Flūminis erat altitūdō pedum circiter trium.

The Belgae attack the camp.

19. Caesar equitātū praemissō subsequēbātur omnibus cōpiīs; sed ratiō ōrdōque agminis aliter sē habēbat, ac Belgae ad Nerviōs dētulerant. Nam quod hostibus appropinquābat, cōnsuētūdine suā Caesar sex legiōnēs expedītās dūcēbat; post eās tōtīus exercitūs impedīmenta




POSITIONS BEFORE THE ATTACK.
MAUBEUGE
Neuf-Mesnil
109
118
Sambre R.
Louvroil
Roman Camp
Vieux-Mesnil
131
79
Hautmont
ATREBATES
VIROMANDUI
Belgian Camp
170
76
NERVII
Wood of Quesnoy
Boussieres
Sambre R.
The numbers denote the heights in feet above the level of the river.
SCALE 1:98,000
ROMAN MILES
0
½
1
1½
2


THE ATREBATES AND VIROMANDUI ROUTED.
THE NERVII ATTACKING THE ROMANS.
MAUBEUGE
Neuf-Mesnil
109
118
Sambre R.
Louvroil
Roman Camp
NERVII
Vieux-Mesnil
131
79
Hautmont
ATREBATES
VIROMANDUI
Belgian Camp
170
76
Wood of Quesnoy
Boussieres
Sambre R.
The numbers denote the heights in feet above the level of the river.
SCALE 1:98,000
ROMAN MILES
0
½
1
1½
2

To face p. 51

collocārat; inde duae legiōnēs, quae proximē cōnscrīptae erant, tōtum agmen claudēbant praesidiōque impedīmentīs erant. Equitēs nostrī cum funditōribus sagittāriīsque flūmen trānsgressī cum hostium equitātū proelium commīsērunt. Cum sē illī identidem in silvās ad suōs recipērent ac rūrsus ex silvā in nostrōs impetum facerent neque nostrī longius, quam quem ad fīnem porrēcta loca aperta pertinēbant, cēdentēs īnsequī audērent, interim legiōnēs sex, quae prīmae vēnerant, opere dīmēnsō castra mūnīre coepērunt.

Ubi prīma impedīmenta nostrī exercitūs ab eīs, quī in silvīs abditī latēbant, vīsa sunt, quod tempus inter eōs committendī proelī convēnerat, ita ut intrā silvās aciem ōrdinēsque cōnstituerant atque ipsī sēsē cōnfīrmāverant, subitō omnibus cōpiīs prōvolāvērunt impetumque in nostrōs equitēs fēcērunt. Hīs facile pulsīs ac prōturbātīs, incrēdibilī celeritāte ad flūmen dēcucurrērunt, ut paene ūnō tempore et ad silvās et in flūmine et jam in manibus nostrīs hostēs vidērentur. Eādem autem celeritāte adversō colle ad nostra castra atque eōs, quī in opere occupātī erant, conténdērunt.

The Romans are unprepared, but their discipline stands them in good stead.

20. Caesarī omnia ūnō tempore erant agenda: vēxillum prōpōnendum, signum tubā dandum, ab opere revocandī mīlitēs, quī paulō longius aggeris petendī causā prōcesserant, arcessendī, aciēs īnstruenda, mīlitēs cohortandī, signum dandum. Quārum rērum magnam partem temporis brevitās et incursus hostium impediēbat. Hīs difficultātibus duae rēs erant subsidiō, scientia atque ūsus mīlitum, quod superiōribus proeliīs exercitātī, quid fierī

oportēret, nōn minus commodē ipsī sibi praescrībere, quam ab aliīs docērī poterant, et quod ab opere singulīsque legiōnibus singulōs lēgātōs Caesar discēdere nisi mūnītīs castrīs vetuerat. Hī propter propinquitātem et celeritātem hostium nihil jam Caesaris imperium exspectābant, sed per sē, quae vidēbantur, administrābant.

Caesar hurries about, encouraging his troops.

21. Caesar necessāriīs rēbus imperātīs ad cohortandōs mīlitēs, quam in partem fors obtulit, dēcucurrit et ad legiōnem decimam dēvēnit. Mīlitēs nōn longiōre ōrātiōne cohortātus, quam utī suae prīstinae virtūtis memoriam retinērent neu perturbārentur animō hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinērent, quod nōn longius hostēs aberant, quam quō tēlum adigī posset, proelī committendī signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandī causā profectus pugnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitās hostiumque tam parātus ad dīmicandum animus, ut nōn modo ad īnsignia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeās induendās scūtīsque tegimenta dētrahenda tempus dēfuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem cāsū dēvēnit quaeque prīma signa cōnspexit, ad haec cōnstitit, nē in quaerendīs suīs pugnandī tempus dīmitteret.

Fighting under difficulties.

22. Īnstrūctō exercitū, magis ut locī nātūra dējectusque collis et necessitās temporis, quam ut reī mīlitāris ratiō atque ōrdō postulābat, cum dīversae legiōnēs aliae aliā in parte hostibus resisterent, saepibusque dēnsissimīs, ut ante dēmōnstrāvimus, interjectīs prōspectus impedīrētur, neque certa subsidia collocārī neque, quid in quāque parte opus esset, prōvidērī, neque ab ūnō omnia

imperia administrārī poterant. Itaque in tantā rērum inīquitāte fortūnae quoque ēventūs variī sequēbantur.

Two legions on the left rout the Atrebates. Two in the centre rout the Viromandui. The remaining two are attacked by the Nervii.

23. Legiōnis nōnae et decimae mīlitēs, ut in sinistrā parte aciē cōnstiterant, pīlīs ēmissīs cursū ac lassitūdine exanimātōs vulneribusque cōnfectōs Atrebātēs (nam hīs ea pars obvēnerat) celeriter ex locō superiōre in flūmen compulērunt et trānsīre cōnantēs īnsecūtī gladiīs magnam partem eōrum impedītam interfēcērunt. Ipsī trānsīre flūmen nōn dubitāvērunt et in locum inīquum prōgressī rūrsus resistentēs hostēs redintegrātō proeliō in fugam conjēcērunt. Item aliā in parte dīversae duae legiōnēs, ūndecima et octāva, prōflīgātīs Viromanduīs, quibuscum erant congressī, ex locō superiōre, in ipsīs flūminis rīpīs proeliābantur. At tōtīs ferē castrīs ā fronte et ā sinistrā parte nūdātīs, cum in dextrō cornū legiō duodecima et nōn magnō ab eā intervāllō septima cōnstitisset, omnēs Nerviī cōnfertissimō agmine duce Boduognātō, quī summam imperī tenēbat, ad eum locum contendērunt; quōrum pars ab apertō latere legiōnēs circumvenīre, pars summum castrōrum locum petere coepit.

The situation of the Romans becomes desperate.

24. Eōdem tempore equitēs nostrī levisque armātūrae peditēs, quī cum eīs ūnā fuerant, quōs prīmō hostium impetū pulsōs dīxeram, cum sē in castra reciperent, adversīs hostibus occurrēbant ac rūrsus aliam in partem fugam petēbant, et cālōnēs, quī ā decumānā portā ac summō jugō collis nostrōs victōrēs flūmen trānsīsse cōnspexerant, prae-

dandī causā ēgressī, cum respexissent et hostēs in nostrīs castrīs versārī vīdissent, praecipitēs fugae sēsē mandābant. Simul eōrum, quī cum impedīmentīs veniēbant, clāmor fremitusque oriēbātur, aliīque aliam in partem perterritī ferēbantur.

Quibus omnibus rēbus permōtī equitēs Trēverī, quōrum inter Gallōs virtūtis opīniō est singulāris, quī auxilī causā ā cīvitāte ad Caesarem missī vēnerant, cum multitūdine hostium castra nostra complērī, legiōnēs premī et paene circumventās tenērī, cālōnēs, equitēs, funditōrēs, Numidās dīversōs dissipātōsque in omnēs partēs fugere vīdissent, dēspērātīs nostrīs rēbus domum contendērunt; Rōmānōs pulsōs superātōsque, castrīs impedīmentīsque eōrum hostēs potītōs cīvitātī renūntiāvērunt.

Caesar's heroic example saves the day.

25. Caesar ab decimae legiōnis cohortātiōne ad dextrum cornū profectus, ubi suōs urgērī signīsque in ūnum locum collātīs duodecimae legiōnis cōnfertōs mīlitēs sibi ipsōs ad pugnam esse impedīmentō vīdit, quārtae cohortis omnibus centuriōnibus occīsīs, signiferō interfectō, signō āmissō, reliquārum cohortium omnibus ferē centuriōnibus aut vulnerātīs aut occīsīs, in hīs prīmipīlō P. Sextiō Baculō, fortissimō virō, multīs gravibusque vulneribus cōnfectō, ut jam sē sustinēre nōn posset, reliquōs esse tardiōrēs et nōnnūllōs ab novissimīs dēsertō proeliō excēdere ac tēla vītāre, hostēs neque ā fronte ex īnferiōre locō subeuntēs intermittere et ab utrōque latere īnstāre et rem esse in angustō vīdit, neque ūllum esse subsidium quod summittī posset; scūtō ab novissimīs ūnī mīlitī dētrāctō, quod ipse eō sine scūtō vēnerat, in prīmam aciem prōcessit centuriōnibusque nōminātim appellātīs reliquōs cohortātus

mīlitēs signa īnferre et manipulōs laxāre jussit, quō facilius gladiīs ūtī possent. Cūjus adventū spē illātā mīlitibus ac redintegrātō animō, cum prō sē quisque in cōnspectū imperātōris etiam in extrēmīs suīs rēbus operam nāvāre cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardātus est.

Reinforcements arrive.

26. Caesar, cum septimam legiōnem, quae jūxtā cōnstiterat, item urgērī ab hoste vīdisset, tribūnōs mīlitum monuit, ut paulātim sēsē legiōnēs conjungerent et conversa signa in hostēs īnferrent. Quō factō cum aliīs aliī subsidium ferrent neque timērent, nē āversī ab hoste circumvenīrentur, audācius resistere ac fortius pugnāre coepērunt.

Interim mīlitēs legiōnum duārum quae in novissimō agmine praesidiō impedīmentīs fuerant, proeliō nūntiātō cursū incitātō in summō colle ab hostibus cōnspiciēbantur, et Titus Labiēnus castrīs hostium potītus et ex locō superiōre, quae rēs in nostrīs castrīs gererentur, cōnspicātus, decimam legiōnem subsidiō nostrīs mīsit. Quī cum ex equitum et cālōnum fugā, quō in locō rēs esset, quantōque in perīculō et castra et legiōnēs et imperātor versārētur, cognōvissent, nihil ad celeritātem sibi reliquī fēcērunt.

The Romans defeat and almost annihilate the Nervii. Caesar spares the survivors.

27. Hōrum adventū tanta rērum commūtātiō est facta, ut nostrī, etiam quī vulneribus cōnfectī prōcubuissent, scūtīs innīxī proelium redintegrārent, cālōnēs perterritōs hostēs cōnspicātī etiam inermēs armātīs occurrerent, equitēs vērō, ut turpitūdinem fugae virtūte dēlērent, omnibus in locīs pugnae sē legiōnāriīs mīlitibus praeferrent.

At hostēs etiam in extrēmā spē salūtis tantam vir tūtem praestitērunt, ut, cum prīmī eōrum cecidissent, proximī jacentibus īnsisterent atque ex eōrum corporibus pugnārent; hīs dējectīs et coacervātīs cadāveribus, quī superessent, ut ex tumulō tēla in nostrōs conicerent et pīla intercepta remitterent; ut nōn nēquīquam tantae virtūtis hominēs jūdicārī dēbēret ausōs esse trānsīre lātissimum flūmen, ascendere altissimās rīpās, subīre inīquissimum locum, quae facilia ex difficillimīs animī magnitūdō redēgerat.

28. Hōc proeliō factō et prope ad interneciōnem gente ac nōmine Nerviōrum redāctō, majōrēs nātū, quōs ūnā cum puerīs mulieribusque in aestuāria ac palūdēs conjectōs dīxerāmus, hāc pugnā nūntiātā, cum victōribus nihil impedītum, victīs nihil tūtum arbitrārentur, omnium, quī supererant, cōnsēnsū lēgātōs ad Caesarem mīsērunt sēque eī dēdidērunt, et in commemorandā cīvitātis calamitāte ex sexcentīs ad trēs senātōrēs, ex hominum mīlibus LX vix ad quīngentōs quī arma ferre possent, sēsē redāctōs esse dīxērunt. Quōs Caesar, ut in miserōs ac supplicēs ūsus misericordiā vidērētur, dīligentissimē cōnservāvit suīsque fīnibus atque oppidīs ūtī jussit et fīnitimīs imperāvit, ut ab injūriā et maleficiō sē suōsque prohibērent.

Chapters 29–33. — Conflict with the Aduatuci.

The Aduatuci take refuge in a stronghold.

29. Aduatucī, dē quibus suprā scrīpsimus, cum omnibus cōpiīs auxiliō Nerviīs venīrent, hāc pugnā nūntiātā ex itinere domum revertērunt; cūnctīs oppidīs castellīsque dēsertīs sua omnia in ūnum oppidum ēgregiē nātūrā mūnītum contulērunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in

circuitū partibus altissimās rūpēs dējectūsque habēret, ūnā ex parte lēniter acclīvis aditūs in lātitūdinem nōn amplius ducentōrum pedum relinquēbātur; quem locum duplicī altissimō mūrō mūnierant; tum magnī ponderis saxa et praeacūtās trabēs in mūrō collocābant.

Ipsī erant ex Cimbrīs Teutonīsque prōgnātī, quī, cum iter in prōvinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, eīs impedīmentīs, quae sēcum agere ac portāre nōn poterant, citrā flūmen Rhēnum dēpositīs cūstōdiam ex suīs ac praesidium sex mīlia hominum ūnā relīquērunt. Hī post eōrum obitum multōs annōs ā fīnitimīs exagitātī, cum aliās bellum īnferrent, aliās illātum dēfenderent, cōnsēnsū eōrum omnium pāce factā, hunc sibi domiciliō locum dēlēgērunt.

Their contempt for the Roman siege works.

30. Ac prīmō adventū exercitūs nostrī crēbrās ex oppidō excursiōnēs faciēbant parvulīsque proeliīs cum nostrīs contendēbant; posteā vāllō pedum XII, in circuitū XV mīlium crēbrīsque castellīs circummūnītī oppidō sēsē continēbant. Ubi vīneīs āctīs aggere exstrūctō turrim procul cōnstituī vīdērunt, prīmum irrīdēre ex mūrō atque increpitāre vōcibus, quod tanta māchinātiō ā tantō spatiō īnstituerētur: Quibusnam manibus aut quibus vīribus praesertim hominēs tantulae statūrae (nam plērumque omnibus Gallīs prae magnitūdine corporum suōrum brevitās nostra contemptuī est) tantī oneris turrim in mūrō sēsē collocāre posse cōnfīderent?

They surrender, but secretly retain weapons.

31. Ubi vērō movērī et appropinquāre moenibus vīdērunt, novā atque inūsitātā speciē commōtī lēgātōs ad

Caesarem dē pāce mīsērunt, quī ad hunc modum locūtī: Nōn sē exīstimāre, Rōmānōs sine ope deōrum bellum gerere, quī tantae altitūdinis māchinātiōnēs tantā celeritāte prōmovēre possent; sē suaque omnia eōrum potestātī permittere dīxērunt. Ūnum petere ac dēprecārī: sī forte prō suā clēmentiā ac mānsuētūdine, quam ipsī ab aliīs audīrent, statuisset, Aduatucōs esse cōnservandōs, nē sē armīs dēspoliāret. Sibi omnēs ferē fīnitimōs esse inimīcōs ac suae virtūtī invidēre; ā quibus sē dēfendere trāditīs armīs nōn possent. Sibi praestāre, sī in eum cāsum dēdūcerentur, quamvīs fortūnam ā populō Rōmānō patī, quam ab hīs per cruciātum interficī inter quōs dominārī cōnsuēssent.

32. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Sē magis cōnsuētūdine suā quam meritō eōrum cīvitātem cōnservātūrum, sī, priusquam mūrum ariēs attigisset, sē dēdidissent; sed dēditiōnis nūllam esse condiciōnem nisi armīs trāditīs. Sē id, quod in Nerviīs fēcisset, factūrum fīnitimīsque imperātūrum, nē quam dēditīciīs populī Rōmānī injūriam īnferrent.

Rē nūntiātā ad suōs, illī sē, quae imperārentur, facere dīxērunt. Armōrum magnā multitūdine dē mūrō in fossam, quae erat ante oppidum, jactā, sīc ut prope summam mūrī aggerisque altitūdinem, acervī armōrum adaequārent, et tamen circiter parte tertiā, ut posteā perspectum est, cēlātā atque in oppidō retentā, portīs patefactīs eō diē pāce sunt ūsī.

Caesar thwarts their attempted treachery, and sells them into slavery.

33. Sub vesperum Caesar portās claudī mīlitēsque ex oppidō exīre jussit, nē quam noctū oppidānī ā mīlitibus

injūriam acciperent. Illī, ante initō, ut intellēctum est, cōnsiliō, quod dēditiōne factā nostrōs praesidia dēductūrōs aut dēnique indīligentius servātūrōs crēdiderant, partim cum eīs, quae retinuerant et cēlāverant, armīs, partim scūtīs ex cortice factīs aut vīminibus intextīs, quae subitō, ut temporis exiguitās postulābat, pellibus indūxerant, tertiā vigiliā, quā minimē arduus ad nostrās mūnītiōnēs ascēnsus vidēbātur, omnibus cōpiīs repente ex oppidō ēruptiōnem fēcērunt.

Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperāverat, īgnibus significātiōne factā, ex proximīs castellīs eō concursum est pugnātumque ab hostibus ita ācriter est, ut ā virīs fortibus in extrēmā spē salūtis inīquō locō contrā eōs, quī ex vāllō turribusque tēla jacerent, pugnārī dēbuit, cum in ūnā virtūte omnis spēs salūtis cōnsisteret. Occīsīs ad hominum mīlibus quattuor, reliquī in oppidum rejectī sunt.

Postrīdiē ejus diēī refrāctīs portīs, cum jam dēfenderet nēmō, atque intrōmissīs mīlitibus nostrīs, sectiōnem ejus oppidī ūniversam Caesar vēndidit. Ab eīs, quī ēmerant, capitum numerus ad eum relātus est mīlium quīnquāgintā trium.

Chapters 34, 35. — Concluding Events of the Year.

Publius Crassus reduces several tribes along the coast.

34. Eōdem tempore ā Pūbliō Crassō, quem cum legiōne ūnā mīserat ad Venetōs, Venellōs, Osismōs, Coriosolitas, Esuviōs, Aulercōs, Redonēs, quae sunt maritimae cīvitātēs Ōceanumque attingunt, certior factus est, omnēs eās cīvitātēs in diciōnem potestātemque populī Rōmānī esse redāctās.

Caesar places the army in winter quarters. A thanksgiving commemorating his victories is decreed at Rome.

35. Hīs rēbus gestīs omnī Galliā pācātā, tanta hūjus bellī ad barbarōs opīniō perlāta est, utī ab eīs nātiōnibus, quae trāns Rhēnum incolerent, lēgātī ad Caesarem mitterentur, quī sē obsidēs datūrās, imperāta factūrās pollicērentur. Quās lēgātiōnēs Caesar, quod in Italiam Īllyricumque properābat, initā proximā aestāte ad sē revertī jussit.

Ipse, in Carnutēs, Andēs, Turonōs, quaeque cīvitātēs propinquae hīs locīs erant, ubi bellum gesserat, legiōnibus in hīberna dēductīs, in Italiam profectus est. Ob eāsque rēs ex litterīs Caesaris in diēs quīndecim supplicātiō dēcrēta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nūllī.

BOOK III.

Chapters 1–6. — Galba at Octodurus.

Galba takes up his quarters at Octodurus.

1. Cum in Italiam proficīscerētur Caesar, Servium Galbam cum legiōne duodecimā et parte equitātūs in Nantuātēs, Veragrōs Sedūnōsque mīsit, quī ā fīnibus Allobrogum et lacū Lemannō et flūmine Rhodanō ad summās Alpēs pertinent. Causa mittendī fuit, quod iter per Alpēs, quō magnō cum perīculō magnīsque cum portōriīs mercātōrēs īre cōnsuērant, patefierī volēbat. Huic permīsit, sī opus esse arbitrārētur, utī in hīs locīs legiōnem hiemandī causā collocāret.

Galba, secundīs aliquot proeliīs factīs castellīsque complūribus eōrum expugnātīs, missīs ad eum undique lēgātīs obsidibusque datīs et pāce factā, cōnstituit cohortēs duās in Nantuātibus collocāre et ipse cum reliquīs ejus legiōnis cohortibus in vīcō Veragrōrum, quī appellātur Octodūrus, hiemāre; quī vīcus positus in valle, nōn magnā adjectā plānitiē, altissimīs montibus undique continētur. Cum hīc in duās partēs flūmine dīviderētur, alteram partem ejus vīcī Gallīs concessit, alteram vacuam ab hīs relīctam cohortibus ad hiemandum attribuit. Eum locum vāllō fossāque mūnīvit.

He is besieged by the neighboring Alpine tribes.

2. Cum diēs hībernōrum complūrēs trānsīssent, frūmentumque eō comportārī jussisset, subitō per explōrātōrēs certior factus est, ex eā parte vīcī, quam Gallīs

concesserat, omnēs noctū discessisse, montēsque, quī impendērent, ā maximā multitūdine Sedūnōrum et Veragrōrum tenērī.

Id aliquot dē causīs acciderat, ut subitō Gallī bellī renovandī legiōnisque opprimendae cōnsilium caperent: prīmum, quod legiōnem, neque eam plēnissimam, dētrāctīs cohortibus duābus et complūribus singillātim, quī commeātūs petendī causā missī erant, absentibus, propter paucitātem dēspiciēbant; tum etiam, quod propter inīquitātem locī, cum ipsī ex montibus in vallem dēcurrerent et tēla conicerent, nē prīmum quidem impetum suum posse sustinērī exīstimābant. Accēdēbat, quod suōs ab sē līberōs abstrāctōs obsidum nōmine dolēbant et Rōmānōs nōn sōlum itinerum causā sed etiam perpetuae possessiōnis culmina Alpium occupāre cōnārī et ea loca fīnitimae prōvinciae adjungere sibi persuāsum habēbant.

3. Hīs nūntiīs acceptīs Galba, cum neque opus hībernōrum mūnītiōnēsque plēnē essent perfectae, neque dē frūmentō reliquōque commeātū satis esset prōvīsum, quod dēditiōne factā obsidibusque acceptīs nihil dē bellō timendum exīstimāverat, cōnsiliō celeriter convocātō sententiās exquīrere coepit. Quō in cōnsiliō, cum tantum repentīnī perīculī praeter opīniōnem accidisset ac jam omnia ferē superiōra loca multitūdine armātōrum complēta cōnspicerentur, neque subsidiō venīrī neque commeātūs supportārī interclūsīs itineribus possent, prope jam dēspērātā salūte nōnnūllae hūjus modī sententiae dīcēbantur, ut impedīmentīs relīctīs ēruptiōne factā īsdem itineribus, quibus eō pervēnissent, ad salūtem contenderent. Majōrī tamen partī placuit, hōc reservātō ad extrēmum cōnsiliō interim reī ēventum experīrī et castra dēfendere.

The Romans defend the camp against heavy odds.

4. Brevī spatiō interjectō, vix ut eīs rēbus, quās cōnstituissent, collocandīs atque administrandīs tempus darētur, hostēs ex omnibus partibus signō datō dēcurrere, lapidēs gaesaque in vāllum conicere. Nostrī prīmō integrīs vīribus fortiter repugnāre neque ūllum frūstrā tēlum ex locō superiōre mittere, et quaecumque pars castrōrum nūdāta dēfēnsōribus premī vidēbātur, eō occurrere et auxilium ferre, sed hōc superārī, quod diūturnitāte pugnae hostēs dēfessī proeliō excēdēbant, aliī integrīs vīribus succēdēbant; quārum rērum ā nostrīs propter paucitātem fierī nihil poterat, ac nōn modo dēfessō ex pugnā excēdendī, sed nē sauciō quidem ejus locī, ubi cōnstiterat, relinquendī ac suī recipiendī facultās dabātur.

They resolve upon a sortie.

5. Cum jam amplius hōrīs sex continenter pugnārētur ac nōn sōlum vīrēs, sed etiam tēla nostrōs dēficerent, atque hostēs ācrius īnstārent languidiōribusque nostrīs vāllum scindere et fossās complēre coepissent, rēsque esset jam ad extrēmum perducta cāsum, Pūblius Sextius Baculus, prīmī pīlī centuriō, quem Nervicō proeliō complūribus cōnfectum vulneribus dīximus, et item Gāius Volusēnus, tribūnus mīlitum, vir et cōnsilī magnī et virtūtis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque ūnam esse spem salūtis docent, sī ēruptiōne factā extrēmum auxilium experīrentur. Itaque convocātīs centuriōnibus celeriter mīlitēs certiōrēs facit, paulisper intermitterent proelium ac tantum modo tēla missa exciperent sēque ex labōre reficerent, post datō signō ex castrīs ērumperent atque omnem spem salūtis in virtūte pōnerent.

Defeat of the Gauls.

6. Quod jussī sunt, faciunt, ac subitō omnibus portīs ēruptiōne factā neque cognōscendī, quid fieret, neque suī colligendī hostibus facultātem relinquunt. Ita commūtātā fortūnā eōs, quī in spem potiundōrum castrōrum vēnerant, undique circumventōs interficiunt et ex hominum mīlibus amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarōrum ad castra vēnisse cōnstābat, plūs tertiā parte interfectā reliquōs perterritōs in fugam coniciunt ac nē in locīs quidem superiōribus cōnsistere patiuntur. Sīc omnibus hostium cōpiīs fūsīs armīsque exūtīs sē intrā mūnītiōnēs suās recipiunt.

Quō proeliō factō, quod saepius fortūnam temptāre Galba nōlēbat atque aliō sē in hīberna cōnsiliō vēnisse meminerat, aliīs occurrisse rēbus vīderat, maximē frūmentī commeātūsque inopiā permōtus posterō diē, omnibus ejus vīcī aedificiīs incēnsīs, in prōvinciam revertī contendit, ac nūllō hoste prohibente aut iter dēmorante incolumem legiōnem in Nantuātēs, inde in Allobrogēs perdūxit ibique hiemāvit.

Chapters 7–16. — War against the Veneti.

Crassus sends messengers to the maritime tribes.

7. Hīs rēbus gestīs, cum omnibus dē causīs Caesar pācātam Galliam exīstimāret, superātīs Belgīs, expulsīs Germānīs, victīs in Alpibus Sedūnīs, atque ita initā hieme in Īllyricum profectus esset, quod eās quoque nātiōnēs adīre et regiōnēs cognōscere volēbat, subitum bellum in Galliā coörtum est. Ejus bellī haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulēscēns cum legiōne septimā proximus

mare Ōceanum in Andibus hiemābat. Is, quod in hīs locīs inopia frūmentī erat, praefectōs tribūnōsque mīlitum complūrēs in fīnitimās cīvitātēs frūmentī causā dīmīsit; quō in numerō est Titus Terrasidius missus in Esuviōs, Mārcus Trebius Gallus in Coriosolitas, Quīntus Velānius cum Titō Sīliō in Venetōs.

Maritime prowess of the Veneti. The Gauls detain the messengers and form a league against the Romans.

8. Hūjus est cīvitātis longē amplissima auctōritās omnis ōrae maritimae regiōnum eārum, quod et nāvēs habent Venetī plūrimās, quibus in Britanniam nāvigāre cōnsuērunt, et scientiā atque ūsū rērum nauticārum cēterōs antecēdunt et in magnō impetū maris atque apertō paucīs portibus interjectīs, quōs tenent ipsī, omnēs ferē, quī eō marī ūtī cōnsuērunt, habent vectīgālēs. Ab hīs fit initium retinendī Sīlī atque Velānī, quod per eōs suōs sē obsidēs, quōs Crassō dedissent, recuperātūrōs exīstimābant.

Hōrum auctōritāte fīnitimī adductī, ut sunt Gallōrum subita et repentīna cōnsilia, eādem dē causā Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et celeriter missīs lēgātīs per suōs prīncipēs inter sē conjūrant, nihil nisī commūnī cōnsiliō āctūrōs eundemque omnēs fortūnae exitum esse lātūrōs, reliquāsque cīvitātēs sollicitant, ut in eā lībertāte, quam ā majōribus accēperint, permanēre quam Rōmānōrum servitūtem perferre mālint. Omnī ōrā maritimā celeriter ad suam sententiam perductā, commūnem lēgātiōnem ad Pūblium Crassum mittunt, sī velit suōs recuperāre, obsidēs sibi remittat.

Caesar prepares for war. Natural obstacles presented by the Gallic coast.

9. Quibus dē rēbus Caesar ā Crassō certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, nāvēs interim longās aedificārī in flūmine Ligerī, quod īnfluit in Ōceanum, rēmigēs ex prōvinciā īnstituī, nautās gubernātōrēsque comparārī jubet. Hīs rēbus celeriter administrātīs, ipse, cum prīmum per annī tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit.

Venetī, reliquaeque item cīvitātēs, cognitō Caesaris adventū, simul quod, quantum in sē facinus admīsissent, intellegēbant, lēgātōs, quod nōmen ad omnēs nātiōnēs sānctum inviolātumque semper fuisset, retentōs ab sē et in vincula conjectōs, prō magnitūdine perīculī bellum parāre et maximē ea, quae ad ūsum nāvium pertinent, prōvidēre īnstituunt, hōc majōre spē, quod multum nātūrā locī cōnfīdēbant. Pedestria esse itinera concīsa aestuāriīs, nāvigātiōnem impedītam propter īnscientiam locōrum paucitātemque portuum sciēbant, neque nostrōs exercitūs propter frūmentī inopiam diūtius apud sē morārī posse cōnfīdēbant; ac jam ut omnia contrā opīniōnem acciderent, tamen sē plūrimum nāvibus posse, Rōmānōs neque ūllam facultātem habēre nāvium, neque eōrum locōrum, ubi bellum gestūrī essent, vada, portūs, īnsulās nōvisse; ac longē aliam esse nāvigātiōnem in conclūsō marī atque in vāstissimō atque apertissimō Ōceanō perspiciēbant. Hīs initīs cōnsiliīs oppida mūniunt, frūmenta ex agrīs in oppida comportant, nāvēs in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem prīmum bellum gestūrum cōnstābat, quam plūrimās possunt, cōgunt. Sociōs sibi ad id bellum Osismōs, Lexoviōs, Namnetēs, Ambiliatōs, Morinōs, Diablintēs, Menapiōs ascīscunt; auxilia ex Britanniā, quae contrā eās regiōnēs posita est, arcessunt.

10. Erant hae difficultātēs bellī gerendī, quās suprā ostendimus, sed multa tamen Caesarem ad id bellum incitābant: injūria retentōrum equitum Rōmānōrum, rebelliō facta post dēditiōnem, dēfectiō datīs obsidibus, tot cīvitātum conjūrātiō, in prīmīs nē, hāc parte neglēctā, reliquae nātiōnēs sibi idem licēre arbitrārentur. Itaque cum intellegeret, omnēs ferē Gallōs novīs rēbus studēre et ad bellum mōbiliter celeriterque excitārī, omnēs autem hominēs nātūrā lībertātī studēre et condiciōnem servitūtis ōdisse, priusquam plūrēs cīvitātēs cōnspīrārent, partiendum sibi ac lātius distribuendum exercitum putāvit.

Caesar stations troops at strategic points to guard against further uprisings.

11. Itaque Titum Labiēnum lēgātum in Trēverōs, quī proximī flūminī Rhēnō sunt, cum equitātū mittit. Huic mandat, Rēmōs reliquōsque Belgās adeat atque in officiō contineat Germānōsque, quī auxiliō ā Belgīs arcessītī dīcēbantur, sī per vim nāvibus flūmen trānsīre cōnentur, prohibeat. Pūblium Crassum cum cohortibus legiōnāriīs XII et magnō numerō equitātūs in Aquītāniam proficīscī jubet, nē ex hīs nātiōnibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nātiōnēs conjungantur. Quīntum Titūrium Sabīnum lēgātum cum legiōnibus tribus in Venellōs, Coriosolitas Lexoviōsque mittit, quī eam manum distinendam cūret. Decimum Brūtum adulēscentem classī Gallicīsque nāvibus, quās ex Pictonibus et Santonīs reliquīsque pācātīs regiōnibus convenīre jusserat, praeficit et, cum prīmum possit, in Venetōs proficīscī jubet. Ipse eō pedestribus cōpiīs contendit.

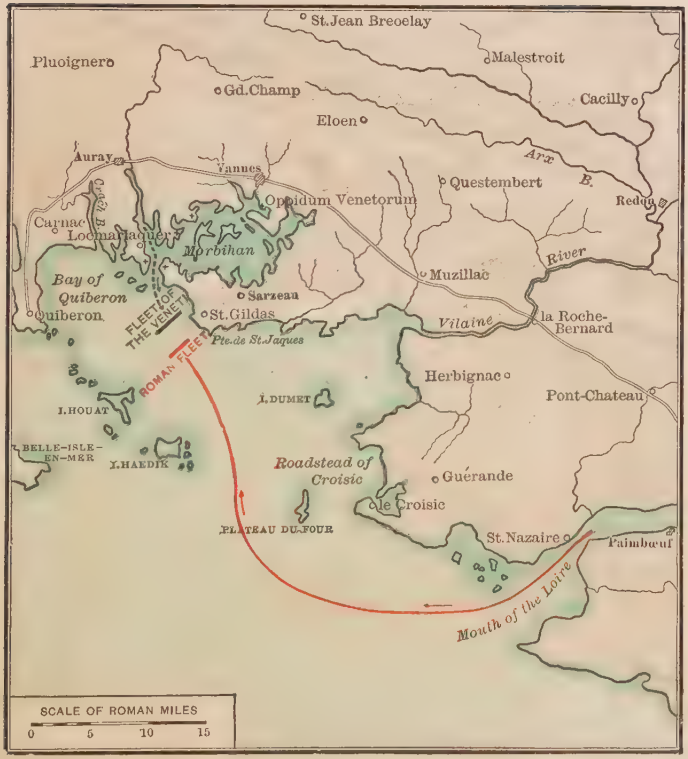
The Romans make slow headway with the war.

12. Erant ejus modī ferē sitūs oppidōrum, ut posita in extrēmīs lingulīs prōmunturiīsque neque pedibus aditum habērent, cum ex altō sē aestus incitāvisset, quod accidit semper hōrārum XII spatiō, neque nāvibus, quod rūrsus minuente aestū nāvēs in vadīs afflīctārentur. Ita utrāque rē oppidōrum oppugnātiō impediēbātur; ac sī quandō, magnitūdine operis forte superātī, extrūsō marī aggere ac mōlibus atque hīs oppidī moenibus adaequātīs, suīs fortūnīs dēspērāre coeperant, magnō numerō nāvium appulsō, cūjus reī summam facultātem habēbant, sua dēportābant omnia sēque in proxima oppida recipiēbant; ibi sē rūrsus īsdem opportūnitātibus locī dēfendēbant. Haec eō facilius magnam partem aestātis faciēbant, quod nostrae nāvēs tempestātibus dētinēbantur, summaque erat vāstō atque apertō marī, magnīs aestibus, rārīs ac prope nūllīs portibus, difficultās nāvigandī.

Construction of the Gallic ships.

13. Namque ipsōrum nāvēs ad hunc modum factae armātaeque erant: carīnae aliquantō plāniōrēs quam nostrārum nāvium, quō facilius vada ac dēcessum aestūs excipere possent; prōrae admodum ērēctae atque item puppēs, ad magnitūdinem flūctuum tempestātumque accommodātae; nāvēs tōtae ex rōbore ad quamvīs vim et contumēliam perferendam; trānstra ex pedālibus in altitūdinem trabibus, cōnfīxa clāvīs ferreīs digitī pollicis crassitūdine; ancorae prō fūnibus ferreīs catēnīs revinctae; pellēs prō vēlīs alūtaeque tenuiter cōnfectae, hae sīve propter līnī inopiam atque ejus ūsūs īnscientiam, sīve eō, quod est magis vērī simile, quod tantās tempes-

CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE VENETI



To face p. 68

tātēs Ōceanī tantōsque impetūs ventōrum sustinērī ac tanta onera nāvium regī vēlīs nōn satis commodē posse arbitrābantur.

Cum hīs nāvibus nostrae classī ejus modī congressus erat, ut ūnā celeritāte et pulsū rēmōrum praestāret, reliqua prō locī nātūrā, prō vī tempestātum illīs essent aptiōra et accommodātiōra. Neque enim hīs nostrae rōstrō nocēre poterant (tanta in eīs erat fīrmitūdō), neque propter altitūdinem facile tēlum adigēbātur, et eādem dē causā minus commodē cōpulīs continēbantur. Accēdēbat, ut, cum saevīre ventus coepisset et sē ventō dedissent, et tempestātem ferrent facilius et in vadīs cōnsisterent tūtius et ab aestū relīctae nihil saxa et cautēs timērent; quārum rērum omnium nostrīs nāvibus cāsus erat extimēscendus.

Naval engagement with the Veneti.

14. Complūribus expugnātīs oppidīs Caesar, ubi intellēxit, frūstrā tantum labōrem sūmī, neque hostium fugam captīs oppidīs reprimī neque eīs nocērī posse, statuit exspectandam classem. Quae ubi convēnit ac prīmum ab hostibus vīsa est, circiter ccxx nāvēs eōrum, parātissimae atque omnī genere armōrum ōrnātissimae, profectae ex portū nostrīs adversae cōnstitērunt; neque satis Brūtō, quī classī praeerat, vel tribūnīs mīlitum centuriōnibusque, quibus singulae nāvēs erant attribūtae, cōnstābat, quid agerent aut quam ratiōnem pugnae īnsisterent. Rōstrō enim nocērī nōn posse cognōverant; turribus autem excitātīs, tamen hās altitūdō puppium ex barbarīs nāvibus superābat, ut neque ex īnferiōre locō satis commodē tēla adigī possent et missa ā Gallīs gravius acciderent.

Ūna erat magnō ūsuī rēs praeparāta ā nostrīs, falcēs praeacūtae īnsertae affīxaeque longuriīs, nōn absimilī

fōrmā mūrālium falcium. Hīs cum fūnēs, quī antemnās ad mālōs dēstinābant, comprehēnsī adductīque erant, nāvigiō rēmīs incitātō praerumpēbantur. Quibus abscīsīs antemnae necessāriō concidēbant, ut, cum omnis Gallicīs nāvibus spēs in vēlīs armamentīsque cōnsisteret, hīs ēreptīs omnis ūsus nāvium ūnō tempore ēripērētur. Reliquum erat certāmen positum in virtūte, quā nostrī mīlitēs facile superābant, atque eō magis, quod in cōnspectū Caesaris atque omnis exercitūs rēs gerēbātur, ut nūllum paulō fortius factum latēre posset; omnēs enim collēs ac loca superiōra, unde erat propinquus dēspectus in mare, ab exercitū tenēbantur.

The Gallic ships are becalmed and many are captured.

15. Dējectīs, ut dīximus, antemnīs, cum singulās bīnae ac ternae nāvēs circumsteterant, mīlitēs summā vī trānscendere in hostium nāvēs contendēbant. Quod postquam barbarī fierī animadvertērunt, expugnātīs complūribus nāvibus, cum eī reī nūllum reperīrētur auxilium, fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Ac jam conversīs in eam partem nāvibus, quō ventus ferēbat, tanta subitō malacia ac tranquillitās exstitit, ut sē ex locō movēre nōn possent. Quae quidem rēs ad negōtium cōnficiendum maximē fuit opportūna; nam singulās nostrī cōnsectātī expugnāvērunt, ut perpaucae ex omnī numerō noctis interventū ad terram pervēnerint, cum ab hōrā ferē quārtā ūsque ad sōlis occāsum pugnārētur.

The Veneti surrender and are sold into slavery.

16. Quō proeliō bellum Venetōrum tōtīusque ōrae maritimae cōnfectum est. Nam cum omnis juventūs, omnēs etiam graviōris aetātis, in quibus aliquid cōnsilī aut digni-

tātis fuit, eō convēnerant, tum, nāvium quod ubīque fuerat, in ūnum locum coēgerant; quibus āmissīs reliquī neque quō sē reciperent, neque quem ad modum oppida dēfenderent, habēbant. Itaque sē suaque omnia Caesarī dēdidērunt. In quōs eō gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quō dīligentius in reliquum tempus ā barbarīs jūs lēgātōrum cōnservārētur. Itaque omnī senātū necātō reliquōs sub corōnā vēndidit.

Chapters 17–19. — The Campaign against the Venelli.

Sabinus takes up his quarters among the Venelli.

17. Dum haec in Venetīs geruntur, Quīntus Titūrius Sabīnus cum eīs cōpiīs, quās ā Caesare accēperat, in fīnēs Venellōrum pervēnit. Hīs praeerat Viridovīx ac summam imperī tenēbat eārum omnium cīvitātum, quae dēfēcerant, ex quibus exercitum magnāsque cōpiās coēgerat; atque hīs paucīs diēbus Aulercī Eburovīcēs Lexoviīque senātū suō interfectō, quod auctōrēs bellī esse nōlēbant, portās clausērunt sēque cum Viridovīce conjūnxērunt; magnaque praetereā multitūdō undique ex Galliā perditōrum hominum latrōnumque convēnerat, quōs spēs praedandī studiumque bellandī ab agrī cultūrā et cotīdiānō labōre sēvocābat.

Sabīnus idōneō omnibus rēbus locō castrīs sēsē tenēbat, cum Viridovīx contrā eum duōrum mīlium spatiō cōnsēdisset cotīdieque prōductīs cōpiīs pugnandī potestātem faceret, ut jam nōn sōlum hostibus in contemptiōnem Sabīnus venīret, sed etiam nostrōrum mīlitum vōcibus nōnnihil carperētur; tantamque opīniōnem timōris prae-

buit, ut jam ad vāllum castrōrum hostēs accēdere audērent. Id eā dē causā faciēbat, quod cum tantā multitūdine hostium, praesertim eō absente, quī summam imperī tenēret, nisi aequō locō aut opportūnitāte aliquā datā, lēgātō dīmicandum nōn exīstimābat.

By pretending fear he induces the Gauls to attack his camp.

18. Hāc cōnfīrmātā opīniōne timōris, idōneum quendam hominem et callidum dēlēgit, Gallum, ex eīs, quōs auxilī causā sēcum habēbat. Huic magnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque persuādet, utī ad hostēs trānseat, et, quid fierī velit, ēdocet. Quī ubi prō perfugā ad eōs vēnit, timōrem Rōmānōrum prōpōnit, quibus angustiīs ipse Caesar ā Venetīs premātur, docet, neque longius abesse, quīn proximā nocte Sabīnus clam ex castrīs exercitum ēdūcat et ad Caesarem auxilī ferendī causā proficīscātur. Quod ubi audītum est, conclāmant omnēs, occāsiōnem negōtī bene gerendī āmittendam nōn esse; ad castra īrī oportēre.

Multae rēs ad hōc cōnsilium Gallōs hortābantur; superiōrum diērum Sabīnī cunctātiō, perfugae cōnfīrmātiō, inopia cibāriōrum, cui reī parum dīligenter ab eīs erat prōvīsum, spēs Veneticī bellī, et quod ferē libenter hominēs id, quod volunt, crēdunt. Hīs rēbus adductī nōn prius Viridovīcem reliquōsque ducēs ex conciliō dīmittunt quam ab hīs sit concessum, arma utī capiant et ad castra contendant. Quā rē concessā laetī, ut explōrātā victōriā, sarmentīs virgultīsque collēctīs, quibus fossās Rōmānōrum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

Defeat of the Gauls.

19. Locus erat castrōrum ēditus et paulātim ab īmō acclīvis circiter passūs mīlle. Hūc magnō cursū contendē-

runt, ut quam minimum spatī ad sē colligendōs armandōsque Rōmānīs darētur, exanimātīque pervēnērunt. Sabīnus suōs hortātus cupientibus sīgnum dat. Impedītīs hostibus propter ea, quae ferēbant, onera, subitō duābus portīs ēruptiōnem fierī jubet. Factum est opportūnitāte locī, hostium īnscientiā ac dēfatīgātiōne, virtūte mīlitum et superiōrum pugnārum exercitātiōne, ut nē ūnum quidem nostrōrum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent. Quōs impedītōs integrīs vīribus mīlitēs nostrī cōnsecūtī magnum numerum eōrum occīdērunt; reliquōs equitēs cōnsectātī paucōs, quī ex fugā ēvāserant, relīquērunt. Sīc ūnō tempore et dē nāvālī pugnā Sabīnus et dē Sabīnī victōriā Caesar certior factus est, cīvitātēsque omnēs sē statim Titūriō dēdidērunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallōrum alacer ac prōmptus est animus, sīc mollis ac minimē resistēns ad calamitātēs perferendās mēns eōrum est.

Chapters 20–27. Crassus in Aquitania.

Crassus is attacked by the Sotiates.

20. Eōdem ferē tempore Pūblius Crassus, cum in Aquītāniam pervēnisset, quae pars, ut ante dictum est, et regiōnum lātitūdine et multitūdine hominum ex tertiā parte Galliae est aestimanda, cum intellegeret, in eīs locīs sibi bellum gerendum ubi paucīs ante annīs Lūcius Valerius Praecōnīnus lēgātus exercitū pulsō interfectus esset atque unde Lūcius Manlius prōcōnsul impedīmentīs āmissīs profūgisset, nōn mediocrem sibi dīligentiam adhibendam intellegēbat. Itaque rē frūmentāriā prōvīsā, auxiliīs equitātūque comparātō, multīs praetereā virīs fortibus Tolōsā, Carcasōne, Narbōne, quae sunt cīvitātēs

Galliae prōvinciae fīnitimae hīs regiōnibus, nōminātim ēvocātīs, in Sōtiātum fīnēs exercitum intrōdūxit. Cūjus adventū cognitō Sōtiātēs magnīs cōpiīs coāctīs equitātūque, quō plūrimum valēbant, in itinere agmen nostrum adortī prīmum equestre proelium commīsērunt, deinde, equitātū suō pulsō atque īnsequentibus nostrīs, subitō pedestrēs cōpiās, quās in convalle in īnsidiīs collocāverant, ostendērunt. Hī nostrōs disjectōs adortī proelium renovārunt.

He routs them and captures their town.

21. Pugnātum est diū atque ācriter, cum Sōtiātēs superiōribus victōriīs frētī in suā virtūte tōtīus Aquītāniae salūtem positam putārent, nostrī autem, quid sine imperātōre et sine reliquīs legiōnibus adulēscentulō duce efficere possent, perspicī cuperent; tandem cōnfectī vulneribus hostēs terga vertērunt. Quōrum magnō numerō interfectō Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sōtiātum oppugnāre coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus, vīneās turrēsque ēgit. Illī aliās ēruptiōne temptātā, aliās cunīculīs ad aggerem vīneāsque āctīs (cūjus reī sunt longē perītissimī Aquītānī, propterea quod multīs locīs apud eōs aerāriae sectūraeque sunt), ubi dīligentiā nostrōrum nihil hīs rēbus prōficī posse intellēxērunt, lēgātōs ad Crassum mittunt, sēque in dēditiōnem ut recipiat, petunt. Quā rē impetrātā, arma trādere jussī faciunt.

Sally of Adiatunnus.

22. Atque in eā rē omnium nostrōrum intentīs animīs, aliā ex parte oppidī Adiatunnus, quī summam imperī tenēbat, cum DC dēvōtīs, quōs illī 'solduriōs' appellant, quōrum haec est condiciō, utī omnibus in vītā

commodīs ūnā cum eīs fruantur, quōrum sē amīcitiae dēdiderint, sī quid hīs per vim accidat, aut eundem cāsum ūnā ferant aut sibi mortem cōnscīscant (neque adhūc hominum memoriā repertus est quisquam, quī eō interfectō, cūjus sē amīcitiae dēvōvisset, mortem recūsāret), cum hīs Adiatunnus ēruptiōnem facere cōnātus, clāmōre ab eā parte mūnītiōnis sublātō, cum ad arma mīlitēs concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnātum esset, repulsus in oppidum tamen, utī eādem dēditiōnis condiciōne ūterētur, ā Crassō impetrāvit.

Crassus comes into the territory of the Vocates and Tarusates.

23. Armīs obsidibusque acceptīs, Crassus in fīnēs Vocātium et Tarusātium profectus est. Tum vērō barbarī commōtī, quod oppidum et nātūrā locī et manū mūnītum paucīs diēbus, quibus eō ventum erat, expugnātum cognōverant, lēgātōs quōqueversus dīmittere, conjūrāre, obsidēs inter sē dare, cōpiās parāre coepērunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eās cīvitātēs lēgātī, quae sunt citeriōris Hispāniae fīnitimae Aquītāniae; inde auxilia ducēsque arcessuntur. Quōrum adventū magnā cum auctōritāte et magnā cum hominum multitūdine bellum gerere cōnantur. Ducēs vērō eī dēliguntur, quī ūnā cum Quīntō Sertōriō omnēs annōs fuerant summamque scientiam reī mīlitāris habēre exīstimābantur. Hī cōnsuētūdine populī Rōmānī loca capere, castra mūnīre, commeātibus nostrōs interclūdere īnstituunt.

Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit, suās cōpiās propter exiguitātem nōn facile dīdūcī, hostem et vagārī et viās obsidēre et castrīs satis praesidī relinquere, ob eam causam minus commodē frūmentum commeātumque sibi supportārī, in diēs hostium numerum augērī, nōn cunctandum

exīstimāvit, quīn pugnā dēcertāret. Hāc rē ad cōnsilium dēlātā, ubi omnēs idem sentīre intellēxit, posterum diem pugnae cōnstituit.

Crassus attacks the enemy's camp.

24. Prīmā lūce prōductīs omnibus cōpiīs, duplicī aciē īnstitūtā, auxiliīs in mediam aciem conjectīs, quid hostēs cōnsilī caperent, exspectābat. Illī, etsī propter multitūdinem et veterem bellī glōriam paucitātemque nostrōrum sē tūtō dīmicātūrōs exīstimābant, tamen tūtius esse arbitrābantur, obsessīs viīs commeātū interclūsō sine üllō vulnere victōriā potīrī, et, sī propter inopiam reī frūmentāriae Rōmānī sēsē recipere coepissent, impedītōs in agmine et sub sarcinīs jam īnfīrmiōrēs animō adorīrī cōgitābant. Hōc cōnsiliō probātō ab ducibus, prōductīs Rōmānōrum cōpiīs, sēsē castrīs tenēbant. Hāc rē perspectā Crassus, cum suā cunctātiōne atque opīniōne timōris hostēs nostrōs mīlitēs alacriōrēs ad pugnandum effēcissent atque omnium vōcēs audīrentur, exspectārī diūtius nōn oportēre, quīn ad castra īrētur, cohortātus suōs omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

The struggle is at first indecisive.

25. Ibi cum aliī fossās complērent, aliī multīs tēlīs conjectīs dēfēnsōrēs vāllō mūnītiōnibusque dēpellerent, auxiliārēsque, quibus ad pugnam nōn multum Crassus cōnfīdēbat, lapidibus tēlīsque sumministrandīs et ad aggerem caespitibus comportandīs speciem atque opīniōnem pugnantium praebērent, cum item ab hostibus cōnstanter ac nōn timidē pugnārētur tēlaque ex locō superiōre missa nōn frūstrā acciderent, equitēs, circumitīs hostium

castrīs, Crassō renūntiāvērunt, nōn eādem esse dīligentiā ab decumānā portā castra mūnīta facilemque aditum habēre.

Victory of the Romans.

26. Crassus equitum praefectōs cohortātus, ut magnīs praemiīs pollicitātiōnibusque suōs excitārent, quid fierī vellet, ostendit. Illī, ut erat imperātum, ēductīs eīs cohortibus, quae praesidiō castrīs relīctae intrītae ab labōre erant, et longiōre itinere circumductīs, nē ex hostium castrīs cōnspicī possent, omnium oculīs mentibusque ad pugnam intentīs, celeriter ad eās, quās dīximus, mūnītiōnēs pervēnērunt atque hīs prōrutīs prius in hostium castrīs cōnstitērunt quam plānē ab hīs vidērī aut, quid reī gererētur, cognōscī posset. Tum vērō, clāmōre ab eā parte audītō, nostrī redintegrātīs vīribus, quod plērumque in spe victōriae accidere cōnsuēvit, ācrius impugnāre coepērunt. Hostēs undique circumventī, dēspērātīs omnibus rēbus, sē per mūnītiōnēs dēicere et fugā salūtem petere contendērunt. Quōs equitātus apertissimīs campīs cōnsectātus, ex mīlium L numerō, quae ex Aquītāniā Cantabrīsque convēnisse cōnstābat, vix quārtā parte relīctā, multā nocte sē in castra recēpit.

The other Aquitanian tribes surrender.

27. Hāc audītā pugnā maxima pars Aquītāniae sēsē Crassō dēdidit obsidēsque ultrō mīsit; quō in numerō fuērunt Tarbellī, Bigerriōnēs, Ptiāniī, Vocātēs, Tarusātēs, Elusātēs, Gatēs, Auscī, Garumnī, Sibuzātēs, Cocosātēs; paucae ultimae nātiōnēs annī tempore cōnfīsae, quod hiems suberat, hōc facere neglēxērunt.

Chapters 28, 29. — Caesar proceeds against the Morini and the Menapii.

The Morini and Menapii retreat to their forests.

28. Eōdem ferē tempore Caesar, etsī prope exācta jam aestās erat, tamen, quod omnī Galliā pācātā Morinī Menapiīque supererant, quī in armīs essent neque ad eum umquam lēgātōs dē pāce mīsissent, arbitrātus id bellum celeriter cōnficī posse, eō exercitum dūxit; quī longē aliā ratiōne ac reliquī Gallī bellum gerere coepērunt. Nam quod intellegēbant, maximās nātiōnēs, quae proeliō contendissent, pulsās superātāsque esse, continentēsque silvās ac palūdēs habēbant, eō sē suaque omnia contulērunt. Ad quārum initium silvārum cum Caesar pervēnisset castraque mūnīre īnstituisset, neque hostis interim vīsus esset, dispersīs in opere nostrīs, subitō ex omnibus partibus silvae ēvolāvērunt et in nostrōs impetum fēcērunt. Nostrī celeriter arma cēpērunt eōsque in silvās reppulērunt et, complūribus interfectīs, longius impedītiōribus locīs secūtī paucōs ex suīs dēperdidērunt.

Caesar's operations for this year are suspended in consequence of heavy storms.

29. Reliquīs deinceps diēbus Caesar silvās caedere īnstituit et, nē quis inermibus imprūdentibusque mīlitibus ab latere impetus fierī posset, omnem eam māteriam, quae erat caesa, conversam ad hostem collocābat et prō vāllō ad utrumque latus exstruēbat. Incrēdibilī celeritāte magnō spatiō paucīs diēbus cōnfectō, cum jam pecus atque extrēma impedīmenta ā nostrīs tenērentur, ipsī dēnsiōrēs silvās peterent, ejus modī sunt tempestātēs cōnsecūtae, utī

opus necessāriō intermitterētur, et continuātiōne imbrium diūtius sub pellibus mīlitēs continērī nōn possent. Itaque vāstātīs omnibus eōrum agrīs, vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs, Caesar exercitum redūxit et in Aulercīs Lexoviīsque, reliquīs item cīvitātibus, quae proximē bellum fēcerant, in hībernīs collocāvit.

BOOK IV.

Chapters 1–15. — The War with the Usipetes and the Tencteri.

The Usipetes and Tencteri enter Gaul.

1. Eā, quae secūta est, hieme, quī fuit annus Cn. Pompejō, M. Crassō cōnsulibus, Usipetēs Germānī et item Tencterī magnā cum multitūdine hominum flūmen Rhēnum trānsiērunt, nōn longē ā marī, quō Rhēnus īnfluit. Causa trānseundī fuit, quod ab Suēbīs complūrēs annōs exagitātī bellō premēbantur et agrī cultūrā prohibēbantur.

Character and customs of the Suebi.

Suēbōrum gēns est longē maxima et bellicōsissima Germānōrum omnium. Hī centum pāgōs habēre dīcuntur, ex quibus quotannīs singula mīlia armātōrum bellandī causā ex fīnibus ēdūcunt. Reliquī, quī domī mānsērunt, sē atque illōs alunt; hī rūrsus in vicem annō post in armīs sunt, illī domī remanent. Sīc neque agrī cultūra nec ratiō atque ūsus bellī intermittitur. Sed prīvātī ac sēparātī agrī apud eōs nihil est, neque longius annō remanēre ūnō in locō colendī causā licet. Neque multum frūmentō, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vīvunt, multumque sunt in vēnātiōnibus; quae rēs et cibī genere et cotīdiānā exercitātiōne et lībertāte vītae, quod, ā puerīs nūllō officiō aut disciplīnā assuēfactī, nihil omnīnō contrā voluntātem faciunt, et vīrēs alit et immānī corporum

CAMPAIGN MAP FOR 55 B.C.
Caesar's Route
Modern names in Parentheses
SCALE OF ROMAN MILES
0 5 10 25 50 75
CENIMAGNI
BRITANNIA
TRINOVANTES
(Tamesis)
MARE
GERMANICUM
CANTIUM
Deal
Dover
BIBROCI
Gallicum
Calais
(C. Gris-Nez)
Fretum
Portus ulterior
(Ambleteuse?)
Itius portus
(Boulogne?)
MORINI
ATREBATES
(Lille)
OCEANUS
(Somme)
Castra Fabii
SAMARA
Nemetocenna (Arras)
Bapaume)
AMBIANI
Samarobriva
(Amiens)
CALETI
VELIOCASSES
Brattuspantium
(Breteuil)
Castra Trebonii
Castra Crassi
BELLOVACI
(Rouen)
Sequana
LEXOVII
(Lisieux)
AULERCI
(Evreux)
EBUROVICES
(Oise)
Sequana
ESUVII
Castra Roscii
Lutetia
(Paris)
PARISII
MELDI
(Meaux)
SUESSIONES
Matrona
(Marne)
(Chalons-s-Marne)
Axona
Noviodunum
Durocortorum
(Reims)
Castra Planci
Bibrax
(Aisne)
(Berry au Bac)
(Laon)
Isara
VIROMANDUI
Rhenus
BATAVORUM INSULA
Vacalus
(Waal)
Mosa
MENAPII
(Lys)
Scaldis
(Scheldt)
EBURONES
(Cologne)
Castra Sabini
Atuatuca
Maestricht
Atuatucorum
oppidum
(Namur)
(Liege)
CONDRUSI
SEGNI
EXVORONES
(Bonn)
Rhenus
Sieg
Lagana
(Coblentz)
Castra
Ciceronis
(Maubeuge)
(Hautmont)
(Cambrai)
(Meuse)
Castra Labieni
TREVERI
(Moselle)
(Mayence)
VANGIONES
(Treves)
(Worms)
NEMETES
Mosella
(Metz)
MEDIOMATRICI
TRIBOCI
Rhenus
Strasburg
USIPETES
Lupia
TENCTERI
Rura
SUGAMBRI

To face p. 80

magnitūdine hominēs efficit. Atque in eam sē cōnsuētūdinem addūxērunt, ut locīs frīgidissimīs neque vestītūs praeter pellēs habērent quicquam (quārum propter exiguitātem magna est corporis pars aperta) et lavārentur in flūminibus.

2. Mercātōribus est aditus magis eō, ut, quae bellō cēperint, quibus vēndant, habeant, quam quō ūllam rem ad sē importārī dēsīderent. Quīn etiam jūmentīs, quibus maximē Gallī dēlectantur quaeque impēnsō parant pretiō, Germānī importātīs nōn ūtuntur, sed quae sunt apud eōs nāta, parva atque dēfōrmia, haec cotīdiānā exercitātiōne, summī ut sint labōris, efficiunt. Equestribus proeliīs saepe ex equīs dēsiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur equōsque eōdem remanēre vēstīgiō assuēfēcērunt, ad quōs sē celeriter, cum ūsus est, recipiunt; neque eōrum mōribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habētur, quam ephippiīs ūtī. Itaque ad quemvīs numerum ephippiātōrum equitum quamvīs paucī adīre audent. Vīnum omnīnō ad sē importārī nōn patiuntur, quod eā rē ad labōrem ferendum remollēscere hominēs atque effēminārī arbitrantur.

3. Pūblicē maximam putant esse laudem, quam lātissimē ā suīs fīnibus vacāre agrōs; hāc rē significārī, magnum numerum cīvitātum suam vim sustinēre nōn posse. Itaque ūnā ex parte ā Suēbīs circiter mīlia passuum centum agrī vacāre dīcuntur. Ad alteram partem succēdunt Ubiī, quōrum fuit cīvitās ampla atque flōrēns, ut est captus Germānōrum. Eī paulō (quamquam sunt ejusdem generis) sunt cēterīs hūmāniōrēs, propterea quod Rhēnum attingunt multumque ad eōs mercātōrēs ventitant et ipsī propter propinquitātem Gallicīs sunt mōribus assuēfactī. Hōs cum Suēbī, multīs saepe bellīs expertī, propter amplitūdinem gravitātemque cīvitātis fīnibus expellere nōn

potuissent, tamen vectīgālēs sibi fēcērunt ac multō humiliōrēs īnfīrmiōrēsque redēgērunt.

The Usipetes and Tencteri overpower the Menapii.

4. In eādem causā fuērunt Usipetēs et Tencterī, quōs suprā dīximus, quī complūrēs annōs Suēbōrum vim sustinuērunt; ad extrēmum tamen agrīs expulsī et multīs locīs Germāniae triennium vagātī ad Rhēnum pervēnērunt, quās regiōnēs Menapiī incolēbant. Hī ad utramque rīpam flūminis agrōs, aedificia vīcōsque habēbant; sed tantae multitūdinis adventū perterritī ex eīs aedificiīs, quae trāns flūmen habuerant, dēmigrāvērunt et cis Rhēnum dispositīs praesidiīs Germānōs trānsīre prohibēbant. Illī omnia expertī, cum neque vī contendere propter inopiam nāvium neque clam trānsīre propter cūstōdiās Menapiōrum possent, revertī sē in suās sēdēs regiōnēsque simulāvērunt et triduī viam prōgressī rūrsus revertērunt atque, omnī hōc itinere ūnā nocte equitātū cōnfectō, īnsciōs inopīnantēsque Menapiōs oppressērunt, quī dē Germānōrum discessū per explōrātōrēs certiōrēs factī sine metū trāns Rhēnum in suōs vīcōs remigrāverant. Hīs interfectīs nāvibusque eōrum occupātīs, priusquam ea pars Menapiōrum, quae citrā Rhēnum erat, certior fieret, flūmen trānsiērunt atque, omnibus eōrum aedificiīs occupātīs, reliquam partem hiemis sē eōrum cōpiīs aluērunt.

The fickleness of the Gauls.

5. Hīs dē rēbus Caesar certior factus et īnfīrmitātem Gallōrum veritus, quod sunt in cōnsiliīs capiendīs mōbilēs et novīs plērumque rēbus student, nihil hīs committendum exīstimāvit. Est enim hōc Gallicae cōnsuētūdinis, utī et viātōrēs etiam invītōs cōnsistere cōgant et, quid quisque

eōrum dē quāque rē audierit aut cognōverit, quaerant, et mercātōrēs in oppidīs vulgus circumsistat quibusque ex regiōnibus veniant quāsque ibi rēs cognōverint, prōnūntiāre cōgant. Hīs rēbus atque audītiōnibus permōtī dē summīs saepe rēbus cōnsilia ineunt, quōrum eōs in vēstīgiō paenitēre necesse est, cum incertīs rūmōribus serviant et plērīque ad voluntātem eōrum fīcta respondeant.

Caesar prepares for war against the Germans.

6. Quā cōnsuētūdine cognitā Caesar, nē graviōrī bellō occurreret, mātūrius, quam cōnsuērat, ad exercitum profīcīscitur. Eō cum vēnisset, ea, quae fore suspicātus erat, facta cognōvit; missās lēgātiōnēs ab nōnnūllīs cīvitātibus ad Germānōs invītātōsque eōs, utī ab Rhēnō discēderent; omniaque, quae postulāssent, ab sē fore parāta. Quā spē adductī Germānī lātius jam vagābantur et in fīnēs Eburōnum et Condrūsōrum, quī sunt Trēverōrum clientēs, pervēnerant. Prīncipibus Galliae ēvocātīs Caesar ea, quae cognōverat, dissimulanda sibi exīstimāvit eōrumque animīs permulsīs et cōnfīrmātīs equitātūque imperātō bellum cum Germānīs gerere cōnstituit.

Defiant attitude of the Usipetes and Tencteri.

7. Rē frūmentāriā comparātā equitibusque dēlēctīs, iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locīs esse Germānōs audiēbat. Ā quibus cum paucōrum diērum iter abesset, lēgātī ab hīs vēnērunt, quōrum haec fuit ōrātiō: Germānōs neque priōrēs populō Rōmānō bellum īnferre, neque tamen recūsāre, sī lacessantur, quīn armīs contendant, quod Germānōrum cōnsuētūdō sit ā mājōribus trādita, quīcumque bellum īnferant, resistere neque dē-

precārī. Haec tamen dīcere, vēnisse invītōs, ējectōs domō; sī suam grātiam Rōmānī velint, posse eīs ūtilēs esse amīcōs; vel sibi agrōs attribuant vel patiantur eōs tenēre, quōs armīs possēderint: sēsē ūnīs Suēbīs concēdere, quibus nē deī quidem immortālēs parēs esse possent; reliquum quidem in terrīs esse nēminem, quem nōn superāre possint.

Caesar insists upon their immediate withdrawal from Gaul.

8. Ad haec Caesar, quae vīsum est, respondit; sed exitus fuit ōrātiōnis: Sibi nūllam cum hīs amīcitiam esse posse, sī in Galliā remanērent; neque vērum esse, quī suōs fīnēs tuērī nōn potuerint, aliēnōs occupāre; neque ūllōs in Galliā vacāre agrōs, quī darī tantae praesertim multitūdinī sine injūriā possint; sed licēre, sī velint, in Ubiōrum fīnibus cōnsīdere quōrum sint lēgātī apud sē et dē Suēbōrum injūriīs querantur et ā sē auxilium petant; hōc sē Ubiīs imperātūrum.

9. Lēgātī haec sē ad suōs relātūrōs dīxērunt et rē dēlīberātā (post diem tertium) ad Caesarem rēversūrōs; intereā nē propius sē castra movēret, petiērunt. Nē id quidem Caesar ab sē impetrārī posse dīxit. Cognōverat enim, magnam partem equitātūs ab eīs aliquot diēbus ante praedandī frūmentandīque causā ad Ambivaritōs trāns Mosam missam; hōs exspectārī equitēs atque ejus reī causā moram interpōnī arbitrābātur.

Description of the Meuse and the Rhine.

10. Mosa prōfluit ex monte Vosegō, quī est in fīnibus Lingonum, et (parte quādam) ex Rhēnō receptā, quae appellātur Vacalus, īnsulam efficit Batāvōrum, neque longius

ab eō mīlibus passuum LXXX in Ōceanum īnfluit. Rhēnus autem oritur ex Lepontiīs, quī Alpēs incolunt, et longō spatiō per fīnēs Nantuātium, Helvētiōrum, Sēquanōrum, Mediomatricōrum, Tribocōrum, Trēverōrum citātus fertur et, ubi Ōceanō appropinquat, in plūrēs diffluit partēs multīs ingentibusque īnsulīs effectīs, quārum pars magna ā ferīs barbarīsque nātiōnibus incolitur (ex quibus sunt, quī piscibus atque ōvīs avium vīvere exīstimantur), multīsque capitibus in Ōceanum īnfluit.

Caesar consents to further negotiations.

11. Caesar cum ab hoste nōn amplius passuum XII mīlibus abesset, ut erat cōnstitūtum, ad eum lēgātī revertuntur; quī in itinere congressī magnopere, nē longius prōgrederētur, ōrābant. Cum id nōn impetrāssent, petēbant, utī ad eōs equitēs, quī āgmen antecessissent, praemitteret eōsque pugnā prohibēret, sibique ut potestātem faceret in Ubiōs lēgātōs mittendī; quōrum sī prīncipēs ac senātus sibi jūre jūrandō fidem fēcisset, eā condiciōne, quae ā Caesare ferrētur, sē ūsūrōs ostendēbant; ad hās rēs cōnficiendās sibi trīduī spatium daret.

Haec omnia Caesar eōdem illō pertinēre arbitrābātur, ut trīduī morā interpositā equitēs eōrum, quī abessent, reverterentur; tamen sēsē nōn longius mīlibus passuum quattuor aquātiōnis causā prōcessūrum eō diē dīxit; hūc posterō diē quam frequentissimī convenīrent, ut dē eōrum postulātīs cognōsceret. Interim ad praefectōs, quī cum omnī equitātū antecesserant, mittit, quī nūntiārent, nē hostēs proeliō lacesserent et, sī ipsī lacesserentur, sustinērent, quoad ipse cum exercitū propius accessisset.

Meanwhile the Germans attack the Roman cavalry.

12. At hostēs, ubi prīmum nostrōs equitēs cōnspexērunt, quōrum erat quīnque mīlium numerus, cum ipsī nōn amplius octingentōs equitēs habērent, quod eī, quī frūmentandī causā ierant trāns Mosam, nōndum redierant, nihil timentibus nostrīs, quod lēgātī eōrum paulō ante ā Caesare discesserant atque is diēs indūtiīs erat ab hīs petītus, impetū factō celeriter nostrōs perturbāvērunt; rūrsus hīs resistentibus, cōnsuētūdine suā ad pedēs dēsiluērunt, subfossīsque equīs complūribusque nostrīs dējectīs, reliquōs in fugam conjēcērunt atque ita perterritōs ēgērunt, ut nōn prius fugā dēsisterent, quam in cōnspectum agminis nostrī vēnissent.

In eō proeliō ex equitibus nostrīs interficiuntur quattuor et septuāgintā, in hīs vir fortissimus, Pīsō Aquītānus, amplissimō genere nātus, cūjus avus in cīvitāte suā rēgnum obtinuerat, amīcus ā senātū nostrō appellātus. Hīc cum frātrī interclūsō ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex perīculō ēripuit, ipse equō vulnerātō dējectus, quoad potuit, fortissimē restitit; cum circumventus, multīs vulneribus acceptīs, cecidisset, atque id frāter, quī jam proeliō excesserat, procul animadvertisset, incitātō equō sē hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

Caesar breaks off further negotiations.

13. Hōc factō proeliō Caesar neque jam sibi lēgātōs audiendōs neque condiciōnēs accipiendās arbitrābātur ab eīs quī per dolum atque insidiās, petītā pāce, ultrō bellum intulissent; exspectāre vērō, dum hostium cōpiae augērentur equitātusque reverterētur, summae dēmentiae esse jūdicābat, et cognitā Gallōrum infirmitāte, quantum

jam apud eōs hostēs ūnō proeliō auctōritātis essent cōnsecūtī, sentiēbat; quibus ad cōnsilia capienda nihil spatī dandum exīstimābat.

Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus et cōnsiliō cum lēgātīs et quaestōre commūnicātō, nē quem diem pugnae praetermitteret, opportūnissima rēs accidit, quod postrīdiē ejus diēī māne eādem simulātiōne et perfidiā ūsī Germānī frequentēs, omnibus prīncipibus majōribusque nātū adhibitīs, ad eum in castra vēnērunt, simul, ut dīcēbātur, suī pūrgandī causā, quod contrā atque esset dictum et ipsī petīssent, proelium prīdiē commīsissent, simul ut, sī quid possent, dē indūtiīs fallendō impetrārent. Quōs sibi Caesar oblātōs gāvīsus, illōs retinērī jussit; ipse omnēs cōpiās castrīs ēdūxit equitātumque, quod recentī proeliō perterritum esse exīstimābat, agmen subsequī jussit.

He attacks and annihilates the German forces.

14. Aciē triplicī īnstitūtā et celeriter VIII mīlium itinere cōnfectō, prius ad hostium castra pervēnit quam, quid agerētur, Germānī sentīre possent. Quī omnibus rēbus subitō perterritī et celeritāte adventūs nostrī et discessū suōrum, neque cōnsilī habendī neque arma capiendī spatiō datō, perturbantur, cōpiāsne adversus hostem dūcere, an castra dēfendere, an fugā salūtem petere praestāret. Quōrum timor cum fremitū et concursū significārētur, mīlitēs nostrī prīstinī diēī perfidiā incitātī in castra irrūpērunt. Quō locō, quī celeriter arma capere potuērunt, paulisper nostrīs restitērunt atque inter carrōs impedīmentaque proelium commīsērunt; at reliqua multitūdō puerōrum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suīs domō excesserant Rhēnumque trānsierant) passim

fugere coepit; ad quōs cōnsectandōs Caesar equitātum mīsit.

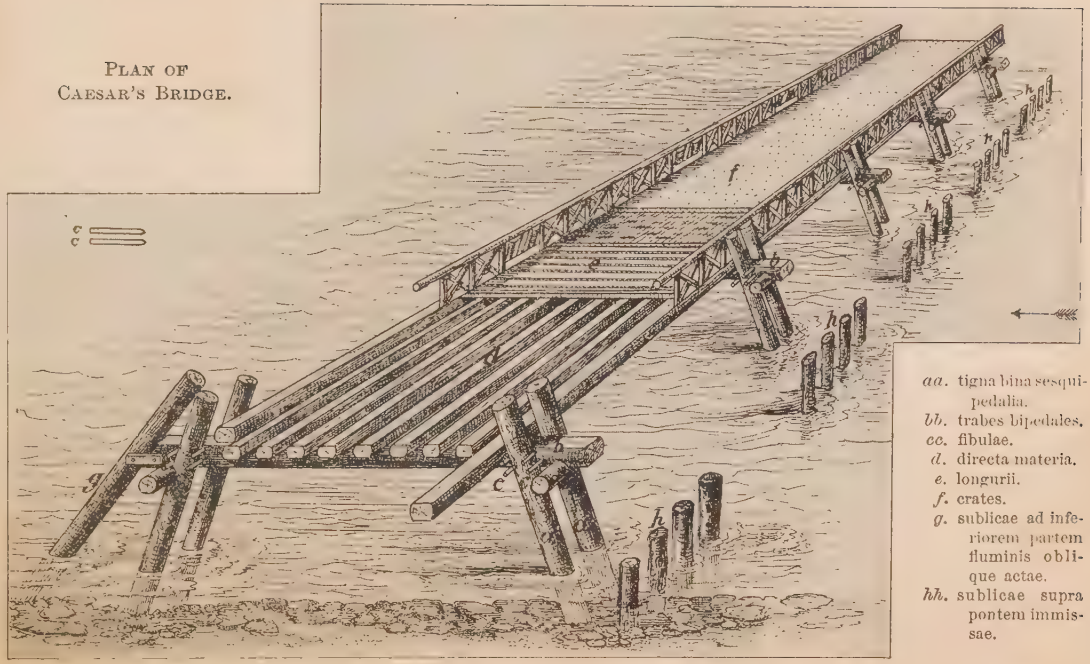
15. Germānī, post tergum clāmōre audītō, cum suōs interficī vidērent, armīs abjectīs signīsque mīlitāribus relictīs sē ex castrīs ējēcērunt, et cum ad cōnfluentem Mosae et Rhēnī pervēnissent, reliquā fugā dēspērātā, magnō numerō interfectō, reliquī sē in flūmen praecipitāvērunt atque ibi timōre, lassitūdine, vī flūminis oppressī periērunt. Nostrī ad ūnum omnēs incolumēs, perpaucīs vulnerātīs, ex tantī bellī timōre, cum hostium numerus capitum cccccxxx mīlium fuisset, sē in castra recēpērunt. Caesar eīs, quōs in castrīs retinuerat, discēdendī potestātem fēcit. Illī supplicia cruciātūsque Gallōrum veritī, quōrum agrōs vexāverant, remanēre sē apud eum velle dīxērunt. Hīs Caesar lībertātem concessit.

Chapters 16–19.—The Expedition into Germany.

Caesar resolves upon an expedition into Germany.

16. Germānicō bellō cōnfectō, multīs dē causīs Caesar statuit sibi Rhēnum esse trānseundum; quārum illa fuit jūstissima, quod, cum vidēret Germānōs tam facile impellī, ut in Galliam venīrent, suīs quoque rēbus eōs timēre voluit, cum intellegerent, et posse et audēre populī Rōmānī exercitum Rhēnum trānsīre. Accessit etiam, quod illa pars equitātūs Usipetum et Tencterōrum, quam suprā commemorāvī praedandī frūmentandīque causā Mosam trānsīsse neque proeliō interfuisse, post fugam suōrum sē trāns Rhēnum in fīnēs Sugambrōrum recēperat sēque cum eīs conjūnxerat. Ad quōs cum Caesar nūntiōs mīsisset, quī postulārent, eōs, quī sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent, sibi dēderent, respondērunt: Populī

PLAN OF
CAESAR'S BRIDGE.



aa. tigna bina sesquipedalia.
bb. trabes bipedales.
cc. fibulae.
d. directa materia.
e. longurii.
f. crates.
g. sublicae ad inferiorem partem fluminis oblique actae.
hh. sublicae supra pontem immissae.

Rōmānī imperium Rhēnum fīnīre; sī (sē invītō) Germānōs in Galliam trānsīre nōn aequum exīstimāret, cūr suī quicquam esse imperī aut potestātis trāns Rhēnum postulāret?

Ubiī autem, quī ūnī ex Trānsrhēnānīs ad Caesarem lēgātōs mīserant, amīcitiam fēcerant, obsidēs dederant, magnopere ōrābant, ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suēbīs premerentur; vel, sī id facere occupātiōnibus reī pūblicae prohibērētur, exercitum modo Rhēnum trānsportāret; id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliquī temporis satis futūrum. Tantum esse nōmen atque opīniōnem ejus exercitūs, Ariovistō pulsō et hōc novissimō proeliō factō, etiam ad ultimās Germānōrum nātiōnēs, utī opīniōne et amīcitiā populī Rōmānī tūtī esse possint. Nāvium magnam cōpiam ad trānsportandum exercitum pollicēbantur.

He bridges the Rhine.

17. Caesar hīs dē causīs, quās commemorāvī, Rhēnum trānsīre dēcrēverat; sed nāvibus trānsīre neque satis tūtum esse arbitrābātur, neque suae neque populī Rōmānī dignitātis esse statuēbat. Itaque, etsī summa difficultās faciendī pontis prōpōnēbātur propter lātitūdinem, rapiditātem altitūdinemque flūminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter nōn trādūcendum exercitum exīstimābat.

Ratiōnem pontis hanc īnstituit. Tigna bīna sēsquipedālia paulum ab īmō praeacūta, dīmēnsa ad altitūdinem flūminis, intervāllō pedum duōrum inter sē jungēbat. Haec cum māchinātiōnibus immissa in flūmen dēfīxerat festūcīsque adēgerat, nōn sublicae modō dērēctē ad perpendiculum, sed prōnē ac fastīgātē, ut secundum nātū-

ram flūminis prōcumberent, hīs item contrāria duo ad eundem modum jūncta, intervāllō pedum quadrāgēnum ab īnferiōre parte contrā vim atque impetum flūminis conversa statuēbat. Haec utraque īnsuper bipedālibus trabibus immissīs, quantum eōrum tignōrum jūnctūra distābat, bīnīs utrimque fībulīs ab extrēmā parte distinēbantur; quibus disclūsīs atque in contrāriam partem revinctīs, tanta erat operis fīrmitūdō atque ea rērum nātūra, ut, quō major vīs aquae sē incitāvisset, hōc artius illigāta tenērentur. Haec dērēctā māteriā injectā contexēbantur ac longuriīs crātibusque cōnsternēbantur; ac nihilō sētius sublicae et ad īnferiōrem partem flūminis oblīquē agēbantur, quae prō ariete subjectae et cum omnī opere conjūnctae vim flūminis exciperent, et aliae item suprā pontem mediocrī spatiō, ut, sī arborum truncī sīve nāvēs dēiciendī causā operis essent ā barbarīs missae, hīs dēfēnsōribus eārum rērum vīs minuerētur, neu pontī nocērent.

Some of the German tribes sue for peace. The Sugambri flee.

18. Diēbus decem, quibus māteria coepta erat comportārī, omnī opere effectō, exercitus trādūcitur. Caesar, ad utramque partem pontis fīrmō praesidiō relictō, in fīnēs Sugambrōrum contendit. Interim ā complūribus cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt; quibus pācem atque amīcitiam petentibus līberāliter respondet obsidēsque ad sē addūcī jubet. At Sugambrī ex eō tempore, quō pōns īnstituī coeptus est, fugā comparātā hortantibus eīs, quōs ex Tencterīs atque Usipetibus apud sē habēbant, fīnibus suīs excesserant suaque omnia exportāverant sēque in sōlitūdinem ac silvās abdiderant.

Caesar lays waste the territory of the Sugambri and returns to Gaul.

19. Caesar paucōs diēs in eōrum fīnibus morātus, omnibus vīcīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs frūmentīsque succīsīs, sē in fīnēs Ubiōrum recēpit atque hīs auxilium suum pollicitus, sī ab Suēbīs premerentur, haec ab eīs cognōvit: Suēbōs, posteāquam per explōrātōrēs pontem fierī comperissent, mōre suō conciliō habitō nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsisse, utī dē oppidīs dēmigrārent, līberōs, uxōrēs suaque omnia in silvīs dēpōnerent atque omnēs, quī arma ferre possent, ūnum in locum convenīrent; hunc esse dēlēctum medium ferē regiōnum eārum, quās Suēbī obtinērent; hīc Rōmānōrum adventum exspectāre atque ibi dēcertāre cōnstituisse.

Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus eīs rēbus cōnfectīs, quārum rērum causā trādūcere exercitum cōnstituerat, ut Germānīs metum iniceret, ut Sugambrōs ulcīscerētur, ut Ubiōs obsidiōne līberāret, diēbus omnīnō XVIII trāns Rhēnum cōnsūmptīs, satis et ad laudem et ad ūtilitātem prōfectum arbitrātus, sē in Galliam recēpit pontemque rescidit.

Chapters 20–36. — The Expedition to Britain.

Caesar decides to invade Britain.

20. Exiguā parte aestātis reliquā Caesar, etsī in hīs locīs, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriōnēs vergit, mātūrae sunt hiemēs, tamen in Britanniam proficīscī contendit, quod omnibus ferē Gallicīs bellīs hostibus nostrīs inde sumministrāta auxilia intellegēbat et, sī tempus annī ad bellum gerendum dēficeret, tamen magnō sibi ūsuī fore arbitrābātur, sī modo īnsulam adīsset, genus hominum

perspexisset, loca, portūs, aditūs cognōvisset; quae omnia ferē Gallīs erant incognita. Neque enim temere praeter mercātōrēs illō adit quisquam, neque eīs ipsīs quicquam praeter ōram maritimam atque eās regiōnēs, quae sunt contrā Galliās, nōtum est. Itaque vocātīs ad sē undique mercātōribus, neque quanta esset īnsulae magnitūdō, neque quae aut quantae nātiōnēs incolerent, neque quem ūsum bellī habērent aut quibus īnstitūtīs ūterentur, neque quī essent ad majōrem nāvium multitūdinem idōneī portūs, reperīre poterat.

The Britons send assurances of friendship.

21. Ad haec cognōscenda, priusquam perīculum faceret, idōneum esse arbitrātus Gāium Volusēnum cum nāvī longā praemittit. Huic mandat, ut, explōrātīs omnibus rēbus, ad sē quam prīmum revertātur. Ipse cum omnibus cōpiīs in Morinōs proficīscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trājectus. Hūc nāvēs undique ex fīnitimīs regiōnibus et, quam superiōre aestāte ad Veneticum bellum effēcerat classem, jubet convenīre.

Interim cōnsiliō ejus cognitō et per mercātōrēs perlātō ad Britannōs, ā complūribus ejus īnsulae cīvitātibus ad eum lēgātī veniunt, quī polliceantur obsidēs dare atque imperiō populī Rōmānī obtemperāre. Quibus audītīs, līberāliter pollicitus hortātusque, ut in eā sententiā permanērent, eōs domum remittit et cum eīs ūnā Commium, quem ipse Atrebātibus superātīs rēgem ibi cōnstituerat, cūjus et virtūtem et cōnsilium probābat et quem sibi fidēlem esse arbitrābātur cūjusque auctōritās in hīs regiōnibus magnī habēbātur, mittit. Huic imperat, quās possit, adeat cīvitātes hortēturque, ut populī Rōmānī fidem sequantur, sēque celeriter eō ventūrum nūntiet.

Volusēnus, perspectīs regiōnibus omnibus, quantum eī facultātis darī potuit, quī nāvī ēgredī ac sē barbarīs committere nōn audēret, quīntō diē ad Caesarem revertitur, quaeque ibi perspexisset, renūntiat.

The Morini apologize for their hostile attitude of the year before.

22. Dum in hīs locīs Caesar nāvium parandārum causā morātur, ex magnā parte Morinōrum ad eum lēgātī vēnērunt, quī sē dē superiōris temporis cōnsiliō excūsārent, quod hominēs barbarī et nostrae cōnsuētūdinis imperītī bellum populō Rōmānō fēcissent, sēque ea, quae imperāsset, factūrōs pollicērentur. Hōc sibi Caesar satis opportūnē accidisse arbitrātus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volēbat neque bellī gerendī propter annī tempus facultātem habēbat neque hās tantulārum rērum occupātiōnēs sibi Britanniae antepōnendās jūdicābat, magnum eīs numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductīs eōs in fidem recēpit.

Rendezvous of the fleet.

Nāvibus circiter LXXX onerāriīs coāctīs, quot satis esse ad duās trānsportandās legiōnēs exīstimābat, quod praetereā nāvium longārum habēbat, quaestōrī, lēgātīs praefectīsque distribuit. Hūc accēdēbant XVIII onerāriae nāvēs, quae ex eō locō ā mīlibus passuum VIII ventō tenēbantur, quōminus in eundem portum venīre possent; hās equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exercitum Q. Titūriō Sabīnō et L. Aurunculēiō Cottae lēgātīs in Menapiōs atque in eōs pāgōs Morinōrum, ā quibus ad eum lēgātī nōn vēnerant, dūcendum dedit; P. Sulpicium Rūfum lēgātum cum eō praesidiō, quod satis esse arbitrābātur, portum tenēre jussit.

The expedition sails.

23. Hīs cōnstitūtīs rēbus, nactus idōneam ad nāvigandum tempestātem tertiā ferē vigiliā nāvēs solvit equitēsque in ulteriōrem portum prōgredī et nāvēs cōnscendere et sē sequī jussit. Ā quibus cum paulō tardius esset administrātum, ipse hōrā diēī circiter quārtā cum prīmīs nāvibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositās hostium cōpiās armātās cōnspexit. Cūjus locī haec erat nātūra, atque ita montibus angustē mare continēbātur, utī ex locīs superiōribus in lītus tēlum adigī posset. Hunc ad ēgrediendum nēquāquam idōneum locum arbitrātus, dum reliquae nāvēs eō convenīrent, ad hōram nōnam in ancorīs exspectāvit.

Interim lēgātīs tribūnīsque mīlitum convocātīs, et quae ex Volusēnō cognōvisset, et quae fierī vellet, ostendit monuitque (ut reī mīlitāris ratiō, maximēque ut maritimae rēs postulārent, ut quae celerem atque īnstabilem mōtum habērent), ad nūtum et ad tempus omnēs rēs ab eīs administrārentur. Hīs dīmissīs et ventum et aestum ūnō tempore nactus secundum, datō signō et sublātīs ancorīs circiter mīlia passuum septem ab eō locō prōgressus, apertō ac plānō lītore nāvēs cōnstituit.

The Britons oppose the disembarkation of the Romans.

24. At barbarī, cōnsiliō Rōmānōrum cognitō, praemissō equitātū et essedāriīs, quō plērumque genere in proeliīs ūtī cōnsuērunt, reliquīs cōpiīs subsecūtī nostrōs nāvibus ēgredī prohibēbant. Erat ob hās causās summa difficultās, quod nāvēs propter magnitūdinem nisi in altō cōnstituī nōn poterant, mīlitibus autem, ignōtīs locīs, impedītīs manibus, magnō et gravī onere armōrum oppressīs simul et dē nāvibus dēsiliendum et in flūctibus cōnsisten-

dum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum, cum illī aut ex āridō aut paulum in aquam prōgressī, omnibus membrīs expedītīs, nōtissimīs locīs, audācter tēla conicerent et equōs īnsuēfactōs incitārent. Quibus rēbus nostrī perterritī atque hūjus omnīnō generis pugnae imperītī nōn eādem alacritāte ac studiō, quō in pedestribus ūtī proeliīs cōnsuērant, ūtēbantur.

Caesar forces a landing.

25. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, nāvēs longās, quārum et speciēs erat barbarīs inūsitātior et mōtus ad ūsum expedītior, paulum removērī ab onerāriīs nāvibus et rēmīs incitārī et ad latus apertum hostium cōnstituī atque inde fundīs, sagittīs, tormentīs hostēs prōpellī ac summovērī jussit; quae rēs magnō ūsuī nostrīs fuit. Nam et nāvium figūrā et rēmōrum mōtū et inūsitātō genere tormentōrum permōtī barbarī cōnstitērunt ac paulum modo pedem rettulērunt. Atque nostrīs mīlitibus cunctantibus, maximē propter altitūdinem maris, quī decimae legiōnis aquilam ferēbat, obtestātus deōs, ut ea rēs legiōnī fēlīciter ēvenīret, "Dēsilīte," inquit, "commīlitōnēs, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prōdere; ego certē meum reī pūblicae atque imperātōrī officium praestiterō." Hōc cum vōce magnā dīxisset, sē ex nāvī prōjēcit atque in hostēs aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostrī cohortātī inter sē, nē tantum dēdecus admitterētur, ūniversī ex nāvī dēsiluērunt. Hōs item ex proximīs nāvibus cum cōnspexissent, subsecūtī hostibus appropinquārunt.

The Britons are defeated and submit.

26. Pugnātum est ab utrīsque ācriter. Nostrī tamen, quod neque ōrdinēs servāre neque fīrmiter īnsistere neque

signa subsequī poterant, atque alius aliā ex nāvī, quibuscumque signīs occurrerat, sē aggregābat, magnopere perturbābantur; hostēs vērō, nōtīs omnibus vadīs, ubi ex lītore aliquōs singulārēs ex nāvī ēgredientēs cōnspexerant, incitātīs equīs impedītōs adoriēbantur, plūrēs paucōs circumsistēbant, aliī ab latere apertō in ūniversōs tēla coniciēbant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphās longārum nāvium, item speculātōria nāvigia mīlitibus complērī jussit et, quōs labōrantēs cōnspexerat, hīs subsidia summittēbat. Nostrī, simul in āridō cōnstitērunt, suīs omnibus cōnsecūtīs in hostēs impetum fēcērunt atque eōs in fugam dedērunt; neque longius prōsequī potuērunt, quod equitēs cursum tenēre atque īnsulam capere nōn potuerant. Hōc ūnum ad prīstinam fortūnam Caesarī dēfuit.

27. Hostēs proeliō superātī, simul atque sē ex fugā recēpērunt, statim ad Caesarem lēgātōs dē pāce mīsērunt; obsidēs datūrōs, quaeque imperāsset, esse factūrōs pollicitī sunt. Ūnā cum hīs lēgātīs Commius Atrebās vēnit, quem suprā dēmōnstrāveram ā Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illī ē nāvī ēgressum, cum ad eōs ōrātōris modō Caesaris mandāta dēferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula conjēcerant; tum proeliō factō remīsērunt et in petendā pāce ejus reī culpam in multitūdinem contulērunt et, propter imprūdentiam ut ignōscerētur, petīvērunt.

Caesar questus, quod, cum ultrō in continentem lēgātīs missīs pācem ab sē petīssent, bellum sine causā intulissent, ignōscere imprūdentiae dīxit obsidēsque imperāvit; quōrum illī partem statim dedērunt, partem ex longinquiōribus locīs arcessītam paucīs diēbus sēsē datūrōs dīxērunt. Intereā suōs remigrāre in agrōs jussērunt,

prīncipēsque undique convenīre et sē cīvitātēsque suās Caesarī commendāre coepērunt.

The cavalry transports are prevented by a storm from landing.

28. Hīs rēbus pāce cōnfīrmātā, post diem quārtum quam est in Britanniam ventum, nāvēs XVIII, dē quibus suprā dēmōnstrātum est, quae equitēs sustulerant, ex superiōre portū lēnī ventō solvērunt. Quae cum appropinquārent Britanniae et ex castrīs vidērentur, tanta tempestās subitō coorta est, ut nūlla ēārum cursum tenēre posset, sed aliae eōdem, unde erant profectae, referrentur, aliae ad īnferiōrem partem īnsulae, quae est propius sōlis occāsum, magnō suō cum perīculō dēicerentur; quae tamen ancorīs jactīs cum flūctibus complērentur, necessāriō adversā nocte in altum prōvectae continentem petiērunt.

A high tide damages Caesar's fleet.

29. Eādem nocte accidit, ut esset lūna plēna, quī diēs maritimōs aestūs maximōs in Ōceanō efficere cōnsuēvit, nostrīsque id erat incognitum. Ita ūnō tempore et longās nāvēs, quibus Caesar exercitum trānsportandum cūrāverat, quāsque in āridum subdūxerat, aestus complēbat et onerāriās, quae ad ancorās erant dēligātae, tempestās afflīctābat, neque ūlla nostrīs facultās aut administrandī aut auxiliandī dabātur. Complūribus nāvibus frāctīs, reliquae cum essent, fūnibus, ancorīs reliquīsque armāmentīs āmissīs, ad nāvigandum inūtilēs, magna, id quod necesse erat accidere, tōtīus exercitūs perturbātiō facta est. Neque enim nāvēs erant aliae, quibus reportārī possent, et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendās nāvēs erant ūsuī, et, quod omnibus cōnstābat, hiemārī in Galliā

oportēre, frūmentum in hīs locīs in hiemem prōvīsum nōn erat.

The Britons assume a hostile attitude.

30. Quibus rēbus cognitīs prīncipēs Britanniae, quī post proelium ad Caesarem convēnerant, inter sē collocūtī, cum et equitēs et nāvēs et frūmentum Rōmānīs deesse intellegerent et paucitātem mīlitum ex castrōrum exiguitāte cognōscerent, quae hōc erant etiam angustiōra, quod sine impedīmentīs Caesar legiōnēs trānsportāverat, optimum factū esse dūxērunt, rebelliōne factā, frūmentō commeātūque nostrōs prohibēre et rem in hiemem prōdūcere, quod hīs superātīs aut reditū interclūsīs nēminem posteā bellī īnferendī causā in Britanniam trānsitūrum cōnfīdēbant. Itaque rūrsus, conjūrātiōne factā, paulātim ex castrīs discēdere et suōs clam ex agrīs dēdūcere coepērunt.

Caesar meanwhile repairs his fleet.

31. At Caesar, etsī nōndum eōrum cōnsilia cognōverat, tamen et ex ēventū nāvium suārum et ex eō, quod obsidēs dare intermīserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicābātur. Itaque ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. Nam et frūmentum ex agrīs cotīdiē in castra cōnferēbat et, quae gravissimē afflictae erant nāvēs, eārum māteriā atque aere ad reliquās reficiendās ūtēbātur et, quae ad eās rēs erant ūsuī, ex continentī comparārī jubēbat. Itaque, cum summō studiō ā mīlitibus administrārētur, XII nāvibus āmissīs, reliquīs ut nāvigārī satis commodē posset, effēcit.

The Britons attack the seventh legion in the grain fields.

32. Dum ea geruntur, legiōne ex cōnsuētūdine ūnā frūmentātum missā, quae appellābātur septima, neque ūllā ad id tempus bellī suspīciōne interpositā, cum pars

hominum in agrīs remanēret, pars etiam in castra ventitāret, eī, quī prō portīs castrōrum in statiōne erant, Caesarī nūntiāvērunt, pulverem majōrem, quam cōnsuētūdō ferret, in eā parte vidērī, quam in partem legiō iter fēcisset. Caesar id, quod erat, suspicātus, aliquid novī ā barbarīs initum cōnsilī, cohortēs, quae in statiōnibus erant, sēcum in eam partem proficīscī, ex reliquīs duās in statiōnem cohortēs succēdere, reliquās armārī et cōnfestim sēsē subsequī jussit.

Cum paulō longius ā castrīs prōcessisset, suōs ab hostibus premī atque aegrē sustinēre et cōnfertā legiōne ex omnibus partibus tēla conicī animadvertit. Nam quod, omnī ex reliquīs partibus dēmessō frūmentō, pars ūna erat reliqua, suspicātī hostēs, hūc nostrōs esse ventūrōs, noctū in silvīs dēlituerant; tum dispersōs dēpositīs armīs in metendō occupātōs subitō adortī, paucīs interfectīs reliquōs incertīs ōrdinibus perturbāverant, simul equitātū atque essedīs circumdederant.

Chariot fighting of the Britons.

33. Genus hōc est ex essedīs pugnae. Prīmō per omnēs partēs perequitant et tēla coniciunt atque ipsō terrōre equōrum et strepitū rotārum ōrdinēs plērumque perturbant, et cum sē inter equitum turmās īnsinuāvērunt, ex essedīs dēsiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurīgae interim paulātim ex proeliō excēdunt atque ita currūs collocant, ut, sī illī ā multitūdine hostium premantur, expedītum ad suōs receptum habeant. Ita mōbilitātem equitum, stabilitātem peditum in proeliīs praestant ac tantum ūsū cotīdiānō et exercitātiōne efficiunt, utī in dēclīvī ac praecipitī locō incitātōs equōs sustinēre et brevī moderārī ac flectere et per tēmōnem percurrere

et in jugō īnsistere et sē inde in currūs citissimē recipere cōnsuērint.

The Britons are defeated and sue for peace. Caesar returns to Gaul.

34. Quibus rēbus perturbātīs nostrīs novitāte pugnae tempore opportūnissimō Caesar auxilium tulit; namque ejus adventū hostēs cōnstitērunt, nostrī sē ex timōre recēpērunt. Quō factō ad lacessendum hostem et ad committendum proelium aliēnum esse tempus arbitrātus, suō sē locō continuit et brevī tempore intermissō in castra legiōnēs redūxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostrīs omnibus occupātīs, quī erant in agrīs reliquī, discessērunt. Secūtae sunt continuōs complūrēs diēs tempestātēs, quae et nostrōs in castrīs continērent et hostem ā pugnā prohibērent. Interim barbarī nūntiōs in omnēs partēs dīmīsērunt paucitātemque nostrōrum mīlitum suīs praedicāvērunt et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum suī līberandī facultās darētur, sī Rōmānōs castrīs expulissent, dēmōnstrāvērunt. Hīs rēbus celeriter magnā multitūdine peditātūs equitātūsque coāctā, ad castra vēnērunt.

35. Caesar, etsī idem, quod superiōribus diēbus acciderat, fore vidēbat, ut, sī essent hostēs pulsī, celeritāte perīculum effugerent, tamen nactus equitēs circiter xxx, quōs Commius Atrebās, dē quō ante dictum est, sēcum trānsportāverat, legiōnēs in aciē prō castrīs cōnstituit. Commissō proeliō diūtius nostrōrum mīlitum impetum hostēs ferre nōn potuērunt ac terga vertērunt. Quōs tantō spatiō secūtī, quantum cursū et vīribus efficere potuērunt, complūrēs ex eīs occīdērunt, deinde, omnibus longē lātēque aedificiīs incēnsīs, sē in castra recēpērunt.

36. Eōdem diē lēgātī ab hostibus missī ad Caesarem dē pāce vēnērunt. Hīs Caesar numerum obsidum, quem ante imperāverat, duplicāvit eōsque in continentem addūcī jussit, quod propinquā diē aequinoctī īnfīrmīs nāvibus hiemī nāvigātiōnem subiciendam nōn exīstimābat. Ipse idōneam tempestātem nactus paulō post mediam noctem nāvēs solvit; quae omnēs incolumēs ad continentem pervēnērunt; sed ex eīs onerāriae duae eōsdem portūs, quōs reliquae, capere nōn potuērunt, et paulō īnfrā dēlātae sunt.

Chapters 37, 38. — The Rebellion of the Morini.

The Morini attack a small body of Romans as they disembark.

37. Quibus ex nāvibus cum essent expositī mīlitēs circiter trecentī atque in castra contenderent, Morinī, quōs Caesar in Britanniam proficīscēns pācātōs relīquerat, spē praedae adductī prīmō nōn ita magnō suōrum numerō circumstetērunt ac, sī sēsē interficī nōllent, arma pōnere jussērunt. Cum illī orbe factō sēsē dēfenderent, celeriter ad clāmōrem hominum circiter mīlia sex convēnērunt. Quā rē nūntiātā Caesar omnem ex castrīs equitātum suīs auxiliō mīsit. Interim nostrī mīlitēs impetum hostium sustinuērunt atque amplius hōrīs quattuor fortissimē pugnāvērunt et paucīs vulneribus acceptīs complūrēs ex hīs occīdērunt. Posteā vērō quam equitātus noster in cōnspectum vēnit, hostēs abjectīs armīs terga vertērunt magnusque eōrum numerus est occīsus.

The Morini fall into the hands of Labienus.

38. Caesar posterō diē Titum Labiēnum lēgātum cum eīs legiōnibus, quās ex Britanniā redūxerat, in Morinōs,

quī rebelliōnem fēcerant, mīsit. Quī cum propter siccitātēs palūdum, quō sē reciperent, nōn habērent, quō perfugiō superiōre annō fuerant ūsī, omnēs ferē in potestātem Labiēnī pervēnērunt. At Q. Titūrius et L. Cotta lēgātī, quī in Menapiōrum fīnēs legiōnēs dūxerant, omnibus eōrum agrīs vāstātīs, frūmentīs succīsīs aedificiīsque incēnsīs, quod Menapiī sē omnēs in dēnsissimās silvās abdiderant, sē ad Caesarem recēpērunt.

The Roman army goes into winter quarters. Thanksgiving at Rome.

Caesar in Belgīs omnium legiōnum hīberna cōnstituit. Eō duae omnīnō cīvitātēs ex Britanniā obsidēs mīsērunt, reliquae neglēxērunt.

Hīs rēbus gestīs, ex litterīs Caesaris diērum vīgintī supplicātiō ā senātū dēcrēta est.

NOTES.

B. = Bennett's *Latin Grammar;* A = Allen and Greenough's *New Latin Grammar;* G. = Gildersleeve's *Latin Grammar;* H. = Harkness' *Complete Latin Grammar.*

BOOK I.

Page 1, Line 1. **Gallia omnis**: *Gaul as a whole*, or better, *Gaul in the wide sense*, as opposed to the narrow sense of *Gallia*, which embraces merely the country between the Seine and Garonne rivers. 'Gaul in the wide sense' is Farther Gaul (*Gallia ulterior*), *i.e.* Gaul beyond the Alps. There was also a Hither Gaul (*Gallia citerior*), lying south of the Alps in what is now northern Italy. Farther Gaul, the scene of the events described in this volume, was roughly identical with modern France, but extended somewhat farther north and east, as Caesar himself tells us later on in this chapter. Note the special emphasis on *omnis*, as indicated by its position after its noun; *omnis* regularly precedes the noun it limits. **est divisa**: *is divided; divisa* is here a participial adjective used predicatively; B. 337, 2; A. 495; G. 250, R. 2; H. 640, 3. **partes tres**: in most Latin writers cardinal numerals precede their nouns, but Caesar usually places the cardinal after the noun. **quarum**: Genitive of the Whole; B. 201, 1; A. 346, *a*, 1; G. 367; H. 442.

2. **unam, aliam, tertiam**: understand *partem* with each of these words. The literal translation of the relative clause is: *of which the Belgae inhabit one, the Aquitani another, the third, those who in their own language, etc.* But this is somewhat awkward, and it is better to render: *of which one is inhabited by the Belgae, another by the Aquitani, the third by those who in their own language, etc.* In general, the pupil may follow this rule: *Never translate literally unless the Latin idiom conforms to the English.* Very frequently the idioms of the two languages differ, and then it is necessary to reproduce the Latin thought in fitting English form. Always remember, however, that the key to the construction of the Latin words is to be sought not in the free English rendering, but in a literal translation. Thus here *unam* (*partem*), *aliam* (*partem*), *tertiam* (*partem*) are the objects of

incolunt, and *Belgae*, *Aquitani*, are its subjects. **Belgae, Aquitani**: as regards Latin proper names, usage sanctions only one pronunciation, *viz.* the English, with the accent on the same syllable as in the Latin word. Thus the words *Belgae*, *Aquitani*, are to be pronounced *Bĕl-jee*, *Ăk-wĭ-tā-nī*. Another method of dealing with these proper names is to convert them into English forms, as: *Belgians, Aquitanians, etc.* But this is admissible only in case of proper names of frequent occurrence, such as those just cited. In the case of most it is best to keep the Latin form with the English pronunciation. **qui**: the antecedent of *qui* is *ei* ('those') to be supplied in thought. This *ei*, like *Belgae* and *Aquitani*, is one of the subjects of *incolunt*. **ipsorum lingua**: *in their own language;* literally, *in the language of themselves; lingua* is an Ablative of Accordance; B. 220, 3; A. 418, *a* and N.; G. 399, N. 1; H. 475, 3.

3. **Celtae, Galli**: these words are predicate nominatives. They are the predicates of *qui*, the subject of *appellantur*. Verbs of calling very frequently take this construction; B. 168, 2, *b*; A. 284; G. 256; H. 393, 8. Note that *Galli*, as applied to the inhabitants of the central division of Gaul, is used in the narrow sense of the term, just as *Gallia* in the narrow sense applies to the central division itself. **nostra**: understand *lingua*, in the same construction as *lingua* before *Celtae*.

4. **lingua, institutis, legibus**: *in* (literally, *in respect to*) *language, institutions,* (*and*) *laws;* Ablative of Specification; B. 226; A. 418; G. 397; H. 480, 3. In enumerations the Latin form of expression is more varied than the English. In English we regularly say 'language, institutions, *and* laws'; but in Latin it is very common to omit the connective between all the members of the series, as here, — *language, institutions, laws.* Other Latin forms of expression in such series are to insert *et* between all the objects enumerated (for example, *lingua et institutis et legibus*), or to use *-que* joined to the last member of the series (for example, *lingua, institutis, legibusque*). But the Romans carefully avoided using *et* to connect the last two words of such enumerations (unless, as explained, *et* was used with *all* the members of the series); B. 341, 4, *a*; A. 323, *c*; G. 474, N.; H. 657, 6. **inter se**: *from each other;* literally, *among*, or *between, themselves.* In such expressions *se* is a reciprocal pronoun.

5. **Matrona et Sequana dividit**: although the subject is compound, the verb is singular, since the compound subject is thought of as a whole, the Seine being a continuation of the Marne; B. 255, 3; A. 317, *b*; G. 285, 2; H. 392, 4.

7. **horum omnium**: Genitive of the Whole; B. 201, 1; A. 346, *a*, 2; G. 367; H. 442. **propterea quod**: *because;* literally, *on account of this, (namely) that.*

8. **cultu atque humanitate**: *civilization and refinement.* **provinciae**: *of the Province.* The Province was an extensive district in southeastern France, which had been subdued by the Romans and organized as a province in 120 B.C., some sixty odd years before the events soon to be narrated. It was later called *Gallia Narbonensis*, from Narbo, its capital. The old Roman name *provincia* survives in the modern name of this district, Provence.

9. **minimeque . . . commeant**: the second reason for the sturdiness of the Belgae. In translating this clause it is advisable to bring out its relationship by repeating the conjunction 'because.' **minime saepe**: *very rarely;* literally, *least often.* **mercatores**: these traders came from such southern marts as Massilia (Marseilles).

10. **ea**: *those (things).* **ad effeminandos animos**: *toward weakening the character*, or, *to weaken the character.* The pupil, however, should note that in the Latin *animos* is governed by *ad*, while *effeminandos* limits *animos;* literally, therefore, *to the character being weakened.* English has no idiom directly corresponding to this Latin gerundive construction; B. 338, 3, 339, 2; A. 506; G. 427; H. 628. Note that the Latin has the plural *animos*, where the English naturally uses the singular. Where a distinct reference to several things is involved, the Latin is often more exact than the English, and employs the plural; so here; B. 353, 1.

11. **proximique sunt**, *etc.:* the third reason for the superior bravery of the Belgae. **Germanis**: the dative depends on *proximi;* B. 192, 1; A. 384; G. 359; H. 434, 2.

12. **quibuscum**: *i.e. cum quibus; cum* is often thus appended to relative pronouns; B. 142, 4; A. 150, *d*; G. 413, R.; H. 182, 2. **qua de causa**: *and for this reason;* literally, *from which reason.* Notice that Latin favors the use of the relative at the beginning of the sentence where in English we naturally employ a demonstrative (often with a conjunction), *i.e.* Latin *which, who* = English *and this, but this, and he, but he, etc.;* B. 251, 6; A. 308, *f* and R.; G. 610; H. 510. Prepositions are often thus placed between the noun and the adjective limiting it.

13. **Helvetii quoque**: *i.e.* the Helvetians too, as well as the Belgae; note that *quoque* always stands immediately after the word it emphasizes. **reliquos Gallos**: the Helvetii are reckoned by Caesar as Gauls. This is substantially correct. They probably belonged to the great

Celtic race. **virtute**: Ablative of Specification, like *lingua* above in line 4; B. 226; A. 418; G. 397; H. 480.

14. **proeliis**: *in battle;* but the ablative is one of Means; B. 218, 7.

15. **suis finibus**: *from their own borders* or *territory;* note that the possessive when emphatic regularly stands before its noun; B. 243, 1, *a*; H. 675; *finibus* is Ablative of Separation; B. 214, 2; A. 400; G. 390, 2; H. 464, 1. **prohibent, gerunt**: as subject understand in thought *ei*, referring to the Helvetii; *eos* and *eorum* refer to the Germans.

17. **eorum una pars**: *one district of this land;* literally, *of them; eorum* properly refers to the inhabitants, but Caesar loosely uses it as referring to the country itself. **quam . . . dictum est**: (*namely the one*) *which it has been stated that the Gauls occupy;* literally, *the Gauls to occupy which, has been stated. Gallos* is the subject accusative of the infinitive *obtinere*, *quam* the object, while *obtinere* is the subject of the impersonal *dictum est;* B. 330; A. 561 and *a*, 566, *b*; G. 528; H. 615. Note that Caesar is here using *Gallos* in the narrower sense of the inhabitants of the central division of Gaul. This is his regular use of the term.

18. **a flumine Rhodano**: *at the River Rhone;* literally, *from the River Rhone;* but the Romans were very apt to speak of the place from which a thing presented itself to the eye of the observer or the mind of the speaker, instead of mentioning the spot where a thing was. Caesar says that this district begins at the Rhone; as may be seen from the map, the Rhone also forms a part of its eastern boundary.

19. **Oceano**: *i.e.* the Bay of Biscay on the west, and the English Channel on the north. The words *flumine*, *Oceano*, *finibus*, are without a conjunction, like *lingua*, *institutis*, *legibus*, above in line 4. **ab Sequanis et Helvetiis**: *on the side of the Sequani and Helvetii, i.e.* on the east; literally, *from the Sequani, etc.;* another instance of the idiom mentioned in connection with *a flumine Rhodano.*

Page 2. 1. **flumen Rhenum**: the Rhine forms the eastern boundary of Gaul for several hundred miles. Where *flumen* is combined with river names, the name sometimes precedes (for example, *Garumna flumine*, p. 1, line 18), sometimes follows (for example, *flumine Rhodano*, p. 1, line 18), but the Romans always said *flumen Rhenus.* **vergit ad septentriones**: *i.e.* the general direction in which the country extends is toward the north; the 'long way,' as we call it, ran north and south; *septentriones* literally means 'the seven plough-oxen,' the name given by the Romans to the seven stars which we call the 'dipper' in the constellation of the Great Bear.

2. **ab . . . finibus**: *at the outermost borders*, namely, in the north. **Galliae**: here in the narrow sense of the central division of Gaul, not in the wide sense occurring at the very opening of this chapter.

3. **pertinent ad inferiorem partem**, *etc.*: *i.e.* the Belgae inhabited a small part of modern Holland.

4. **in septentrionem et orientem solem**: by saying 'toward the north and east,' Caesar means the northeast; *i.e.* the general direction in which the country extends (the 'long way') is northeast (and southwest). Note the peculiar singular form, *septentrionem*.

5. **eam partem Oceani**, *etc.*: namely, the Bay of Biscay.

6. **ad Hispaniam**: *ad* here means *near*. **inter occasum solis et septentriones**: Caesar evidently means toward the northwest, *i.e.* the general direction in which the country extends (the 'long way') is northwest (and southeast).

9. **Orgetorix**: pronounce *Or-jĕt-o-rix*. **M. Messala, M. Pisone consulibus**: *in the consulship of Marcus Messala and Marcus Piso*; Ablative Absolute; B. 227, 1; A. 419, *a*; G. 410; H. 489. The Romans dated events by the annual consulships. Messala and Piso were consuls in 61 B.C., three years before Caesar began his campaigns against the Gauls. In expressions of this kind the names of the consuls follow each other without connective; we, of course, must insert *and* in English; B. 346, *a*; G. 474, N.; H. 657, 5.

10. **cupiditate**: Ablative of Means. **conjurationem**: *a league*.

11. **civitati**: for the dative (merely a variety of Indirect Object), see B. 187, II, *a*; A. 367; G. 346; H. 426, 2. **ut exirent**: *to march out*; *ut exirent* is a substantive clause developed from the Volitive Subjunctive, and is the object of *persuasit*. The simplest type of such clauses is seen in an expression like *postulo ut fiat*, originally 'I demand, let it be done'; B. 295, 1; A. 563; G. 546; H. 565. Note that the verb *exirent* is in the plural, though *civitati* is singular; but collective nouns often take a plural verb: B. 254, 4, *a*; A. 280, *a*; G. 211, R. 1, Exc. *a*; H. 389. This is called 'construction according to sense.' **de finibus**: the preposition *de* means 'from' in the sense of from a place where a person or thing properly belongs; hence here it implies the notion of leaving their borders for good and all. Otherwise *e* would have been used. **cum omnibus copiis**: *with all their belongings*.

12. **perfacile esse**, *etc.*: dependent upon the idea of saying involved in *persuasit*; B. 314, 2; A. 579, ftn. 1, 578, 580; G. 650; H. 641, 642, 1; literally, (*saying*) *to obtain the mastery of all Gaul to be easy*, *i.e.*

that it was easy to obtain the mastery, etc.; esse is the object of the word of saying to be understood; the subject of *esse* is the infinitive *potiri*, while *perfacile* is a predicative adjective limiting *potiri;* it is neuter because infinitives are treated as neuter substantives. **virtute**: Ablative of Specification. **omnibus**: dative, indirect object of *praestarent;* B. 187, III, 1; A. 370; G. 347; H. 429. **praestarent**: subjunctive because introduced by *cum* causal; B. 286, 2; A. 549; G. 586; H. 598.

13. **imperio**: for the ablative with *potiri* (really a variety of the Ablative of Means), see B. 218, 1; A. 410; G. 407; H. 477. **id hoc facilius eis persuasit**: *he induced them (to do) that the more easily for this reason;* literally, *he persuaded that to them the more easily on account of this; id* refers to the proposed emigration. Notice that *persuadeo*, besides a dative of the person, may take also an Accusative of Result Produced, as here *id;* B. 176, 2, *a*; A. 369; G. 332; H. 426, 6; *hoc* is Ablative of Cause (B. 219; A. 404; G. 408; H. 475), and is explained by the following *quod*-clause.

14. **quod continentur**: the author's reason; hence the indicative; B. 286, 1; A. 540; G. 541; H. 588, I. **loci natura**: *i.e.* by natural boundaries, as Caesar goes on to explain.

15. **una ex parte**: *on one side;* literally, *from one side:* for this force of *ex* see the note on *a flumine*, p. 1, line 18. For the position of *ex* between the adjective and noun, see the note on *qua de causa*, p. 1, line 12. **flumine Rheno**: on the north side; *flumine* is Ablative of Means. **latissimo atque altissimo**: here, as often, the best rendering of the superlative is by *very*. Note that of the two forms, *atque* and *ac*, the latter never stands before a word beginning with a vowel.

16. **qui**: *qui* takes its gender from *Rheno*, not from *flumine;* similarly below in line 18. **altera**: *the second;* a very common meaning of the word. This second side is the western.

17. **monte Jura**: not a single peak, but a chain of mountains.

18. **tertia**: *i.e. tertia ex parte.* **lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano**: on the south side. Caesar is alluding to that portion of the Rhone that flows westerly into Lake Geneva.

19. **provinciam nostram**: this is the *provincia* of p. 1, line 8. Caesar often alludes to it as 'our province.' **his rebus fiebat ut, etc.**: *as a result of this they moved about, etc.;* literally, *on account of these things it happened that they moved about; rebus* is Ablative of Cause; *ut vagarentur* is a Substantive Clause of Result, and is the subject of *fiebat;* B. 297, 2; A. 560, 2; G. 553, 3; H. 571, 1. Note the force of

the imperfect tense in *fiebat* and (2 lines below) *afficiebantur*. Caesar wishes to bring out the idea of continued or repeated action; B. 260, 2; A. 470; G. 231; H. 534, 3.

20. **minus late**: *i.e.* less widely than they would otherwise have been able to do. **finitimis**: dative, indirect object of *inferre;* B. 187, III, 2; A. 370; G. 347, R. 3; H. 429, 1. The pupil should avoid regarding such datives as dependent upon the preposition. The fact is simply this: Many verbs incapable of taking the dative themselves become capable of taking an indirect object when compounded with certain prepositions, such as *in, ob, cum, etc.*

21. **qua ex parte**: this phrase ordinarily means *in this respect;* here it is equivalent to *and on this account;* literally, *from which part.* For the relative at the beginning of a sentence used as equivalent to an English demonstrative with a conjunction, see the note on p. 1, line 12. **homines**: (*being*) *men; homines* is in predicate apposition with *ei* understood, the subject of *afficiebantur.*

22. **bellandi**: the gerund, dependent on *cupidi;* B. 204, 1; A. 349, *a*; G. 374; H. 451, 1. **dolore**: *discontent.* **pro**: *in view of.* **multitudine hominum**: *i.e.* their large population. In chapter 29 Caesar tells us that they numbered 263,000 souls.

23. **belli atque fortitudinis**: Objective Genitives dependent on *gloria; belli atque fortitudinis* illustrates the rhetorical figure known as Hen-di'a-dys (literally, 'one through two'), whereby two ideas are made coördinate, when logically one limits the other. Thus here *war and bravery* is put for *bravery in war.* The genitive is not necessarily translated by *of;* here we may say, (*reputation*) *for bravery in war.*

24. **se habere arbitrabantur**: *thought that they had;* literally, *thought themselves to have; se* is the subject accusative of *habere*, and *habere* the object of *arbitrabantur.* **qui**: referring to *fines.*

25. **milia passuum**: literally, *thousands of paces*, or, roughly, *miles.* The *passus* was two steps, reckoned at five Roman feet. A thousand paces therefore equalled five thousand Roman feet. This, however, was equivalent to only forty-eight hundred English feet, about twelve-thirteenths of an English mile; *milia* is Accusative of Extent of Space; B. 181; A. 425; G. 335; H. 417; *passuum* is Genitive of the Whole. **CCXL** = *ducenta quadraginta, two hundred and forty.* Two hundred and forty Roman miles are equivalent to about two hundred and twenty English miles. **CLXXX** = *centum octoginta, one hundred and eighty;* probably a manuscript error for *eighty* (*i.e.* about seventy-five English miles).

28. **constituerunt**: namely, the Helvetii. **ea**: object of *comparare*. **quae . . . pertinerent**: a Clause of Characteristic, — *such things as were necessary to the emigration;* B. 283, 2; A. 535; G. 631, 2; H. 591, 1.

Page 3. 1. **comparare**: object of *constituerunt;* for this frequent use of the infinitive as object, see B. 328, 1; A. 457; G. 423; H. 607, 1. **quam maximum**: *the greatest possible; quam* is often thus used to intensify the superlative; B. 240, 3; A. 291, *c*; G. 303; H. 159, 2.

2. **coëmere, facere, confirmare**: in the same construction as *comparare*. Note the absence of the conjunction between the last two infinitives, and see note on *lingua, institutis, legibus*, p. 1, line 4. **ut suppeteret**: Subjunctive of Purpose; B. 282; A. 531; G. 545; H. 568.

4. **ad eas res conficiendas**: *for consummating these plans;* literally, *for these plans to be consummated.* The gerundive construction with *ad* is a very common means of denoting purpose. Remember that in the gerundive construction the gerundive always agrees with the substantive (here *res*), while the substantive has its own construction; here *res* is governed by *ad.*

5. **biennium . . . duxerunt**: *considered that two years were sufficient for them;* literally, *considered two years to be sufficient; biennium* is the subject of *esse, satis* a predicate noun limiting *biennium*, while *esse* itself is the object of *duxerunt.* Notice that the Romans regularly said *biennium*, 'two years'; *triennium*, 'three years'; *quadriennium*, 'four years,' avoiding the expressions *duo annos, tres annos, quattuor annos.* Longer periods were expressed by two words; for example, *sex annos, decem annos, etc.* **in**: *for.*

6. **confirmant**: historical present, *i.e.* the present used for the past; B. 259, 3; A. 469; G. 229; H. 532, 3. This is very common in Caesar, but it should rarely, if ever, be translated by the English present. We do not often use the idiom.

7. **sibi suscepit**: *took upon himself; sibi* is indirect object.

8. **legationem ad civitates**: most of the *civitates* were probably little more than rudely organized clans; the prepositional phrase *ad civitates* is a modifier of the noun *legationem;* but the pupil should bear in mind that prepositional phrases are very sparingly employed in Latin *to limit nouns*, though often so employed in English.

9. **filio, Sequano**: in apposition with *Castico.*

10. **regnum**: here not hereditary *regal power*, but *absolute authority.* **multos annos**: Accusative of Duration of Time; B. 181, 1;

A. 423; G. 336; H. 417. **obtinuerat**: *had held.* Remember that this verb seldom means 'obtain.' **senatu**: the Roman Senate was not, like our American Senate, primarily a legislative body. It was rather an influential advisory board whose utterances on public affairs largely determined public opinion and policy.

11. **populi Romani**: to be taken with *senatu.* **amicus**: predicate nominative agreeing with *pater;* B. 168, 2, *b*; A. 284; G. 206; H. 393, 8. **ut occuparet**: *to seize.* The *ut*-clause is the object of *persuadet*, and is another Volitive Substantive Clause; see above on p. 2, line 11. As regards the sequence of tenses, note that the historical present may serve either as a principal or historical tense. Here, as shown by *occuparet*, it is historical.

12. **ante**: here, as often, an adverb.

13. **Dumnorigi**: governed by *persuadet*, in line 15. **qui**: referring to Dumnorix. **eo tempore**: Ablative of Time.

14. **principatum**: not an office, but merely the acknowledged leadership. **in civitate**: namely, of the *Haedui.* **plebi acceptus**: *popular with the common people;* literally, *acceptable to.* For the dative dependent on the adjective, see B. 192, 1; A. 384; G. 359; H. 434, 2.

15. **ut idem conaretur**: a Volitive Substantive Clause, object of *persuadet.* See the note on *ut exirent*, p. 2, line 11. The historical present *persuadet* is again followed by an historical tense.

16. **in matrimonium**: *in marriage.* The Latin says *into.* **perfacile factu esse illis**, *etc.: he showed them that the accomplishment of their undertakings was very easy;* literally, *he showed them to accomplish their undertakings to be very easy to do; perficere* is the subject of *esse; perfacile* is a predicate adjective limiting *perficere;* while *factu* is the Supine, used as an Ablative of Specification limiting *perfacile;* B. 340, 2; A. 510, N. 1; G. 436; H. 635, 1. Note that the addition of *factu* is rather superfluous; the meaning would be sufficiently clear without it.

17. **propterea quod**: as p. 1, line 7. **suae**: note the emphasis of *suae*, as indicated by the position.

18. **obtenturus esset**: *he was proposing to seize;* the active periphrastic conjugation often involves this idea of intended action. The subjunctive is used because we have a subordinate clause in indirect discourse; B. 314, 1; A. 580; G. 650; H. 643. Note the historical sequence after the historical present *probat.* **non esse dubium**: (*saying*) *that there was no doubt; esse* depends upon the idea of saying involved in *probat*, precisely like the *esse* of p. 2, line 12; *dubium*

is a predicate adjective limiting the substantive clause *quin possent*. **quin possent**: for the subjunctive introduced by *quin* after expressions of *doubting* and the like, see B. 298; A. 558 and *a*; G. 555, 2; H. 595, 1. The clause *quin possent* is the subject of *esse*.

19. **totius Galliae**: Genitive of the Whole; B. 201, 1; A. 346, *a*, 2; G. 367; H. 442. **plurimum possent**: *were the most powerful;* literally, *were able the most;* for the way in which the Accusative of Result Produced develops adverbial force, see B. 176, 3, *a*; A. 214, *d*; 240, *a*; G. 333, R. 2; H. 306, 3, 416, 2. **se conciliaturum confirmat**: *conciliaturum* is for *conciliaturum esse;* the auxiliary is usually omitted in the future infinitive; hence, *declared that he would secure.* **suis, suo**: note the position of these possessives with reference to their nouns.

20. **illis**: *for them.* **regna**: plural, because the absolute power of *several* states was thought of; B. 353, 1.

21. **oratione**: do not translate *oratio* as 'oration,' unless it has that meaning. The word more often means 'plea,' 'words,' 'representations,' as here. **inter se**: reciprocal, as on p. 1, line 4. **fidem et jus jurandum**: literally, *a pledge and an oath, i.e.* a pledge sealed by an oath; Hendiadys, as in *belli atque fortitudinis*, p. 2, line 23.

22. **regno occupato**, *etc.*: Ablative Absolute; literally, *the absolute power having been seized;* but the pupil should avoid the literal translation of the Ablative Absolute and should aim to render it by some natural English expression. The range of meaning of the Ablative Absolute is so wide that the proper translation can be determined only from the sense of the passage. Here *regno occupato* stands in the relation of means to *potiri;* hence, *by seizing absolute power they hoped to win the mastery, etc.; sese* is subject accusative of *posse*. **tres populos**: namely, the Helvetii, Sequani, and Haedui.

23. **totius Galliae**: dependent upon *imperio*. **imperio**: for the construction, see the note on *imperio*, p. 2, line 13. **sese potiri posse sperant**: literally, *hope themselves to be able to obtain, i.e.* hope to be able to obtain.

Orgetorix had been sent by the Helvetii 'to establish peace and friendship with neighboring states.' What he actually did was to form a Gallic triumvirate with Casticus and Dumnorix, declaring to these chieftains his treasonable purpose of usurping absolute power in his own state.

25. **ea res**: *i.e.* the fact of Orgetorix's treasonable conduct. **per indicium**: literally, *by information, i.e.* through informers, — the abstract for the concrete.

26. **moribus suis**: *in accordance with their custom;* Ablative of Accordance; B. 220, 3; A. 418, *a* and N.; G. 399, N. 1; H. 475, 3. **ex vinculis**: we should say *in chains.* For the Latin idiom, see the note on *a flumine*, p. 1, line 18.

27. **damnatum . . . oportebat**: *if condemned, it was necessary that punishment should visit him;* literally, *punishment to visit him condemned was necessary; poenam* is the subject accusative of the infinitive *sequi; damnatum* limits *eum* understood, the object of *sequi;* while *sequi* itself is the subject of the impersonal *oportebat.* Note that the participle is freely used in Latin as the equivalent of various subordinate clauses; thus here *damnatum* is equivalent to a conditional clause, — *if condemned;* B. 337, 2, *b*; A. 496; H. 638, 2. **ut igni cremaretur**: a Substantive Clause of Result, in apposition with *poenam, (the penalty) of being burned at the stake;* literally, *(the penalty) that he should be burned by fire.* For the subjunctive, see B. 297, 3; A. 571, *c*; G. 557; H. 571, 4. Note that *ignis* regularly forms the ablative in *ī.*

28. **die constituta**: Ablative of Time; as *constituta* shows, *die* is here feminine; B. 53; A. 97, *a*; G. 64; H. 135. **dictionis**: *for the pleading;* see the note on *gloria belli atque fortitudinis*, p. 2, line 23; *dictionis* depends on *die*, and *causae* upon *dictionis.*

29. **familiam**: *household,* including not merely his kinsmen, but all his retainers and dependents, like the households of the mediaeval feudal lords. **ad**: *about;* here an adverb modifying *decem.* **hominum milia decem**: *hominum* is Genitive of the Whole; *milia* is in apposition with *familiam.*

31. **eodem**: the adverb, — *to the same place,* namely, the scene of the trial.

Page 4. 1. **ne causam diceret**: *from pleading his cause;* literally, *lest he plead his cause;* Clause of Purpose; B. 282; A. 531; G. 545; H. 568. **cum conaretur, cogerent**: *cum* temporal (*i.e. cum* meaning 'when,' 'as') with the imperfect and pluperfect regularly takes the subjunctive to denote the *circumstances* or *situation* of affairs; the indicative to denote the *point of time at which* something occurs; B. 288, 1, B; A. 546; G. 585; H. 600, II, 1.

4. **neque abest suspicio**: *nor is suspicion lacking;* a rhetorical way of saying, *there is a strong suspicion.* The figure is called Lĭt-o-tes, which means 'plainness,' *i.e.* the characterizing of a thing in mild language for rhetorical effect. The figure is common in all languages. **ut**: *as;* a common meaning when *ut* is followed by the indicative.

5. **quin . . . consciverit**: *that he inflicted death on himself.* For the subjunctive with *quin*, after expressions of doubt, suspicion, and the like, see B. 298; A. 558; G. 555, 2; H. 595, 1. **ipse**: *with his own hand;* the special force of *ipse* must be gathered from the context. It is always intensive in some way.

6. **nihilo minus**: *nevertheless;* literally, *the less by nothing; nihilo* is Ablative of Degree of Difference; B. 223; A. 414; G. 403; H. 479. The fact that the Helvetii persisted in their plan of emigration even after the death of Orgetorix suggests that the Germans were probably pressing hard upon them from the north.

7. **ut exeant**: a Substantive Clause Developed from the Volitive, in apposition with *id.* In translating supply *namely.* Note that here the historical present *conantur* is followed by principal sequence. As already stated, the historical present may be followed by either a principal or an historical tense.

8. **paratos esse**: not the perfect infinitive; *paratos* is here used as an adjective, being in predicate agreement with *se,* the subject of *esse.*

9. **numero ad duodecim**: *numero* is Ablative of Specification, limiting *duodecim;* B. 226; A. 418; G. 397; H. 480; *ad* is again adverbial in the sense of 'about'; so also before *quadringentos.*

10. **reliqua privata aedificia**: such as isolated farm-houses, barns, *etc.*

11. **praeter quod** = *praeter id quod, i.e.* the antecedent of *quod* is *id* understood governed by *praeter.* **secum**: with the reflexive *se, cum* is always thus appended. **portaturi erant**: in translation think of the force of *obtenturus esset* on p. 3, line 18. **ut paratiores essent**: Subjunctive of Purpose; when there is a comparative in the purpose clause, *quo* is ordinarily used for *ut.* **domum . . . sublata**: Ablative Absolute; here again denoting means, like *regno occupato* on p. 3, line 22. Translate, *by taking away the hope of returning home;* literally, *the hope of returning home having been taken away; domum* is Accusative of Limit of Motion; B. 182, 1, *b*; A. 427, 2; G. 337; H. 419, 1.

12. **ad . . . subeunda**: another instance of the gerundive construction denoting purpose; remember that the gerundive limits the noun, while the noun has its own construction; here *pericula* is governed by *ad;* literally, *for all dangers to be encountered; i.e. for encountering, etc.*

13. **trium mensium**: *i.e.* a three months' supply; Genitive of Quality; B. 203, 2; A. 345, *b*; G. 365, 2; H. 440, 3. The amount of meal necessary for 263,000 persons for three months has been estimated at

eight thousand tons. Such a supply would require a continuous line of wagons stretching over twenty miles. **molita cibaria**: *i.e.* meal. **sibi quemque**: *each for himself.*

14. **domo**: on this Ablative of Place from which, see B. 229, 1, *b*; A. 427, 1;. G. 390, 2; H. 462, 4.

15. **uti . . . proficiscantur**: *to adopt the same plan, burn their towns and villages, and set out with them;* literally, *(persuaded them that) having used the same plan, their towns having been burnt, they should set out with them.* Grammatically, of course, *usi* limits the subject of *proficiscantur*, while *oppidis exustis* is Ablative Absolute; but logically the adoption of the plan and the burning of their towns are the object of *persuadent*, and we may so translate; for the mood of *proficiscantur*, see the note on *ut exirent*, p. 2, line 11. **consilio**: really an Ablative of Means with *usi;* B. 218, 1; A. 410; G. 407; H. 477.

16. **una**: an adverb, literally meaning *together*, and often joined with *cum* in the sense of *together with.* **cum eis**: *secum* would have been the normal mode of expression, *i.e.* the indirect reflexive; but that would have involved confusion, as *suis* has already been used referring to the Rauraci, and *suus* and *se* naturally refer to the same person; hence *eis* for the sake of clearness.

17. **Bojos**: a tribe of Celtic origin, whence the name Bohemia is said to be derived. **agrum Noricum**: the Noric territory included parts of modern Bavaria and western Austria.

18. **Noreiam**: the modern Neumarkt in Styria. **oppugnarant** = *oppugnaverant;* B. 116, 1; A. 181, *a*; G. 131, 1; H. 238. **receptos ad se socios sibi asciscunt**: *they received and joined with themselves as allies;* literally, *they joined to themselves as allies, having been received to themselves; receptos* limits *Bojos*, while *socios* is a predicate accusative with *asciscunt*, *Bojos* being the direct object. For the use of the participle as the equivalent of a coördinate clause, see B. 337, 5; A. 496, N. 2; G. 664, R.; H. 639.

20. **erant omnino**: *there were in all.* **itinera duo, quibus itineribus**: we should simply say, *two ways by which.* The Latin, however, frequently, as here, repeats the antecedent in the relative clause; B. 251, 3; A. 307; G. 615; H. 399, 1. **quibus itineribus**: Ablative of the Way by which; B. 218, 9; A. 429, *a*; H. 476. **quibus . . . possent**: Clause of Characteristic; B. 283; A. 535; G. 631, 2; H. 591, 5. **domo**: used as above in line 14.

21. **unum, alterum**: understand *iter* from *itinera.* **per Sequanos**: this route was by the so-called Pas de l'Écluse.

22. **vix qua**: *where scarcely; qua* is an adverb. The ordinary word order would have *qua vix;* the inversion emphasizes *vix.* **singuli**: *i.e.* in single file.

23. **ducerentur**: Clause of Characteristic.

24. **prohibere**: as object understand *eos*, referring to the Helvetii. **possent**: Subjunctive of Result; B. 284, 1; A. 537; G. 552; H. 570.

25. **multo**: Ablative of Degree of Difference.

27. **nuper pacati erant**: the Allobroges had been conquered by Fabius in 121 B.C., but had revolted and been again reduced in 61 B.C. **nonnullis locis**: for the absence of the preposition *in* in the Ablative of Place, see B. 228, 1, *b*; A. 429, 1; G. 385, N. 1; H. 485, 2.

28. **vado**: *by fording;* Ablative of Means. **extremum**: *i.e.* the farthest north.

Page 5. 1. **est**: the position of *est* is peculiar; we should naturally expect it to stand immediately before *Genava.* **finibus**: for the dative, compare p. 1, line 11, *proximi Germanis.*

2. **Allobrogibus**: governed by *persuasuros;* the Allobroges formed a part of the Province.

3. **vel . . . vel**: *either . . . or.* Words so used are said to be correlatives. **persuasuros, coacturos**: for *persuasuros esse, coacturos esse;* with *coacturos* we must supply *eos* from *Allobrogibus*, expressed with *persuasuros.* **quod viderentur**: subjunctive, because a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. **bono animo**: *of kindly feeling*, or *kindly disposed;* Ablative of Quality, limiting the subject of *viderentur;* B. 224, 1; A. 415; G. 400; H. 473, 2. **in**: *toward.*

4. **ut . . . paterentur**: *to permit them to go, etc.; eos* refers to the Helvetii, *suos* to the Allobroges; *ut paterentur* is a Substantive Clause Developed from the Volitive, and is the object of *persuasuros* (*esse*) and *coacturos* (*esse*); *cogo* naturally governs the infinitive, and would do so here except for the influence of *persuasuros.*

5. **omnibus rebus comparatis**: since we seldom employ a case absolute construction in good English, it is often advisable in translating the Latin Ablative Absolute to use the perfect active participle with an object; so here, — *having made all things ready.*

6. **diem, qua die**: repetition of the antecedent in the relative clause, as in *itinera, quibus itineribus* above. The ablative is one of time, B. 230; A. 423; G. 393; H. 486. **qua omnes conveniant**: *on which all should assemble;* Relative Clause of Purpose; B. 282, 2; A. 531, 2; G. 630; H. 590; the essential notion is 'a day on which to meet.' **ad**: *at.*

7. is dies: note the change of gender from *qua die* to *is dies;* B. 53; A. 97 and *a*; G. 64; H. 135. **a. d. V. Kal. Apr.** = *ante diem quintum Kalendas Apriles*, equivalent to *die quinto ante Kalendas Apriles*, 'on the fifth day before the Calends of April.' Inasmuch as the Romans called that day 'the fifth before' which we call 'the fourth before,' this day was the 28th of March. For the Roman method of reckoning time, see B. 371, 5, *d*; A. 631; G. p. 491 f.; H. 754, III, 2. The whole phrase *a. d. V. Kal. Apr.* serves as an indeclinable predicate with *erat*.

8. L. Pisone, A. Gabinio consulibus: their year of office was 58 B.C. The construction is Ablative Absolute.

9. Caesari cum id, *etc.:* the chief actor in the drama of the Gallic wars here appears for the first time on the scene, — Gaius Julius Caesar. The time is the spring of 58 B.C. Caesar had held the consulship in 59, and was now proconsul of cisalpine Gaul, Illyricum, and the Province. He was at this time forty-three years old. Nature had endowed him with a rare sense for affairs, a unique skill in dealing with men, and a marvellous rapidity of action when once his decision was taken. The situation on the Gallic frontier in the spring of 58 B.C. was beyond question serious. Caesar's way of meeting the emergency is characteristic of the man; so too is his direct and simple way of telling of it. **Caesari cum id nuntiatum esset . . . maturat:** when a word is subject of the main clause, and also the object, either direct or indirect, of a subordinate clause, it stands before both, as here; B. 351, 2, *a*, 1. **cum nuntiatum esset:** a *cum*-clause of situation; B. 288, 1, B; A. 546; G. 585; H. 600, II. **id:** explained by the following infinitive clause, *eos conari*, in apposition. **eos:** subject accusative of *conari*.

10. facere, proficisci: infinitives without subject accusative, used as the objects of *conari* and *maturat;* B. 328, 1; A. 457; G. 423; H. 609. **ab urbe:** *i.e. from Rome;* Caesar had only just finished the duties of his consulate, and had not yet departed for his province, when he first heard of the commotion in the North (probably in February). *Ab* as opposed to *ex* shows that he was not *in* the city, but simply near it. As proconsul he possessed the so-called *imperium*, or military authority, which could not be exercised within the city limits.

11. quam maximis potest: merely a fuller form for *quam maximis*, 'as long stages as possible.' Plutarch tells us that Caesar consumed only seven days in travelling from Rome to the Rhone. **in Galliam ulteriorem:** *i.e.* Gaul beyond the Alps; here identical with *provincia nostra*.

12. **ad Genavam**: *to the neighborhood of Geneva; ad* is regularly used to denote 'near' or 'to the neighborhood of.' **provinciae toti**: dependent on *imperat;* B. 187, II, *a*; A. 369; G. 346; H. 426, 1, 6. Note the emphasis on *toti* as shown by its position after its noun; *totus* usually precedes.

14. **legio una**: *i.e.* only one legion. This legion was the tenth. A legion normally numbered six thousand men, but Caesar's legions probably did not exceed thirty-six hundred. Introd. § 11.

16. **certiores facti sunt**: *were informed;* literally, *were made more certain.* **nobilissimos**: used substantively.

17. **principem**: here an adjective.

18. **qui dicerent**: *to say;* Relative Clause of Purpose; B. 282, 2; A. 531, 2; G. 630; H. 590. **sibi esse in animo**, *etc.*: *that they intended to pass through the Province without damage;* literally, *it to be in mind to them to make a way, etc.; sibi* is Dative of Possession; B. 190; A. 373; G. 349; H. 430; the subject of the impersonal *esse* is *facere; esse* itself is infinitive as representing a principal clause of indirect discourse; it is the object of *dicerent.* The direct form would be: *nobis est in animo iter facere*, 'we intend to make.'

19. **propterea quod haberent**: subjunctive, because a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. Direct discourse: 'because we have no other way' (*propterea quod . . . habemus*).

20. **nullum**: notice the emphasis on *nullum* as shown by its separation from *aliud iter* and its place at the very end of the clause. The effect may be reproduced in the English *because other way they had none.* **rogare, ut liceat**: (*saying*) *they begged that they be permitted to do that with his consent;* as subject of *rogare, se*, referring to the Helvetii, would naturally have been expressed. But the subject of the infinitive in indirect discourse is sometimes omitted when it is clear from the context who is meant; B. 314, 5; A. 580, 581, N. 1; H. 642, foot-note, last line. **ut liceat**: Substantive Clause Developed from the Volitive; B. 295, 1; A. 563; G. 546; H. 565. The origin of such clauses may be seen in an expression like *rogamus, ut liceat*, 'we ask, let it be permitted.' In the Caesar passage, *ut liceat* is the object of *rogare.* Notice that, despite the historical sequence in *dicerent, liceat* is principal. This is because *mittunt*, the main verb of the sentence, is a principal tense; see note on p. 3, line 11. **voluntate**: Ablative of Attendant Circumstance; B. 221; H. 473, 3.

21. **sibi**: indirect object of *liceat.* **facere**: subject of *liceat.* **memoria tenebat**: *remembered;* literally, *held by memory; memoria* is Ablative of Means. The indicative is used because the reason is that

of Caesar the writer, not of Caesar the general, whose acts are here described. These two personages (or rather these two phases of the same personage) are systematically kept distinct in the *Gallic War;* B. 286, 1; A. 540; G. 541; H. 588, I.

22. **L. Cassium . . . missum**: *that Lucius Cassius had been killed and his army routed, etc.;* literally, *Lucius Cassius to have been killed and his army to have been routed, etc.* With *occisum*, *pulsum*, and *missum*, *esse* is to be understood. The infinitives are the object of *memoria tenebat*, which is equivalent to a verb of knowing. Many such phrases are capable of taking the construction of indirect discourse. **L. Cassium consulem**: the consul regularly took the field as commander-in-chief in time of war. The death of Cassius and the rout of his army had occurred in 107 B.C., at the time of the attempted invasion of Italy by the Cimbrians and Teutons. The Helvetii had joined these as allies.

23. **sub jugum missum**: defeated armies, in token of submission, were often forced to pass under the yoke. The act consisted in passing under a spear resting horizontally upon two other spears placed upright in the ground. **concedendum non putabat**: *did not think any concession should be made; concedendum* (= *concedendum esse*) is used impersonally.

24. **homines**: subject of *temperaturos* (*esse*). **inimico animo**: Ablative of Quality; B. 224; A. 415; G. 400; H. 473, 2. In translating *animus*, remember that 'mind' is seldom the idiomatic English rendering; 'spirit,' 'temper,' 'disposition,' and the like are often better equivalents. **data facultate**: *if opportunity should be afforded;* Ablative Absolute equivalent to a conditional clause.

25. **itineris faciundi**: *of marching;* literally, *of a march to be made; itineris* depends grammatically upon *facultate; faciundi* is for the commoner *faciendi;* B. 116, 2; A. 6; G. 130, 8; H. 243.

27. **dum milites convenirent**: *till the soldiers should assemble; dum*, 'until,' regularly takes the subjunctive to denote expectancy or purpose, as opposed to an actual fact. Thus here, not, *until the soldiers actually did assemble*, but, *until they should assemble;* B. 293, III, 2; A. 553; G. 572; H. 603, II, 2.

28. **diem**: *time.*

29. **si quid vellent, reverterentur**: *if they wished anything, let them return.* This is the indirect form of *si quid vultis, revertimini*, 'if you wish anything, return'; *vellent* is subjunctive as being a subordinate clause in indirect discourse; *reverterentur* is an imperative clause in indirect discourse; B. 316; A. 588; G. 652; H. 642. The imper-

fect tense is used because the leading verb (*respondit*) is historical. **ad**: *on.* **Idus Apriles**: April 13; B. 371, 372; A. 631, *b*; G. p. 491 f.; H. 754, 1, 3.

Page 6. **1. ea legione militibusque**: the Ablative of Means sometimes refers to persons, as here.

4. milia: Accusative of Extent of Space.

5. XVIIII = *undeviginti.* Nineteen miles is the distance by the river from Lake Geneva to the Jura Mountains. For five-sixths of this distance the naturally rugged south bank of the Rhone gave sufficient defence. Probably not more than three miles of the entire distance were fortified in the manner mentioned by Caesar. **murum**: *an earthwork*, or *rampart.* **in altitudinem pedum sedecim**: literally, *of sixteen feet into height, i.e.* sixteen feet high; *pedum sedecim* is Genitive of Quality; B. 203, 2; A. 345, *b*; G. 365, 2; H. 440, 3.

6. eo opere perfecto: *having finished that work.* Do not think of *opus* as 'labor.' It means the actual fortifications. **praesidia**: *garrisons* of troops. **disponit**: notice the force of the inseparable preposition *dis,—he placed here and there,* or *at intervals.* **castella**: these were to be occupied and defended by the *praesidia.*

7. communit: notice the intensive force of *com-* (*con-*) in compounds. Thus here: *strongly fortifies.* **quo facilius possit**: Subjunctive of Purpose; *quo* is used for *ut* in purpose clauses containing a comparative; B. 282, 1, *a*; A. 531, *a*; G. 545, 2; H. 568, 7. **si conarentur**: subjunctive, as being a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. The term 'indirect discourse' is used with some freedom; it applies not merely to constructions after expressions of saying, thinking, and perceiving, but also to any construction in which a thought is indirectly expressed. Thus Caesar's thought was, 'If they try to pass through without my consent, I wish to stop them' (*si transire conabuntur, etc.*). This thought is here indirectly expressed; hence the subjunctive. **se invito**: *without his consent;* literally, *himself being unwilling;* Ablative Absolute; B. 227, 1; A. 419, *a*; G. 410; H. 489. **transire**: the infinitive is the object of *conarentur;* B. 328, 1; A. 457; G. 423; H. 609.

8. prohibere: understand *eos* as object. **possit**: note again the alternation in the sequence after the historical present; *conarentur* is historical; *possit* principal. Such shifting is common.

10. reverterunt: notice that *revertor* is deponent in its present system, but has the active forms in the perfect system. **negat se posse**: *said he could not;* literally, *denied himself to be able.*

This is a very common idiom in Latin. **more et exemplo**: Ablative of Accordance.

11. **iter per provinciam**: note the prepositional phrase limiting a noun. This is relatively rare in Latin as compared with English. Nouns derived from verbs or having a strong verbal force (as *iter*, from *eo*, 'go') are, however, thus limited with some frequency. **ulli**: *to any one*. Normal Latin would have been *cuiquam*, since *quisquam* is regularly used as the substantive ('any one'), while *ullus* is properly an adjective ('any'). **si conentur**: subordinate clause in indirect discourse (direct: *si conabimini*, 'if you shall attempt').

12. **vim facere**: *use* (literally, *make, do*) *force*. **prohibiturum (esse)**: principal clause in indirect discourse. For the omission of the subject *se*, see the note on p. 5, line 20. **ea spe**: Ablative of Separation; B. 214; A. 402; G. 390, 2; H. 462.

13. **navibus junctis**, *etc.*: *navibus* and *ratibus* may be either Ablative of Means (*by means of boats joined together and numerous rafts they had made*, literally, *rafts made*) or Ablative Absolute (*having joined and having made*).

14. **alii**: most of the Helvetii attempted to cross by pontoons and rafts; others (*alii*) by wading through the shallows of the stream. **vadis**: Ablative of the Way by which; B. 218, 9; A. 429, *a*; H. 476. **qua**: adverb.

15. **si possent**: indirect question. These are only rarely introduced by *si*; B. 300, 3; A. 576, *a*; G. 460, 1, *b*; H. 649, II, 3. The clause *si possent* is the object of *conati*.

16. **conati, repulsi**: agreeing with *Helvetii*, the subject of *destiterunt*. **militum**: dependent upon *telis* as well as upon *concursu*.

17. **conatu**: Ablative of Separation; B. 214; A. 402; G. 390, 2; H. 462.

18. **relinquebatur**: *there remained, there was left;* the verb is made emphatic by being placed at the beginning of the sentence. **una per Sequanos via**: *only the route through the Sequani;* literally, *the way alone;* for the prepositional phrase limiting the noun, see the note above, on line 11. **qua**: adverb. **Sequanis invitis**: the Ablative Absolute here has the force of a condition, — *if the Sequani should be unwilling*.

19. **angustias**: namely, of the Jura Mountains, as already mentioned by Caesar in chapter 6. **his**: emphatic, and so put first. **sua sponte**: *by their own influence;* ordinarily the phrase means 'of their (his) accord.'

20. **possent**: subjunctive in a clause introduced by *cum* causal;

B. 286, 2; A. 549; G. 586; H. 598. **Dumnorigem**: already mentioned in chapter 3 as the most influential man among the Haedui.

21. **eo deprecatore**: the Ablative Absolute here denotes means, *by his intercession;* literally, *he being intercessor.*

22. **gratia et largitione**: Ablatives of Means or Cause.

23. **plurimum poterat**: *had very great influence.* For the accusative with adverbial force, see the note on p. 3, line 19. **Helvetiis**: for the dative with *amicus*, here an adjective, see B. 192, 1; A. 383; G. 359; H. 434.

24. **in matrimonium duxerat**: *had married;* literally, *had led into marriage; ducere* with or without *in matrimonium* is a standing expression for 'to marry.'

25. **novis rebus studebat**: *was eager for a revolution.* He had already shown this by his league with Orgetorix and Casticus. For the dative, see B. 187, II, *a*; A. 368, 3; G. 346; H. 426, 1. **quam plurimas**: *as many . . . as possible.*

26. **beneficio**: ablative.

27. **rem**: *the task.* **a Sequanis impetrat, ut patiantur**: *secured permission from the Sequani for the Helvetii to go;* literally, *secured from the Sequani that they permit, etc.* The clause *ut patiantur* is a Substantive Clause Developed from the Volitive; B. 295, 2; A. 563; G. 546; H. 565.

28. **obsides**: object of *dent.* **uti dent, perficit**: literally, *brings it about that they give.* What should we say in idiomatic English? The clause *uti dent* is the object of *perficit.* **inter sese**: *se* is again reciprocal, as frequently in this phrase.

Page 7. 1. **Sequani, Helvetii**: with these nominatives supply in thought *obsides dant.* **ne prohibeant, ut transeant**: not clauses of purpose, which would give an absurd meaning, but rather instances of the so-called 'Stipulative' Subjunctive. This subjunctive expresses the stipulation or terms of an agreement. Hence here: *the Sequani (give hostages), with the agreement not to keep the Helvetii from going through; the Helvetii, with the agreement to pass through without mischief and damage.* **itinere**: Ablative of Separation.

3. **renuntiatur**: notice the force of the inseparable *re-* ('back'), implying that Caesar had sent out scouts. **Helvetiis esse in animo**: *that the Helvetii were intending;* literally, *it to be in mind to the Helvetii. Helvetiis* is Dative of Possession (B. 190; A. 373; G. 349; H. 430), as above, p. 5, line 18. The subject of *esse* is *facere; esse* itself is subject of the impersonal *renuntiatur.*

4. **Santonum**: the Santones dwelt in the extreme western part of Gaul, near the Bay of Biscay. Elsewhere in Caesar the word is of the second declension: *Santoni*. Their name survives in the modern province of Saintonge.

5. **non longe . . . absunt**: the Tolosates were the inhabitants of Tolosa, the modern Toulouse. This city was some two hundred miles distant from the proposed goal of the Helvetii. Caesar, therefore, is merely giving a pretext for his interference. He had evidently already determined to undertake the further subjugation of Gaul. A great historian (Mommsen) has urged that Caesar's Gallic campaigns were begun and continued in the exercise of great political sagacity; that Caesar foresaw the inevitable clash between Rome and Gaul, and aimed to supplant the defective political institutions of the Celts with the superior civilization of Rome. **quae civitas**: note the incorporation of the antecedent in the relative clause. We say, *a state which*. Such incorporation is especially frequent when the antecedent of the relative is an appositive; B. 251, 4, *b*; G. 616, 2.

6. **id**: emphatic and so placed first. **si fieret, futurum (esse)**: indirect discourse. The direct form would have been: *si hoc fiet, erit, etc.*, 'if this happens, it will be,' *etc.*; a so-called simple condition.

7. **provinciae**: genitive; yet in English we should translate by 'for,' as often. **ut haberet**: *to have*; literally, *that it should have*; a Substantive Clause of Result, used as the subject of *futurum (esse)*; B. 297, 2; A. 569, 2; G. 553, 3; H. 571, 1. The subject of *haberet* is *ea* understood, referring to *provincia*.

8. **locis**: dative dependent upon *finitimos*; B. 192, 1; A. 384; G. 359; H. 434.

9. **finitimos**: Predicate Accusative with *homines, to have as neighbors*; literally, *neighboring* (adjective). **munitioni**: indirect object of *praefecit*; B. 187, III, 2; A. 370, *a*, N. 1; G. 347, 3; H. 429, 1.

10. **T.** = *Titum*. **legatum**: the *legatus*, or 'lieutenant,' was originally a deputy of the commanding general; but Caesar's *legati* were regularly commanders of legions. Introd. § 21.

11. **Italiam**: *i.e.* cisalpine Gaul, one of Caesar's provinces. **magnis itineribus**: *rapid stages*, not *forced marches*, for Caesar was probably alone or accompanied only by a few trusty companions. The rapidity of his movements may be conjectured from the fact that he had recently travelled from Rhone to Geneva in seven days. Speed was necessary now, if ever. To cope with the Helvetians and their allies (numbering in all 368,000) Caesar, we must bear in mind, had but one legion — under four thousand men — and such troops as he

had enlisted in the Province. Immediate reinforcements were therefore imperative. A glance at the map will show that it was no mean achievement to cross the Alps, enlist two legions, muster others from their barracks in distant Aquileia, and then return with these troops in the face of hostile tribes. Napoleon III estimated that Caesar's movements occupied two months. He began them in April; it was probably the middle of June when he returned to his army. **duas legiones**: the eleventh and twelfth.

12. **tres**: these were the seventh, eighth, and ninth. Caesar's total force was now some twenty-one thousand legionaries, besides the troops enlisted in the Province. Two legions, however, were raw recruits. **Aquileiam**: at the head of the Adriatic Sea.

13. **proximum iter**: the nearest route was by the pass of Mont Genèvre.

15. **ibi**: *i.e.* among the Alps.

17. **compluribus his proeliis pulsis**: *his* is the subject of the Ablative Absolute construction; *compluribus proeliis* is Ablative of Means. **ab Ocelo**: *from the neighborhood of Ocelum;* B. 229, 2; A. 428, *a*.

18. **citerioris provinciae**: namely, cisalpine Gaul. **extremum**: *i.e.* the northernmost.

19. **ulterioris provinciae**: Genitive of the Whole dependent upon *Vocontiorum*. **die septimo**: namely, after leaving Ocelum. The pupil should carefully trace Caesar's movements on the map.

21. **trans Rhodanum**: namely, on the west bank of the river.

23. **Helvetii jam per angustias**: *i.e.* through the narrow Pas de l'Écluse, where wagons could pass only one at a time. Owing to the narrowness of the route and the immense host of people, their progress had naturally been slow.

25. **populabantur**: *were plundering*. **Haedui**: the common subject of the principal and subordinate clauses, placed first; B. 351, 2; H. 684. **sua**: *their possessions*.

26. **possent**: subjunctive with *cum* causal; B. 286, 2; A. 549; G. 586; H. 598.

27. **rogatum**: the supine, expressing purpose; B. 340, 1, *a*; A. 509; G. 435; H. 633. **ita**: *so*, or *so well*. **se meritos esse**: the infinitive depends upon the idea of saying involved in *rogatum*. **de**: *of*.

Page 8. 2. **agri vastari . . . non debuerint**: *their lands ought not to have been laid waste, etc.;* literally, *their lands did not deserve to be*

laid waste, etc.; debuerint is an instance of the perfect subjunctive used as an historical tense; B. 268, 6; A. 485, *c*; G. 513; H. 550. Note that in Latin the idea 'ought to have' is expressed by a past tense of the indicative (*debebat* or *debuit*) with the present infinitive; literally, *deserved to be (loved), etc.;* B. 270, 2; A. 486, *a*; H. 618, 2.

3. **eodem tempore quo**: *at the same as; quo*, like *tempore*, is Ablative of Time when. Note that the Latin says *same who, same which*, where we say 'same as.'

5. **sese non prohibere**: *that they did not easily keep off*, or better, *that they could not, etc.* **depopulatis**: note that the perfect passive participle is here used passively, though *depopulor* is deponent; B. 112, *b*; A. 190, *b*; H. 222, 2.

7. **trans Rhodanum**: namely, on the north side of the Rhone before the river turns to the south. Most of the Allobroges dwelt to the south and east of the river. A few lived across the stream on the north side.

8. **sibi**: Dative of Possession.

9. **solum**: note that the word is *sŏlum* (not *sōlum*). **nihil esse reliqui**: *nothing was left;* literally, *nothing of remainder to be (to them)*; *reliqui* is the adjective employed substantively and used as Genitive of the Whole.

10. **non exspectandum (esse) sibi statuit**: decided that *he must not wait;* literally, *that it must not be waited by him; exspectandum (esse)* is used impersonally; *sibi* is Dative of Agent; B. 189, 1; A. 374; G. 355; H. 431. **dum . . . pervenirent**: the subjunctive is used because the *dum*-clause involves the notion of expectation or purpose; B. 293, III, 2; A. 553; G. 572; H. 603, II, 2. The notion of expectancy attaches also to the Ablative Absolute (*fortunis consumptis*), *till all the property . . . should be destroyed and the Helvetii should arrive, etc.*

13. **flumen est Arar**: *there is a river, the Arar.* The modern name of this stream is the Saône. **quod**: agreeing in gender with *flumen*, not *Arar.* **per**: *between.*

14. **incredibili lenitate**: *of remarkably slow course;* Ablative of Quality, B. 224; A. 415; G. 400; H. 473, 2.

15. **oculis**: Ablative of Means with *judicari.* **fluat**: subjunctive in an indirect question; B. 300, 1; A. 574; G. 467; H. 649, II. The clause as a whole is the subject of the impersonal *possit.*

16. **ratibus, lintribus**: Ablative of Means; *junctis* is to be combined only with *lintribus.* **transibant**: the imperfect represents the act as in process. Naturally the passage of so large a number was extremely

slow, and only about three-fourths of the Helvetii had crossed at the time when Caesar came up.

17. **tres partes . . . traduxisse**: the subject of *traduxisse* is *Helvetios*, *partes* is the object, while *flumen* depends upon *trans* in composition; B. 179, 1; A. 395 and N. 1; G. 331, R. 1; H. 413; *traduxisse* is governed by the idea of saying involved in *certior factus est; tres partes* means 'three-quarters.'

19. **citra**: *i.e.* to the east. **Ararim**: note the accusative in *-im*, as though from the nominative *Araris;* B. 37, 1; A. 74, *d*; 75, *a*, 1; G. 57, R. 1; H. 102, 3, N. **de tertia vigilia**: *in* (literally *out of*) *the third watch;* the time from sunset to sunrise was divided into four watches. Their length varied, of course, with the season, but the third always began at midnight. Hence Caesar here means, 'shortly after midnight.'

20. **legionibus tribus**: how many men?

23. **mandarunt** = *mandaverunt;* B. 116, 1; A. 181, *a*; G. 131, 1; H. 238. **in proximas silvas**: we should say, *in the neighboring forest*, but Caesar uses the accusative because of the idea of fleeing involved in *abdiderunt.*

24. **pagus**: literally *canton*, but here used of the inhabitants of the canton. The Tigurini, before their emigration, are said to have dwelt in the vicinity of Zurich.

25. **divisa est**: in the same sense as in the opening sentence of the *Gallic War.*

26. **domo**: for the ablative without a preposition, see B. 229, 1, *b*; A. 427, 1; G. 390, 2; H. 462, 4. **memoria**: Ablative of Time within which; B. 231; A. 423; G. 393; H. 487.

27. **Cassium interfecerat**: at the time of the Cimbrian invasion, 107 B.C.; see note on p. 5, line 22.

29. **quae pars intulerat, ea princeps persolvit**: *the part that had inflicted disaster, was the first to pay, etc.;* literally, *which part had inflicted, that paid, etc.* For the incorporation of the antecedent in the relative clause, a favorite Latin idiom, see B. 251, 4, *a*; A. 307, *b*, N.; G. 616, 1; H. 399, 3.

30. **populo Romano**: indirect object of *intulerat.* **princeps persolvit**: *was the first to pay;* B. 241, 2; A. 290; G. 325; H. 497, 3.

31. **qua in re**: for the position of *in*, see the note on p. 1, line 12, *qua de causa.*

32. **ejus**: *his;* namely, Caesar's. **soceri L. Pisonis**: Caesar had married as his last wife Calpurnia, daughter of Lucius Calpurnius Piso.

Page 9. **1. legatum**: namely, of Cassius.

3. **hoc proelio facto**: notice that the Romans spoke of 'making a battle'; we ordinarily speak of 'fighting a battle.' **reliquas copias Helvetiorum**: placed at the very beginning of the subordinate clause for the purpose of emphasis.

4. **pontem faciendum curat**: *arranged for the construction of a bridge;* literally, *cared for a bridge to be built.* For the gerundive construction used in place of an object clause, see B. 337, 8, *b*, 2; A. 500, 4; G. 430; H. 622. A number of competent engineers (*fabri*), employed for the bridging of rivers, the construction of fortifications, *etc.*, attended every legion. These did not constitute a separate corps, as in our modern armies, but fought in the ranks like common soldiers. See Introd. § 15. **in Arari**: *over the Arar.* The Romans regularly spoke of building a bridge *in* a river.

6. **id**: the object of *fecisse.* **diebus XX**: *in twenty days; i.e.* it had taken them a full twenty days to do it; B. 231; A. 423; G. 393; H. 487.

7. **ut flumen transirent**: namely, *the passage of the river;* literally, *that they should cross the river.* The clause, a Substantive Clause of Result, is in apposition with *quod;* B. 297, 3; A. 568; G. 557; H. 571, 3. **illum**: referring to Caesar.

9. **bello Cassiano**: the war of 107 B.C. As that struggle had occurred forty-nine years before the present events, Divico must at this time have been nearly or quite seventy-five years of age. The Helvetii doubtless thought to strike terror into the hearts of the Romans by sending this old champion to negotiate with Caesar; *bello* is Ablative of Time.

10. **egit**: *parleyed.* **si pacem, *etc.*:** this and the following chapter bristle with the difficulties of indirect discourse. But if the pupil will carefully master these at the outset, subsequent passages of indirect discourse will seem relatively simple and easy. Remember the two main principles: Principal clauses stand in the infinitive and subordinate clauses in the subjunctive. An outline of the substance of Divico's speech is here given: "If the Romans would make peace with the Helvetii, the latter would settle where Caesar should locate them. But if Caesar persisted in war, let him think of the crushing defeat the Helvetii had once inflicted on the Romans. They may repeat it. Merely because Caesar had surprised and cut to pieces one canton, he must not rate his own prowess too high or theirs too low. They had been taught to rely on their own valor, not on trickery. Therefore let Caesar beware lest they take a stand against him; if they do, they will

destroy him, and the name of the spot shall forever bear witness to his ruin.''

11. **in eam partem**: *partem* is here used in the sense of *place*. **ituros (esse)**, **futuros (esse)**: principal clauses in indirect discourse; *futuros* here means *stay, remain*. Direct discourse of these first three lines would be: *si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faciet, in eam partem ibunt atque ibi erunt Helvetii ubi eos tu* (*i.e.* Caesar) *constitueris atque esse volueris*. The subordinate clauses of the direct discourse become subjunctives in the indirect, while the principal clauses become infinitives. Note further that the future perfect of direct discourse, upon becoming indirect, passes over into the pluperfect subjunctive after an historical tense; thus here *constitueris* becomes *constituisset;* B. 319, *B*, *a*; A. 589, 3; G. 654; H. 644, 2.

13. **sin**: for the use of *sin* in Latin, see B. 306, 3; G. 592; H. 575, 5. **bello**: Ablative of Means. **persequi**: object of *perseveraret*. As object of *persequi* understand *eos* referring to the Helvetii. **perseveraret**: subject is *Caesar* (not *populus Romanus*). **reminisceretur**: *let him remember;* an imperative clause in indirect discourse; B. 316; A. 588; G. 652; H. 642.

14. **veteris incommodi**: Divico means the defeat of Cassius in 107 B.C. He calls it the 'former inconvenience,' as though wishing to spare the feelings of the Romans. **incommodi, virtutis**: for the genitive with verbs of remembering, see B. 206, 2; A. 350; G. 376; H. 454. Direct discourse of the passage: *sin bello persequi perseverabis, reminiscere et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum.*

15. **unum pagum**: namely, the Tigurini above mentioned.

16. **suis**: *to their* (*countrymen*).

17. **ne tribueret . . . despiceret**: literally, *let him not attribute . . . or scorn them;* imperative clauses in indirect discourse; *magnopere* is here virtually a substantive (*overmuch*), used as object of *tribueret; aut . . . aut* means 'either . . . or,' or, with *ne*, 'neither . . . nor,' the so-called correlative use.

18. **ipsos**: *them; i.e.* the Helvetii; *se*, as indirect reflexive, might have been expected; but *suae* has just been used referring to Caesar; hence *se* would have been ambiguous. For *ipse* as an indirect reflexive instead of *se*, see B. 249, 3; A. 300, *b*; H. 509, 6. Direct discourse of the last sentence: *quod improviso unum pagum adortus es, cum nos qui flumen transieramus nostris auxilium non possemus, noli ob eam rem aut tuae magnopere virtuti tribuere aut nos despicere.* **ita**: explained by the following *ut*-clause.

19. **ut . . . contenderent, quam . . . niterentur**: *to contend by valor rather than to depend on, etc.* The clauses are the objects of *didicisse; ut* is to be supplied in thought after *quam.*

20. **dolo aut insidiis**: implying that Caesar's surprise of the Tigurini had been treacherous, as it really seems to have been. Caesar had simply refused to permit the Helvetii to march through the Province. He had not prohibited their passage through the Sequani, nor had he given any formal notice of hostilities. For the case of *dolo, insidiis*, see B. 218, 3; A. 431; G. 401, N. 6; H. 476, 3. Direct discourse of the passage: *nos ita a patribus majoribusque nostris didicimus, ut magis virtute contendamus quam dolo aut insidiis nitamur.* **ne committeret**: *let him not allow;* imperative clause in indirect discourse. **ut locus caperet aut proderet**: substantive clauses, object of *committeret.*

21. **ubi constitissent**: *i.e.* where the Helvetii should take their stand to defend their liberties. Divico means that the spot will witness the destruction of the Roman army, and hence be named from the event. Direct discourse of the passage: *quare noli committere ut is locus, ubi constiterimus, ex calamitate populi Romani et internecione exercitus nomen capiat aut memoriam prodat.*

22. **memoriam**: *i.e.* the memory of the destruction of the Roman army.

24. **his**: understand *legatis.* An outline of the substance of Caesar's speech is here given: "He felt less ground for hesitation inasmuch as he remembered perfectly the facts referred to by Divico. Furthermore, he was highly indignant at the circumstances of the Roman defeat, for the Roman troops had been attacked without warning. Even if Caesar could forgive and forget this act of the Helvetii, could he forget their recent conduct, especially their attempt to force a way through the Province? Their insolent boasts of what they had done in the past were most offensive. Evidently the gods were granting them temporary success that they might feel misfortune the more keenly when it should come. However, despite all this, he would make peace with them, if they would give him hostages and make reparation to the Haedui and others for the damage done in passing through their lands." **eo**: *on this account;* explained by the *quod*-clause; *eo* is Ablative of Cause; B. 219; A. 404; G. 408; H. 475. **sibi**: *to him*, Caesar; indirect reflexive, B. 244, 1, II; A. 300, 2; G. 520; H. 504. **dubitationis**: Genitive of the Whole with *minus;* literally, *less of hesitation;* B. 201, 2; A. 346, *a*, 3; G. 369; H. 442.

25. **commemorassent** = *commemoravissent.*

26. **atque eo gravius ferre, quo**, *etc.: and he was the more indignant in that they* (*eas res*) *had not happened by any fault, etc.;* literally, *he bore them the more heavily, the less they had happened in accordance with the desert, etc.; quo* and *eo* are Ablatives of Degree of Difference; B. 223; A. 414, *a*; G. 403; H. 479; *merito* is an Ablative of Accordance; B. 220, 3; A. 418, *a* and N.; H. 475, 3; G. 399, N. 1. In strictness *se* should have been expressed as subject of *ferre;* B. 314, 5; A. 581, N. 1; H. 642, foot-note.

27. **qui si**, *etc.: for if they had been conscious; qui* here refers to *populus Romanus*, a collective noun; hence the rendering *they*. For the relative at the beginning of a clause equivalent to a demonstrative with a conjunction, see B. 251, 6; A. 308, *f*; G. 610; H. 510. **alicujus injuriae**: *i.e.* of having done the Helvetii any wrong. For the genitive, see B. 204, 1; A. 349, *a*; G. 374; H. 451, 1.

Page 10. 1. **sibi**: with *conscius;* we should hardly translate it. **non fuisse difficile cavere**: *it would not have been difficult to be on their guard; fuisse* is the apodosis of a contrary-to-fact condition in indirect discourse, representing a *fuit* of the direct; B. 304, 3; A. 437, *a*; H. 583, 3. Ordinarily this would have been *futurum fuisse* (representing *fuisset* of the direct); B. 321, 2; A. 589, *b*, 2; H. 647, 2, 3. The subject of *fuisse* is *cavere*. **sed eo deceptum**, *etc.: but they* (the Roman people) *had been deceived for this reason, that, etc.; eo* (Ablative of Cause) is explained by the following *quod*-clauses; as subject of *deceptum* (*esse*), understand *eum* referring to *populum Romanum*.

2. **quod neque . . . intellegeret, neque . . . putaret**: *because they neither knew that* (*anything*) *had been done by them on account of which they should be afraid, nor thought they ought to be afraid without reason;* as subject of *commissum* (*esse*) we must understand *quicquam*.

3. **quare timeret**: *why they should fear; quare* (= *propter quod*) is relative, the antecedent being *quicquam* understood; *quare timeret* is a Relative Clause of Purpose, — (*anything*) *to be afraid of*. **timendum** (esse): literally, *it ought to be feared;* impersonal. Direct form of the foregoing passage: *eo mihi minus dubitationis datur, quod eas res, quas commemoravistis, memoria teneo, atque eo gravius fero, quo minus merito populi Romani acciderunt; qui si alicujus injuriae sibi conscius fuisset, non fuit difficile cavere; sed eo deceptus est, quod neque commissum a se intellegebat, quare timeret, neque sine causa timendum putabat.* In this, as in the preceding

and following passages of indirect discourse, remember that principal clauses stand in the infinitive, subordinate clauses in the subjunctive. **quod si vellet**: *but if he were willing.*

4. **veteris contumeliae**: referring to the defeat of Cassius. For the genitive with verbs of forgetting, see B. 206, 2; A. 350; G. 376; H. 454. **num memoriam deponere posse**: *could he lay aside the memory;* for the infinitive in rhetorical questions in indirect discourse, see B. 315, 2; A. 586; G. 651, R.; H. 642, 2. **recentium injuriarum**: Objective Genitive, dependent on *memoriam.*

5. **quod temptassent, . . . quod vexassent**: *the fact that they had attempted, . . . that they had harassed.* These clauses are explanatory of *injuriarum.* **eo invito**: *without his consent.* Direct discourse for this passage: *quod si veteris contumeliae oblivisci volo, num etiam recentium injuriarum, quod me invito iter per provinciam per vim temptavistis, quod Haeduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobroges vexavistis, memoriam deponere possum?*

7. **quod**, *etc.*: *the fact that they boasted, etc.* The *quod*-clauses are the subject of *pertinere.*

8. **sua victoria**: *of their victory*, referring again to the defeat of Cassius. Ablative of Cause with *gloriarentur.*

9. **se impune injurias tulisse**: *had escaped unpunished for their misdeeds; impune aliquid ferre* has special idiomatic force. **eodem pertinere**: *was of a piece with the rest of their conduct:* literally, *tended in the same direction*, namely, as their attempt to go through the Province and their assaults upon the Haedui; *eodem* is, of course, the adverb.

10. **consuesse**, *etc.*: *for the immortal gods are wont at times to grant greater prosperity and longer exemption from punishment to those men whom they wish to punish for their wickedness, that they may suffer more severely from the change in their circumstances; consuesse = consuevisse;* B. 116, 1; A. 181, *a*; G. 131, 1; H. 238. **quo**: instead of *ut* in a purpose clause containing a comparative; B. 282, 1, *a*; A. 531, *a*; G. 545, 2; H. 568, 7. **ex commutatione rerum**: *i.e.* in consequence of the change from prosperity to adversity.

11. **doleant, velint**: the regular law for the sequence of tenses would require the imperfect here, as in the previous part of this chapter. But for greater vividness the tenses of the direct discourse are sometimes retained in the indirect form, even after an historical tense. This is called *repraesentatio*, 'a bringing back to the present.' **quos**: this looks forward to *his* as its antecedent.

12. **velint**: namely, the gods.

13. **concedere**: dependent upon *consuesse*. Direct discourse for the passage: *quod vestra victoria tam insolenter gloriamini quodque tam diu vos impune injurias tulisse admiramini, eodem pertinet. Consuerunt enim di immortales, quo gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci volunt, his secundiores interdum res et diuturniorem impunitatem concedere.* **cum**: adversative, *although*. **sint, dentur**, *etc.*: the *repraesentatio* continues to the end of the chapter.

14. **sibi**: *to him*; indirect reflexive. **facturos** = *eos facturos esse*.

15. **Haeduis**: dative dependent upon *satisfaciant*. **de injuriis**: *for the injuries*. **ipsis**: the Haedui. Direct discourse of last sentence: *Cum haec ita sint, tamen, si obsides a vobis mihi dabuntur ut ea, quae pollicemini, vos facturos intellegam, et si Haeduis de injuriis, quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulistis, item si Allobrogibus satisfacietis, ego vobiscum pacem faciam.*

19. **uti . . . consuerint**: *to the habit of receiving, not giving*; literally, *that they are accustomed, etc.*; a substantive clause dependent upon *institutos esse; consuerint* (= *consueverint*) furnishes another illustration of *repraesentatio*, for the perfect of *consuesco* means 'I *am* wont,' and is therefore virtually a present.

22. **movent**: namely, the Helvetii.

23. **equitatum**: cavalry formed no regular part of the Roman standing army in Caesar's day. Horsemen were regularly furnished by the Roman allies, as here.

25. **coactum habebat**: here hardly different from the pluperfect (*coëgerat*); B. 337, 6; A. 497, *b*; H. 431, 3. **qui videant**: subjunctive in a relative clause denoting purpose; *videant* is plural, since *qui* refers to *equitatem*, a collective noun; B. 250, 4; A. 306, *b*; G. 614, R. 3; H. 397. **quas faciant**: indirect question.

26. **qui**: *but these*. **cupidius**: *too eagerly*, a common force of the comparative. **novissimum agmen**: *the rear* (of the enemy); literally, *the last column*.

27. **loco**: for the ablative without a preposition, see B. 228, 1, *b*; A. 429, 1; G. 385, N. 1; H. 483, 485, 2.

28. **de nostris**: *of our* (*men*); *de* with the ablative is a common substitute for the Genitive of the Whole; B. 201, 1, *a*; A. 346, *c*; G. 372, R. 2; H. 444.

29. **equitibus**: Ablative of Means.

31. **agmine**: *i.e.* of the Helvetii. Ablative of Place, without *in*, like *loco* in line 27. **proelio**: Ablative of Means.

Page 11. 1. **satis habebat**: *regarded it sufficient;* the object of *habebat* is *prohibere; satis* is predicate accusative.

2. **rapinis**: Ablative of Separation.

3. **dies**: Accusative of Duration of Time; B. 181; A. 423; G. 336; H. 417.

4. **nostrum primum**: *our van;* with *primum* understand *agmen.*

5. **amplius**: *more;* here used substantively as subject of *interesset.* **quinis aut senis milibus**: *milibus* is Ablative of Comparison; the distributives *quinis* and *senis* (instead of *quinque* and *sex*) are used to indicate five or six each day.

7. **Haeduos frumentum . . . flagitare**: *demanded of the Haedui the grain which, etc.;* for the two accusatives with verbs of demanding, see B. 178, 1, *a*; A. 396; G. 339; H. 411; *flagitare* is the Historical Infinitive; B. 335; A. 463; G. 647; H. 610. Note that the subject of the Historical Infinitive stands in the nominative. **quod essent polliciti**: subjunctive in implied indirect discourse, — *which* (he reminded them) *they had promised;* B. 323; A. 592, 3; G. 508, 3; H. 649, I.

8. **publice**: *in the name of their people.* **frigora**: *the cold climate;* Caesar naturally compares it with that of Rome.

10. **frumenta**: note the plural, regularly used in Caesar to denote uncut grain; the singular denotes threshed grain. **ne pabuli quidem**: with *ne quidem* the emphatic word always stands between the two members.

11. **eo frumento**: dependent upon *uti.*

12. **flumine Arari navibus**: *flumine* is Ablative of the Way by which; B. 218, 9; A. 429, *a*; H. 476; *navibus* is Ablative of Means. **propterea . . . quod**: here separated; more often *quod* follows *propterea* immediately.

13. **minus**: here, as often, equivalent to *non.* **iter ab Arari averterant**: to the westward; see the map opposite p. 6.

14. **diem ex die ducere**: *put him off day after day; diem* is Accusative of Duration of Time; *ducere* (like the following *dicere*) is Historical Infinitive.

15. **conferri, comportari, adesse**: as subject of these infinitives understand *frumentum.* The infinitives themselves are the object of *dicere.* Note the gradual climax: *was being gathered, was being hauled to headquarters, was at hand.*

16. **diutius**: *too long.* **quo die**: repetition of the antecedent with the relative, as repeatedly before.

17. **metiri**: twice a month each soldier received a half bushel of

grain or flour; *metiri* is the subject of *oporteret.* **oporteret**: subordinate clause in indirect discourse. **eorum** = *Haeduorum.*

19. **in his**: *among these.* **magistratui**: here *office.* For the dative, see B. 187, III; A. 370; G. 347; H. 429.

20. **quem**: grammatically its antecedent is *magistratui,* but logically it is the holder of the office, not the office itself. **vergobretum**: Latinized form of a Celtic designation, meaning 'dispenser of justice.' **annuus**: *yearly;* as often, the adjective has the force of an adverb.

21. **in suos**: *over his countrymen.*

22. **quod sublevetur**: subjunctive, because the reason is not the writer's; Caesar the writer ascribes it to Caesar the general; B. 286, 1; A. 540; G. 541; H. 588, II. **posset**: as subject understand *id* referring to *frumentum;* note the alternation in historical and principal tenses after the historical present, in *posset . . . sublevetur.*

23. **propinquis hostibus**: Ablative Absolute.

24. **magna ex parte**: *in large measure;* the phrase limits *adductus.*

25. **susceperit**: subjunctive with *cum*-causal. **multo**: Ablative of Degree of Difference.

26. **quod sit destitutus**: the subjunctive, as above in *sublevetur,* line 22.

28. **quod**: object of *tacuerat;* its antecedent is *id* understood, the object of *proponit.*

29. **plurimum valeat, plus possint**: *plurimum* and *plus* (originally Accusatives of Result Produced) have adverbial force.

Page 12. 2. **ne conferant**: *from gathering;* a substantive clause dependent upon *deterrere;* B. 295, 3; A. 558, *b*; G. 547; H. 566; *conferant* and *debeant* are plural because of the plural force of the collective *multitudinem;* B. 254, 4, *a*; A. 280, *a*; G. 211, R. Exc. 1; H. 389, 1.

3. **praestare**: (*saying*) *it was better;* the infinitive depends upon the idea of saying involved in *oratione.* **jam principatum**: *the actual supremacy;* literally, *the supremacy already.*

4. **possint**: as subject understand *ei* referring to the Haedui.

5. **neque dubitare debere**, *etc.*: *nor ought they to doubt that, etc.* As subject of *debere* we should naturally expect *se* referring to the same persons as *hos* above. **quin sint erepturi**: *that they intended to take away;* a substantive clause, the object of *dubitare;* B. 298; A. 558; G. 555, 2; H. 595, 1. The inverted order (*sint erepturi* for *erepturi sint*) is not uncommon. The active periphrastic conjugation often indicates intended or contemplated action.

6. **Haeduis**: Dative of Separation; B. 188, 2, *d*; A. 381; G. 347, R. 5; H. 427.

8. **quaeque** = *et quae, i.e. et ea quae.* **hos a se coerceri non posse**: *i.e.* despite his position as supreme magistrate or vergobretus.

9. **quin etiam**: *in fact* or *moreover.* **quod**, *etc.*: *as to the fact that he had announced, as to his having announced.* **necessario coactus**: *under compulsion;* literally, *of necessity, having been forced.* His position as chief magistrate naturally compelled him to account for the failure of the Haedui to keep their engagements.

10. **id**: namely, giving the real causes of the failure to supply the promised grain.

14. **pluribus praesentibus**: *in the presence of a large number*, or *too many.*

15. **concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet**: an instance of Adversative A-sýn-de-ton. Asyndeton is the omission of a conjunction; 'adversative' means that the omitted conjunction is 'but' (*sed*); B, 346, *b*; A. 601, *c*; G. 473, R.; H. 657, 6.

16. **ex solo**: understand *eo*, referring to Liscus.

18. **esse vera**: *that they* (namely, the representations of Liscus and others) *were true; esse vera* is more fully explained by what follows. **ipsum esse**: *was the very person.*

19. **summa audacia**: (*a man*) *of the greatest boldness;* Ablative of Quality.

20. **rerum novarum**: *a change in government*, as above, p. 6, line 25.

21. **portoria, vectigalia**: *portoria* were customs duties; *vectigalia*, all other revenues.

22. **redempta habere**: *had farmed; redempta* is the participle limiting *portoria* and *vectigalia.* The expression is hardly different from *redemisse.* Compare *coactum habebat*, p. 10, line 25, in the sense of *coegerat.* Farming the revenues consisted in undertaking their collection on private account. They were sold by auction to the highest bidder, who naturally paid as little as possible and collected as much as possible, often more than he was justly entitled to. In Dumnorix's case, as Caesar tells us, the auction was a farce. **illo licente**: *when he made a bid.*

23. **contra**: *against him; contra* is here an adverb. **et . . . et**: *both . . . and.*

26. **neque** = *et non*, a combination avoided in Latin.

27. **largiter posse**: *had great power;* for the adverb in *-iter* from *largus*, see B. 77, 4; A. 214, *c*; G. 92. 2. **hujus potentiae causa**: B. 198, 1; A. 359, *b*; G. 373; H. 475, 2.

28. **Biturigibus**: their name survives in the modern town of Bourges. They dwelt to the west of the Haedui.

29. **collocasse** = *collocavisse; had given* (literally *placed*) *in marriage.* **ex Helvetiis uxorem**: namely, the daughter of Orgetorix.

30. **sororem ex matre**: *his half-sister;* literally, *sister from his mother.* Dumnorix's mother married twice. **nuptum**: the supine, expressing purpose. *Do* and *colloco* are treated as verbs of motion; B. 340, 1, *b*; A. 509; G. 435; H. 633, 1. **in alias civitates**: the idea of motion in *collocasse* leads to the use of *in* with the accusative instead of *in* with the ablative. Above, however, p. 12, line 28, *in Biturigibus collocasse* occurs.

Page 13. 1. **cupere**: *was kindly disposed to.* **Helvetiis**: for the dative, see B. 187, II, *a*; A. 367; G. 346, R. 2; H. 426, 4, N.

2. **suo nomine**: *privately, personally;* literally, *on his own account.* Dumnorix's opposition to Caesar was twofold: 1) he was opposed on public grounds to the extension of Roman influence in Gaul; 2) he was privately opposed to the diminution of his own influence.

5. **si quid accidat Romanis**: *i.e.* if the Romans should receive any check in Gaul; a simple future condition in indirect discourse. **summam in spem venire**: *entertained the highest hopes;* literally, *came into the highest hope.*

6. **regni obtinendi**: gerundive construction. Note that *regni* depends upon *spem; obtinendi* limits *regni.* **imperio**: *under the sway;* Ablative of Attendant Circumstance; B. 221; H. 473, 3.

9. **quod proelium . . . esset factum**: *as regarded the unfavorable cavalry fight that had occurred, etc.;* literally, *as to the fact that the fight had occurred.* For the fight referred to, see chapter 15.

10. **paucis ante diebus**: *diebus* is Ablative of Degree of Difference.

11. **factum (esse) a Dumnorige**: Caesar implies that Dumnorix had fled unnecessarily.

12. **auxilio**: Dative of Purpose; B. 191, 2, *b*; A. 382, 1; G. 356; H. 433.

15. **cum accederent**: a causal clause; B. 286, 2; A. 549; G. 586; H. 598.

16. **res**: *facts.* **quod traduxisset**, *etc.: (namely) that he had conducted.* The *quod*-clauses are in apposition with *res.* The subjunctive is due to attraction; B. 324; A. 593; G. 663, 1; H. 652.

17. **quod . . . curasset**: *that he had arranged for the exchange of hostages;* B. 337, 8, *b*, 2; A. 500, 4; G. 430; H. 623. **inter eos**: namely, the Sequani and Helvetii.

18. **injussu suo et civitatis**: *without his* (Caesar's) *order and that of the state* (of the Haedui).

19. **inscientibus ipsis**: *without their knowledge; ipsis* refers to Caesar and the Haedui; *inscientibus* and *insciente* are almost the only forms of this adjective; it occurs chiefly in the Ablative Absolute.

20. **satis esse causae**: *that there was sufficient reason;* literally, *enough of reason* (Genitive of the Whole); *satis* is the subject of *esse*. **quare . . . animadverteret**: *why he should either punish him himself;* Relative Clause of Purpose. Compare *quare timeret*, p. 10, line 3, and the note.

21. **aut . . . juberet**: *or order the state to.* The Latin repeats the verb (*animadvertere*); in English we avoid this.

23. **his . . . repugnabat**: *to all this there was only one obstacle;* literally, *only one thing fought against these things, etc.* For the dative with verbs of resisting, see B. 187, II, *a*; A. 367; G. 346; H. 426, 1. **quod cognoverat**: *the fact that he knew.* Observe that the perfect of *cognosco* means 'I know' (literally, 'I have become acquainted with'), and the pluperfect, 'I knew' (literally, 'I had become acquainted with').

26. **ne offenderet**: *lest he should offend;* a Substantive Clause Developed from the Optative, used as the object of *verebatur;* B. 296, 2; A. 564; G. 550; H. 567, 1. **ejus**: namely, Dumnorix.

27. **priusquam conaretur**: *priusquam* regularly takes the subjunctive to denote an act as anticipated, *i.e.* an act that some one looks forward to as something to prepare for, to avoid, or the like. Thus here, *before he should undertake anything*, is equivalent to *in preparation for his undertaking;* hence the subjunctive; B. 292, 1, *a*; A. 551, *b*; G. 577; H. 605.

28. **cotidianis**: *i.e.* the ordinary, customary.

30. **principem**: *a prominent man.* **Galliae provinciae**: *i.e. provincia nostra.* **cui . . . habebat**: *in whom* (literally, *to whom*) *he had the highest confidence in all things.*

Page 14. 1. **cum eo**: namely, Divitiacus.

2. **simul**: this limits both *commonefacit* and *ostendit.* **ipso**: Divitiacus.

3. **sint dicta, dixerit**: indirect questions.

4. **apud se**: in Caesar's presence.

5. **ut statuat vel jubeat**: Substantive Clauses Developed from the Volitive; objects of *petit atque hortatur;* B. 295, 1; A. 563; G. 546; H. 565. **ejus**: depending on *animi*, which in turn depends upon

offensione. **ipse**: this refers to Caesar. Caesar's request is that he himself be permitted either to take action in Dumnorix's case or to order the state of the Haedui to take action. The regular form of expressing this idea would have been *ut sibi statuere liceat, etc.* **causa cognita**: *having heard the case; cognoscere* is the regular word for conducting a judicial investigation.

8. **ne statueret**: another Substantive Clause Developed from the Volitive; object of *obsecrare.* The origin of such clauses may be clearly seen in a sentence like *te obsecro, ne quid gravius statuas*, originally, 'I entreat you, take no severe action.' **quid gravius**: *anything very severe;* literally, *severer, i.e.* than absolutely necessary.

10. **scire se**: dependent on the idea of saying involved in *obsecrare.* **nec quemquam**: *and that no one.* The Latin avoids *et neminem.* **ex eo**: *eo* is neuter and refers to the general situation of affairs.

11. **ipse**: Divitiacus. **plurimum**: to be taken with *posset.*

12. **ille**: (*and*) *he;* Asyndeton. The reference is to Dumnorix.

13. **per se crevisset**: *i.e.* Dumnorix had grown powerful through Divitiacus; *se* is the indirect reflexive. **opibus ac nervis**: dependent upon *uteretur.*

15. **suam**: again the indirect reflexive referring to Divitiacus; it limits *gratiam* as well as *perniciem.* **uteretur**: namely, Dumnorix; subjunctive of subordinate clause in indirect discourse. Yet strictly we should have had the infinitive here; B. 314, 4. **fraterno**: *for his brother;* the adjective is here equivalent to an objective genitive.

16. **quod si**: *but if*, the regular meaning of this phrase. **si quid accidisset**: a mild form of expression for 'if any penalty should be inflicted on him'; *accidisset* represents a future perfect indicative of direct discourse.

17. **eum locum**: *such a position.*

18. **neminem existimaturum, non,** *etc.*: in English we should convert the two negatives into an affirmative, — *everybody would think it had been done with his approval; sua voluntate* is Ablative of Attendant Circumstance; B. 221; A. 412; G. 399; H. 473, 3.

19. **futurum uti averterentur**: *the hearts of all Gaul would be turned away from him;* literally, *it would happen that the hearts would be turned away.* The future infinitive passive (in *-um iri*) is very rare. Ordinarily its place is taken by an *ut*-clause with *futurum* (*esse*) as here; *uti averterentur* is a Substantive Clause of Result and is the subject of *futurum* (*esse*).

21. **cum**: the conjunction. **pluribus verbis**: Ablative of Attend-

ant Circumstance. The comparative here, as frequently, has the force merely of a stronger positive, — *in many words.*

22. **rogat, finem orandi faciat**: *begs him to make an end of entreating; faciat* is a Substantive Clause Developed from the Volitive, used as the object of *rogat*, — originally, *begs him, let him make an end, etc.* Do not conceive this kind of clause to result from the omission of *ut;* this is really the earliest form of such clauses; *ut* was added later, but the simple subjunctive without *ut* is often found at all periods of the language; B. 295, 8; A. 565, *a*; G. 546, R. 2; H. 565, 4.

23. **tanti**: *of so much account;* predicate Genitive of Quality; B. 203, 3; A. 417; G. 380; H. 448, 1. **ejus**: Divitiacus. **se**: Caesar.

24. **uti . . . condonet**: *that he pardons the wrong to the state and abandons his own resentment in deference to his wish and entreaties;* literally, *relinquishes . . . to his wish, etc., voluntati* and *precibus* being indirect objects. Note that in English we must translate *condonet* differently with *injuriam* and *dolorem.* Caesar is not entirely frank in the reasons he assigns for the pardon of Dumnorix. The fact was, he could not afford to arouse the further hostility of the Haedui by punishing Dumnorix. Dumnorix was undoubtedly selfish, unscrupulous, and treacherous. Yet he was the head of an influential party, who doubtless regarded him as a sort of national champion opposed on patriotic grounds to the further extension of Roman sovereignty in Gaul. His execution or imprisonment would have been the signal for a formidable uprising. Caesar, therefore, was forced either to spare Dumnorix or to incur the risk of embarrassing his plans at a most critical juncture.

25. **fratrem adhibet**: Asyndeton (omission of the conjunction), just as above, p. 12, line 15, *concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet.* Where *et* is lacking, we call the asyndeton copulative. Asyndeton is particularly characteristic of vivid, rapid narration, as here.

26. **reprehendat, intellegat, queratur**: subjunctive in indirect question.

27. **ut vitet**: Substantive Clause Developed from the Volitive. Compare *moneo, suspiciones vites,* 'I advise you, shun suspicion.'

28. **in reliquum tempus**: *for the future.* **praeterita**: *the past;* literally, *past things.*

29. **Divitiaco fratri condonare**: this is precisely like *injuriam voluntati condonare* above. **Dumnorigi**: *over Dumnorix.*

30. **ut**: introducing *possit.* **agat, loquatur**: indirect questions; *quibuscum loquatur* is another instance of Copulative Asyndeton.

Page 15. 1. **eodem die**, *etc.:* Caesar now resumes the narrative broken off at chapter 16. The pupil will recall that the Romans were following closely on the heels of the Helvetii, and at times even engaging in skirmishes with them. Caesar was merely waiting to secure a favorable opportunity for engaging them in a pitched battle. What chiefly hampered him was the lack of adequate provisions for his troops. The Haedui had promised to provide him with supplies, but had failed to do so, owing to the machinations of Dumnorix. Even after the latter's treachery was revealed, the Haedui do not seem to have furnished the promised grain. As Caesar tells us in chapter 22, he was obliged temporarily to abandon the pursuit of the Helvetii and turn aside to Bibracte to procure the necessary provisions. **hostes consedisse**: dependent on the idea of saying in *certior factus.*

3. **qualis esset**: indirect question, dependent upon *cognoscerent.* **qualis in circuitu ascensus**: *i.e.* of what nature the ascent, in case part of his forces should make a detour around the foot of the hill, ascend it from the opposite side, and thus secure the advantage of position.

4. **qui cognoscerent**: Relative Clause of Purpose. The antecedent of *qui* is *homines* understood, the object of *misit.*

5. **facilem esse**: understand *eum* (*i.e. ascensum*) as subject of *esse.* **de tertia vigilia**: as on p. 8, line 19. **T. Labienum**: *Titus Labienus*, a trusted officer. Caesar had left him in charge of the line of defence near Geneva at the time he had set out for northern Italy to enroll fresh legions. **legatum pro praetore**: *lieutenant with authority of general.* Note that *praetor* has two meanings: 1) *general, commander*, as here; 2) *praetor*, *i.e.* a magistrate charged with the administration of justice. The second is the more common meaning. The first, however, is the original one.

6. **et eis ducibus**: *and with those as guides; eis* is governed by *cum; ducibus* is in predicate relation to *eis.* **qui iter cognoverant**: the scouts referred to in line 4, above.

8. **quid sui consili sit**: *what his plan is;* literally, *what is of his plan, what belongs to his plan;* a predicate Genitive of Possession. **de quarta vigilia**: *i.e.* in the last quarter of a short summer night. The sun rises at 4 o'clock in central France at this season.

9. **itinere, quo**: Ablatives of the Way by which. **ad**: here, *against;* ordinarily, *to, towards.*

10. **rei militaris**: *in military affairs;* Genitive with Adjectives; B. 204, 1; A. 349, *a*; G. 374; H. 451, 1.

11. **habebatur**: *was considered.* The sequel shows that Considius's

reputation was not borne out on the present occasion; but Caesar wishes to justify his choice. **L. Sullae, M. Crassi**: Sulla was one of the greatest masters of warfare produced by Rome. He had served in the Jugurthine War, 112-106 B.C., and later in the war against Mithridates, 88-84 B.C. Crassus had successfully conducted operations against the insurrection headed by Spartacus, 73-71 B.C.

12. **in**: understand *eo* (*i.e. exercitu*).

14. **cum teneretur, abesset**: *cum*-clauses of situation; B. 288, 1, B; A. 546; G. 585; H. 600, II. **summus mons**: *the top of the mountain.*

15. **ipse abesset**: Copulative Asyndeton; *ipse* refers to Caesar.

16. **passibus**: Ablative of Comparison; with *plus*, *minus*, *longius*, and *amplius* we may have either the Ablative of Comparison or the Accusative of Time or Space. **neque . . . aut . . . aut**: *and . . . neither . . . nor; neque* connects *cognitus esset* to *abesset.*

17. **cognitus esset**: also dependent upon *cum.*

18. **equo admisso**: *with his horse at a gallop;* literally, *his horse let out;* Ablative Absolute.

20. **Gallicis**: the Helvetii were ranked as Gauls. **insignibus**: ornamental devices of various kinds.

22. **ut erat ei praeceptum a Caesare**: *in accordance with the directions given him by Caesar, not to join, etc.;* literally, *as* (= *just as*) *it had been ordered to him.* The pupil must not regard *ut* as causal. It practically never has that force in Latin. **ne committeret**: a Substantive Clause Developed from the Volitive ('let him not engage'). It is the subject of *erat praeceptum.*

23. **ipsius** = *Caesaris.*

24. **visae essent**: subjunctive of subordinate clause in indirect discourse, representing a future perfect indicative of the direct discourse, — 'do not join battle, unless my forces shall (first) have been seen.' **undique**: *i.e.* Labienus from the mountain and Caesar from level ground.

26. **multo die**: *late in the day;* literally, *in the late day;* Ablative of Time.

28. **quod**: its antecedent is *id* understood, the object of *renuntiasse.*

29. **pro viso**: *as seen; viso* is the participle used substantively. The substantive use of adjectives in the neuter singular is not common; it occurs most frequently in the Genitive of the Whole and after prepositions; B. 237, 2, *a.* **sibi**: Caesar; indirect reflexive. **quo consuerat intervallo**: condensed form for *eo intervallo quo consuerat; intervallo* is Ablative of Attendant Circumstance. The usual distance

between the two armies was five or six miles, as Caesar tells us in chapter 15, p. 11, line 5. **consuerat** = *consueverat.*

Page 16. 1. **milia**: Accusative of Extent of Space.

3. **diei**: B. 201, 3, *a*; A. 359, *b*; H. 446, 5. **biduum**: observe that the Latin regularly says *biduum*, 'two days'; *triduum*, 'three days'; *quadriduum*, 'four days'; not *duos, tres, quattuor dies.* Larger numbers of days are expressed by *quinque dies, sex dies, etc.* Compare the corresponding expressions for 'two years,' 'three years,' 'four years,' *biennium, triennium, quadriennium.*

4. **cum**: (*up to the time*) *when.*

5. **Bibracte**: in the case of proper names, neuter *i*-stems regularly have *-e* (not *-i*) in the ablative; B. 39, 2; A. 76, N. 2; H. 103, 2. Bibracte is identified with the modern Mont Beuvray, some miles west of Autun.

6. **milibus**: Ablative of Comparison. **rei frumentariae prospiciendum (esse)**: that *he ought to be providing for grain;* literally, *that it ought to be looked out, etc.*

8. **Bibracte ire**: he marched northward. **fugitivos**: *runaway* (*slaves*).

9. **Gallorum**: here an adjective.

10. **quod existimarent commisissent, confiderent**: reasons existing in the minds of the Helvetii; B. 286, 1; A. 540; G. 541; H. 588, II. **timore perterritos**: the emphasis rests on these words, not on *discedere.* It was perfectly plain that the Romans were retreating; the Helvetii thought they were retreating from fright.

11. **eo magis**: *all the more;* literally, *the more on account of this; eo* is explained by *quod non commisissent; eo quod* may be compared with *propterea quod.* **superioribus locis occupatis**: *though they had seized higher ground;* Ablative Absolute. The reference is to Labienus's occupation of the mountain top. The Helvetii, however, misinterpreted Labienus's failure to fight.

13. **re frumentaria**: Ablative of Separation. **posse**: as subject understand *Romanos.*

14. **a novissimo agmine**: *at the rear*; for this use of *a*, compare *a flumine Rhodano*, 'at the Rhone,' p. 1, line 18, and the note.

16. **id animum advertit**: *noticed that; animum advertit* forms one transitive idea and hence takes the accusative.

17. **in proximum collem**: the place is uncertain. It was most probably near Toulon on the Arroux, some fifteen miles southeast of Bibracte (Mont Beuvray). **qui sustineret**: Relative Clause of Purpose.

19. **triplicem aciem**: this was the usual arrangement. The ten cohorts of each legion were arranged in three lines, four in the front line, and three in each of the others. Each cohort numbered about 360 men. **legionum quattuor veteranarum**: *of* (*i.e.* consisting of) *four veteran legions;* Genitive of Material; B. 197; A. 344; H. 440, 4. These four comprised the original legion mentioned in chapter 7, along with the three that Caesar had brought from Aquileia (chapter 10). The four legions stood side by side, each in three lines.

20. **duas legiones**: these were raw troops and hence unfit to be put in a position of the greatest responsibility.

21. **auxilia**: these were light-armed provincial troops.

22. **ac**: *and so;* explanatory of what has just preceded. **totum montem**: *i.e.* above the triple line, which was *in colle medio.* **hominibus**: Ablative of Means; hence not *ab hominibus* (Agent). **sarcinas**: the packs of the legionaries, which they carried on the march. Each *sarcina* consisted of rations, a cooking outfit, tools, *etc.* The weight of the whole was some forty pounds. Modern soldiers often carry as much. Introd. § 30.

23. **his qui . . . constiterant**: namely, the two legions and the auxiliaries; *superiore acie* is not a part of the *triplex acies.*

26. **ipsi**: *they themselves,* as opposed to their wagons and baggage. **confertissima acie**: Ablative of Means with *rejecto.* **equitatu**: Caesar had sent the cavalry to meet the first onset of the Helvetii while he was drawing up his own troops.

27. **phalange facta**: in the Gallic phalanx "the men stood close together, forming a compact mass. The shields of the front rank formed a vertical wall, and those of the rest were held overhead, lapping over one another like the shingles on a roof, only in the reverse order. It will be seen that the phalanx depended for its success on the momentum of its mass. However, only those on its outer edges could use their weapons, while the rest were practically imprisoned in the crowd. Here the Romans had a great advantage; for from their open and pliable order of battle, nearly every man sooner or later was in action" (Judson, *Caesar's Army,* § 224). **sub**: the proper word, since the Helvetii advanced upwards from lower ground.

28. **suo**: understand *equo remoto* from the following *remotis equis.* **omnium**: *i.e.* of all the mounted officers, such as the *legati* and the *tribuni militum.*

Page 17. 1. **aequato periculo**: *by making the danger equal;* the Ablative Absolute here denotes means.

3. **pilis**: the *pilum* was the characteristic weapon of the Roman legionary. It was a heavy spear, some ten pounds in weight, with a thick wooden shaft, four and one-half feet long, and a projecting iron point measuring two feet. Introd. § 29.

5. **Gallis** = *Helvetiis*. **magno impedimento**: literally, *for a great embarrassment;* Dative of Purpose; B. 191, 2, *a*; A. 382, 1; G. 356; H. 433. But translate as though nominative. **ad pugnam**: *in fighting.*

6. **quod**: *that.* The *quod*-clause is the subject of *erat*. **pluribus**: *several;* as often. **scutis transfixis et colligatis**: this was a result of the arrangement of the Helvetii in the phalanx, as already described.

7. **cum ferrum inflexisset**: *whenever the iron had bent; cum* with the subjunctive, denoting recurring action. The indicative is more usually employed to denote recurring action; B. 288, 3 and *a*; G. 584, R.; H. 601, 4.

8. **sinistra impedita**: the shield was held in the left hand. **multi ut**: the usual order would have been *ut multi;* this order emphasizes *multi.*

10. **nudo corpore**: Ablative Absolute.

11. **pedem referre**: *to withdraw;* literally, *to carry back the foot.*

12. **suberat**: we should have expected *aberat*, 'was distant'; *subesse* means 'to be near at hand.' **mille**: ordinarily an adjective, but here used as a noun; B. 80, 5, *a*; A. 134, *d*, N.; G. 293; H. 168. **eo**: *thither;* the adverb.

13. **capto monte**, *etc.*: *when the mountain had been gained and our men were, etc.* **Boji et Tulingi**: mentioned in chapter 5 as allies of the Helvetii.

15. **praesidio**: Dative of Purpose. **ex itinere**: *on the march.*

16. **ab latere aperto**: *on the exposed flank, i.e.* on the side away from the hill on which Caesar's forces were originally drawn up. **circumvenire**: dependent upon *coeperunt*, to be supplied from *coeperunt* farther on in this sentence.

19. **conversa signa**, *etc.*: *wheeled about and advanced in two divisions;* literally, *bore their changed standards, etc.* Caesar's statement is inexact; not all of the Romans faced about, — only those belonging to the *tertia acies*, which met the Boji and Tulingi. The rest were already in position to withstand the rallying Helvetii. **prima et secunda acies**: in partitive apposition with *Romani.*

20. **victis ac summotis**: *those conquered and driven from the field,* namely, the Helvetii. For the dative, see B. 187, II; A. 367; G. 346; H. 426. **venientes**: namely, the Boji and Tulingi.

22. **ancipiti**: *double, two-fold;* literally, *two-headed.* **pugnatum est**: *they fought, the battle raged;* literally, *it was fought.*

24. **aiteri . . . alteri**: *the one host . . . the other;* namely, the Helvetii on the one hand and the Boji and Tulingi on the other.

25. **nam**: justifying the statements *se in montem receperunt* and *se contulerunt*, which imply an orderly withdrawal, not flight. **hoc toto proelio**: *in the course of this whole battle;* Ablative of Time within which; B. 231; A. 423, 424, *d*; G. 393; H. 486, 1.

26. **cum**: *though; cum* adversative regularly takes the subjunctive; B. 309, 3; A. 326; G. 587; H. 598. **hora septima**: the first hour after noon, ending about one o'clock. The Romans divided the time from sunrise to sunset into twelve *horae*, whose duration varied with the season of the year. But the seventh *hora* always began at noon. **pugnatum sit**: the perfect subjunctive is here used as an historical tense; B. 268, 6; A. 485, *c*; G. 513; H. 550.

27. **aversum**: *in flight;* in predicate agreement with *hostem.* **ad multam noctem**: *till late at night.*

29. **e loco superiore**: namely, from the top of the wagons.

30. **coniciebant, subiciebant, vulnerabant**: *kept hurling, etc.*

32. **impedimentis castrisque**: for the ablative with *potior*, really an Ablative of Means, see B. 218, 1; A. 410; G. 407; H. 477.

Page 18. 2. **unus e filiis**: *e filiis* takes the place of the Genitive of the Whole; B. 201, 1, *a*; A. 346, *c*; G. 372, R. 2; H. 444, 1. **captus est**: agreeing with the nearer of the two subjects; B. 255, 2; A. 205, *d*; G. 285, Exc. 1; H. 392.

4. **ea tota nocte**: Ablative of Duration of Time, a construction not particularly infrequent, especially when the noun is modified by *totus;* B. 231, 1; A. 424, *b*; G. 393, 2; H. 417, 2. **nullam partem noctis, die quarto**: *i.e.* they marched all the *first* night, not all three nights.

5. **in fines Lingonum**: some seventy miles to the north of the scene of the battle.

6. **cum**: *since.*

7. **triduum**: not *tres dies;* see note on *biduum*, p. 16, line 3.

8. **Lingonăs**: a Greek accusative formation; B. 47, 3; A. 81, 82; G. 66, 4; H. 109, 5.

9. **ne juvarent**: *not to help them;* a Substantive Clause Developed from the Volitive, dependent on the notion of ordering involved in *litteras misit*, — literally, *let them not help.* **qui si**: *if they*, namely, the Lingones; literally, *if who.*

10. **juvissent**: *should help (them)* ; subordinate clause in indirect discourse, representing a future perfect of the direct. **eodem loco**: *in the same light;* the preposition *in* is freely omitted with *loco.* **quo**: *as;* literally, *in which.* **Helvetios**: dependent upon *haberet* understood. **habiturum (esse)**: dependent on the idea of saying involved in *litteras misit.*

13. **qui cum**: *when these.*

15. **eos**: the Helvetii, of course, not the envoys.

16. **essent**: Subjunctive by Attraction; B. 324, 1; A. 593; G. 663, 1; H. 652.

18. **qui perfugissent**: *who (he alleged) had fled;* subjunctive in implied indirect discourse; B. 323; A. 592, 3; G. 508, 3; H. 649, 1. **dum conquiruntur**: *dum,* 'while,' regularly takes the indicative of the historical present; B. 293, 1; A. 556; G. 229, R.; H. 604, 1. Translate: *were being hunted up, etc.* **ea**: *these things.*

21. **perterriti**: agreeing with *milia* in sense, but not in strict grammatical form; B. 235, B, 2, *c*; A. 286, *b*; G. 211, R. 1, Exc. *b*; H. 389, 2. **ne . . . afficerentur**: *lest they should be visited with punishment;* for the subjunctive after expressions of fearing, see B. 296, 2; A. 564; G. 550; H. 567, 1.

23. **aut occultari aut ignorari posse**: *could either be concealed* (if Caesar tried to find them) *or* (better yet) *remain unnoticed.*

24. **existimarent**: the reason in the mind of the Helvetii; hence the subjunctive. **prima nocte**: *in the early part of the night;* B. 241, 1; A. 293; G. 291, R. 2; H. 498, 1.

27. **quod ubi Caesar resciit**: *when Caesar learned this* (literally *which*). **quorum**: the antecedent is *his.*

28. **his**: indirect object of *imperavit.* **uti conquirerent**: *to hunt them up;* Substantive Clause Developed from the Volitive, used as the object of *imperavit* ('let them hunt them up'). **si vellent**: subordinate clause in indirect discourse. Note that a Substantive Clause Developed from the Volitive frequently represents an imperative clause of direct discourse. Thus here: 'hunt them up and bring them back, if you wish,' *etc.* **sibi**: *in his eyes;* literally, *to him;* Dative of Person Judging; B. 188, 2, *c*; G. 353; A. 378, 1; H. 425, 4.

Page 19. 1. **reductos**: *those led back;* the participle is used as a substantive. **in hostium numero habuit**: *i.e.* he butchered them all, an act as atrocious and cruel as it was unnecessary.

5. **domi . . . quo famem tolerarent**: *they had nothing at home*

with which to relieve hunger; quo tolerarent is a Relative Clause of Purpose.

6. **ut copiam facerent**: *to furnish a supply.*

7. **quos**: agreeing in gender with *vicos*, as the nearest word, but referring also to *oppida.*

9. **ea maxime ratione**: *particularly for this reason;* explained by the following *quod*-clause.

13. **Allobrogibus**: these really formed a part of the Province. **Bojos**, *etc.*: *at the request of the Haedui, he permitted them to locate the Boji, etc.;* literally, *he permitted the Haedui, requesting it, to locate the Boji, etc. Bojos* is object of *collocarent*, but is placed at the head of the sentence for emphasis. *Haeduis* is indirect object of *concessit;* the direct object is the *ut*-clause. The Boji, it will be remembered, were a wandering tribe from central Europe, who had no home of their own.

14. **egregia virtute erant cogniti**: *were known (to be) of superior prowess;* predicate Ablative of Quality.

16. **in parem condicionem atque ipsi erant**: *into a like condition with themselves;* literally, *like as they themselves were.* With words denoting similarity or comparison, *atque* often means 'as,' 'than'; B. 341, 1, *c*; A. 324, *c*; G. 643; H. 508, 5.

18. **tabulae**: *lists;* literally, *tablets.* For writing, the Romans often used thin boards covered with black wax, on which they wrote with a sharp-pointed instrument (of ivory or metal), called a *stilus.* Very likely the Gauls followed the same custom. **litteris Graecis**: the Gauls had probably become familiar with the Greek alphabet through intercourse with Marseilles, which was a Greek colony.

19. **confectæ**: *written.*

20. **nominatim**: *item by item.* The reference is to the different items afterwards mentioned. **domo**: *from home;* B. 229, 1, *b*; A. 427, 1; G. 390, 2; H. 462, 4.

21. **qui possent**: Clause of Characteristic.

22. **pueri, senes mulieresque**: loosely introduced. A verb is easily supplied in thought. **rerum**: *items.*

23. **capitum**: *persons.*

25. **ex his qui . . . possent**: *of these, those who could bear arms; ex his* depends upon *ei* understood, the antecedent of *qui.* **ad**: *about*, limiting *nonaginta duo.*

26. **fuerunt**: attracted to the number of the predicate noun, *milia;* B. 254, 4; A. 280, *a*; G. 211, R. 1, Exc. *c*; H. 389.

27. **eorum**: dependent upon *censu.*

28. **milium C et X**: dependent on *numerus*. About 250,000, therefore, of the original number were either dead or missing.

Page 20. 2. **gratulatum**: the supine, denoting purpose.

3. **intellegere**: dependent on the idea of saying involved in *gratulatum*. **pro veteribus injuriis**: the emphasis of the clause rests on these words. The reference is to the defeat of Cassius by the Helvetii; see p. 5, line 22, with note.

4. **populi Romani**: Objective Genitive.

5. **repetisset**: for *repetivisset*. The subjunctive is due to the indirect discourse. **ex usu**: *to the advantage*. **terrae Galliae**: *the land of Gaul*. But *Galliae* is really an appositive. Compare expressions like *flumen Rhenus*.

6. **eo consilio**: explained by the following *uti*-clause.

7. **florentissimis rebus**: *with most flourishing prospects* (*of success*); Ablative of Attendant Circumstance. **domos**: for the plural, see note on *regna*, p. 3, line 20.

8. **imperio**: for the ablative with *potior* (really an Ablative of Means), see B. 218, 1; A. 410; G. 407; H. 477.

9. **domicilio**: Dative of Purpose; B. 191, 1; A. 382; G. 356; H. 425, 3. **ex magna copia**: understand *locorum*.

11. **judicassent**: representing the future perfect indicative of direct discourse. **stipendiarias**: in predicate relation to *civitates*.

12. **haberent**: in the same construction as *inferrent*.

13. **sibi**: dependent upon *liceret*. **concilium totius Galliae**: Caesar probably had no authority either to permit or to forbid such an assemblage. The Gallic chieftains, however, requested the privilege as a matter of policy.

14. **voluntate**: Ablative of Attendant Circumstance; B. 221; A. 412; G. 399; H. 473, 3.

17. **ne quis**: observe that the Latin always uses *ne quis* (not *ut nemo*) in purpose clauses and in Substantive Clauses Developed from the Volitive. **enuntiaret**: a Substantive Clause Developed from the Volitive, dependent on the idea of commanding involved in *sanxerunt*. As object of *enuntiaret*, we must understand *id* or *ea*, referring to the proceedings of the assembly. **nisi quibus**, *etc.*: *except those to whom the duty should be assigned; mandatum esset* is impersonal; as antecedent of *quibus* understand *ei*.

19. **idem**: nominative plural, instead of *eidem*. **qui ante fuerant**: *i.e.* who had previously come to his headquarters.

22. **Caesari**, *etc.*: *threw themselves at Caesar's feet*; literally, *to*

Caesar at his feet; Caesari is Dative of Reference; B. 188, 1, N.; A. 377; G. 350; H. 425, 4, N.

23. **non minus,** *etc.:* indirect discourse, dependent upon a verb of saying to be supplied. **id**: Accusative of Result Produced; B. 176, 2, *a*; A. 390, *c*; G. 332; H. 409, 1. **ne enuntiarentur**: in apposition with *id*.

Page 21. 1. **Galliae**: used in the narrow sense of the country occupied by the Celts; and of this, probably only the eastern portion is meant.

2. **alterius . . . alterius**: *the one . . . the other.*

3. **Arvernos**: these dwelt to the southwest of the Haedui. Their name survives in the modern Auvergne. **cum contenderent**: *after these had contended.* We should have expected the pluperfect tense.

4. **factum esse**: *it had come to pass.*

5. **uti arcesserentur**: a Substantive Clause of Result, subject of *factum esse;* B. 297, 2; A. 569, 2; G. 553, 3; H. 571, 1. **Sequanis**: as rivals of the Haedui, these naturally had combined with the Arverni. **mercede**: Ablative of Price; B. 225; A. 416; G. 404; H. 478.

6. **horum**: the emphatic word of the sentence, and hence placed first.

7. **posteaquam**: for the commoner *postquam.*

8. **adamassent**: for *adamavissent.* **traductos**: understand *esse.* **plures**: *i.e. Germanos.* **esse**: as subject understand *Germanos.*

9. **ad numerum**: *to the number.*

10. **clientes**: dependent tribes are meant, as, for example, the Ambarri.

11. **omnem nobilitatem,** *etc.:* this must not be taken too literally. In his eagerness to enlist the sympathy of Caesar, Divitiacus naturally exaggerates the losses of the Haedui.

13. **qui**: its antecedent is *eos* understood, the subject of *coactos esse.*

14. **hospitio**: *guest friendship*, an institution extensively recognized among all ancient states, whereby the representatives of states sustaining this relation afforded each other mutual assistance and protection, often exchanging gifts and tokens of good will. **plurimum**: with adverbial force, as frequently with *possum* and *valeo.*

15. **ante**: the Haedui had been allies of the Romans as early as 121 B.C., when the Allobroges were subjugated.

16. **obsides**: *as hostages;* predicate accusative.

17. **sese repetituros** (esse), *etc.:* the infinitives depend upon the idea of promising involved in *jure jurando.*

18. **recusaturos quo minus essent**: *refuse to be; quo minus essent* is a substantive clause used as the object of *recusaturos;* B. 295, 3; A. 558, *b*; G. 549; H. 568, 8.

19. **illorum**: namely, the Sequani.

20. **unum se esse**: *he was the only one.*

21. **potuerit**: another instance of the perfect subjunctive used as an historical tense; B. 268, 6; A. 485, *c*; G. 513; H. 550.

23. **postulatum**: the supine.

25. **pejus**: *a worse thing.* **victoribus**: here used adjectively. **victoribus Sequanis, Haeduis victis**: an instance of the rhetorical figure known as Chiasmus; B. 350, 11, *c*; A. 598, *f* and N.; G. 682 and R.; H. 666, 2. Chiasmus consists in the inversion of the order of two parallel expressions for the purpose of emphasis. Thus, instead of *victis Haeduis*, corresponding to *victoribus Sequanis*, Caesar says *Haeduis victis.*

26. **Ariovistus**: thought by some to be the same word as the German *Heerfürst,* 'the leader of the host.'

28. **optimus totius Galliae**: the same district is still one of the richest and most beautiful in France. **de altera parte tertia**: *from a second third.* Note that *de* means 'from' in the sense of from a place where somebody or something properly belongs.

31. **quibus . . . pararentur**: *for whom a place and abodes were to be provided;* a Relative Clause of Purpose.

32. **futurum esse**: *it would come to pass.* **omnes**: namely, all the Gauls. **uti pellerentur atque transirent**: Substantive Clauses of Result, the subject of *futurum* (*esse*). For the periphrastic form of expression (*futurum esse ut pellerentur,* instead of *pulsum iri*), see B. 270, 3, *a*; A. 569, *a*; G. 248; H. 571, 1, 619, 2.

Page 22. 2. **Gallicum**: understand *agrum* from the following *agro.* In saying that the Gallic land was not to be compared with that of the Germans, Caesar means that the Gallic land was better, not worse. In English we should ordinarily reverse the terms of comparison.

3. **hanc**: *i.e. Gallicam.*

5. **ut semel vicerit**: *when once he had conquered;* by *repraesentatio*, *vicerit* and the other perfects and presents to the end of this chapter are used for the sake of greater vividness, instead of the pluperfect and imperfect, which we should naturally expect according to the principle for the sequence of tenses. In translation, however, the pluperfect and past should be used.

6. **quod proelium**: *a battle which.* For the incorporation of the antecedent in the relative clause, when the antecedent is an appositive, see B. 251, 4, *b*; G. 616, 2.

7. **nobilissimi cujusque**: *of all the noblest men;* literally, *of each noblest man,* — a very common Latin idiom.

8. **in eos**: *upon them.* **omnia exempla cruciatusque**: *all punishments and tortures.*

10. **non posse**: as subject understand *eos*, referring to the Sequani.

11. **nisi quid sit auxili**: *unless there should be some help;* literally, *something of help.*

12. **Gallis**: Dative of Agency; B. 189, 1; A. 374; G. 355; H. 431.

13. **ut emigrent, *etc.*:** substantive clauses in apposition with *idem.*

15. **fortunam quaecumque accidat**: *whatever fortune should befall.* Note the difference between the English and Latin idioms. **haec si**: the transposition emphasizes *haec.* By *haec* is meant the present conference.

16. **enuntiata sint**: *should be reported.* **non dubitare**: the subject is *se* understood, referring to Divitiacus. **quin sumat**: *that he would inflict;* the object of *dubitare;* B. 298; A. 558, *a*; G. 555, 2; H. 595, 1.

19. **deterrere posse, ne . . . traducatur**: *could prevent a greater multitude from being led across.*

20. **Rhenum**: for the accusative dependent upon *trans* in composition, see B. 179, 3; A. 395 and N. 2; G. 331, R. 1; H. 413. **traducatur**: for the subjunctive, see B. 295, 3; A. 558, *b*; G. 547; H. 596, 2.

24. **magno fletu**: Ablative of Attendant Circumstance.

25. **unos**: *alone.*

26. **tristes**: the adjective has adverbial force; B. 239; A. 290; G. 325, R. 6; H. 497.

27. **esset**: Subjunctive of Indirect Question, dependent upon *miratus.*

28. **respondere, permanere**: Historical Infinitives; B. 335; A. 463; G. 647; H. 610.

29. **saepius**: *i.e.* again and again.

30. **idem Divitiacus**: *Divitiacus again;* literally, *the same Divitiacus.*

31. **hoc**: Ablative of Cause, *on this account;* explained by the following *quod*-clauses.

Page 23. 1. **soli**: limiting *ei* understood, referring to the Sequani.

2. **in occulto**: with *ne . . . quidem.* With *ne quidem* the emphatic idea is always placed between.

3. **absentis**: *though absent.* **crudelitatem**: object of *horrerent;*

B. 175, 2, *b*; A. 388, *a*; G. 330, R.; H. 405, 1. **velut si adesset**: a Conditional Clause of Comparison. The subjunctive would be used even in direct discourse; B. 307, 1; A. 524; G. 602; H. 584.

4. **reliquis**: understand *Gallis*. **tamen**: *at least, i.e.* even if nothing else were possible.

5. **Sequanis**: Dative of Agency with *essent perferendi*.

9. **sibi eam rem**, *etc.: he would consider that matter;* literally, *that matter would be for a care to him; curae* is Dative of Purpose.

10. **beneficio suo**: Caesar alludes to the fact that in the previous year (namely, in 59 B.C.) he had been instrumental in securing the recognition of Ariovistus as a friend of the Roman people. This title was conferred only by the Senate.

11. **facturum (esse)**: governed by *spem*.

12. **secundum ea**: *next to those things; i.e.* those things influenced him most, but other considerations, now to be mentioned, also weighed heavily.

13. **quare putaret**: *to think*. The construction is peculiar, and seems to result from the confusion of two different forms of expression: (1) *multae res erant quare putaret*, 'there were many things on account of which he thought' (Clause of Characteristic); (2) *multae res eum hortabantur ut putaret*, 'many things urged him to think' (Substantive Clause Developed from the Volitive). Such instances of confusion must be reckoned a fault of style; yet they are occasionally to be met with, even in the best writers.

14. **in primis**: *especially;* literally, *among the first things*, a common adverbial phrase. **quod videbat**: *the fact that he saw;* in apposition with *multae res* above.

Of the different grounds here enumerated by Caesar as impelling him to resist the claims of Ariovistus, probably none was so cogent in Caesar's mind as the reflection that his recent defeat of the Helvetii had made him the champion of the Gauls. To maintain that prestige, he must now deliver them from the oppressor, or run the risk of a Gallic alliance with Ariovistus, directed against himself.

18. **quod**: (*a thing*) *which;* the antecedent of *quod* is involved in the preceding infinitives. **in tanto imperio**, *etc.: i.e.* in so great an empire as that of the Roman people; literally, *in the so great empire*.

20. **Germanos consuescere, et multitudinem venire**, *etc.: for the Germans to become accustomed . . . and for a great host of them to come, he saw was dangerous*. The infinitives are the subject of *esse*, to be supplied as object of *videbat; periculosum* is a predicate adjective agreeing with the infinitives taken together as representing one idea.

22. **sibi temperaturos quin exirent**: *would refrain from marching forth;* literally, *would restrain themselves by which they should not march out.* For the construction of *sibi*, see B. 187, II, *a*; A. 367; G. 346; H. 426, 4, N. For the *quin*-clause, see B. 298; A. 558; G. 555; H. 594, II.

24. **ut**: *as;* the subjunctive is due to the indirect discourse. The *ut*-clause limits *exirent atque contenderent.* **Cimbri Teutonique**: these barbarians invaded Gaul and northern Italy about 108 B.C. and defeated six Roman armies before they were finally crushed by Marius in 102 and 101 B.C.

27. **Rhodanus**: *i.e.* only the Rhone, which, being easily forded, offered but a slight barrier to an invader. **quibus rebus**, *etc.: difficulties which he thought ought to be met as early as possible;* literally, *against which things he thought it ought to be run.* For the dative, see B. 187, III; A. 370; G. 347; H. 429. With *occurrendum, esse* must be supplied.

29. **non**: grammatically this limits *videretur.* In English we should combine the negative with *ferendus,* — *unbearable.*

Page 24. 1. **placuit ei, ut mitteret**: *he decided to send;* literally, *it pleased him, etc.; ut mitteret* is the subject of *placuit.*

2. **qui postularent**: Relative Clause of Purpose. **medium utriusque**: *between the two.*

3. **colloquio**: Dative of Purpose. **velle**: dependent on the idea of saying involved in *postularent.*

4. **summis utriusque rebus**: *matters of the greatest concern to both.*

5. **si quid ipsi . . . venturum fuisse**: *if he had needed anything from Caesar, he would have come to him;* a contrary-to-fact condition in indirect discourse; B. 321, A, 2, *a*; A. 589, *b*; G. 597, 4; H. 647. Note that, though the condition refers to past time, the imperfect (not the pluperfect) tense is used. This is for the purpose of indicating that the act belongs to the present as well as to the past; *i.e.* if he had needed and were now needing; *ipsi* is Dative of Possession.

6. **si quid ille**, *etc.: if he* (Caesar) *wanted anything of him* (Ariovistus); *velle* takes two accusatives, like verbs of asking; B. 178, 1, *a*; A. 396; G. 341, N. 2; H. 411.

11. **mirum**: predicative adjective agreeing with the subject of *videri,* namely, the indirect question *quid . . . esset.* **quid negoti**: *what business.*

12. **Caesari, populo Romano**: Datives of Possession.

14. **quoniam**: introducing *referret.* **tanto suo . . . affectus**:

after being treated with so great kindness on his (Caesar's) *part and that of the Roman people.* A possessive pronoun and genitive are often treated as coördinate in Latin; thus here *suo populique.*

15. **cum . . . appellatus esset**: explaining *beneficio.* But this mark of honor had not been bestowed from motives of kindness; it had been dictated solely by political expediency. Ariovistus was supreme in Gaul, and the Romans had shrewdly sought to avoid an issue with him at a time when the migration of the Helvetii involved such danger to Roman interests in the province. **in consulatu suo**: 59 B.C.

17. **hanc sibi gratiam referret**: *he made this return;* literally, *brought back this gratitude; sibi* refers to Caesar. **ut . . . gravaretur**, *etc.;* (namely) *that he objected, etc.;* Substantive Clause of Result, in apposition with *hanc gratiam.*

19. **dicendum sibi et cognoscendum** (esse): *that he* (Ariovistus) *ought to speak and examine.* **sibi**: Dative of Agency. **haec esse**: *these were the things; haec* is explained by the following clauses, *ne traduceret, etc.*

20. **ne quam . . . traduceret**: *let him not lead any, etc.; quam* is the indefinite pronoun; *traduceret* and the following subjunctives are imperative clauses in indirect discourse.

21. **trans Rhenum**: *trans* is regularly expressed with *traducere* when the end of motion (as here *in Galliam*) is indicated.

22. **Sequanis permitteret, ut illis liceret**: in English, simply, *let him allow the Sequani;* literally, *let him permit the Sequani that it be allowed to them,* careless redundancy of expression; *ut liceret* is a Substantive Clause Developed from the Volitive; it is the object of *permitteret.*

23. **voluntate ejus**: *with his* (Ariovistus's) *approval;* Ablative of Attendant Circumstance; B. 221; A. 412; G. 399; H. 473, 3.

24. **reddere**: namely, to the Haedui. **illis**: *i.e.* the Sequani; dependent upon *liceret.* **neve**: *neve* (*neu*) and not *neque* is regularly used with any kind of subjunctive that regularly takes *ne* and not *non.*

27. **impetraret**: namely, Caesar.

28. **sese**: subject of *non neglecturum* (*esse*) at the close of this sentence. **M. Messala, M. Pisone**: consuls in 61 B.C. For the omission of the conjunction, see note on p. 2, line 9.

29. **uti**: introducing *defenderet.*

Page 25. 1. **quod posset**: *so far as he could do it;* B. 283, 5; A. 535, *d*; G. 627, R. 1; H. 591, 3. **commodo**: *to* (literally, *with*) *the interest of the state;* Ablative of Attendant Circumstance.

2. Haeduos defenderet: to the modern reader this appeal to the decree of three years before is not without a touch of humor. The situation at the time was this: Ariovistus had just crushed the Gauls (including the Haedui) at the battle of Admagetobriga, and the Haedui had appealed to Rome for protection; but the only solace they received was the decree referred to, — 'protection, so far as might accord with Roman interest,' — a decree that meant nothing and was intended to mean nothing, except a tacit recognition of Ariovistus's supremacy. To find Caesar now invoking this decree against Ariovistus is somewhat amusing.

4. ut imperarent: Substantive Clause of Result, used as the subject of *esse;* B. 297, 3; A. 569, 2; G. 557; H. 571, 2.

5. qui vicissent: the antecedent of *qui* is the subject of *imperarent.* **eis**: governed by *imperarent;* B. 187, II, *a*; A. 367; G. 346; H. 426, 1. **quem ad modum**: *as;* literally, *according to which way, i.e.* according to the way which.

6. victis: *the conquered;* the participle used substantively; it is governed by *imperare.* **alterius**: *of another; alterius,* it should be noted, is the regular genitive of *alius,* as well as of *alter.* The genitive *alīus* is practically unknown; B. 66, foot-note 1.

7. consuesse = *consuevisse.*

8. si non praescriberet: on the force of *si non* as compared with *nisi,* see B. 306, 1; A. 525, *a*; G. 591, *a*; H. 575, 2. **quem ad modum uteretur**: *how it was to exercise; quem ad modum* is here interrogative; *uteretur* is a Deliberative Subjunctive in an indirect question; B. 300, 2; A. 587; G. 467.

9. suo jure: *suo* refers to the Roman people.

10. suo jure: *suo* here refers to Ariovistus.

11. sibi: with *stipendarios.*

13. magnam: emphasized by being put at the head of the sentence. **qui faceret**: literally, *who made;* but the sense is decidedly causal, — *since he made;* B. 283, 3; A. 35, *e*; G. 633; H. 592. **suo, sibi**: the first refers to Caesar, the second to Ariovistus.

14. vectigalia deteriora: Ariovistus fears that the Haedui, relying on Caesar, will refuse to continue payment of tribute.

16. injuria: *wrongfully;* Ablative of Manner without *cum;* B. 220, 2; A. 412, *b*; G. 399, N. 1; H. 474. **si in eo manerent**: *if they should abide by that;* literally, *in that.* **quod convenisset**: *which had been stipulated.*

18. longe eis afuturum: in saying that the title of 'brothers of the Roman people' would be far from them, Ariovistus means it would be

of no help to them; *eis* is dative. **fraternum nomen** = *nomen fratrum.*

19. **quod sibi Caesar denuntiaret**: *as for Caesar's declaring.* **sibi, se, secum, sua**: note the freedom with which the reflexive may be used, referring even in the same sentence to different persons. Thus *sibi* refers to Ariovistus; *se* to Caesar; *secum* again to Ariovistus; and *sua* to *neminem.*

21. **congrederetur**: *let him* (Caesar) *come on;* an imperative clause in indirect discourse; B. 316; A. 588; G. 652; H. 642. **intellecturum**: for the omission of the subject (*eum*, referring to Caesar), see B. 314, 5; A. 581, N. 1; H. 642, foot-note.

22. **quid virtute possent**, *etc.: how valiant were the Germans, etc.;* literally, *what the Germans availed in valor; quid* is an adverbial accusative; B. 176, 2, *a*; A. 390, *c*; G. 332; H. 416, 2; *virtute* is an Ablative of Specification.

25. **haec eodem tempore**: Caesar makes the two clauses coördinate, connecting them by *et.* In our idiom we should subordinate the first, — *at the time these despatches were brought, envoys came.*

26. **Treveris**: their name survives in the modern Treves, situated in western Germany near the Belgian frontier.

27. **Haedui**: *i.e.* the Haeduan envoys. As verb understand *veniebant.* **questum**: the supine.

29. **obsidibus datis**: the Ablative Absolute here denotes means, — *by giving hostages.*

Page 26. 1. **Treveri**: understand *veniebant questum.* **pagos**: used, as often, of the population of the cantons. **Sueborum**: their name survives in the modern Swabia, a district of southwestern Germany.

4. **vehementer commotus**: there was good reason for Caesar's agitation. Joined to the grave perils threatening from Ariovistus and the hordes of fresh German invaders, were the dangers threatening from the instability of the Gauls themselves. **maturandum sibi**: *that he must make haste.* **ne . . . posset**: *lest resistance could be less easily offered (to them); resisti* and *posset* are both impersonal, — literally, *lest it be able to be resisted.* With *resisti, eis* is to be supplied in thought, as indirect object.

7. **magnis itineribus**: *by forced marches.*

9. **viam**: Cognate Accusative; B. 176, 4, *a*; A. 390; G. 333, 2; H. 409.

10. **ad occupandum Vesontionem**: *for seizing Vesontio;* gerundive

construction. The name *Vesontio* survives in the modern Besançon. The word is irregularly of the masculine gender.

11. **quod**: attracted to the gender of the predicate noun *oppidum;* B. 250, 3; A. 306; G. 614, R. 3; H. 396, 2.

12. **id**: namely, the occupation of Vesontio by Ariovistus.

17. **ut circumductum**: *as though drawn.*

18. **reliquum spatium**: the object of *continet.*

19. **pedum mille sexcentorum**: Genitive of Quality; B. 203, 2; A. 345, *b*; G. 365, 2; H. 440, 3; *amplius* and some other words are freely introduced without affecting the construction; B. 217, 3; A. 407, *c*; G. 296, R. 4; H. 471, 4. Translate: *which is not more than sixteen hundred feet (broad).*

20. **qua**: *where.* **intermittit**: literally, *stops; i.e.* breaks the circle. **magna altitudine**: Ablative of Quality; B. 224; A. 415; G. 400; H. 473, 2.

21. **radices, ripae**: *radices* is the object of *contingant; ripae* the subject.

22. **hunc**: namely, the mountain; *hunc* is direct object of *efficit; arcem* is the predicate accusative.

26. **dum moratur**: for *dum*, 'while,' with the historical present, see B. 293, 1; A. 556; G. 229, R.; H. 604, 1. **ad Vesontionem**: *near Vesontio;* B. 182, 3; A. 428, *d.*

28. **magnitudine, virtute, exercitatione**: predicate Ablatives of Quality limiting *Germanos.*

Page 27. 3. **tantus subito**, *etc.*: the main clause of the sentence begun above by *dum moratur* begins here.

4. **non mediocriter**: an instance of Litotes.

5. **ortus est a tribunis**: we say, 'began with'; the Latin, 'began from.' See note on p. 1, line 18. **tribunis militum**: these were originally legionary officers, six to each legion, exercising command in rotation; but in Caesar's army the legion was usually commanded by a *legatus*, while the positions of the *tribuni* were largely sinecures.

6. **praefectis**: not the technical designation of a special officer, but a general term for a commander of any portion of the infantry or cavalry, particularly of the auxiliaries. **amicitiae causa**: the friendship of these men was hardly disinterested. Most of them probably accompanied Caesar in the spirit of adventure, or for the purpose of advancing their fortunes.

7. **non magnum**: another instance of Litotes.

8. **alius alia causa illata**: *one alleging one cause, another another*; B. 253, 2; A. 315, *c*; G. 221, R. 1; H. 516, 1. **quam diceret**: probably a Clause of Characteristic. The number of *diceret* is determined by *alius*.

9. **petebat, remanebant**, *etc.*: notice the five successive imperfects, and observe that this tense, as the tense of continued action, is particularly adapted to the purposes of description, as opposed to mere narration. **ejus voluntate**: Ablative of Attendant Circumstance.

12. **vultum fingere**: *i.e.* to look cheerful. **interdum**: *at times*. Do not confound this word with *interim* or *interea*, which mean 'meanwhile.'

15. **vulgo**: the adverb. **totis castris**: for the omission of the preposition *in*, see B. 228, 1, *b*; A. 429, 2; G. 388; H. 483, 485, 2. **obsignabantur**: note that this word strictly means 'were sealed' (*i.e.* with the names and seals of the witnesses), not 'signed.'

16. **in castris**: *i.e.* in military service.

17. **quique** = *et qui* (*i.e. et ei qui*).

18. **qui ex his** = *ex his ei qui*. **se existimari volebant**: *volo* usually takes the infinitive without subject accusative, when the subject of both verbs is the same, but the subject accusative is frequent in the case of passive infinitives, as here; B. 331, IV, *a*.

19. **non**: made emphatic by position.

21. **rem frumentariam**: grammatically the object of *timere*, by the figure called Prolepsis; B. 374, 5; A. 576; G. 468. By our idiom we should expect it to be the subject of *posset*, and should so translate it.

22. **ut satis posset**: *that it could not be;* B. 296, 2; A. 564, N.; G. 550; H. 567, 1.

23. **cum jussisset**: to be joined, not with *nuntiabant*, but with the following infinitives; *jussisset* represents a future perfect indicative of direct discourse.

24. **fore** = *futuros esse*. **dicto audientes**: *obedient;* literally, *listening to the word;* B. 187, II, *a*; A. 367, *a*, N. 2; G. 346; H. 433, 4.

25. **signa laturos**: *i.e.* march.

27. **omnium ordinum centurionibus**: the centurions, of whom there were sixty in each legion, were of different rank. Ordinarily only those of the first class were invited to a council of war. See Introd. § 24.

28. **quod putarent**: the reason in the mind of Caesar the general, not of Caesar the writer. **quam in partem . . . ducerentur**: this indirect question is the subject of *quaerendum (esse)*.

Page 28. 1. **se consule**: *i.e.* in the preceding year. **cupidissime appetisse**: hardly in accordance with the facts. The truth was that the Roman Senate, guided by Caesar himself, seeking to avoid an issue with Ariovistus, had voluntarily conferred on him the title of friend; see note on p. 24, line 15.

2. **cur judicaret**, *etc.*: *why should any one think?* A Deliberative Subjunctive of direct discourse retained in the indirect; B. 315, 3; A. 444, 587; G. 651, R. 2; H. 642, 3.

4. **sibi quidem persuaderi**: *he at least was persuaded*; literally, *it was persuaded to himself at least*; *persuadeo*, like other intransitive verbs, which take the dative in the active, can be used in the passive only impersonally. Note that *quidem* emphasizes the word standing immediately before it; it is never a mere sentence modifier. **cognitis suis postulatis**, *etc.*: *when his demands should become known.* The future time of *repudiaturum* is shared by the Ablative Absolute.

6. **repudiaturum** (esse): this is the subject of *persuaderi.* **quod si**: *but if.*

7. **quid tandem vererentur, cur desperarent**: *what, pray, should they fear, why should they despair?* Deliberative Subjunctives in indirect discourse, like *cur judicaret* above.

8. **sua**: referring to the soldiers. **ipsius**: *i.e.* Caesar.

9. **factum periculum**: *trial had been made.*

10. **memoria**: Ablative of Time within which; B. 231; A. 423; G. 393; H. 487. **cum . . . videbatur**: *at which time the army was seen, etc.* The indicative is used to denote the point of time at which; B. 288, A; A. 545; G. 580; H. 601. **Cimbris . . . pulsis**: the barbarians were defeated and crushed in two battles in 102 and 101 B.C.

12. **meritus**: *i.e. meritus esse.* For the nominative form of the participle, see B. 328, 2; A. 458; H. 611, 2, N. 2. **factum**: understand *esse periculum.* **nuper**: namely, some fifteen years before, 73–71 B.C.

13. **servili tumultu**: Ablative of Time. Note that the adjective here, as often, has the force of a genitive. The reference is to the insurrection headed by Spartacus. Many of the slaves who participated in it were Cimbrians and Teutons, who had been captured in the time of Marius. **quos**: its antecedent is implied in *servili*, already explained as equivalent to *servorum*; B. 251, 2; A. 306, *b*; H. 399, 4. **tamen**: *however.* **aliquid**: *somewhat, to some extent.*

14. **quae**: for the agreement of a relative with a compound antecedent, see B. 250, 2; A. 305, *a*; G. 614, R. 5; H. 398, 1.

15. **quantum haberet**: Indirect Question, subject of *posse.* Note

that in Latin, expressions conveying a general truth follow the principles for the sequence of tenses; in English we regularly use the present tense in such expressions; *haberet*, therefore, may here be translated by a present. **in se**: referring to *constantia*. **boni**: Genitive of the Whole with *quantum*. **constantia**: one of the cardinal Roman traits, the mention of which might be expected to make a strong appeal to the soldiers.

16. **quos**: its antecedent is *hos*, referring to the slaves.

18. **quibuscum . . . superassent**: *with whom the Helvetii often engaged . . . and whom they usually defeated;* literally, *engaging with whom the Helvetii usually defeated them.*

20. **illorum**: *i.e.* the Germans. **qui**: its antecedent is *Helvetii*. **tamen**: *i.e.* despite their general superiority to the Germans.

21. **pares . . . non potuerint**: namely, in the recent contest, in which the Helvetii had been utterly crushed. For the perfect subjunctive as a secondary tense, see B. 268, 6; A. 485, *c*; G. 513; H. 550. **quos**: the indefinite 'any.' **adversum proelium**: the allusion is to the defeat of the Haedui by Ariovistus, mentioned in chapter 31.

22. **commoveret**: *i.e.* alarmed.

24. **castris ac paludibus**: Ablative of Means; B. 218, 7.

25. **sui potestatem**: *i.e.* an opportunity to attack him; *sui* is Objective Genitive. **desperantes de pugna**: *i.e.* despairing of engaging him in battle; *desperantes* limits *eos* understood, the object of *adortum*.

27. **cui rationi . . . hac**, *etc.: did not expect that our armies could be caught by those tactics for which, etc.;* literally, *for which tactics . . . by these, etc.*

28. **ipsum**: Ariovistus.

30. **in . . . simulationem**: *to pretended concern for provisions.*

31. **cum**: *since.*

Page 29. 1. **curae**: Dative of Purpose; B. 191, 2, *a*; A. 382, 1; G. 356; H. 433. **frumentum, frumenta**: *grain, crops;* as p. 11, lines 7, 10.

2. **summinstrare**: *were supplying.* This represents a present indicative of direct discourse, in the sense of 'they are supplying.' **jam**: Napoleon III thinks the time was now about August 20.

3. **brevi tempore**: Ablative of Time within which.

5. **quod**: *as to the fact that.* **non fore dicto**, *etc.*: *to be likely to disobey.*

6. **nihil**: used adverbially. It is merely a stronger *non*, — *not at all*. **quibuscumque**: from *quicumque*; its antecedent is *eis* understood, to be supplied with *defuisse*. The dative depends upon *dicto audiens*; B. 187, II, *a*; A. 367, *a*, N. 2; G. 346; H. 433, 4.

7. **male re gesta . . . aliquo facinore comperto**: the Ablative Absolutes here denote cause, *i.e.* in consequence of some blunder or the discovery of some crime committed by them.

9. **esse convictam**: *had been proved*, *i.e.* against them. **suam**: emphatic; literally, *HIS*. One might translate, *as for himself*. **innocentiam, felicitatem**: Caesar has just said that where soldiers mutiny, it is because their general has exhibited either incompetency or corruption. These two qualities are now alluded to in inverse order; *innocentiam* takes up the second charge (corruption) and *felicitatem* the first (incompetency); Chiasmus; B. 350, II, *c*; A. 598, *f*; G. 682; H. 666, 2. **perpetua vita**: Ablative of Duration of Time, a construction used especially when the noun is modified by *totus*, *perpetuus*, or some similar word; B. 231, 1; A. 424, *b* and N.; G. 393, 2; H. 417, 2.

10. **bello**: Ablative of Time at which.

11. **quod collaturus fuisset**: *what he had intended to postpone*. The antecedent of *quod* is *id* understood, the object of the infinitive, *repraesentaturum*.

12. **repraesentaturum**: *he would do at once*. Caesar's mode of dealing with the difficult situation confronting him was thoroughly characteristic. A weak or timid man would have postponed action. Caesar's courage and promptness of decision are both admirably illustrated by his conduct in this emergency.

13. **quam primum**: *as soon as possible*.

14. **utrum . . . an valeret**: a double indirect question; B. 300, 4; A. 335; G. 461; H. 380, 650.

17. **praetoriam cohortem**: just as *praetor* originally meant 'general,' so *praetorius* meant 'belonging to the general.' The praetorian cohort was thus the general's body-guard. **legioni**: B. 187, II; A. 367; G. 346; H. 426.

18. **praecipue, maxime**: adverbs usually precede the word which they modify; they are made emphatic by being placed after it, as here.

20. **mirum in modum**: *marvellously*. **conversae sunt**: observe the intensive force of *con* in composition, — *were utterly changed, altered*.

22. **innata est**: agreeing with the nearer subject. **princeps gratias egit**: *was the first to tender thanks*.

23. **de se**: referring to the legion.

26. **ordinum** = *centuriarum;* Introd. § 24.

27. **egerunt**: *arranged.* **uti satis facerent**: *to apologize;* a substantive clause, object of *egerunt;* B. 295, 5; A. 563; G. 546; H. 565.

28. **suum sed imperatoris esse**: (*did not think*) . . . *was theirs, but the general's; imperatoris* is a predicate Genitive of Possession; B. 198, 3; A. 343, *b*; G. 366; H. 439, 447.

31. **ei**: *in him;* Dative of Reference. **ut . . . duceret**: *with a view to leading his army;* Subjunctive of Purpose. **milium quinquaginta**: Genitive of Quality, limiting *circuitu.* With *milium, passuum* must be supplied; *amplius,* as frequently, does not affect the construction.

32. **circuitu**: a detour to the north was made necessary by broken wooded country. **locis apertis**: Ablative of Way by which; B. 218, 9; A. 429, *a*; H. 476. Caesar's route lay between the Vosges and Jura Mountains.

Page 30. 2. **septimo die**: Caesar probably encamped on the river Fecht, between Ostheim and Gemar. Ariovistus seems to have been near Colmar. **cum iter non intermitteret**: *without stopping the march; cum*-clauses of situation are often best translated without the use of 'when.'

3. **nostris**: understand *copiis.* **milibus**: Ablative of Degree of Difference.

6. **postulasset**: namely, Caesar. **per se**: *so far as he was concerned.*

7. **accessisset**: namely, Caesar.

10. **petenti**: agreeing with *ei* understood. **ultro**: *voluntarily.*

13. **fore uti desisteret**: *would desist; fore* depends upon *spem; uti desisteret* is a Substantive Clause of Result, used as the subject of *fore.* For this periphrastic future infinitive, see B. 270, 3; A. 569, *a*; G. 248; H. 571, 1, 619, 2.

14. **colloquio**: Dative of Purpose.

16. **ne quem peditem adduceret; uterque veniret**: a comparison of these two subjunctives throws light on the origin of the substantive clause after verbs of commanding, *etc.; ne adduceret* we call a Substantive Clause Developed from the Volitive, and *uterque veniret* an imperative clause in indirect discourse. But both are the same in origin, — *demanded, let him not bring,* (*saying*), *let each come.* Observe that the Latin regularly uses *ne quem* (not *ut neminem, etc.*) in those volitive substantive clauses.

18. **alia ratione**: *on other terms;* Ablative of Accordance.

20. **interposita causa**: the Ablative Absolute here denotes means, — *by the offering of a pretext.*

21. **commodissimum**: in predicate agreement with *imponere*, which is the subject of *esse.*

22. **omnibus . . . detractis**, *etc.:* the Ablative Absolute is best translated as an infinitive coördinate with *imponere, — to take away all the horses . . . (and to mount.)* **Gallis equitibus**: Dative of Separation; B. 188, 2, *d*; A. 381; G. 345, R. 1; H. 427.

23. **eo**: the adverb, equivalent to *in eos, on them,* namely, the horses. As there were some four thousand Gallic cavalry, there were enough horses for all the soldiers of one legion. **cui**: *fido* and *confido* regularly take the dative of persons, the ablative of things; B. 219, 1, *a.*

25. **si quid opus facto esset**: *if there should be any need of action; quid* is an adverbial accusative; B. 176, 3, *a*; A. 390, *c*, *d*, N. 2; G. 333, R. 2; H. 416, 2. For the ablative of the participle with *opus*, see B. 218, 2, *c*; A. 411, *a*; G. 406; H. 477, III. **quod cum fieret**: *as this was happening.*

28. **pollicitum**: *having promised.* It agrees with *eum* understood, the subject of *rescribere.*

29. **ad equum rescribere**: a pun; *ad equum rescribere* may mean either 'enroll in the cavalry' or 'enroll in the *equites.*' The *equites* were a wealthy social class at Rome.

Page 31. 1. **tumulus terrenus**: as opposed to a wooded or rocky hill.

2. **aequo spatio**: Ablative of Degree of Difference.

3. **ut erat dictum**: *as had been agreed.*

4. **equis**: *on horseback;* literally, *by horses;* Ablative of Means.

5. **passibus ducentis**: Ablative of Degree of Difference.

6. **pari intervallo**: Ablative of Attendant Circumstance. **ex equis**: *on horseback.* See note on *a flumine*, p. 1, line 18.

7. **ut colloquerentur et adducerent**: substantive clauses, the object of *postulavit.*

9. **ubi eo ventum est**: *when they arrived there;* literally, *when it was come thither.* **initio**: Ablative of Time at which.

10. **quod appellatus esset**, *etc.: the fact (as he said) that he had been called, etc.;* subjunctive in implied indirect discourse. With *quod amicus, appellatus esset* is to be supplied in thought; with *missa*, understand *essent.* All these clauses are in apposition with *beneficia.*

12. **quam rem**: *that this thing.* **et . . . et**: literally, *both . . . and;* but in English we are often less particular to emphasize the antithesis; hence the first of two *et*'s is often better left untranslated. **pro magnis officiis**: (*only*) *in return for important services.*

14. **aditum**: *access* to the Roman Senate.

15. **sua**: *i.e.* Caesar's. Note that *sua* agrees in form with *liberalitate*, but in sense limits *beneficio* also. As stated in the note on p. 28, line 1, Caesar had induced the Senate to show these marks of favor to Ariovistus for the sole purpose of insuring his temporary neutrality. **praemia**: the honors above enumerated.

16. **quam veteres**: *how old.*

17. **ipsis cum**, *etc.*: *subsisted between them and the Haedui;* literally, *subsisted to them with the Haedui; ipsis* refers to the Romans, and is Dative of Reference. **intercederent, facta essent, tenuissent**: Subjunctives of Indirect Question.

18. **quae, quotiens, quam honorifica**: three distinct ideas. **quamque** = *et quam.*

19. **in eos**: *with reference to them.* **ut**: *how.* This meaning, it should be noted, occurs in classical Latin only in indirect questions, not in direct ones.

20. **prius etiam quam**: *even before.*

21. **appetissent**: the subjunctive is due solely to attraction; B. 324; A. 593; G. 663, 1; H. 652. **hanc esse consuetudinem**: *this was the custom; hanc* (attracted from *hoc;* B. 246, 5; A. 296, *a*; G. 211 R. 5; H. 396, 2) is explained by the following *ut*-clause.

22. **ut . . . vellet**: *to desire that its allies and friends should not only lose nothing of their possessions, but should be advanced in influence, etc.; ut vellet* is a Substantive Clause of Result; *sui* is a Genitive of the Whole, limiting *nihil.* It is a form of *suum*, the possessive adjective, used as a noun; literally, *theirs*, *i.e.* their property.

24. **quod**: its antecedent is *id.*

25. **eis**: Dative of Separation with *eripi.* **eripi**: the object of *pati.* **quis posset**: *who would be able?* representing a *quis possit* (Potential Subjunctive) of direct discourse.

26. **in mandatis dederat**: *had charged upon.* **ne inferret, redderet, pateretur**: explanatory of *eadem.* The subjunctives are imperative clauses in indirect discourse.

29. **at**: *at least.* **quos**: the indefinite; *any.*

Page 32. 1. **respondit, praedicavit**: Adversative Asyndeton.

2. **suis virtutibus**: note the emphatic position of the possessive.

4. **non sine magna spe magnisque praemiis**: *not without high hope(s) and great rewards;* Litotes.

5. **ab ipsis**: *i.e.* the Gauls.

6. **obsides** = *et obsides;* Asyndeton. **voluntate**: Ablative of Attendant Circumstance.

7. **jure**: Ablative of Accordance; B. 220, 3; A. 418, *a*; G. 399, N. 1; H. 475, 3. **quod**: referring to *stipendium.*

10. **castra habuisse**: *i.e.* had fought.

12. **velint, velint, pependerint**: the present and perfect (instead of imperfect and pluperfect), as though dependent upon a principal tense, give greater vividness to the report. **decertare**: note the force of *de-* in composition, —*fight it out, fight to the end.* **uti**: *to enjoy,* — a common meaning of the word.

14. **ad**: *up to.* **amicitiam esse**: *amicitiam* is the subject of *esse,* and *esse* is the subject of *oportere;* literally, *the friendship to be an honor was fitting, i.e.* the friendship ought to be an honor.

15. **ornamento**, *etc.*: the three datives are Datives of Purpose.

16. **hac spe**: Ablative of Attendant Circumstance. **si . . . remittatur et . . . subtrahantur**: *i.e.* if the tribute be stopped by withdrawing the hostages. The two clauses are grammatically coördinate, but logically the second is conceived as the means of the first. If Ariovistus lost the hostages he held, the Haedui might withhold the tribute with impunity; *dediticii,* literally *captives,* refers to the hostages of the Haedui. **per**: *through the agency of.*

20. **quod**: *as to the fact that.*

21. **sui muniendi causa**: *for the sake of strengthening himself;* gerundive construction.

22. **ejus rei . . . defenderit**: *the fact that he had not come, except when asked, etc., was a proof of that.* The subject of *esse* lies in the *quod*-clauses; *testimonium* is a predicate noun; *defenderit* is here used in the sense of 'ward off,' not 'defend.'

24. **prius . . . quam**, *etc.*: *earlier than the Roman people; prius* is here the adverb, while *quam* is a coördinate conjunction connecting *se* and *populum.* Ariovistus's statement, however, is incorrect. The Romans had subdued the Allobroges in 121 B.C.

26. **quid vellet, cur veniret**: real, not rhetorical, questions in indirect discourse; hence the subjunctive. **sibi vellet**: *mean;* literally, *wish for himself.*

27. **provinciam**: this is the predicate with *esse,* the subject being *Galliam.* **hanc Galliam**: *this (part of) Gaul.*

28. **illam**: understand *Galliam.* **nostram**: understand *provin-*

ciam. In *suam hanc . . . illam nostram*, we have another illustration of Chiasmus. **ut . . . oporteret**: *just as no concession ought to be made to him;* literally, *just as it ought not to be yielded* (impersonal) *to him.* **ipsi**: Ariovistus.

Page 33. 1. **quod diceret**: *as to the fact that he* (Caesar) *said.*

2. **rerum**: *of history;* for the genitive, see B. 204, 1; A. 349, *a;* G. 374; H. 451, 1.

3. **bello Allobrogum proximo**: the rebellion of the Allobroges only three years before; *bello* is Ablative of Time.

5. **Haedui**: we should say *they.* Caesar repeats the word unnecessarily. **secum**: *i.e.* with Ariovistus.

7. **debere suspicari**: *ought to suspect, i.e.* had reason to suspect. **simulata amicitia**: *though pretending friendship;* the Ablative Absolute here has adversative force; B. 227, 2, *c*; A. 420, 3; G. 410; H. 489, 1. **quod habeat**: this causal clause is to be connected closely in thought with *suspicari.*

9. **qui nisi**: *unless he.*

11. **quod si**: *but if.* **multis nobilibus gratum**: *a thing pleasing to many nobles.* **nobilibus principibusque**: Caesar was the head of the popular party at Rome. As party spirit at this time ran high, it is unquestionable that the members of the aristocratic party would have rejoiced to learn that so formidable a political antagonist had been removed from the scene.

13. **id se compertum habere**: practically equal to *id se comperisse;* B. 337, 7; A. 497, *b*; G. 238; H. 431, 3.

14. **quorum**: referring to *eorum.*

18. **confecturum**: its object is to be supplied from *bella.*

19. **in eam sententiam**: *to this purport* (*namely, to show*); explained by the following indirect question.

21. **pati uti desereret**: *permitted him to desert.* Note that *pati* is usually construed with the infinitive, not with an *ut*-clause. The *ut*-clause, however, is admissible when *pati* is accompanied by a negative and its subject is a thing (not a person); B. 295, 2, footnote 1.

23. **Ariovisti, populi Romani**: predicate Genitives of Possession; B. 198, 3; A. 343, *b*; G. 366; H. 447.

24. **Arvernos, Rutenos**: these had been subjugated in 121 B.C., at the same time as the Allobroges. **quibus ignovisset, *etc.*:** these peoples were too distant from Rome to be effectively controlled; hence the procedure followed by the Roman people had been a prac-

tical necessity. For the dative *quibus*, see B. 187, II, *a*; A. 367; G. 346; H. 426.

25. **redegisset**: as object, supply in thought *quos* from the preceding *quibus*.

26. **antiquissimum quodque tempus**: *priority of time;* literally, *each earliest time;* B. 252, 5, *c*; A. 313, *b*; G. 318, 2; H. 515, 2.

30. **quam . . . voluisset**: *which, though conquered in war, it* (the Senate) *had decreed should enjoy its own laws, i.e.* be free.

Page 34. 2. **tumulum**: for the accusative with *propius*, see B. 141, 3; A. 432, *a*; G. 359, N. 1; H. 420, 5.

5. **ne quod**: *not . . . any.*

6. **periculo legionis**: we should say 'danger *to* the legion.'

7. **committendum non putabat**, *etc.: he did not think he ought to permit the possibility of its being said, after the enemy were defeated;* literally, *permit that it be possible to be said, etc.; ut posset* is a substantive clause used as the subject of *committendum* (*esse*).

8. **per fidem**: *in violation of good faith.* This meaning of *per* is rare; but compare *perfidia*, 'perfidy'; *perjurium.*

9. **posteaquam** = *postquam.*

10. **qua arrogantia usus**: *with what arrogance;* literally, *having used what arrogance.*

11. **omni Gallia**, *etc.: had interdicted the Romans from all Gaul; Gallia* is Ablative of Separation; *Romanis* is Dative of Reference.

12. **ut**: *how.*

13. **major alacritas, studium majus**: Chiasmus.

14. **exercitui**: for the dative, see B. 187, III; A. 370; G. 347; H. 429.

16. **coeptae (essent)**: when the dependent infinitive is passive, *coeptus sum* is regularly used for *coepi;* B. 133, 1; A. 205, *a*; G. 423, N. 3; H. 299, 1. **neque**: *and . . . not.*

17. **uti constitueret, mitteret**: substantive clauses dependent upon the idea of asking or requesting involved in *velle.* **colloquio**: Dative of Purpose.

18. **si minus** = *si non.* **vellet**: Subjunctive by Attraction or (since *uti constitueret, mitteret*, being Substantive Clauses Developed from the Volitive are virtually indirect discourse) a subordinate clause in indirect discourse. **suis**: referring to Caesar.

19. **se**: referring to Ariovistus.

20. **causa visa non est**: *there did not seem* (*any*) *reason.* **eo magis**: *the more on this account; eo*, Ablative of Cause, is explained by the following *quod*-clause.

21. **pridie ejus diei**: *ejus diei* is superfluous. For its construction, see B. 201, 3, *a*; A. 359, *b*, N. 2; H. 446, 5.

22. **quin conicerent**: *from hurling;* B. 295, 3, and *a*; A. 558; G. 555, 1; H. 595, 2. **legatum**: *as envoy;* in predicate relation to *unum* understood. **ex suis**: *i.e. unum e suis, one of his (lieutenants).*

23. **magno cum periculo**: the emphasis of the whole sentence rests upon these words; literally, *thought he would send . . . and expose with great danger, i.e. thought it would be dangerous to send and expose.*

25. **Gaium Valerium Procillum, C. Valeri Caburi**: these men were Gauls. The father's name was originally Caburus, but upon receiving Roman citizenship at the hands of Gaius Valerius Flaccus, he took the *praenomen* (Gaius) and *nomen* (Valerius) of his benefactor, prefixing them to his own name. Procillus, the son, kept the first two parts of his father's name. *Procillum* is the object of *mittere* in line 2, p. 35.

26. **summa . . . humanitate**: *of the highest character and education;* Ablatives of Quality.

27. **Gaio Valerio Flacco**: governor of the Gallic Province in 83 B.C. **civitate**: *citizenship.*

28. **qua multa Ariovistus utebatur**: *which Ariovistus used readily; multa* is in predicate relation to *qua;* literally, *which Ariovistus used much*, the adjective, as often, having adverbial force.

Page 35. 1. **longinqua consuetudine**: Ablative of Cause. **quod esset**: the reason in the mind of Caesar the general; hence the subjunctive.

2. **in eo**: *in his case.* **peccandi**: *i.e.* of doing violence.

3. **una**: the adverb, — *along with* (*him*), namely, with Procillus. **hospitio**: *guest friendship;* for the character and sacredness of this relation, which existed between states as well as between individuals, see note on p. 21, line 14. **utebatur**: *enjoyed.*

5. **apud se**: *before him; in his presence.*

7. **quid venirent**: *why did they come?* a real question in indirect discourse; hence the subjunctive; B. 315, 1; A. 586; G. 651; H. 642. **an speculandi causa**: *was it for the purpose of spying? an* properly introduces the second member of a double question, but by the ellipsis of the first member the question with *an* sometimes stands alone. Its force depends upon the context; B. 162, 4, *a*; A. 335, *b*; G. 457, 1; H. 380, 3. **conantes dicere**: *when they tried to speak; conantes*

limits *eos* understood, the object of *prohibuit*. For the participle equivalent to a temporal clause, see B. 337, 2, *a*; A. 496; G. 665; H. 638, 1.

13. **uti intercluderet**: a genuine Substantive Clause of Purpose, in apposition with *eo consilio*. **frumento**: Ablative of Separation. **qui supportaretur**: Subjunctive by Attraction; B. 324, 1; A. 593; G. 663, 1; H. 652.

16. **aciem instructam habuit**: *kept his army* (literally, *line of battle*) *drawn up*. This use of the participle with *habere* is different from that already noted in *quam coactam habebat* (= *quam coegerat*), *etc.* **ut non deesset**: a purpose clause. Negative clauses of purpose are regularly introduced by *ne*; but *non* is here closely connected with *deesset* for the sake of litotes, — *might be not lacking*, *i.e.* might be afforded. **si vellet**: the subjunctive is due to attraction.

18. **castris continuit**: Ablative of Means, as in *castris se tenuisset*, p. 28, line 24.

19. **contendit**: Copulative Asyndeton. **genus hoc erat**: *this was the kind; hoc* is explained by what follows.

21. **numero**: Ablative of Specification. To our sense the word is superfluous.

22. **singuli singulos**: *each taking one*; *singulos* agrees with *quos*; *singuli* with the subject of *delegerant*.

23. **his, eos, hi**: these all refer to the foot-soldiers.

24. **si quid erat durius**: *if there was anything especially difficult to be done*; *durius* means, *harder* (*than usual*).

25. **si qui**: *qui* as well as *quis* may serve as the nominative singular masculine of the indefinite pronoun.

26. **si quo erat**, *etc.*: *if it was necessary to advance especially far to any point.*

29. **sublevati**: the passive participle here has middle force, *supporting themselves*; B. 256, 1; A. 156, *a*; G. 218; H. 517.

Page 36. 1. **ne prohiberetur**: this purpose clause is to be joined in thought with *passus sexcentos . . . locum delegit.*

2. **ultra eum locum**: *i.e.* farther to the south, toward the Haedui, his base of supplies. Ariovistus had taken a position cutting off Caesar's supplies. Caesar now marches to regain his line of communication.

4. **castris**: with *idoneum*. **acie triplici instructa**: see note on p. 16, line 19.

6. **castra munire**: for the plan of a Roman camp, see Introd. § 38.

8. **milia expedita**: the Latin says *light-armed thousands.* We should translate the adjective with *hominum.*

11. **opus** = *munitionem.*

13. **reliquas**: namely, *legiones.* **castra majora**: the one to the north of Ariovistus's army, which Caesar had left to regain communication with his base of supplies.

15. **instituto suo**: Ablative of Accordance.

21. **acriter pugnatum est**: *a fierce encounter took place;* literally, *it was fought fiercely.*

26. **decertaret**: *i.e.* fight in a pitched battle; literally, *fight it out.* As yet only a portion of Ariovistus's forces had engaged in battle. **hanc reperiebat causam, quod,** *etc.*: *he discovered this reason, namely, that it was (reported to be) the custom;* the clause *quod esset* is in apposition with *causam; esset* is the subjunctive of implied indirect discourse.

27. **ut . . . declararent**: *for their matrons to declare;* a Substantive Clause of Result, explanatory of *ea consuetudo.* **matres familiae**: Tacitus in his *Germania* (chapter 8) tells us that the Germans regarded their women generally as possessed of prophetic powers.

Page 37. 1. **utrum . . . necne**: *whether or not it was expedient to join battle.* For the form of double indirect questions, see B. 300, 4, *a*; A. 335; G. 461; H. 650. **ita**: explained by the following clause.

2. **fas**: *it was not destined;* literally, *lawful, right.* **ante novam lunam**: such superstition is frequently met with among ancient peoples, civilized and uncivilized. The date of the new moon here referred to has been calculated to have been September 18, 58 B.C.

3. **contendissent**: representing a future perfect indicative of direct discourse.

4. **praesidio, castris**: the first is a Dative of Purpose; B. 191, 2; A. 382, 1; G. 356; H. 433; the second, a simple indirect object.

5. **quod**: its antecedent is *id* understood, the object of *reliquit.* **alarios**: *the auxiliaries;* literally, *those posted on the wings,* the place where the auxiliaries were regularly stationed.

7. **minus multitudine valebat**: *was weaker* (literally, *availed less*) *in numbers.* **pro**: in a different sense from that in the preceding line; here the word means *as compared with.*

8. **ut uteretur**: to be connected in thought with *constituit.* **ad speciem**: *for a show, i.e.* for the purpose of causing Ariovistus to believe that they were regular legionary soldiers.

11. **generatim**: *i.e.* each tribe by itself. There was no common military organization. **paribus intervallis**: Ablative of Attendant Circumstance.

13. **omnem aciem**: only the rear and wings.

14. **ne qua**: in purpose clauses, the Latin regularly has *ne qua*, not *ut nulla*. **eo**: *therein;* namely, in the wagons and carts.

15. **proficiscentes**: limiting the omitted object of *implorabant*, — *eos* referring to the Germans. **passis**: from *pando*.

16. **se**: referring to the women.

18. **singulis . . . singulos legatos**: *i.e.* a lieutenant over each legion. Putting the *legati* in charge of the legions was an innovation of Caesar's. Before his Gallic campaigns the command had been exercised by tribunes, six to each legion, each tribune holding command for two months. **quaestorem**: apparently *legati* were put in charge of five of the legions, and a *quaestor* over the sixth. The quaestor was primarily charged with the care of the military chest, but sometimes took command of troops, as here.

19. **eos testes**: *them as witnesses.*

20. **a dextro cornu**: *on the right wing*, as frequently. **eam partem**: *i.e.* the part of the enemy opposite his own right wing. This, of course, was the enemy's left. **minime firmam**: *weakest.*

23. **itaque**: not 'accordingly,' but equivalent to *et ita*, the *ita* modifying *repente* and *celeriter*.

24. **pila**: object of the gerund *coniciendi*. **rejectis pilis**: *throwing aside their javelins.*

25. **pugnatum est**: the impersonal use, as above, p. 36, line 21.

28. **qui insilirent**, *etc.:* Clauses of Characteristic. **phalangem**: for the order and arrangement of the phalanx, see note on p. 16, line 27. **et . . . et**: notice the emphasis produced by the employment of *et* between all the verbs; Polysyndeton; B. 341, 4, *b*.

29. **vulnerarent**: as object, understand *eos*. **a sinistro cornu**: this and the following *dextro cornu* refer to the Germans.

Page 38. 2. **Publius Crassus**: a son of Marcus Crassus, the triumvir and close political ally of Caesar. Although one of those who followed Caesar into Gaul *amicitiae causa* (see p. 27, line 6), he nevertheless seems to have been a young man of keen perception and prompt action.

3. **adulescens**: this is probably added to distinguish him from his father. **equitatui**: for the case, see B. 187, III; A. 370; G. 347; H. 429. **expeditior**: *less occupied.* The cavalry, being allied troops,

were stationed on the wings and hence participated less actively in the engagement.

4. **tertiam aciem**: *the third line;* this had been kept in reserve for a critical emergency.

5. **subsidio**: Dative of Purpose.

7. **neque prius destiterunt quam**: *priusquam*, when following a negative sentence, is regularly construed with the indicative; B. 291, 2.

9. **viribus**: ablative; B. 219, 1; A. 431; G. 401, N. 6; H. 476, 3; but *fido* and *confido* take the dative of persons.

11. **Ariovistus**: nothing further is known of the career of this leader. In Book V. (54 B.C.) he is reported as already dead.

12. **reliquos omnes**: eighty thousand in number, according to Plutarch.

14. **duae uxores**: except with the chiefs, polygamy was unusual among the Germans. **natione**: Ablative of Specification.

16. **quam in Gallia duxerat**: *duxerat* here means *married* (*i.e. in matrimonium duxerat*); in the line above, it means *brought.*

17. **duae filiae harum**: *i.e.* each wife had borne him a daughter. **altera, altera**: in partitive apposition with *filiae;* B. 169, 5; G. 322; H. 393, 4.

18. **occisa (est), capta est**: the verbs agree with the appositives.

19. **trinis catenis**: for the use of the distributive, see B. 81, 4, *b*; *cf.* A. 137, *d*; H. 164, 3; *catenae* is only rarely used in the singular.

21. **quidem**: *quidem* regularly emphasizes the word immediately before it. Its translation varies greatly with the context: *at least, indeed, to be sure, at any rate*, or the like. Often, however, it is best left untranslated.

23. **honestissimum**: not *a most honest*, but *a most honorable.*

25. **neque quicquam deminuerat**: *and because fortune had subtracted nothing; neque quicquam* (not *et nihil*) is the Latin idiom; *quicquam* is the object of *deminuerat.*

27. **ter**: three is often a mystic number with uncivilized peoples. **consultum (esse)**: *they had consulted*; literally, *it had been consulted.*

28. **utrum necaretur, *etc.*:** Deliberative Subjunctives in indirect questions; B. 300, 2; A. 587; G. 467.

29. **sortium beneficio**: *thanks to the lots; beneficio* is well on its way to its later value as a preposition. **M. Metius**: see p. 35, line 3.

Page 39. 3. **Ubii**: these lived near Cologne and were hereditary enemies of the Suebi. **Rhenum**: for the accusative, see B. 141, 3; A. 432, *a*; G. 359, N. 1; H. 435, 2.

6. **maturius paulo**, *etc.:* it was probably now about September 25; the army could have easily kept the field for several months.

7. **in Sequanos**: it is probable that part at least of Caesar's troops were quartered in the stronghold of Vesontio.

8. **ad conventus agendos**: *for holding the assizes*, or provincial courts. As provincial governor, Caesar had charge of the administration of justice. Cisalpine Gaul, it will be remembered, was in his jurisdiction. Another and probably weightier reason for his presence here was his desire to keep in close touch with affairs at Rome.

With the defeat of Ariovistus, "The question whether Gaul was to be a German or Roman province was settled for centuries. It was not until the fall of the Western Empire (476 A.D.) that the Germans were able to secure a footing here." (Drumann, *History of Rome.*)

BOOK II.

Page 40. 1. **cum esset**: *when he (actually) was*, as opposed to the statement made at the end of Book I., *profectus est; esset* is emphatic and hence put immediately after *cum*, instead of after *Gallia;* for the subjunctive with *cum* temporal, see B. 288, 1, B; A. 546; G. 585; H. 600, II. **citeriore Gallia**: northern Italy, one of Caesar's provinces. **ita uti**: for the usual *ut*, but more formal. **supra**: at the conclusion of Book I.

2. **demonstravimus, dixeramus**: the editorial 'we'; B. 242, 3; A. 143, *a*; H. 500, 2. **afferebantur, certior fiebat**: imperfect of repeated action; B. 260, 2; A. 470; G. 231; H. 534, 3. **litteris**: Ablative of Means; B. 218; A. 409; G. 401; H. 476.

3. **Labieni**: he had been left in charge of the winter quarters of Caesar's army in the territory of the Sequani. **certior fiebat**, *etc.: was informed that all the Belgae . . . were combining . . . and exchanging hostages;* literally, *all the Belgae . . . to combine . . . and to give; conjurare* and *dare* are principal clauses of indirect discourse depending on *certior fiebat;* B. 313, 314; A. 459; G. 650; H. 642. *Belgas* is subject accusative of the infinitives; B. 184; A. 397, *e*; G. 343, 2; H. 415. **quam**: *who;* referring to *Belgas*, but attracted to the number and gender of the predicate noun *partem;* B. 250, 3; A. 306; G. 614, R. 3; H. 396, 2; *quam* is the subject of *esse.*

5. **conjurare**: *were forming a league, combining.* The word does not necessarily have the sense of 'conspire.' **inter se**: *to each other,*

or, with *dare*, *were exchanging;* literally, *between*, or *among*, *themselves*. In this use *se* is a reciprocal pronoun.

6. **has**: explained by what follows. **quod vererentur**: *because they feared;* subjunctive of subordinate clause in indirect discourse; B. 314, 1; A. 580; G. 650; H. 643. **ne . . . exercitus adduceretur**: this was a very natural fear on the part of the Belgians. They had seen Caesar's operations gradually nearing them and had good reason to believe that they themselves would ultimately become the objects of attack. The clause *ne adduceretur* is a substantive clause, used as the object of *vererentur;* B. 296, 2; A. 564; G. 550; H. 567. **omni pacata Gallia**: *if all Gaul should be subdued;* Ablative Absolute with the force of a condition; B. 227; A. 420; G. 410; H. 489, 1. Notice that Caesar, as regularly, uses *Gallia* in the sense of the country inhabited by the *Galli*, *i.e.* Celtic Gaul, the region between the Seine and Garonne rivers.

8. **partim qui . . . partim qui**: *some of whom . . . others of whom;* literally, *partly* (*by those*) *who . . . partly* (*by those*) *who*. The antecedent of *qui* is (*ab*) *eis* understood. **ut noluerant**: *just as they had been unwilling*. Notice that Caesar here abandons indirect discourse and gives a statement of facts.

9. **Germanos**: subject accusative of *versari*. **populi Romani . . . ferebant**: *were loth to have the army of the Roman people winter in Gaul and become established* (*there*). The infinitives are the object of *ferebant; in Gallia* limits both *hiemare* and *inveterascere*.

11. **mobilitate et levitate**: Ablative of Cause.

12. **novis imperiis**: *a change of control; i.e.* a change from Roman control; literally, *new controls*. For the dative, see B. 187, II, *a*; A. 367; G. 346; H. 426, 1. The two classes of malcontents were (1) those who objected to the presence of a Roman army in Gaul; (2) those who on general principles desired a change. Both these classes of Gauls urged the Belgae to resist the Romans, thinking that Belgian success might free central Gaul also from Roman domination. **ab nonnullis**: supply in sense *sollicitabantur*.

13. **a potentioribus atque eis**: these phrases limit *occupabantur*. **ad conducendos homines**: *for hiring men*, *i.e.* mercenaries. An instance of the gerundive construction. Note that, in the Latin, *homines* is governed by *ad*, while *conducendos* limits *homines;* B. 339, 2; A. 506; G. 432, R.; H. 628.

14. **vulgo regna occupabantur**: *the sovereign power was usually seized*. The plural is used in *regna* because different instances are referred to; *vulgo* is the adverb. **qui minus, *etc.*:** literally, *who*

could less easily attain; but the clause is really a part of the reason begun by *quod.* We may render, *and because these could less easily attain.* The grammatical antecedent of *qui* is *nonnullis.*

15. **eam rem**: namely, the usurpation of royal power. **imperio nostro**: *under our rule.* Ablative of Attendant Circumstance. B. 221; A. 412; G. 399; H. 473, 3.

16. **duas legiones**: the thirteenth and fourteenth; Caesar already had six legions in Further Gaul.

17. **inita aestate**: *at the beginning of summer;* literally, *summer having been begun;* Ablative Absolute; B. 227; A. 419; G. 410; H. 489, 1.

18. **qui deduceret**: a Relative Clause of Purpose; B. 282, 2; A. 531, 2; G. 630; H. 590. The antecedent of *qui* is *Pedium.* **Quintum Pedium**: Caesar's grandnephew, his sister's grandson.

19. **legatum**: before Caesar's time the *legati* were deputies of the commanding general. But in Caesar's army they appear as commanders of legions. Introd. § 21. **cum primum**: here construed with the subjunctive, like the simple *cum.* Ordinarily *cum primum* takes the indicative; B. 287, 1; G. 561. The time of year referred to is the spring. Caesar above speaks of the season as 'the beginning of summer,' but *aestas* is often loosely used of the warm season of the year as opposed to the cold season.

20. **dat negotium**: practically equivalent to *he directed.* **Senonibus**: their name survives in the modern Sens, a town on the Seine.

21. **Belgis**: for the dative, see B. 192, 1; A. 384; G. 359; H. 434, 2. **uti cognoscant, certiorem faciant**: Substantive Clauses Developed from the Volitive ('let them learn, let them inform'), dependent upon the idea of ordering involved in *dat negotium.* Notice that the Historical Present *dat* here takes principal sequence; B. 268, 3; A. 485, *c*; G. 509, 2, 1 (*a*); H. 546. **quae gerantur**: Subjunctive by Attraction; B. 324; A. 593; G. 663, 1; H. 652.

Page 41. 1. **se**: *him;* indirect reflexive referring to Caesar; B. 244, II; A. 300, 2; G. 521; H. 504.

2. **hi**: *i.e.* the Senones and other neighbors of the Belgians. **constanter**: not *constantly,* but *uniformly;* all told the same story. **manus**: *bands, forces.*

3. **dubitandum (esse) non**, *etc.*: (*concluded*) *that he must not hesitate.*

4. **quin proficisceretur**: *to set out;* for the subjunctive, see B. 298 and *b.* **ad eos**: *against them.*

5. **diebus quindecim**: Ablative of Time within which; B. 231; A. 423; G. 393; H. 487.

6. **ad fines Belgarum pervenit**: trace on the map the course of Caesar's march from Vesontio to the Belgian frontier.

7. **celerius omni opinione**: *more swiftly than any one expected.* For the Ablative of Comparison, see B. 217, 4; A. 406, *a*; G. 398, N. 1; H. 471, 8.

8. **venisset**: a clause with *cum* temporal denoting the circumstances or situation, hence the subjunctive; B. 288, B; A. 546; G. 585; H. 600, II. **Remi**: their name appears in the modern Rheims, the ancient Durocortorum, the capital of the Remi. **Galliae**: in the same narrow sense as above in chapter 1; B. 192, 1; A. 384; G. 359; H. 434, 2. With *propior* and *proximus* Caesar uses either accusative or dative. **ex Belgis** = *Belgarum;* join with *proximi.*

9. **legatos**: *as envoys;* predicate accusative.

10. **qui dicerent**: *to say.* Relative Clause of Purpose; B. 282, 2; A. 531, 2; G. 630; H. 590. The following passage is in indirect discourse. If the student has not already mastered the peculiarities of the indirect form, he should do so at once. A careful study of this and the following chapters will do much to make all future passages in the indirect form seem relatively simple and easy. Remember that the two fundamental principles for the moods of indirect discourse are these: principal clauses stand in the infinitive; all subordinate clauses stand in the subjunctive. **se . . . permittere**: *that they put themselves and all their property under the protection and power;* literally, *to intrust themselves and all their things, etc.; permittere* is a principal clause in indirect discourse. In strictness, therefore, we should have expected *se* as subject of the infinitive, but since *se* is also the object, this would have involved an awkward repetition.

The Remi had been vassals of their powerful neighbors, the Suessiones, and apparently "discerned in this invasion of the foreigners an opportunity to shake off the rule which their neighbors had exercised over them" (Mommsen). This seems to be the secret of their prompt submission to Caesar.

11. **neque se consensisse**: *and that they had not combined.* Note that the subject accusative of the infinitive is here expressed. For 'and not' the Latin regularly has *neque*, not *et non.*

13. **conjurasse** = *conjuravisse;* B. 116, 1; A. 181, *a*; G. 131, 1; H. 238. **et (obsides)**: correlative with the following *et*'s and not to be translated.

14. **oppidis**: *in their towns;* but the ablative is really one of Means, like the following *frumento* and *rebus;* B. 218, 7; A. 429, 3; G. 389; H. 476. With *recipere* and *juvare*, *eum* is to be understood. The direct form of this first sentence would be: *Nos nostraque omnia in fidem atque in potestatem populi Romani permittimus neque cum reliquis Belgis consensimus neque contra populum Romanum conjuravimus paratique sumus et obsides dare et imperata facere et oppidis recipere et frumento ceterisque rebus juvare.*

16. **Germanos qui**, *etc.:* most of the Germans dwelt to the east of the Rhine; some, however, had crossed the river and dwelt on its west bank. These are here referred to. **incolant**: we should have expected the imperfect tense, since the main verb of saying, *dicerent*, above in line 10, is historical; but greater vividness is often lent to narration in indirect discourse by reproducing the tenses of the direct form as here. This use is known as *repraesentatio*, 'a bringing back to the present.'

18. **Suessiones**: object of *deterrere.* **suos**: referring to the Remi; so *ipsis* in line 20.

19. **jure, legibus**: the former refers to the principles of justice, the latter to actual laws or statutes. For the ablative, see B. 218, 1; A. 410; G. 407; H. 477. **unum imperium . . . habeant**: (*and*) *have one government, etc.;* Copulative Asyndeton; B. 346; A. 601, *c*; G. 481, 3; H. 657, 6. In *habeant* we have another instance of *repraesentatio.*

20. **cum ipsis**: *with them*, namely, the Remi. **potuerint**: Subjunctive of Result. As shown by the following *quin*-clause, *potuerint* is here used as a secondary tense; B. 268, 6; A. 485, *c*; G. 513; H. 550. As subject, supply in thought *ei*, referring to the Remi.

21. **quin . . . consentirent**: *from leaguing themselves with these.* For the *quin*-clause, see B. 295, 3, *a*; A. 558; G. 551, 1; H. 595, 2. Direct discourse for the preceding passage: *Reliqui omnes Belgae in armis sunt, Germanique qui cis Rhenum incolunt sese cum his conjunxerunt, tantusque est eorum furor ut ne Suessiones quidem, fratres consanguineosque nostros, qui eodem jure et isdem legibus utuntur, unum imperium unumque magistratum nobiscum habent, deterrere potuerimus quin cum his consentirent.*

22. **quae essent, possent**: indirect questions; B. 300; A. 574; G. 467; H. 649, II.

23. **quid possent**: *how strong they were;* for the adverbial accusative, see B. 176, 3; A. 390, *c*; G. 333, 2; H. 409, 1. **sic**: *as follows.* **plerosque Belgas**: *most of the Belgians.*

24. **esse ortos**, *etc.:* that the Belgians were of German descent is hardly correct. The view here mentioned by Caesar is probably due to the fact that the Belgians had originally come from further east, where at this time only Germans dwelt. But there is good reason for believing that the Belgians were of Celtic origin. Large numbers of Celts at one time occupied the upper valley of the Danube, prior to their migration through western Germany into Gaul. Hence, while Caesar's statement that the Belgians had anciently crossed the Rhine is undoubtedly correct, the conclusion that they were of Germanic origin does not necessarily follow. **a Germanis**: B. 215, 2; A. 403, *a*, N. 1; G. 395; H. 469, 1. **Rhenum traductos**: for the accusative dependent upon *trans* in composition, see B. 179, 1; A. 395 and N. 2; G. 331, R. 1; H. 413.

25. **ibi**: namely, in the country west of the Rhine.

27. **memoria**: Ablative of Time within which; B. 231; A. 423; G. 393; H. 487. **omni Gallia vexata**: *when all (the rest of) Gaul was ravaged;* Ablative Absolute. **Teutonos Cimbrosque**: for several years prior to 101 B.C. these barbarians had ravaged Gaul. They were finally crushed by Marius in 102 and 101 B.C.

28. **ingredi**: *from entering;* literally, *to enter;* the object of *prohibuerint.* With *prohibeo*, the infinitive is the usual construction in Caesar and Cicero, though a substantive clause introduced by *ne* or *quominus* also occurs. **prohibuerint**: this is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse, but it is also a Clause of Characteristic after *solos*, and hence would be in the subjunctive even in the direct form. For the perfect subjunctive used as an historical tense, see B. 268, 6; A. 485, *c*; G. 513; H. 550.

Page 42. 1. **qua ex re**: *and from this circumstance;* B. 251, 6; A. 308, *f*; G. 610; H. 510. **uti sumerent**: a Substantive Clause of Result, subject of the impersonal *fieri;* B. 297, 2; A. 569, 2; G. 553, 3; H. 571, 1. **earum rerum**: *i.e.* their successful repulse of the Teutons and Cimbri. **memoria**: Ablative of Cause. Direct discourse of the foregoing passage: *Plerique Belgae sunt orti a Germanis Rhenumque antiquitus traducti propter fertilitatem loci ibi consederunt Gallosque qui ea loca incolebant expulerunt, solique sunt qui patrum nostrorum memoria omni Gallia vexata Teutonos Cimbrosque intra suos fines ingredi prohibuerint; qua ex re fit ut earum rerum memoria magnam sibi auctoritatem magnosque spiritus in re militari sumant.*

3. **omnia se habere explorata**: *they had learned everything;* liter-

ally, *had all things learned; habere explorata* is practically equivalent to *exploravisse;* B. 337, 7; A. 497, *b*; G. 238; H. 431, 3.

4. **propinquitatibus affinitatibusque**: *by ties of blood and marriage.*

5. **conjuncti**: namely, to the Belgae. **quantam pollicitus sit**: subjunctive in indirect question; B. 300, 1; A. 574; G. 467; H. 649, II. The perfect subjunctive is used, since *cognoverint* (see below) is principal. **quisque**: *i.e.* each chieftain of the different tribes.

6. **cognoverint**: really equivalent to the present tense, since *cognovi* means *I know* (literally, *have become acquainted with*); another instance of *repraesentatio.*

7. **plurimum valere**: *had the greatest influence.* **Bellovacos**: their name survives in that of the modern town Beauvais. **virtute, etc.**: Ablatives of Cause.

8. **conficere**: *muster.* **armata milia**: literally, *armed thousands;* we should say *thousands of armed men.*

9. **pollicitos (esse)**: *they had promised.*

10. **sibi**: *for themselves.* Direct discourse of the foregoing passage: *De numero eorum omnia habemus explorata, propterea quod propinquitatibus affinitatibusque conjuncti, quantam quisque multitudinem in communi Belgarum concilio ad id bellum pollicitus sit cognovimus. Plurimum inter eos Bellovaci et virtute et auctoritate et hominum numero valent; hi possunt conficere armata milia centum; polliciti ex eo numero electa milia sexaginta totiusque belli imperium sibi postulant.* **suos**: referring to the Remi, whose envoys are speaking.

12. **fuisse**: *had been;* representing a *fuit* of direct statement.

13. **Divitiacum**: to be distinguished, of course, from Divitiacus, the Haeduan. **cum . . . tum**: *not only . . . but also;* literally, *when . . . then*, or *while . . . at the same time; tum* is strengthened by *etiam*, which does not here call for separate translation.

14. **partis**: governed by *imperium.* **Britanniae**: said to be the first allusion to Britain found in any Latin writer.

15. **obtinuerit**: *held;* for the perfect subjunctive used as a secondary tense, see B. 268, 6; A. 485, *c*; G. 513; H. 550. **ad hunc**: *upon him.*

16. **prudentiam**: *wisdom.* The word seldom has the narrow meaning of our 'prudence.' **summam**: *the conduct* or *direction.*

17. **habere**: as subject understand *Suessiones.* **numero**: Ablative of Specification.

18. **polliceri**: *i.e.* promised to contribute them for warlike operations. **Nervios**: subject of *polliceri*, to be supplied in thought.

19. **inter ipsos**: the Belgae. **habeantur, absint**: the present instead of the imperfect, after an historical tense, for the sake of vividness; *repraesentatio.* **longissime absint**: *were very distant;* with the exception of the Morini and the Menapii, the Nervii were the northernmost of all the Belgian tribes. Direct discourse of the foregoing passage: *Suessiones nostri sunt finitimi; fines latissimos feracissimosque agros possident. Apud eos fuit rex nostra etiam memoria Divitiacus, totius Galliae potentissimus, qui cum magnae partis harum regionum, tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuit; nunc est rex Galba; ad hunc propter justitiam prudentiamque summa totius belli omnium voluntate defertur; oppida habent numero duodecim, pollicentur milia armata quinquaginta; totidem Nervii, qui maxime feri inter ipsos habentur longissimeque absunt.*

20. **Atrebates**: their name appears in the modern Arras, famous for its manufacture of tapestries, whence old English *arras.* **Ambianos, Caletos, Viromanduos, Condrusos**: these designations survive in the modern town names, Amiens, Calais, Vermand, Condroz.

23. **decem et novem**: *nineteen;* for the commoner *undeviginti.*

24. **qui**: referring only to the last four tribes. **uno nomine**: *i.e.* by the general name. **Germani**: these are apparently the *Germanos qui cis Rhenum incolant* of chapter 3. **appellantur**: the clause *qui appellantur* is Caesar's own explanation; hence the indicative; B. 314, 3; A. 583; G. 655, 2; H. 643, 3. **arbitrari**: *they reckoned.* As subject, supply in thought *se*, referring to the ambassadors. *Condrusos* and the following tribal names are the objects of *arbitrari.*

26. **liberaliter oratione prosecutus**: *having addressed them with friendly words;* literally, *having attended them generously in his words.*

27. **senatum**: some council of elders, corresponding roughly to the Roman Senate.

28. **obsides**: *as hostages;* predicate accusative.

29. **diligenter ad diem**: "*punctually to the day*" (Westcott). **Divitiacum Haeduum**: not to be confounded with the Divitiacus mentioned above, who was already dead. This Divitiacus was under obligations to Caesar for the recent liberation of the Haedui from the tyranny of Ariovistus, as described in Book I.; hence it was natural that Caesar should appeal to him for aid at this juncture.

30. **magnopere**: *earnestly.* **quanto opere . . . intersit**: *how greatly it concerned the republic and the common safety.* Though

written as two words, *quanto opere* is practically as much an adverb as the preceding *magnopere*. **rei publicae, salutis**: for the genitive with *intersit*, see B. 211, 1; A. 355; G. 381; H. 449, 1, 2; *rei publicae* means the Roman state.

Page 43. 1. **communis**: *i.e.* of the Romans and the Haeduans. **manus hostium distineri**: *for the bands of the enemy to be kept apart; manus* is the subject accusative of *distineri*, while *distineri* itself is the subject of the impersonal *intersit*.

2. **ne confligendum sit**: *lest it be necessary to fight;* literally, *lest it have to be fought.* The periphrastic conjugation is often thus used impersonally.

3. **id fieri posse**: *that that could be done*, namely, that the forces of the enemy could be kept from uniting; *posse* depends upon the idea of saying implied in the context.

4. **introduxerint et coeperint**: representing future perfects indicative of direct statement.

6. **coactas ad se venire**: *had been assembled and were coming.* For the participle as the equivalent of a coördinate clause, see B. 337, 5; A. 496, N. 2; G. 664, R. 1; H. 639.

7. **neque jam**, *etc.*: *and learned that they were no longer far off.* The two elements of *neque* must often thus be separated, and connected in translation with different parts of the sentence. **ab eis exploratoribus**: limiting *cognovit.*

8. **flumen Axonam**: governed by the preposition *trans* in *traducere;* B. 179, 1; A. 395; G. 331, R. 1; H. 413. The *Axona* is the modern Aisne.

9. **quod**: its gender is determined by *flumen*, not by *Axonam.*

10. **ibi**: *i.e.* at the point where he crossed the river. This was at Berry-au-Bac, where remains of Caesar's fortifications have been brought to light in modern times. Consult the map. **quae res**: *this action;* subject of *muniebat, reddebat*, and *efficiebat.*

11. **et . . . et**: *on the one hand . . . on the other.* **muniebat**: *protected.*

12. **post eum quae erant**, *etc.*: *made his rear secure.* The antecedent of *quae* is *ea* understood, the object of *reddebat; tuta* is a predicate adjective limiting this *ea.* **ab hostibus**: Ablative of Separation with *tuta.* **commeatus . . . efficiebat**: *made it possible for supplies to be brought;* literally, *brought it about that supplies could be, etc.; ut possent* is a Substantive Clause of Result, the object of *efficiebat;* B. 297, 1; A. 568; G. 553, 1; H. 571, 3; *ut* would ordi-

narily stand at the beginning of this clause; but, for the purpose of emphasis, *commeatus* is put first.

14. **in eo flumine**: *across that river.* This is the regular Latin idiom.

15. **ibi**: *i.e.* at the bridge on the north side of the Aisne, which here runs east and west. **altera parte**: *i.e.* on the south side of the river.

17. **in altitudinem**: *in height;* literally, *into height.* **pedum duodecim**: Genitive of Quality; B. 203, 2; A. 345, *b*; G. 365, *b*; H. 440, 3.

18. **duodeviginti pedum**: *i.e.* eighteen feet in breadth at the top. Its sloping sides naturally made the bottom much narrower.

19. **nomine**: Ablative of Specification; B. 226; A. 418; G. 397; H. 480.

20. **ex itinere**: *on the march; i.e.* they did not contemplate a protracted siege.

21. **sustentatum est**: *the assault was withstood.*

22. **Gallorum . . . oppugnatio**: *the mode of assault of the Gauls, the same as that of the Belgians, is as follows;* B. 341, 1, *c*; A. 324, *c*; G. 643; H. 508, 5.

23. **circumjecta multitudine**: Ablative Absolute. **totis moenibus** = *the whole town;* dative; indirect object of *circumjecta;* B. 187, III; A. 370; G. 348; H. 429, 2.

24. **coepti sunt**: when the dependent infinitive is passive, *coeptus sum* is regularly used instead of *coepi.*

25. **defensoribus**: Ablative of Separation. **testudine facta**: *having made a testudo; testudo* was the name given to a special military formation in which the shields of the soldiers overlapped one another like the scales of a tortoise.

26. **quod**: *i.e.* this mode of attack. **tum**: *on the present occasion.* **facile fiebat**: *was easily put into operation.*

27. **conicerent**: the plural, since *multitudo* is a collective noun; B. 254, 4; A. 317, *d*; G. 211, R. 1, Exc. *a*; H. 389, 1.

28. **consistendi**: the gerund, used as Objective Genitive with *potestas.* **potestas erat nulli**: *no one had the ability, no one could; nulli* is Dative of Possession; B. 190; A. 373; G. 349; H. 430. We should have expected *nemini*, but the adjective *nullus* is at times used for *nemo.*

29. **Iccius Remus**: *Iccius, one of the Remi.* **summa nobilitate**: *of the highest rank.* Ablative of Quality; B. 224; A. 415; G. 400; H. 473, 2.

30. **suos**: *his countrymen.* **oppido**: dative; indirect object of *praefuerat;* B. 187, III; A. 370; G. 347; H. 429.

Page 44. 1. **legati**: *as envoys;* predicate nominative with *venerant*, limiting *qui*. His embassy is referred to on p. 41, line 9. **ad eum**: *i.e.* to Caesar.

2. **sibi, sese**: probably to be taken as plurals referring to the Remi. **summittatur**: subordinate clause in indirect discourse. **sustinere**: here used absolutely in the sense of *hold out.*

3. **posse**: principal clause in indirect discourse, depending upon the idea of saying involved in *nuntium mittit.*

4. **eo**: *i.e.* to Bibrax. **de**: *about.* **isdem ducibus usus**: *employing the same men as guides; ducibus* is in predicate relation to *isdem.* Note that *usus* here has the force of a present participle, *i.e.* it denotes contemporary action, — *using;* B. 336, 5; A. 491; G. 282, N.; H. 640, 1.

5. **Numidas et Cretăs**: often mentioned as bowmen; *Cretăs* is a Greek accusative; B. 47, 3; A. 81, 5, 82; G. 66, 4; H. 109, 5.

6. **Baleares**: the inhabitants of the Balearic Islands were famous in antiquity for their skill as slingers. The story went that the Balearic boys were allowed no dinner until they could bring it down with their slings. **subsidio**: Dative of Purpose; B. 191, 2; A. 382, 1; G. 356; H. 433.

7. **et . . . et**: *on the one hand . . . and on the other.* **cum spe defensionis**: *along with the hope of a (successful) defense.*

8. **hostibus**: *from the enemy;* Dative of Separation; B. 188, 2, *d*; A. 381; G. 345, R. 1; H. 427. **spes potiundi oppidi**: *hope of gaining the town;* the gerundive construction. For the ending *-undi*, see B. 116, 2; A. 12, *d*; G. 138, 8; H. 243.

11. **quo**: the adverb, equivalent to *ad quae*, referring to *vicis* and *aedificiis.* **omnibus copiis**: Ablative of Accompaniment without *cum;* B. 222, 1; A. 413, *a*; G. 392, R. 1; H. 474, 2, N. 1.

12. **a milibus**, *etc.*: *less than two miles off; a* is here an adverb meaning *off, away; milibus* is Ablative of Degree of Difference; *minus* is introduced without affecting the construction of the sentence; B. 217, 1, 3; A. 407, *c*; G. 296, 4; H. 471, 4.

14. **amplius milibus**: *milibus* is here Ablative of Comparison with the adverb *amplius.*

17. **opinionem virtutis**: *their reputation for bravery;* B. 200; A. 348; G. 363, 2; H. 440, 2. **proelio supersedere**: *to refrain from battle; proelio* is Ablative of Separation.

18. **quid hostis virtute posset**: *what the enemy's mettle was;* literally, *what the enemy availed in valor.*

19. **periclitabatur**: *i.e.* made constant trials; B. 260, 2; A. 470; G. 231; H. 530, 534, 3.

20. **loco . . . idoneo**: *since there was a place, etc.;* Ablative Absolute, equivalent to a causal clause; B. 227, 2, *d*; A. 420, 2; G. 410; H. 489, 1.

21. **ad aciem instruendam**: to be joined in thought with *opportuno atque idoneo.*

22. **quod is collis**, *etc.*: explaining why the place was suitable for drawing up a line of battle; namely, there was rising ground of just sufficient width for an army in battle array, while steep declivities protected the flanks.

23. **tantum adversus in latitudinem**, *etc.*: *was as wide in front* (*i.e.* on the side toward the enemy, — the west) *as a line of battle when drawn up could fill; tantum* is an Accusative of Extent of Space; *adversus* is an adjective agreeing with *collis*, the subject of *patebat; loci* is a Genitive of the Whole with *quantum;* we should have expected it to limit *tantum.* **quantum**: object of *occupare.*

24. **ex utraque parte**: *on each side.*

25. **lateris dejectus**: *lateral declivities.* **habebat**: the subject is still *collis.* **in frontem leniter**, *etc.*: *and in front, sloping gently, gradually returned to the plain.* Remember that the front is the western side.

26. **ab utroque**: the principal clause of this long sentence begins here.

27. **transversam**: *at right angles*, namely, to the line of the eminence; see plan.

28. **passuum quadringentorum**: *four hundred paces (long)*; Genitive of Quality; B. 203, 2; A. 345, *b*; G. 365, 2; H. 440, 3. **ad extremas fossas**: *at the ends of the ditches;* B. 241, 1; A. 293; G. 291, R. 2; H. 497, 3.

Page 45. 1. **tormenta**: engines for hurling missiles, such as javelins or heavy stones. See Introd. § 48.

2. **instruxisset**: Subjunctive by Attraction to *posset;* B. 324; A. 593; G. 663, 1; H. 652. **poterant**: as the explanation of the writer, this clause stands in the indicative.

3. **ab lateribus**: *on the flanks.* **pugnantes**: limiting *suos.* **suos**: *his men.*

4. **duabus legionibus quas proxime conscripserat**: *i.e.* the thirteenth and fourteenth legions enrolled in Hither Gaul in the spring

of this year; see chapter 1. As usual Caesar spares his raw troops, holding them back as reserves for a critical emergency.

5. **si quo opus esset**: *if it was necessary for them to be led anywhere; quo* is the indefinite adverb, limiting *duci* to be supplied. This *duci* (or, with subject accusative, *eos duci*) is the subject of *esset; esset* is attracted into the subjunctive. **subsidio**: Dative of Purpose; B. 191, 1; A. 382; G. 356; H. 425, 3.

7. **eductas instruxerant**: *i.e. had led them forth and drawn them up;* B. 337, 5; A. 496, N. 2; G. 664, R. 1; H. 639.

9. **inter nostrum . . . exercitum**: *between our army and that of the enemy.* The possessive pronoun *nostrum* is made coördinate with the genitive *hostium.*

10. **si nostri transirent**: indirect question with *si;* B. 300, 3; A. 576, *a*; G. 460, 1, *b*; H. 649, II, 3.

11. **si . . . fieret**: *in case a beginning should be made.* The clause is subordinate to *aggrederentur*, which in turn is subordinate to *parati.*

13. **proelio . . . contendebatur**: *a cavalry battle was in progress;* literally, *it was being contended, etc.*

14. **secundiore proelio**: Ablative Absolute, with adversative force; B. 227, 2, *c*; A. 420, 3; G. 410; H. 489, 1.

15. **nostris**: with *secundiore;* B. 192, 1; A. 384; G. 359; H. 434, 2.

16. **quod esse**, *etc.*: *which, it has been shown, was behind our camp;* literally, *which to be behind our camp has been shown; quod* is the subject of *esse; esse* is subject of the impersonal *demonstratum est.*

19. **eo consilio**: *with this object.* **ut expugnarent**: a Substantive Clause of Purpose, in apposition with *eo consilio.* **si possent, si potuissent**: Subjunctive by Attraction; *possent* represents a future, *potuissent* a future perfect, of more direct statement. **castellum**: at the southern end of the bridge. Their plan was to cross the river and surprise Sabinus from the rear.

21. **si minus potuissent**: *if they should not be able;* when an affirmative protasis is repeated in negative form, *si non* or *si minus* is regularly used; B. 306, 2, *b*; H. 575, 4. **populatentur, prohiberent**: *ut* must be supplied with these. The clauses are further appositives of *eo consilio.*

22. **magno usui**: Dative of Purpose; B. 191, 2, *a*; A. 382, 1; G. 356; H. 433. **commeatuque**: *commeatu* is an Ablative of Separation; *-que* is here equivalent to *and so;* the supplies came from the Remi. **ad bellum gerendum**: *for waging war.*

24. **certior factus**: *i.e.* having been informed of the situation.

25. **levis armaturae Numidas**: *light-armed Numidians;* literally, *Numidians of light equipment;* Genitive of Quality; B. 203; A. 345; G. 365; H. 440, 3.

26. **ponte**: *by the bridge;* Ablative of the Way by which. **ad eos contendit**: the Belgians were to the west of the bridge. See the plan for the scene of this engagement.

Page 46. 1. **per**: *over.*

2. **audacissime**: Caesar often pays such tributes as this to the bravery of his antagonists. It may be only an indirect way of enhancing the glory of his own achievements. **conantes**: agreeing with *reliquos.*

3. **equitatu circumventos interfecerunt**: *they surrounded with the cavalry and cut to pieces.* The cavalry are here conceived as the means, not as the agent; hence the absence of the preposition; B. 218, 10; A. 409; G. 401, R. 1; H. 468, 2.

5. **oppido**: *Bibrax;* chapters 6, 7.

6. **spem se fefellisse**: *that hope had disappointed them.* **neque**: *and . . . not*, as often.

8. **res frumentaria deficere coepit**: the Gauls were inexperienced in systematic campaigning. Ordinarily they provided insufficient supplies for lengthy operations, and hence were often forced to disperse prematurely to their homes. In the present instance Caesar was thus able to attack and subjugate each tribe singly.

9. **optimum esse**, *etc.*: *that it was best for each to return to his own home; esse* is the object of *constituerunt; optimum* is a predicate adjective, limiting *reverti*, the subject of *esse.* **domum suam**: B. 182, 1, *b*; A. 427, 2; G. 337; H. 418, 419, 1.

10. **et convenirent**: *and that they should assemble;* a Substantive Clause Developed from the Volitive (*let them assemble*); object of *constituerunt.* In these clauses *ut* is often absent, this being the original form of construction; B. 295, 4, 8; A. 563, *d*; 565, *a*; G. 546, R. 2; H. 565. **quorum**: its antecedent is *eos* in the next line.

11. **introduxissent**: Subjunctive by Attraction; B. 324; A. 593; G. 663, 1; H. 652. It represents a future perfect of more direct statement.

12. **ut decertarent, uterentur**: purpose clauses. Note that *decerto* means more than merely 'contend'; it implies fighting to a finish.

14. **sententiam**: *resolution.* **cum reliquis causis**: *along with other reasons*, to be taken with *haec quoque ratio.*

15. **quod cognoverant**: *the fact that they knew;* explanatory of *haec ratio.* Note that the pluperfect of *cognosco* has the force of an

imperfect of the verb 'know'; B. 262; A. 476; G. 175, 5; H. 538, 4. **Divitiacum . . . appropinquare**: *i.e.* Divitiacus was complying with Caesar's request, made above, p. 43, line 3.

16. **finibus**: for the dative, see B. 187, III; A. 370; G. 347; H. 429. **his persuaderi non poterat**: *these* (the Bellovaci) *could not be persuaded;* literally, *it could not be persuaded to these.* Verbs that govern the dative in the active, can be used in the passive only impersonally.

17. **ut morarentur**: *to delay;* a substantive clause dependent upon *persuaderi.* **neque . . . ferrent**: *and to forego lending aid to their countrymen;* literally, *and* (*-que*) *not* (*ne-*) *to lend.*

20. **nullo certo ordine**, *etc.: without any definite arrangement and direction;* Ablative of Attendant Circumstance; B. 221; A. 412; G. 399; H. 473, 3.

21. **cum peteret**: a causal clause.

22. **fecerunt ut . . . videretur**: *they made their departure seem, etc.;* literally, *brought about that their departure seemed; ut videretur* is a Substantive Clause of Result, the object of *fecerunt;* B. 297, 1; A. 568; G. 553, 1; H. 571, 3.

23. **fugae**: dative; B. 192, 1; A. 384; G. 359; H. 434, 2.

24. **veritus**: *fearing;* for the perfect participle of deponents used with the force of the present, see B. 336, 5; A. 491; G. 282, N.; H. 640, 1. **qua de causa discederent**: *why they were withdrawing;* indirect question.

25. **exercitum**: here the infantry as contrasted with the cavalry.

26. **castris**: with *teneo* and *contineo*, the camp is considered as the means rather than the place; hence the simple ablative. **confirmata re**: *when the fact was established,* namely, of their retreat. **exploratoribus**: *scouts;* different from the spies (*speculatores*), who mingled among the enemy in disguise.

27. **qui moraretur**: Relative Clause of Purpose; B. 282, 2; A. 531, 2; G. 630; H. 590.

29. **his**: plural, as referring to the collective noun *equitatum.* For the dative, see B. 187, III; A. 370; G. 347; H. 429.

31. **hi**: referring to the infantry and cavalry just mentioned.

Page 47. 1. **fugientium**: *as they fled.* **cum consisterent**, *etc.*: *cum* is causal, and introduces the reason for the great slaughter, namely, only those on the rear of the Belgian host stood their ground, while the rest, instead of joining in the defense, hurried on madly in quest of safety. **ab extremo agmine**: *at the rear.*

2. **ad quos ventum erat**: the antecedent of *quos* is *ei* understood, the subject of *consisterent*, — *those to whom they had come*; literally, *to whom it had been come.*

3. **priores** = *sed priores* (*those in front*); Adversative Asyndeton; *priores* is the subject of *ponerent.*

4. **viderentur, continerentur**: Subjunctive by Attraction; B. 324; A. 593; G. 663, 1; H. 652.

5. **exaudito clamore perturbatis ordinibus**: two Ablatives Absolute; but the first is the cause of the second, *i.e.* the ranks were thrown into disorder at the sound of the shouting.

6. **sibi**: Dative of Reference. **praesidium ponerent**: *sought* (literally, *placed*) *security.*

7. **tantam . . . quantum**: *as many as time allowed*; literally, *as great a number as was the duration of the day*, — a careless and inexact comparison.

11. **priusquam reciperent**: the subjunctive is used to denote anticipation; B. 292, 1, *b*; A. 551, *b*; G. 577; H. 605. Note that *se recipere* here means 'recovered.' It is used differently in line 10 above.

13. **Remis**: dependent upon *proximi*; B. 192, 1; A. 384; G. 359; H. 434, 2. **magno itinere**: *by a rapid march.*

14. **Noviodunum**: the name means 'Newtown.' **ex itinere**: *i.e.* without stopping to institute a regular siege.

15. **vacuum ab defensoribus**: *lacking defenders*; *vacuum* is in predicate agreement with the omitted subject of *esse*; *defensoribus* is an Ablative of Separation.

16. **latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem**: Chiasmus; B. 350, 11, *c*; A. 598, *f* and N.; G. 682 and R.; H. 666, 2.

17. **paucis defendentibus**: Ablative Absolute with adversative force, — *though few defended it.*

18. **vineas**: movable *sheds* or *mantlets*, to protect the soldiers as they approached the walls of the enemy. Their dimensions are given as eight feet broad, seven feet high, and sixteen feet long. **agere**: *to move up, advance.* **quaeque** = *et quae*; the antecedent of *quae* is *ea* understood, the object of *comparare.*

21. **aggere jacto**: *when an agger* or *siege-terrace had been thrown up.* This was begun at some distance from the enemy's walls and gradually approached them *at right angles* as its construction advanced, the end toward the enemy being protected by sheds and other defenses. It was built as high as the hostile wall against which it was intended, and when completed furnished an avenue of approach to the battlements of the besieged. See Introd. § 41. **turribus consti-**

tutis: these towers were called *turres ambulatoriae*, literally, 'walking towers,' so designated because they were on rollers and could be moved from place to place. In the construction of an *agger* they were often of service in protecting the workmen by harassing the enemy. These towers were of several stories and sometimes rose to a height of ninety feet. They were supplied with battering rams and engines for hurling heavy missiles against the enemy. See Introd. § 42.

23. **ante**: the adverb. **audierant**: *had heard of.*

25. **petentibus Remis**: *since the Remi begged.* **ut conservarentur**: a substantive clause, object of *petentibus;* B. 295, 1; A. 563; G. 546; H. 565, 566.

26. **obsidibus acceptis primis**, *etc.: after their leading men had been received as hostages; obsidibus* is in predicate relation to *primis* and *liberis.*

Page 48. 1. **qui cum**: *when they.*

4. **majores natu**: *the elders; natu* is an Ablative of Specification; B. 226, 1; A. 418; G. 397; H. 480.

6. **sese . . . venire**: *that they submitted to* (literally, *came into*) *his protection and power.* **neque**: *and . . . not.*

7. **contendere**: we might have expected the future here; but the present is more vivid, — *they did not fight.*

8. **pueri**: *children*, including both girls and boys.

9. **passis**: from *pando.* **suo more**: to be joined closely with *passis manibus.* Stretching out the hands was their way of indicating submission: *suo more* is Ablative of Accordance; B. 220, 3; A. 418, *a* and N.; G. 399, N. 1; H. 475, 3.

11. **his**: the Bellovaci. **post discessum Belgarum**: *i.e.* after the different tribes had dispersed owing to the failure of their supplies, as explained above, p. 46, line 8.

12. **facit verba**: *spoke.*

13. **in fide atque amicitia civitatis**: *i.e.* had been loyal and friendly.

14. **impulsos**: as indicated by the position, the emphasis of the sentence rests on this word, — *it was because they had been impelled by their chiefs, . . . that they had revolted, etc.*

15. **dicerent**: subordinate clause in indirect discourse. **redactos**: the participle.

16. **indignitates contumeliasque**: for abstract nouns in the plural, see B. 55, 4, *c*; A. 99, 3, 100, *c*; G. 204, N. 5; H. 138, 2.

17. **qui**: its antecedent is *eos* understood, the subject of *profugisse.*

18. **quod**: causal.

19. **intulissent**: this would be subjunctive (of indirect question) even in the direct discourse.

21. **sua**: *his usual*, or, *his well known.* **in eos**: *toward them.* **utatur**: this and the remaining subjunctives of this chapter are in the present and perfect tenses, instead of the imperfect and pluperfect, as though dependent upon a principal tense, thus giving greater vividness to the narration (*repraesentatio*).

22. **quod si fecerit**: *if he do this; fecerit* represents a future perfect of direct discourse.

23. **amplificaturum** (esse): the subject is *eum* understood, referring to Caesar. **quorum**: its antecedent is *Belgas.* **si qua**: *whatever.*

24. **consuerint**: equivalent to a present in the sense of *be wont;* its subject is *ei* understood, referring to the Haedui.

25. **honoris Divitiaci causa**: *as a mark of honor to Divitiacus.* Caesar's policy was to enhance the prestige of the Haedui, by attributing this act of pardon to the influence of Divitiacus.

27. **civitas**: namely, of the Bellovaci. **magna auctoritate**: Ablative of Quality.

28. **multitudine**: Ablative of Specification.

29. **oppido**: Bratuspantium.

Page 49. 1. **eorum**: namely, of the Ambiani; the word is emphatic by position.

2. **sic**: *as follows.*

3. **ad eos**: prepositional phrases are not freely used in Latin to limit nouns, but occur with some frequency when limiting nouns derived from verbs. **mercatoribus**: Dative of Possession, *i.e. merchants had no access.* **pati**: as subject understand *eos*, referring to the Nervii. **vini**: Genitive of the Whole with *nihil*, — *no wine.*

4. **ad luxuriam pertinentium**: *i.e.* which tend to encourage self-indulgence. **inferri**: *to be imported.*

5. **existimarent**: subordinate clause in indirect discourse.

8. **patriam**: the adjective.

11. **eorum**: referring to the Nervii. **iter**: the line of Caesar's march is indicated on the campaign map opposite p. 40.

12. **Sabim**: the modern Sambre, a tributary of the Meuse. For the accusative in *-im*, see B. 38; A. 75, *a*, 1; G. 57, R. 1; H. 102, 2.

13. **milia**: Accusative of Extent of Space; *amplius* is introduced without affecting the construction of the sentence.

16. **utrisque**: the plural of *uterque* occurs where there is a distinct

reference to two groups of persons or things, as here; otherwise the singular is used; B. 355, 2, *a*, 2.

18. **mulieres**: the object of *conjecisse*. **quique** = *et qui*. The antecedent of *qui* is *eos* understood, object of *conjecisse*.

19. **eum locum**: *a place*.

20. **quo esset**: not merely a subordinate clause in indirect discourse, but a Clause of Characteristic; hence the subjunctive would have been used even in the direct form; *quo* is the adverb, equivalent to *ad* or *in quem*. **exercitui**: Dative of Possession.

22. **deligant**: Relative Clause of Purpose. Note that after the Historical Present either principal or historical sequence may follow. **ex dediticiis**: *of those who had surrendered;* used instead of the Genitive of the Whole, with *complures*.

24. **una**: the adverb.

25. **eorum dierum consuetudine**, *etc.*: *having noticed the customary march of our army during those days; consuetudine* is limited by *dierum* and *itineris*, while *itineris* is further limited by *exercitus*. Such an accumulation of genitives is stylistically bad and is usually avoided in Latin. This entire second book of the *Gallic War*, however, displays frequent evidences of hasty composition and inadequate revision.

28. **magnum numerum**: *a large amount*. **intercedere**: *i.e.* was placed between. **neque esse quicquam negoti**: *and there was no difficulty*. Note that the Latin regularly says *neque quicquam*, instead of *et nihil*, which would correspond to the English idiom; *quicquam* is predicate accusative with *esse*, the subject of *esse* being *adoriri* in line 2, p. 50; *negoti* is Genitive of the Whole.

29. **in castra**: the Romans regularly constructed a fortified camp when they came to the end of the day's march. Introd. § 38. **venisset, abessent**: corresponding respectively to the future perfect and future of direct statement.

Page 50. 2. **sub sarcinis**: *i.e.* carrying the heavy packs of rations, tools, and cooking utensils regularly borne by every soldier. Introd. § 30. **qua pulsa**, *etc.*: the Ablatives Absolute here denote means, — *by routing these, etc.*

3. **futurum ut non auderent**: a periphrasis for *non ausuros esse; ut non auderent* is a Substantive Clause of Result, the subject of *futurum (esse)*. **reliquae**: namely, *legiones*. **contra**: the adverb.

4. **adjuvabat etiam eorum consilium**, *etc.*: *a thing that supported the advice of these was the fact that, etc.;* literally, *it supported their*

advice that the Nervii, etc.; adjuvabat is emphatic, and hence heads the sentence.

5. **cum**: here causal. **nihil**: for the accusative, see B. 176, 2, *b*; A. 390, *c*, *d*; G. 333, R. 2; H. 416, 2. **neque enim**: *nor indeed; enim* did not originally mean *for*, but *now*, *indeed*. This meaning has for the most part disappeared in classical Latin, but survives in a few phrases like *neque enim*, *sed enim*, *etc.*

6. **ei rei**: *i.e.* cavalry forces; for the dative, see B. 187, II; A. 367; G. 346; H. 426, 1.

7. **quo impedirent**: in purpose clauses *quo* is regularly used, if there is a comparative in the sentence.

8. **venissent**: Subjunctive by Attraction, representing the future perfect of more direct statement.

9. **arboribus incisis**, *etc.*: translate the Ablatives Absolute by clauses introduced by *after*, — *after cutting into*, *etc.* **in latitudinem**: *sidewise*. The young trees had merely been cut enough to make it possible to bend them over to a horizontal position without destroying their vitality.

10. **interjectis**: *i.e.* planted in between.

11. **effecerant**: its subject is Nervii in line 5. The clause *quod effecerant* is the subject of the impersonal *adjuvabat*. **ut praeberent**: Substantive Clause of Result, the object of *effecerant*. **instar muri**: *like a wall;* B. 198, 2; A. 359, *b*; G. 373; H. 446, 4; *instar* is in apposition with *munimentum*. **hae saepes**: the farmers of this locality fence in their fields to-day with hedges of this same kind.

14. **omittendum**: understand *esse*. **sibi**: *by them;* Dative of Agent; B. 189, 1; A. 374; G. 355; H. 431. **consilium**: *i.e.* the project of attacking the first legion.

15. **haec**: explained by what follows. **quem locum . . . delegerant**: the spot chosen was on the heights near the modern hamlet of Neuf Mesnil. The antecedent is repeated in the relative clause, as often in Caesar. **castris**: Dative of Purpose.

16. **aequaliter**: *evenly*, *regularly*. **ad flumen**: with *vergebat*.

17. **quod**: the gender is determined by *flumen*, not by *Sabim*.

18. **pari acclivitate**: Ablative of Quality; *i.e.* the second hill had the same slope as the first. **nascebatur**: *rose*. **adversus et contrarius**: *opposite and across* (*the stream*). **huic**: for the dative, see B. 192; A. 384; G. 359; H. 434.

19. **infimus**: *at the base*. **apertus**: as opposed to the wooded portion above.

22. **secundum**: the preposition, *along*. **stationes**: *pickets*.

23. **pedum trium**: Genitive of Quality; B. 203, 2; A. 345, *b*; G. 366; H. 440, 3.

25. **omnibus copiis**: Ablative of Accompaniment. For the absence of the preposition, see B. 222, 1; A. 413, *a*; G. 392, R. 1; H. 474, 2, N. 1.

26. **aliter se habebat ac**, *etc.*: *was different from what the Belgians had reported;* literally, *had itself otherwise than.* For this force of *ac* with comparatives and similar words, see B. 341, 1, *c*; A. 324, *c*; G. 643; H. 516, 3. The compound subject *ratio ordoque* is construed with a singular verb, since *ratio ordoque* constitutes one idea; B. 255, 3; A. 317, *b*; G. 285, 2; H. 392, 4.

28. **consuetudine sua**: Ablative of Accordance; B. 220, 3; A. 418, *a* and N.; G. 399, N. 1; H. 475, 3.

29. **expeditas**: *i.e.* they had been relieved of their heavy packs (*sarcinae*), and were ready for battle; *expeditas* is in predicate relation to *legiones.*

Page 51. 1. **collocarat** = *collocaverat.* **quae proxime conscriptae erant**: the thirteenth and fourteenth.

2. **praesidio**: Dative of Purpose; B. 191, 2, *a*; A. 382, 1; G. 356; H. 433.

5. **in silvas, ex silva**: the plural calls attention to the different parts; the singular represents the forest as a whole.

6. **neque**: *and . . . not.*

7. **quam quem ad finem**: *than as far as;* for *quam ad eum finem ad quem.* **porrecta pertinebant**: literally, *extended stretched out;* but *porrecta* is superfluous to our sense and may be omitted in translation.

8. **cedentes**: limiting *eos* understood, the object of *insequi.*

9. **opere dimenso**: *having laid out the works.* Note that *dimenso*, though the perfect participle of a deponent verb, is here used passively; B. 112, *b*; A. 190, *b*; H. 222, 2.

12. **visa sunt**: *were seen.* **quod tempus . . . convenerat**: *the moment which had been agreed upon.* Grammatically *tempus* is the subject of *convenerat*, but logically it is in apposition with the general idea involved in *ubi . . . visa sunt.* For the incorporation of the antecedent in the relative clause, see B. 251, 4, *b*; G. 616, 2. **inter eos**: this phrase modifies *convenerat.*

13. **committendi proeli**: *for joining battle.* Note that *proeli* limits *tempus*, and *committendi* is the gerundive agreeing with *proeli.*

14. **sese confirmaverant**: *had determined (to do).*

15. **nostros equites**: those who had crossed the river with the slingers and archers.

18. **et . . . et . . . et**: note the emphasis of the Polysyndeton; B. 341, 4, *b*. **in manibus nostris**: *close beside us.* The distance between the two camps was about three-quarters of a mile. Probably not more than ten minutes elapsed, after the Gauls emerged from cover, before they reached the Romans.

19. **viderentur**: *were seen*, like *visa sunt* above.

20. **adverso colle**: *up the hill;* literally, *the hill being against them;* Ablative Absolute.

21. **occupati erant**: *were busied;* not the pluperfect passive of *occupo; occupati* is here an adjective.

22. **Caesari . . . agenda**: *by Caesar, all things had to be done at one time; Caesari* is Dative of Agency; the emphasis on the word is indicated by its position. **vexillum**: the crimson banner set up as a signal for battle. Introd. § 34.

23. **proponendum, dandum**: with these and the following gerundives *erat* or *erant* must be supplied. **signum tuba dandum**: *i.e.* the signal for forming in battle array. **ab opere**: *i.e.* the camp, which they had begun to fortify.

24. **qui**: as antecedent supply *ei*, the subject of *arcessendi* (*erant*). **paulo longius**: *i.e.* somewhat further than usual. **aggeris**: here not in the sense of *embankment*, but of the materials used in constructing the rampart of the camp, such as timber, stone, *etc.*

26. **signum**: *i.e.* for the engagement.

27. **impediebat**: for the singular verb with compound subject, see the note on *habebat*, p. 50, line 26.

28. **duae res**: namely, (1) *scientia atque usus militum*, (2) *quod . . . vetuerat.*

29. **quod . . . poterant**: explanatory of *scientia atque usus.* **exercitati**: agreeing with the subject of *poterant.* **quid oporteret**: indirect question, the object of *praescribere.*

Page 52. 1. **ipsi sibi**: the reflexive pronouns are often thus emphasized by the addition of *ipse*, which in such cases, instead of standing in apposition with the reflexive, more commonly agrees with the subject. In this use, *ipse* is often untranslatable in English; thus here it serves merely as an antithesis to *ab aliis.*

3. **legatos**: the regular commanders of the legions; Introd. § 21. **nisi munitis castris**: *until after the camp should be fortified;* literally, *unless the camp having been fortified;* Ablative Absolute.

5. **nihil jam**: *no longer;* but *nihil* is more emphatic than *non.*

6. **videbantur**: *seemed best.*

7. **necessariis rebus**: *i.e.* only the absolutely indispensable things.

8. **quam in partem fors obtulit**: *in the direction which chance suggested;* for *in eam partem in quam, etc.*

9. **non longiore oratione quam uti**, *etc.*: *in no more words than necessary to urge them to retain, etc.;* the clause *uti retinerent* depends upon the notion of urging or exhorting suggested by *oratione.*

11. **neu**: *neve* (*neu*), and not *neque*, is regularly used to introduce an added negative Substantive Clause Developed from the Volitive. **animo**: Ablative of Specification.

12. **sustinerent**: the introductory conjunction is *uti* in line 10. **quod . . . aberant**: to be joined in thought with *signum dedit.*

13. **quam quo . . . posset**: *than the cast of a spear;* literally, *than (a point) to which a spear could be hurled; quo posset* is a Clause of Characteristic.

14. **in alteram partem**: namely, to the right wing.

15. **pugnantibus**: *i.e. already fighting; pugnantibus* agrees with *eis* understood, the indirect object of *occurrit.*

17. **ad insignia accommodanda**: *for adjusting the decorations (to the helmets);* by *insignia* we are probably to understand the crests of the helmets. **ad galeas induendas**: on the march the helmets were not worn on the head, but were suspended about the necks of the soldiers. See the illustration in Introd. § 28.

18. **scutis tegimenta detrahenda**: except in battle, the shields were covered by cases to protect them from injury and the effects of the weather; *scutis* is Ablative of Separation.

19. **defuerit**: the perfect subjunctive is here used as a secondary tense; B. 268, 6; A. 485, *c*; G. 513; H. 550. **quam quisque ab opere**, *etc.*: *to whatsoever place each one happened to come from the fortification.*

20. **quaeque** = *et quae.* The antecedent of *quae* is *haec.* **ad haec**: *i.e. ad haec signa, by these.* Strict balance of the sentence would have required, *in hac parte et ad haec.*

21. **suis**: understand *signis.*

22. **ut**: *as.*

24. **diversae**: *being separated.* **aliae alia in parte**: *some in one place, others in another.*

25. **saepibus**: Ablative of Means.

26. **ut ante demonstravimus**: namely, p. 50, line 9. **interjectis**: *which were scattered here and there.*

27. certa subsidia: *i.e.* reserves in fixed places; the principal clause of the sentence begins here; *subsidia* is the subject of *poterant.*

28. provideri: dependent upon *poterat* understood, to be supplied from *poterant.*

Page 53. 2. fortunae quoque eventus varii: *various vicissitudes of fortune also.*

3. ut . . . constiterant: *in accordance with their position, etc.*; literally, *just as they were posted* (*had taken their stand*).

4. acie: for this rare form of the genitive, see B. 52, 3; A. 98, N.; G. 63, N. 1; H. 134, 2. **cursu ac lassitudine**: of two coördinated ideas the second is often merely explanatory of the first, as here.

6. ea pars: *i.e.* that division of the enemy, namely, the Atrebates. **ex loco superiore**: *i.e.* the Romans occupied the higher ground.

7. conantes: agreeing with the omitted object of *insecuti.*

8. impeditam: *i.e.* by the confusion of their retreat and the passage of the stream. **ipsi**: namely, the Romans.

10. redintegrato proelio: the Ablative Absolute is explanatory of *resistentes, — renewing the fight and again resisting.*

11. alia in parte: namely, in the centre, directly in front of the camp. **diversae**: *i.e.* some distance apart, not side by side, as ordinarily.

13. in ipsis ripis: *on the very bank.*

14. totis fere castris: *fere* very commonly stands after the word it modifies, thus separating the adjective from its noun. **a fronte, a sinistra parte**: *in front, on the left side.*

15. nudatis: the very success of the four legions brought the two remaining ones into the gravest danger. **cum constitisset**: a causal clause explanatory of the statement *totis fere castris nudatis.* But the expression is somewhat inexact. The real reason why the camp was left exposed was that the two legions protecting its front (the 8th and 11th) along with two others protecting its left (the 9th and 10th) had advanced in pursuit of the routed Atrebates and the Viromandui, leaving only the right of the camp protected (by the 7th and 12th legions).

16. magno intervallo: Ablative of Degree of Difference, depending upon the comparative notion implied in *ab ea.*

17. duce Boduognato: Ablative Absolute. **summam imperi**: *i.e.* the chief command.

19. ab aperto latere: *on the exposed flank*, namely, the right. The expression originally applied to the individual soldier, who carried his

shield in the left hand, thus leaving his right side exposed. **summum castrorum locum**: *the height where the camp was*, literally, *the highest place of the camp; castrorum* is Appositional Genitive; B. 202; A. 343, *d*; H. 440, 4.

21. levis armaturae pedites: such as bowmen, slingers, *etc.*; Genitive of Quality; B. 203; A. 345; G. 365; H. 440, 3.

22. cum una: *along with.* **eis**: the *equites.* **quos**: its antecedent is *equites* and *pedites.* **primo impetu pulsos (esse)**: namely, at the river, when the Gauls emerged from the woods and rushed forth to the attack.

23. cum . . . reciperent: in order to return to camp, they had to recross the stream and ascend the hill. **adversis**: *face to face;* in predicate agreement with *hostibus.*

25. a decumana porta: the *porta decumana* was located at the rear of the Roman camp; see the plan, Introd. § 38. **ac summo jugo**: these words do not designate a different place from *decumana porta*, but are explanatory of it. The camp was on the upper slope of the hill, so that the decuman gate, being at the rear of the camp, was at the very crest of the elevation.

26. nostros victores: *our victorious troops.* **flumen transisse**: in pursuit of the routed Atrebates, as described in chapter 23. **praedandi causa**: the camp followers, seeing part of the enemy in flight, naturally assumed that the victory was complete, and hence set forth in quest of plunder.

Page 54. 2. **praecipites**: *precipitately;* agreeing with *calones.*

3. eorum qui, *etc.*: these were the drivers of the baggage-train guarded by the 13th and 14th legions, which were bringing up the rear.

4. oriebatur: for the singular verb with compound subject, see B. 255, 3; A. 317, *b*; G. 285, 2; H. 392, 4. **alii aliam in partem**: *some in one direction, others in another;* B. 253, 2; A. 315, *c*; G. 221, R. 1; H. 516, 1.

6. Treveri: here an adjective. **quorum**: the relative refers not alone to the cavalry of the Treveri, but to the whole tribe.

7. virtutis opinio: *reputation for valor.*

8. a civitate: the state is conceived of as a person, hence the preposition. **cum**: the conjunction.

9. legiones: namely, the 7th and the 12th.

11. diversos: the participle, from *diverto*, not the adjective.

12. desperatis nostris rebus: *despairing of our fortunes.* Note that

despero is a transitive verb and hence is capable of being used personally in the passive.

13. **pulsos superatosque**: understand *esse*. **castris impedimentisque**: governed by *potitos (esse)*; B. 218, 1; A. 410; G. 407; H. 477, 1.

15. **ab**: *from*, in the local, not the temporal sense.

16. **ubi**: introducing *vidit*.

17. **sibi ipsos ad pugnam**, *etc.*: *hindered each other in fighting*. On the use of *ipse* to emphasize a reflexive pronoun, see note on p. 52, line 1.

18. **quartae cohortis**: the fourth cohort occupied the extreme left of the front line, a particularly exposed position; hence the casualties detailed by Caesar.

19. **signo amisso**: the loss of the standard was naturally felt as a disgrace.

21. **primipilo confecto**: the *primipilus* was properly the commander of the first maniple of the first cohort of a legion, but military custom gave him control, not only over his own maniple and cohort, but to a certain extent over the entire legion.

22. **multis gravibusque**: *many severe;* when *multus* and another adjective both limit the same noun, *et* or *que* is generally used in the Latin; B. 241, 3.

23. **tardiores**: for the force of the comparative, see B. 240, 1; A. 291, *a*; G. 297, 2; H. 498.

24. **ab novissimis**: *at the rear*.

25. **neque**: correlative with *et* in the line below. **neque subeuntes intermittere**: *and did not stop advancing*.

In the foregoing description notice how admirably the rapidly sketched details accord with the scene of confusion which Caesar is aiming to depict.

26. **rem esse in angusto**: *that matters had reached a critical pass;* literally, *were in a narrow place; angusto* is the adjective used substantively. The substantive use of neuter singular adjectives is commonest in the construction of the Genitive of the Whole and with prepositions; B. 237, 2, *a*.

27. **vidit**: the preceding infinitives depend upon *vidit* above in line 18, but owing to the long intervening description, Caesar for the sake of clearness repeats *vidit* here. **quod summitti posset**: the subjunctive would have been used even in direct discourse, the clause being one of Characteristic.

28. **scuto militi detracto**: *snatching a shield from a soldier; militi* is Dative of Separation; B. 188, 2, *d*; A. 381; G. 345, R. 1; H. 427. **ab novissimis**: *at the rear;* literally, *from the rearmost*.

29. **eo**: the adverb.

30. **reliquos milites**: object of *cohortatus*.

Page 55. 1. **signa inferre**: *i.e.* to advance. **manipulos laxare**: *to open up the companies.*

3. **pro se quisque**: *each to the best of his ability.*

4. **etiam in extremis suis rebus**: *even in their desperate situation.*

6. **juxta**: *i.e.* near the 12th legion, of which Caesar had just been speaking.

8. **legiones**: the 7th and the 12th. **conversa signa . . . inferrent**: *face about and advance upon the enemy;* literally, *bear their changed standards;* Substantive Clause Developed from the Volitive; dependent upon *monuit* ('let them bear, etc.'). The nature of the evolution here mentioned is thoroughly obscure. As shown by the following *aversi*, the Roman legions evidently secured their own rear from attack. Very likely they stood back to back.

10. **aversi**: *in the rear;* literally, *turned away;* agreeing with the subject of *circumvenirentur*. **hoste**: in this sense the plural is much commoner.

13. **legionum duarum**: the 13th and 14th.

15. **cursu incitato**: *at full speed.*

16. **castris hostium**: this was across the river, whither Labienus had advanced in pursuit of the Atrebates. **ex loco superiore**: the high ground of the opposite bank gave Labienus a full view of the struggle going on around the camp of the Romans.

18. **qui cum**: *qui* refers to the soldiers of the 10th legion; *cum* introduces *cognovissent.*

19. **esset, versaretur**: indirect questions; note that *versaretur* agrees in number with its nearest subject.

21. **nihil . . . fecerunt**: *made all possible speed;* literally, *left nothing undone in point of speed; reliqui* is a predicate genitive.

23. **procubuissent**: subjunctive by attraction to the following *redintegrarent.*

24. **scutis**: for the ablative with *innixi*, see B. 218, 3; A. 431; G. 401, N. 6; H. 476, 3. **calones**: the subject of *occurrerent.*

25. **inermes**: limiting *calones.*

27. **se . . . praeferrent**: *strove to show* (literally, *showed*) *themselves superior to the regular soldiers.* The cavalry, it will be remembered, was furnished mainly by the allies (Introd. § 12); less was ordinarily expected of it than of the legionaries. **militibus**: Dative of Indirect Object with a compound of *prae.*

Page 56. 2. **primi**: *the foremost.*

3. **jacentibus insisterent**: *took their stand upon the fallen.*

4. **his**, *etc.*: in English we need a conjunction (*and*) to join this clause to the preceding; Copulative Asyndeton. **qui superessent**: *the survivors.* The antecedent of *qui* is the subject of *conicerent; superessent* is attracted into the subjunctive.

5. **ut ex tumulo**: *from a mound, as it were;* namely, a mound of dead bodies. **conicerent**: in the same construction as *insisterent* and *pugnarent; i.e. exhibited such valor that the survivors, etc.*

6. **pila intercepta remitterent**: when the *pilum* had once been hurled, its slender point usually bent, so that it could not be effectively returned by the enemy. The desperation of the Nervii is here emphasized by their frantic attempts to utilize these *pila.* **ut non nequiquam**, *etc.*: *so that it ought not to be thought that men of so great bravery dared without reason* (*i.e.* without prospect of success) *to cross.* The emphasis of the clause rests upon *non nequiquam; ausos esse* is the subject of *deberet.*

9. **quae**: *things which;* the antecedent of *quae* is found in the preceding infinitives. **facilia . . . redegerat**: *had rendered easy from being most difficult; facilia* is predicate accusative.

11. **prope ad internecionem**: this is an exaggeration. The Nervii only a few years later were able to put a large force in the field.

12. **redacto**: agreeing with the nearer subject.

14. **dixeramus**: *i.e.* prior to the description of the battle. **cum**: *since.*

15. **impeditum, tutum**: predicate adjectives with *nihil.*

18. **ex sexcentis ad tres**, *etc.*: the Nervii shrewdly exaggerate their losses, in order to move Caesar's pity.

19. **possent**: Clause of Characteristic; hence the subjunctive would have been used even in direct form.

21. **usus**: *i.e. usus esse.* **videretur**: here not *seem*, but *be seen.*

23. **ut prohiberent**: Substantive Clause Developed from the Volitive; object of *imperavit.*

25. **cum**: the conjunction. **omnibus copiis**: Ablative of Accompaniment without *cum.*

26. **auxilio**: Dative of Purpose; B. 191, 2; A. 382, 1; G. 356; H. 433.

28. **in unum oppidum**: *into a single stronghold.* This is thought by many to have been on the site of the modern Namur, at the junction of the Sambre and Meuse rivers.

29. **cum**: adversative, — *while this . . . (yet).*

Page 57. 3. **ducentorum pedum**: Genitive of Quality limiting *aditus; amplius*, as usual, does not affect the construction of the sentence.

4. **tum**: *at that time.*

5. **in muro**: *on the wall.* **collocabant**: *i.e. they were engaged in placing* them.

6. **ex Cimbris Teutonis**: see note on p. 41, line 27.

7. **iter facerent**: *were making a raid.*

8. **agere, portare**: *agere*, literally *drive*, suggests that the *impedimenta* consisted partly of cattle and horses.

9. **custodiam ac praesidium**: *as a guard* (of the property) *and a garrison* (of the place); predicate accusatives. **ex suis**: *from their number;* literally, *from their own* (people). The phrase limits *milia.*

10. **una**: *i.e.* along with the *impedimenta.* **hi**: *i.e.* those left as a guard.

11. **eorum**: the Cimbri and Teutoni, who were defeated by Marius in 102 and 101 B.C.

12. **alias . . . defenderent**: *at one time waged offensive war, at another time defensive* (literally, *warded off war brought against them*).

13. **eorum omnium**: *i.e.* all their enemies.

14. **locum**: *region.*

15. **adventu**: Ablative of Time.

17. **pedum XII**: *i.e.* twelve feet in height.

18. **XV milium**: *pedum*, not *passuum*, is to be understood. **oppido**: for the Ablative of **Means**, see B. 218, 7; A. 429, 3; G. 389; H. 485.

19. **vineis, aggere, turrim**: see Introd. § 41 ff.

20. **ire, idere, increpitare**: historical infinitives; B. 335; A. 275; G. 647; H. 610.

21. **quod institueretur**: the reason in the minds of the Aduatuci; hence the subjunctive; B. 286, 1; A. 540; G. 541; H. 588, I, II. **a tanto spatio**: *so far away; a* is an adverb; *tanto spatio* is Ablative of Degree of Difference.

22. **quibusnam**: *with what . . . pray?*

24. **omnibus Gallis**: *in the eyes of all the Gauls;* Dative of the Person Judging; B. 188, 2, *c*; A. 378, 1; G. 353; H. 425, 4.

25. **contemptui**: Dative of Purpose.

26. **confiderent**: treated as a real question in indirect discourse; hence the subjunctive; B. 315; A. 586; G. 651; H. 642, 2, 3.

27. **moveri**: as subject understand *turrim.*

Page 58. 1. **locuti**: for *locuti sunt.*

2. **non**: placed first for emphasis; it logically belongs with *sine.*

3. **qui possent**: *since they could;* B. 283, 3, *a*; A. 535, *e*; G. 633; H. 592.

5. **unum**: *one thing;* explained by the clause *ne despoliaret.*

6. **pro**: *in accordance with.* **quam audirent**: *i.e.* which they were continually hearing of.

7. **statuisset**, *etc.*: *he should decide that the Aduatuci were to be spared.* **ne despoliaret**: imperative clause in indirect discourse; B. 316; A. 588; G. 652; H. 642.

8. **armis**: Ablative of Separation. **sibi**: with *inimicos.*

9. **virtuti**: for the dative, see B. 187, II, *a*; A. 367; G. 346; H. 426, 2.

10. **traditis armis**: *if they should surrender their arms;* B. 227, 2, *b*; A. 420, 4; G. 410; H. 489, 1. **sibi praestare**: *it was better for them.* **in eum casum**: *to that pass*, namely, of being thus exposed to the vengeance of their neighbors.

11. **quamvis fortunam**: *any visitation whatever; quamvis* is the indefinite pronoun.

12. **pati, interfici**: subjects of the impersonal *praestare.*

13. **consuessent**: for the form, see B. 116, 1; A. 181, *a*; G. 131, 1; H. 238.

14. **consuetudine sua, merito**: *consuetudine* is Ablative of Accordance, B. 220, 3; A. 418, *a*; G. 475, 3; H. 475, 3; *merito* is Ablative of Cause.

16. **priusquam . . . attigisset**: *i.e.* without waiting for a continuance of the siege operations; *attigisset* represents a future perfect indicative of direct statement. After the actual storming of a city began, a voluntary surrender was no longer possible. For a description of the *aries*, see Introd. § 46.

18. **in Nerviis**: *in the case of the Nervii.*

19. **ne quam . . . inferrent**: *not to inflict any damage;* a Substantive Clause Developed from the Volitive. In these, as in Purpose Clauses, *ne quis* is regularly used instead of *ut nullus.*

21. **se facere dixerunt**: *said that they did.* We should have expected a future tense, but the present lends greater vividness to the narrative by suggesting immediate compliance.

22. **magna multitudine**: with *jacta.*

24. **summam muri aggerisque altitudinem**: *the full height of the wall and agger; i.e.* the arms filled the space between the fortifications and the head of the agger, which had already neared the walls.

27. **pace sunt usi**: *observed peace.*

29. **ne quam**: see the note above on line 19.

Page 59. 3. **denique**: *at least.*

5. **viminibus intextis**: *woven willow-work;* like *cortice,* governed by *ex.*

7. **qua**: *where.*

11. **eo concursum est**: *they ran thither;* B. 138, iv; A. 208, *d*; G. 208, 2; H. 302, 6. **pugnatumque est**: *-que* here has adversative force, — *but; i.e.* despite the discovery of their sortie.

12. **ut a viris fortibus pugnari debuit**: *as brave men were bound to fight.*

13. **qui jacerent**: a Clause of Characteristic.

14. **in una virtute**: *in valor alone.*

15. **ad**: *about.*

18. **jam**: *longer.*

21. **capitum**: *persons.* **milium quinquaginta trium**: *as being fifty-three thousand;* predicate genitive. But the entire tribe was not in the town. The Aduatuci appear later fighting against the Romans.

23. **Publio Crasso**: for his important share in the engagement with Ariovistus, see Book I, chapter 52.

24. **legione una**: the 7th. **miserat**: this was after the fight on the Sabis against the Nervii. **Venetos, Redones**: the names of these tribes survive in the modern town names Vannes and Rennes. **Coriosolitās**: Greek accusative plural.

25. **quae**: the relative is attracted to the gender of the predicate noun.

26. **civitates**: *nations, tribes,* as often in Caesar.

Page 60. 1. **omni Gallia pacata**: *i.e.* all those portions which offered organized resistance to the Romans.

3. **incolerent**: subjunctive by attraction to *mitterentur;* B. 324, 1; A. 593; G. 663, 1; H. 652.

4. **qui pollicerentur**: a Relative Clause of Purpose. **se daturas, facturas (esse)**: the speakers identify themselves with their *nationes;* hence the feminine gender. Note the asyndeton in *daturas, facturas.*

5. **in Italiam**: *i.e.* cisalpine Gaul, one of Caesar's provinces.

8. **Carnutes, Andes, Turonos**: these names survive in the town names Chartes, Anjou, and Tours. **quaeque civitates** = *et in eas civitates quae.*

9. **his**: the antecedent of *ubi.*

10. **ob easque res**: *-que* is almost never appended to a preposition; B. 341, 2, *a*; H. 677, 2.

11. **ex litteris**: *in accordance with despatches.* **supplicatio**: *a public thanksgiving.* Prior to this no *supplicatio* had ever been decreed for a longer period than twelve days.

12. **quod**: its antecedent is the previous statement. **nulli**: for *nemini*, *i.e.* the adjective for the substantive. Note the emphasis produced by placing this word at the end of the sentence.

BOOK III.

Page 61. 1. **in Italiam proficisceretur**: as mentioned at the close of Book II. **Servium Galbam**: a lieutenant of Caesar, and, according to report, one of his assassins. The emperor Galba (68 A.D.) was descended from him.

4. **ad summas Alpes**: *i.e.* to the highlands of the Alps.

5. **iter per Alpes**: by the pass of the Great St. Bernard; *iter* is subject of *patefieri.*

6. **quo**: the adverb; its antecedent is *Alpes.* **cum**: *subject to.* **portoriis**: taxes on merchandise that passed through their territory.

7. **huic**: *i.e.* Galba.

8. **si arbitraretur**: subjunctive by attraction to *collocaret; arbitraretur* represents a future indicative (*si arbitraberis*) of direct statement. **uti collocaret**: a Substantive Clause Developed from the Volitive; B. 295, 2; A. 563; G. 553, 2; H. 564, 1.

11. **eorum**: *i.e.* of the Nantuates, *etc.*

12. **cohortes duas**: probably about six hundred men. The legion had been reduced by the losses in the fight on the Sabis.

13. **reliquis cohortibus**: eight in number, comprising, in their reduced condition, perhaps twenty-five hundred soldiers.

15. **Octodurus**: identified with the modern Martigny.

17. **flumine**: its modern name is the Dranse.

18. **vacuam**: predicate adjective with *relictam.*

21. **hibernorum**: here in the sense of *the stay in winter quarters, wintering.*

22. **eo**: the adverb.

Page 62. 1. **concesserat**: the indicative is used because the words, *ex ea parte . . . concesserat*, are not properly a part of the indirect discourse, but are an explanatory addition of the author.

2. **a multitudine**: collective nouns referring to persons may be construed as the personal agent with *ab;* B. 216, 1; G. 401, R. 1; H. 468, 1.

4. **id**: explained by the following *ut* clause, which is a Substantive Clause of Result.

6. **quod**: introducing *despiciebant.* **neque eam plenissimam**: *and that not a very full one;* B. 247, 4; G. 308, R. 2; H. 508, 2. **detractis cohortibus duabus et compluribus absentibus**: the Ablatives Absolute explain why the legion was not full. The two cohorts were those stationed in the territory of the Nantuates. With *compluribus* understand *militibus.*

9. **tum etiam**: introducing a second reason for renewing the war.

10. **ipsi**: the Gauls. **ex montibus in vallem**: to be taken with *conicerent* as well as *decurrerent.* **decurrerent, conicerent**: *should run down, should hurl;* these represent the future indicative of direct discourse.

12. **accedebat quod**: *another reason was that;* literally, *it was added that.* For the *quod*-clause, see B. 299, 1; A. 572; G. 525; H. 588, 3.

13. **liberos abstractos (esse)**: object of *dolebant.* **Romanos . . . persuasum habebant**: *and had persuaded themselves that the Romans were trying, etc.*

14. **itinerum causa**: the reason mentioned by Caesar in Chapter 1. **perpetuae possessionis**: the suspicions of the Gauls are hardly surprising in view of the actual facts; *possessionis* dependent upon *causa.*

16. **finitimae provinciae**: the Roman Province. **persuasum**: in predicate agreement with *conari,* which is the grammatical object of *habebant.*

18. **perfectae**: agreeing with the nearest subject; B. 235, 2, *b,* γγ; A. 317, *c*; H. 392. **de**: *for.*

19. **satis esset provisum**: *sufficient provision had (not) been made; esset provisum* is impersonal.

20. **quod existimaverat**: a subordinate reason, explanatory of *esset provisum.* The indicative shows that the explanation proceeds from the mind of the author.

21. **consilio**: namely, of the chief officers.

24. **omnia fere**: note that *fere* commonly stands after the word which it modifies. **completa**: in predicate agreement with *loca.*

25. **neque subsidio veniri**: *and they could neither be reënforced; subsidio* is Dative of Purpose; B. 191, 1; A. 382; G. 356; H. 425, 3; *veniri* is impersonal, dependent upon *posset,* to be supplied in thought

from *possent;* B. 138, IV; A. 208, *d*; G. 208, 2; H. 302, 6. Note that *neque* here has a double function; it is both copulative (*and*) and also correlative with the following *neque* (*neithɜr*).

27. **hujus modi**: Genitive of Quality, explained by the following *ut* clause.

28. **ut contenderent**: a Substantive Clause Developed from the Volitive.

29. **itineribus**: Ablative of the Way by which. **pervenissent**: Subjunctive by Attraction. **ad salutem**: *i.e. to a secure place.*

30. **majori parti placuit**: *the majority thought best;* literally, *it pleased, etc.* The subject of *placuit* is *experiri et defendere.*

31. **experiri et defendere**: Hýs-te-ron Pró-te-ron, *i.e.* an inversion of the logical order; B. 374, 7.

Page 63. 1. **vix ut**, *etc.: so that time was scarcely afforded.* **eis rebus collocandis**: Dative of Purpose; B. 191, 3, N.; G. 429, 2.

2. **daretur**: Subjunctive of Result.

3. **decurrere, conicere**: historical infinitives. What case, therefore, is *hostes?* B. 335; A. 463; G. 647; H. 610.

4. **gaesa**: heavy javelins used by the Gauls.

5. **neque ullum**: note that the Latin usually says *neque* (*nec*) *ullus*, not *et nullus.*

6. **ex loco superiore**: namely, from the top of their fortifications. **quaecumque**: the antecedent of this indefinite relative is implied in the following *eo*, which is equivalent to *in eam partem.*

8. **hoc**: Ablative of Cause. **diuturnitate**: with *defessi.*

9. **alii succedebant**: (*and*) *others came up;* Copulative Asyndeton. **integris viribus**: Ablative of Quality.

11. **non modo**: here equivalent to *non modo non;* B. 343, 2, *a*; A. 217, *e*; G. 482, R. 1; H. 656, 3. **defesso, saucio**: used substantively, indirect objects of *dabatur.* **excedendi, loci relinquendi, sui recipiendi**: we have the gerund in the first of these expressions, the gerundive in the latter two.

14. **cum jam . . . pugnaretur**: *when the fight had already raged;* the same idiomatic use of the imperfect subjunctive as of the imperfect indicative; B. 260, 4; A. 471, *b*; G. 234; H. 535, 1. **amplius horis sex**: *amplius* is here followed by the Ablative of Comparison; oftener it has no effect whatever upon the construction of the sentence. **continenter**: *in succession, without a break.*

16. **languidioribus**: *thoroughly weary;* B. 240, 1; A. 291, *a*; G. 297, 2; H. 498.

17. vallum scindere, fossas complere: another instance of Hysteron Proteron. It was necessary for the enemy to fill the ditches before they could gain access to the fortification. Note the plural in *fossas;* a single trench surrounded the entire camp, but different parts are here thought of.

18. ad extremum casum: *to a desperate pass.*

19. primi pili: see note on p. 54, line 21. **Nervico proelio**: Ablative of Time; for the event, see p. 54, line 21.

21. tribunus militum: see Introd. § 22.

22. unam esse spem, *etc.*: *that the one hope of safety was in trying.*

23. si experirentur: a substantive clause, the subject of *esse; spem* is a predicate noun. **extremum auxilium**: *the last resource.*

24. milites certiores facit: *directed the soldiers;* the expression ordinarily means *inform, tell.* Compare the English *tell*, in the sense of *bid, order.*

25. intermitterent, exciperent, *etc.*: Substantive Clauses without *ut* Developed from the Volitive (B. 295, 1, 8; A. 563, 565, *a*; G. 546, R. 2; H. 565, 562, 1, N.); or, what is the same thing, imperative clauses in indirect discourse; B. 316; A. 588; G. 652; H. 642.

26. missa: *i.e.* hurled by the enemy.

27. post: the adverb.

Page 64. 1. **quod**: its antecedent is *id* understood, the object of *faciunt; quod* itself depends on *facere* to be supplied with *jussi sunt.* **portis**: Ablative of the Way by which; B. 218, 9; A. 429, *a*; H. 476. There were four exits to the Roman camp; see the plan, Introd. § 38.

2. **sui colligendi**: note that while *sui* is plural, *colligendi* is singular. For the explanation, see B. 339, 5; A. 504, *c*; G. 428, R. 1; H. 626, 3.

4. **eos circumventos interficiunt**: *surrounded and slew those.* A striking illustration of the superiority of discipline over numbers. **potiundorum**: for this form of the gerundive, see B. 116, 2; A. p. 89, foot-note 1; G. 130, 8; H. 243.

5. **ex milibus**: dependent upon *tertia parte.* Note that neither *amplius* nor *plus* affects the construction of the sentence.

8. **locis superioribus**: on the heights surrounding the camp.

10. **armis**: Ablative of Separation with *exutis*, which agrees with *copiis.* By *exutis* we are not to understand that the Gauls were stripped of their weapons by the Romans, but merely that they lost them in flight.

12. **saepius**: *too often.*

13. **alio consilio . . . aliis rebus**: *with one purpose* (to open a way to Italy) . . . *other problems* (an uprising of the Gauls); *consilio* is Ablative of Attendant Circumstance; *rebus* is Dative.

18. **incolumem**: in predicate agreement with *legionem.*

20. **his rebus gestis**: referring not merely to recent achievements, but to all the campaigns of the two preceding years. **cum**: *although.* **omnibus de causis**: further explained by the following Ablatives Absolute.

21. **Galliam**: as usual, in the sense of Celtic Gaul.

22. **Sedunis**: the Seduni alone are mentioned, as being the more important tribe; the Veragri were also defeated at the same time.

23. **Illyricum**: one of Caesar's provinces, situated on the eastern shore of the Adriatic.

26. **P. Crassus adulescens**: see the note on p. 38, line 2.

Page 65. 1. **mare Oceanum**: not really redundant; *Oceanum* (*the Atlantic*) further defines *mare*, which is a general word.

2. **praefectos**: commanders of cavalry and other allied troops. Introd. § 23.

3. **complures**: limiting *civitates.*

7. **hujus civitatis**: *i.e.* of the Veneti.

8. **omnis orae maritimae**: a condensed form of expression for *omnium civitatum orae maritimae.* **et**: correlative with *et* in line 10 below.

9. **quibus in Britanniam navigare**: the Veneti enjoyed an extensive and lucrative trade with Britain. It is possible that Caesar had already conceived the purpose of invading Britain, and that the Veneti, hearing of that, determined to defend their threatened interests by disputing the Roman authority at once.

10. **consuerunt**: *are wont;* B. 262, A; A. 476; G. 175, 5; H. 299, 2. **scientia, usu**: Ablatives of Specification. **rerum nauticārum**: *seamanship.*

11. **in magno impetu**, *etc.*: *since there are few harbors scattered along the vast, boisterous, and open sea;* literally, *the great and open fury; aperto*, while grammatically agreeing with *impetu*, belongs logically with *maris.*

12. **omnes vectigales**: *omnes* is the direct object of *habent, vectigales* predicate accusative.

14. **initium retinendi Sili**: logically inexact; not *a beginning of retaining Silius,* but *a beginning of* (*hostilities by*) *retaining Silius.* **per eos**: *i.e.* by exchanging them.

17. **auctoritate**: *i.e.* the influence of their example. **ut sunt . . . consilia**: *in accordance with the suddenness and unexpectedness of the decisions of the Gauls;* note that *ut* is never properly a causal conjunction; thus here it does not mean *as*, in the sense of *since*, but in the sense of *just as*.

20. **inter se conjurant**: *form a league.*

21. **acturos, esse laturos**: the infinitives depend upon the notion of saying involved in *conjurant.*

22. **ut malint**: a Substantive Clause Developed from the Volitive.

23. **acceperint**: Subjunctive by Attraction. **quam perferre**: *than to endure.*

26. **si velit**: subordinate clause in indirect discourse.

27. **remittat**: Substantive Clause Developed from the Volitive, or an imperative clause in indirect discourse.

Page 66. 2. **quod ipse aberat longius**: *i.e.* because he was too far off to assume the immediate direction of operations. **naves longas**: see Introd. § 49. **interim**: *i.e.* until he himself should return.

At the end of the previous year Caesar had set out for Illyricum (Book II., chapter 35). From here he crossed the Adriatic to Ravenna, where he met Crassus, his political ally in the Triumvirate. In April (56 B.C.) all of the Triumvirs (Caesar, Pompey, and Crassus) met in a formal conference at Luca, in Etruria. "At this little town the fortunes of the world were decided." Pompey and Crassus were to be consuls for the ensuing year (55 B.C.), while Caesar's term as governor of Gaul was to be extended for another period of five years after its expiration in 54 B.C. Pompey and Crassus further undertook to secure for Caesar the privilege of increasing the number of his legions from six to ten, and of providing for the pay of the troops from the public treasury. Caesar was thus shrewdly preparing his plans for an eventual return to Rome backed by a powerful army, with whose help he might become master of the political situation.

5. **cum primum potuit**: *i.e.* as early as the weather permitted, probably in May.

8. **in se**: literally, *into* or *to themselves;* but the phrase may be left untranslated.

9. **legatos retentos (esse)**: Caesar misstates the facts when he represents that ambassadors had been detained. In chapter 7 he says the men had been sent as agents to procure grain. The infinitive is in apposition with *facinus.* **nomen**: namely, that of ambassador. **ad**: *with.*

13. **majore spe**: Ablative of Attendant Circumstance; B. 221; A. 412; G. 399; H. 473. **multum confidebant**: *had great confidence;* B. 176, 3; A. 390, *c*; G. 333, R. 2; H. 416, 2. **natura**: Ablative of Cause with *confido;* B. 219, 1; A. 431; G. 401, N. 6; H. 476, 3.

15. **inscientiam**: *i.e.* the ignorance of the Romans.

16. **neque**, *etc.: and they were confident that our armies could not.*

18. **ac jam ut**: *and even though; ut* in this meaning is relatively rare, but is construed with the subjunctive even in the direct discourse; B. 308; A. 527, *a*; G. 608; H. 586, II.

19. **posse, habere**, *etc.:* dependent upon *perspiciebant* in line 23.

21. **gesturi essent**: *would wage.* For the sake of clearness, the periphrastic form is here necessary; *gererent* would have been ambiguous; B. 269, 3; G. 515; H. 541, 2, N. 1.

22. **longe aliam atque**: *far different from what it was.* **concluso mari**: alluding to the Mediterranean, the only waters in which the Romans had had experience in naval warfare.

24. **frumenta**: *crops*, the regular meaning of this word in the plural.

25. **ubi**: *where.*

27. **socios**: predicate accusative.

28. **Lexovios, Namnetes, Diablintes**: the names of these tribes survive in the modern town names of Lisieux, Nantes, and Jablins.

Page 67. 1. **erant**: emphatic, — *there existed.*

3. **injuria retentorum equitum**: *the wrong of detaining Roman knights;* literally, *the wrong of Roman knights detained;* B. 337, 6; A. 497; H. 636, 4. The genitive is appositional; B. 202; A. 214, *f*; H. 440, 4; *equitum* here refers to the social, not the military, status of the envoys. As *tribuni militum*, they were of equestrian rank; *i.e.* only persons of equestrian rank were eligible for appointment as tribunes. **rebellio facta**: *the resumption of war.*

5. **in primis**: *especially.* **ne arbitrarentur**: *the fear lest they should think;* B. 296, 2; A. 564; G. 550; H. 567, 1. The clause is substantive and, like *injuria*, *rebellio*, *etc.*, in apposition with *multa.* **hac parte**: *this quarter, district.*

9. **odisse**: note that *odi*, though perfect in form, is present in sense.

10. **priusquam conspirarent**: this would be subjunctive even in direct discourse; B. 292, 1, *b*; A. 551, *b*; G. 577; H. 605.

11. **latius distribuendum**: namely, for the purpose of overawing those tribes which might be disposed to begin hostilities.

13. **flumini Rheno**: B. 192, 1; A. 384; G. 359; H. 434, 2.

14. **adeat**: for the absence of *ut*, see B. 295, 1, 8; A. 563, 565, *a*; G. 586, R. 2; H. 562, 1, N.

17. **cohortibus legionariis**: as distinguished from the allied troops, which were also organized in cohorts, though not in legions.

22. **qui curet**: Relative Clause of Purpose. **eam manum distinendam**: *the keeping of those forces apart;* B. 337, 8, *b*, 2; A. 500, 4; G. 430; H. 622.

24. **Pictonibus et Santonis**: these names survive in the modern Poitou and Saintonge.

26. **possit**: the subjunctive is due entirely to the indirect discourse.

27. **copiis**: for the absence of *cum*, see B. 222, 1; A. 413, *a*; G. 392, R. 1; H. 474, 2, N. 1.

Page 68. 1. **posita**: agreeing with *oppida* understood.

2. **pedibus**: *i.e.* by land; Ablative of Means with *aditum*, which, as a verbal noun, here admits the construction of verbs.

3. **cum . . . incitavisset**: *whenever the tide had rushed in;* an instance of *cum* with the subjunctive denoting recurring action (*whenever*), a construction rare in the best Latin; B. 288, 3, *a*; G. 584, R.; H. 601, 4.

4. **navibus**: in the same construction as *pedibus* above.

5. **in vadis afflictarentur**: *were left aground;* subjunctive by attraction to *haberent*.

6. **si quando, *etc.*:** *whenever;* an instance of a *si*-clause denoting recurring action; B. 302, 3; A. 518, *b*; G. 567; H. 578.

7. **magnitudine . . . superati**: *happening to be overcome by the magnitude of our fortifications; superati* agrees with the subject of *coeperant*. **extruso mari, *etc.*:** the Ablatives Absolute give the details of the siege works of the Romans, alluded to in *magnitudine operis*. **aggere ac molibus**: *enormous dikes;* literally, *a dike and masses;* Hendiadys; B. 374, 4; A. 640; G. 698; H. 751. Apparently the high tide ordinarily cut off the towns from communication with the mainland; but the Romans, by constructing dikes, kept the water away; they thus were able to advance their agger up to the walls of the besieged town.

8. **moenibus**: dative. **fortunis**: dative with *desperare; despero* also takes the accusative of direct object.

10. **cujus rei**: namely, *naves*. **deportabant, recipiebant**: the imperfect denotes repeated action; the experience was evidently a frequent one.

14. **detinebantur**: *i.e.* the Roman ships did not arrive. **summa**: with *difficultas.*

15. **mari, aestibus, portibus**: Ablatives Absolute, but to be translated freely, — *in a wide and open sea, with high tides, and with harbors far apart.* **ac prope nullis**: *or rather, scarcely existing.*

17. **ipsorum**: *their own;* referring to the Veneti.

18. **armatae**: *rigged.* **carinae**: as verb, *erant* is to be understood. **aliquanto planiores**: *somewhat flatter; i.e.* the line of the keel showed less curve. **quam**: understand in thought *carinae;* for its omission, see B. 247, 3; H. 445.

20. **excipere**: *cope with;* the long straight keel with slight overhang naturally diminished the draught of the vessel.

21. **magnitudinem**: *violence, shock.*

22. **totae**: *entirely;* for the adjective with the force of the adverb, see B. 239; A. 290; G. 325, R. 6; H. 497. **quamvis**: the indefinite pronoun.

23. **transtra**: *cross-beams,* bracing the hull and supporting the deck. **in altitudinem**: *in thickness;* literally, *in height; i.e.* from the lower to the upper side, the *transtra* being laid horizontally.

24. **digiti pollicis crassitudine**: Ablative of Quality; B. 224, 2; A. 415; G. 400; H. 473, 2. The peculiarity of the construction is that we have a limiting genitive in place of the usual adjective.

26. **pelles**: undressed skins, as opposed to the *alutae,* which were also used.

27. **ejus usus**: *its preparation; ejus* refers to *lini.*

28. **quod est**, *etc.*: *what is more likely.* **quod arbitrabantur**: in apposition with *eo.*

Page 69. 2. **tanta onera navium**: *such heavy vessels;* literally, *such weights of vessels.* **regi**: passive infinitive of *rego.* **satis commode**: to be taken with *sustineri,* as well as with *regi.*

4. **nostrae classi**: Dative of Possession, — *our fleet had such encounters.*

5. **una**: *only.* **praestaret**: *was superior.* **reliqua essent**: *but everything else was;* Adversative Asyndeton; *essent,* like *praestarent,* is Subjunctive of Result.

7. **neque enim**: *nor indeed;* see note on p. 50, line 5. **his**: dative with *nocere;* B. 187, II, *a*; A. 367; G. 346; H. 426. **nostrae**: understand *naves.* **rostro**: the prows of the Roman galleys were furnished with heavy bronze beaks, used for ramming the vessels of the enemy; see Introd. § 50.

9. **minus commode**: *i.e.* less easily than would otherwise have been the case.

10. **copulis**: grappling and boarding was a favorite method of attack in Roman naval warfare. **accedebat ut ferrent**, *etc.: besides this, they weathered the gale;* literally, *it was added, that they, etc.* **cum coepisset, dedissent**: the subjunctive is probably due solely to attraction; *cum* iterative (*whenever*) is regularly construed with the indicative, though exceptions occur; compare *cum incitavisset*, above, p. 68, line 3.

11. **et . . . dedissent**: *and they were sailing before the wind;* literally, *had given themselves to the wind.* **et . . . et**: correlatives.

12. **in vadis tutius**: *i.e. rode at anchor in shallow water;* having less draught than the galleys of the Romans, the ships of the Veneti were in less danger in shoal water when the wind had stirred up a heavy sea. **ab aestu**: Ablative of Agent; the tide is here conceived of as a person.

13. **nihil . . . timerent**: *had no fear at all of rocks, etc.*

14. **navibus**: Dative of Agency. **casus**: *the occurrence.*

17. **captis oppidis**: the Ablative Absolute here denotes means, — *by capturing their towns.* **neque eis noceri posse**: *and that they could not be injured;* literally, *and that it could not be injured to them; noceo*, as a verb governing the dative in the active, can be used in the passive only impersonally. **exspectandam (esse)**: understand *sibi.*

18. **quae ubi convenit**: *when this assembled.* The battle with the Veneti is thought to have been fought in the Bay of Quiberon, between Quiberon and St. Gildas. **primum**: *i.e. ubi primum*, 'as soon as.'

19. **paratissimae, ornatissimae**: *thoroughly ready and supplied.*

20. **armorum**: *equipment*, including not merely weapons, but tackle, cables, anchors, *etc.*

21. **Bruto**: with *constabat.*

23. **quid agerent**, *etc.*: deliberative indirect questions; the subject of *constabat.* The subjunctive would have been used here even in direct discourse.

24. **rostro**: Ablative of Means.

25. **noceri**: understand *eis*, referring to the ships of the enemy. **turribus excitatis**: the Ablative Absolute has adversative force, — *though towers had been, etc.* As a rule, a noun or pronoun stands in the Ablative Absolute construction only when it denotes a different person or thing from any in the clause in which it stands. This

principle is here violated; for *turribus* is the same thing as the following *has*.

26. **ex barbaris navibus**: *on* (literally, *from*) *the ships of the barbarians.*

27. **superabat**: *overtopped.* **neque . . . et**: correlatives; *on the one hand . . . not . . . on the other.*

28. **gravius**: *i.e.* more heavily than if the decks of the enemy had been on a level with those of the Romans.

29. **usui**: B. 191; A. 382; G. 356; H. 433, 1.

30. **absimili forma**, *etc.*: *of a shape not unlike that of wall-hooks.* The wall-hook, or *falx muralis*, was a long-handled iron hook, used for tearing down fortifications; *falcium* depends upon *ei* (*formae*), to be supplied in thought.

Page 70. 1. **cum adducti erant**: this clause denotes recurring action in past time, and hence stands in the indicative; B. 288, B, 3; A. 548, 518, *b*; G. 584; H. 601, 4.

5. **navibus**: Dative of Reference.

6. **usus**: *control.*

7. **erat positum**: *lay;* literally, *was placed.*

10. **paulo fortius**: *unusually brave.*

11. **in mare**: for prepositional phrases with nouns, see note on p. 3, line 8.

13. **cum circumsteterant**: see the note on *cum adducti erant*, line 1, above. **binae ac ternae naves**: *two or three ships at a time;* since the ships of the Veneti had been crippled by the fall of their rigging, it was possible for Brutus, even though he may have had fewer ships than the enemy, to attack a single vessel with several and so overpower its crew.

17. **ei rei**: *for that* (*thing*), namely, the capture of their vessels. **fuga**: Ablative of Means.

19. **quo** = *in quam.*

20. **exstitit**: *fell upon them;* note the difference in the Latin conception; literally, *sprang up;* for the singular verb with compound subject, see B. 255, 3; A. 317, *b*; G. 285, 2; H. 392, 4. **ut . . . non possent**: having no oars, the vessels of the Veneti were entirely dependent upon the wind.

24. **pervenerint**: the perfect subjunctive as a secondary tense. **cum**: *although.* **hora fere quarta**: not far from ten o'clock.

27. **cum . . . tum**: *not only . . . but also.*

28. **gravioris aetatis**: *of more advanced age.*

Page 71. 1. **navium quod ubique**, *etc.: all the ships they had had anywhere;* the antecedent of *quod* is *id* understood, the object of *coegerant; navium* is Genitive of the Whole.

3. **quo se reciperent**, *etc.: knew not whither to flee, nor how to defend;* deliberative subjunctives in indirect discourse; B. 300, 2; A. 587; G. 467; H. 642, 3.

5. **gravius vindicandum (esse)**: *severer punishment should be inflicted.*

8. **sub corona**: *as slaves;* wreaths were put upon the heads of captives who were to be sold into slavery.

13. **magnasque copias**: as compared with *exercitum* (*i.e.* a trained and disciplined body of troops), *magnas copias* probably refers to bodies of unorganized allies.

14. **his paucis diebus**: *in the course of the last few days.*

15. **nolebant**: plural because *senatu* is a collective noun. **portas clauserunt**: namely, against the Romans.

21. **omnibus rebus**: *in all respects;* Ablative of Specification with *idoneo.*

22. **cum**: *although.* **spatio**: Ablative of Degree of Difference.

24. **hostibus**: Dative of Reference.

26. **opinionem timoris**: *impression of fright.*

Page 72. 3. **eo qui . . . teneret**: namely, Caesar; the subjunctive is due to the indirect discourse.

4. **data**: agreeing with the nearer noun *opportunitate*, but to be taken also with *loco.* **legato**: Dative of Agent.

8. **praemiis pollicitationibusque**: *i.e.* with present rewards and promises of further favors.

11. **quibus prematur**: indirect question with *docet.*

12. **neque longius abesse**: *and that Sabinus was on the point of leading forth his army the next night.* For the *quin*-clause, see B. 298; A. 558; G. 555; H. 595, 1.

15. **negoti bene gerendi**: *of a successful enterprise.*

16. **ad castra**, *etc.: that they ought to advance against the camp;* B. 138, IV; A. 208, *d*; G. 208, 2; H. 302, 6.

20. **quod credunt**: a substantive clause in apposition with *multae res*, like *cunctatio, confirmatio, etc.*

22. **prius . . . quam sit concessum**: B. 292; A. 551, *b*; G. 577; H. 605.

24. **ut explorata victoria**: *as though victory had been achieved.*

25. **quibus compleant**: Relative Clause of Purpose.

27. **locus**: *the site.*

28. **passus mille**: Accusative of Extent of Space with *acclivis.*

Page 73. 1. **quam minimum spati**: *as little time as possible.*

2. **exanimatique**: *et* is explanatory, — *and so;* the adjective has predicate force.

3. **cupientibus**: understand *eis.*

4. **duabus portis**: Ablative of the Way by which.

8. **ac**: the Latin uses a copulative conjunction where we should naturally employ an adversative one (*but*).

9. **integris viribus**: Ablative of Quality with *milites.*

11. **equites**: nominative. **reliquerunt**: *i.e. failed to overtake.*

14. **Titurio**: *i.e.* Sabinus. **ut . . . sic**: *just as . . . so;* almost equivalent to our *though . . . yet.*

15. **animus, mens**: the fundamental difference of meaning between *animus* and *mens* is here observed; *animus* is mind as the seat of feeling; *mens* as the seat of reason, reflection, or resolution. Thus *animus* here means 'temper'; *mens*, 'purpose, resolution.'

16. **resistens**: here used as an adjective.

18. **Publius Crassus**: he had already distinguished himself by his conduct in the battle against Ariovistus (Book I., chapter 52), and later by his subjugation of some of the maritime tribes (Book II., chapter 34).

19. **ut ante dictum est**: Caesar has not previously made the observation to which he here refers, nor is the statement accurate.

20. **ex tertia parte**: *as the third part.*

22. **paucis ante annis**: namely, in 78 B.C., at the time of the war with Sertorius.

23. **interfectus esset**: subordinate clause in indirect discourse.

25. **non mediocrem**: *no slight, i.e. especial;* Litotes.

Page 74. 2. **evocatis**: *evocati* were veterans whose term of service had elapsed, but who sometimes voluntarily re-entered the army. Introd. § 14.

8. **hi**: referring to *copias;* construction according to sense.

11. **victoriis**: for the ablative, see B. 218, 3; A. 431, *a*; G. 401, N. 6; H. 476, 1.

12. **quid possent**: indirect question, subject of *perspici.*

13. **imperatore**: *i.e.* Caesar, who alone was invested with supreme authority over the movements of the troops. **adulescentulo**: namely, young Crassus.

17. **vineas, turres**: see Introd. § 42 f.

18. **alias . . . alias**: *at one time . . . at another.*

19. **cujus rei**: referring to the mines; for the genitive, see B. 204, 1; A. 349, *a*; G. 374; H. 451.

21. **diligentia**: *i.e.* our men met the mines by countermines; Ablative of Cause.

27. **soldurios**: a Celtic or Iberian word.

28. **condicio**: not *condition*, but *contract, agreement.* **uti fruantur**, *etc.*: substantive clauses in apposition with *condicio.* **in vita**: for the prepositional phrase limiting a noun, relatively rare in Latin, see note on p. 3, line 8.

Page 75. 1. **commodis**: for the ablative with *fruantur*, see B. 218, 1; A. 410; G. 407; H. 477, 1.

2. **dediderint**: Subjunctive by Attraction. **si accidat**: *and if;* Copulative Asyndeton.

3. **sibi mortem consciscant**: *commit suicide.* **neque quisquam**: remember that this is the regular Latin idiom, — not *et nemo.*

4. **memoria**: Ablative of the Time within which. **qui recusaret**: Clause of Characteristic; *repertus est* is present perfect, but the present perfect usually is followed by historical sequence.

6. **cum his**: resumptive of *cum DC devotis*, p. 74, line 27.

9. **tamen**: with *impetravit.* **uti uteretur**: Substantive Clause Developed from the Volitive; the object of *impetravit.*

13. **manu**: *i.e.* by artificial means.

14. **quibus eo ventum erat**: *after they* (*i.e.* the Romans) *had arrived there.* **expugnatum**: for *expugnatum esse;* object of *cognoverant.*

17. **quae sunt citerioris Hispaniae**, *etc.*: *which belong to Hither Spain, (being) adjacent to Aquitania; citerioris Hispaniae* is a predicate Genitive of Possession; *finitimae* limits *quae.*

18. **inde**: *from there*, namely, from Spain.

19. **adventu**: Ablative of Time. **cum auctoritate, cum multitudine**: the prepositional phrases modify *adventu.*

21. **duces**: *as leaders;* predicate nominative.

22. **Sertorio**: an able military leader and statesman. After the overthrow of the popular party by Sulla, he went to Spain, where for ten years, 82–72 B.C., he successfully maintained an independent government, in defiance of Roman authority. **omnes annos**: namely, all the years of Sertorius's power. **summamque**: *-que* is explanatory, — *and so, and accordingly.*

26. **copias diduci**, *etc.:* the infinitives are in apposition with *quod.*

27. **hostem et vagari**, *etc.: but that the enemy, etc.;* Adversative Asyndeton. **et . . . et . . . et**: Polysyndeton.

30. **non cunctandum quin**, *etc.: that he ought not to hesitate to fight a decisive engagement.* For the subjunctive, see B. 298; A. 558; G. 555, 2; H. 595. Note the force of *de* in composition, *to fight it out, fight to the end.*

Page 76. 3. **pugnae**: Dative of Purpose.

4. **duplici acie**: the ordinary line of battle was triple, but Crassus's troops were too few to warrant this formation.

5. **auxiliis . . . conjectis**: ordinarily, when the Roman force was adequate, the auxiliaries were placed upon the wings; in the present instance Crassus seems to have wished to guard against the danger of desertion on the part of the auxiliaries; hence he placed them between bodies of regular soldiers.

6. **caperent**: *would adopt;* B. 269, 2, 3; G. 515; H. 541, 2, N. 1.

7. **belli**: *in war.*

9. **obsessis . . . intercluso**: of these two ablatives absolute, the former stands to the latter in the relation of means, *i.e.* their plan was to cut off supplies by blocking the roads.

11. **impeditos**: agreeing with *eos* understood (referring to the Romans), the object of *adoriri.*

12. **infirmiores animo**: *thoroughly disheartened.* For the force of the comparative, see B. 240, 1; A. 291, *a*; G. 297, 2; H. 498; *animo* is Ablative of Specification. **adoriri cogitabant**: not *thought that they would attack*, but *planned to attack;* for the infinitive, see B. 328, 1; A. 457; G. 423; H. 609.

17. **exspectari diutius**, *etc.: that they ought no longer to put off marching against the camp; oportere*, which represents the principal clause of direct discourse, depends upon the idea of saying involved in *voces;* for the *quin*-clause, see B. 298; A. 558; G. 555, 2; H. 595.

19. **omnibus cupientibus**: on this irregular Ablative Absolute, see B. 227, 4, and compare p. 69, line 25.

21. **vallo**: Ablative of Separation.

22. **quibus**: the dative; B. 187, II, *a*; A. 367; G. 346; H. 426, 1.

23. **lapidibus telisque**, *etc.: by fetching stones and javelins.* **ad aggerem**: *i.e.* for constructing one.

24. **speciem atque opinionem**, *etc.: the appearance and impression of combatants.*

Page 77. 2. **ab decumana porta**: *at the decuman gate.* This was at the rear of the camp; see plan of a Roman camp, Introd. § 38. The Aquitanians, instructed by former associates of Sertorius, had evidently fortified their camp after the Roman fashion.

3. **habere**: *afforded.*

5. **praemiis . . . excitarent**: the cavalry were allied troops, and as such needed the special stimulus of rewards.

7. **ab labore**: *by work;* B. 216, 1; G. 401, 2; H. 468, 1.

10. **eas munitiones**: *those parts of the fortification*, namely, the rear part.

11. **prius quam posset**: B. 292, 1, *b*; A. 551, *b*; G. 577; H. 605, I, II.

12. **videri**: dependent upon *possent* to be supplied from *posset.* **quid rei**: *what;* literally, *what of business.*

14. **quod**: its antecedent is the general idea residing in *redintegratis viribus.*

17. **per**: *over.*

18. **apertissimis campis**: *over absolutely open plains;* Ablative of Place where.

19. **quae**: its antecedent is *milium; quae* is the subject of *convenisse*, which in turn is the subject of the impersonal *constabat.*

20. **multa nocte**: *late at night.*

24. **Tarbelli, Bigerriones, Tarusates, Elusates, Ausci, Garumni, Sibuzates**: the names of these Aquitanian tribes survive in the modern town and river names Tarbes, Bigorre, Tartas, Eauze, Auch, Garonne, Saubusse.

26. **tempore**: B. 219, 1; A. 431; G. 401, N. 6; H. 476, 3.

Page 78. 2. **omni Gallia**: *i.e.* all the rest of Gaul except the Morini and Menapii.

3. **qui essent, misissent**: Clauses of Characteristic. **neque**: *and . . . not.*

4. **arbitratus**: for the perfect participle of deponent verbs with the force of the present, see B. 336, 5; A. 491; G. 282, N.; H. 640, 1.

6. **alia ac**; *other than;* B. 341, 1, *c*; A. 407, *d*; G. 643; H. 516, 3.

8. **continentesque**, *etc.*: *and (because) they had unbroken forests.*

9. **eo**: *i.e.* to the forests and marshes.

15. **longius**: *too far.* **impeditioribus locis**: Ablative of Place where without the preposition.

17. **reliquis deinceps diebus**: *the remaining days uninterruptedly.*

18. **inermibus . . . militibus**: the Ablative Absolute here denotes time, — *while the soldiers were, etc.*

20. **conversam ad hostem collocabat**: *i.e.* the timber was piled on the flanks of the Romans. **pro vallo**: *as a rampart.*

22. **confecto**: *cleared* (of trees). **jam tenerentur**: the imperfect implies that the cattle and baggage were not yet seized, but were on the point of being. **extrema impedimenta**: *the rear of their baggage-train.*

23. **ipsi peterent**: *(and) they themselves were seeking;* Copulative Asyndeton.

Page 79. 1. **continuatione**: Ablative of Cause.

4. **Aulercis, Lexoviisque**: in northwestern Gaul, near the mouth of the Seine.

BOOK IV.

Page 80. 1. **qui**: attracted to the gender, not of its antecedent, but of the predicate noun; B. 250, 3; A. 306; G. 614, R. 3; H. 396, 2. **Cn. Pompeio, M. Crasso**: Pompey and Crassus, Caesar's political allies in the First Triumvirate, were consuls in the year 55 B.C. For the absence of the conjunction with the names of consuls, see note on p. 2, line 9.

2. **Germani**: in apposition with both *Usipetes* and *Tencteri.*

4. **quo**: the adverb, equivalent to *in quod.*

5. **Suebis**: a general name for a large nation of central Germany including many tribes.

6. **premebantur, prohibebantur**: *i.e.* had been and still were; B. 260, 4; A. 471, *b*; G. 234; H. 535.

8. **omnium**: note the emphatic position; *omnis* regularly precedes its noun.

9. **singula milia**: *i.e.* a thousand from each canton.

11. **illos**: those in the field. **anno post**: *one year later.* In expressions of time and measurement *unus* is not expressed, except for purposes of contrast.

12. **illi remanent**: Asyndeton.

13. **intermittitur**: the compound subject *ratio atque usus* is regarded as a whole; hence the singular. **privati . . . nihil**: *i.e.* there is no such thing as land held by individual owners. All land was held in common.

14. **anno**: Ablative of Comparison with *longius.*

15. **multum, maximam partem**: adverbial accusatives.

16. **lacte atque pecore**: *on milk and flesh.*

17. **sunt**: *are engaged.* **quae res**: namely, their devotion to the chase. **genere**: this and the following ablatives denote cause.

18. **quod faciunt**: explanatory of the expression *libertate vitae.*

19. **officio aut disciplina**, *etc.: accustomed to no duty, etc.;* literally, *familiarized with;* for the ablative, see B. 222 A.; H. 476, 3.

20. **et . . . et**: correlative.

Page 81. 1. **homines**: predicate accusative with *eos* to be supplied as object of *efficit.* **in eam consuetudinem**, *etc.: to the custom of wearing . . . and of bathing;* literally, *to this custom, that they wear, etc.*

2. **ut haberent, et lavarentur**: Substantive Clauses of Result; B. 297, 3; G. 557; H. 571, 4. Note that the present perfect *adduxerunt* takes historical sequence; B. 268, 1; A. 485, *a*; G. 511, R. 3; H. 547, 1. **neque . . . et**: correlatives; *neque quicquam* may be translated like *nihil.* **vestitus**: Genitive of the Whole with *quicquam.*

6. **aditus**: *i.e.* access to them (the Suebi). **eo**: *on this account,* or *for this purpose;* explained by the clause *ut habeant.* **ut . . . habeant**: *that they may have some one to whom to sell what they have taken in war; quae ceperint* is Subjunctive by Attraction; *quibus vendant* is a Relative Clause of Purpose. The antecedent of *quibus* is the omitted object of *habeant.*

7. **quam quo**: *than because;* B. 286, 1, *b*; A. 592, N.; G. 541, N. 2; H. 588, II, 2.

8. **jumentis**: *horses;* dependent upon *utuntur.* The word is here emphatic and so placed at the beginning of the sentence, — *as regards horses, the Germans do not use imported ones.*

9. **parant**: *i.e.* purchase.

11. **haec**: grammatically the object of *efficiunt,* by the figure known as Prolepsis (B. 374, 5; A. 576; G. 468), but logically the subject of *sint.*

12. **summi ut sint laboris**: *capable of the greatest exertion;* literally, *that they be of the greatest exertion; ut sint* is a Substantive Clause of Result, the object of *efficiunt; summi laboris* is a predicate Genitive of Quality. Note the emphasis lent to *summi* by placing it before the introductory *ut.*

13. **pedibus**: *on foot.*

14. **eodem vestigio**: *in the same spot, stock still.* For the absence

of the preposition *in*, see B. 228, 1; A. 429, 2; G. 385, N. 1; H. 485, 2.

18. **quamvis pauci**: (*they*) *however few.* **vinum**: emphasized, like *jumentis* above. **omnino**: in translation to be joined with the negative. Many of these northern peoples exhibited the same hostility to the use of wine. Compare the attitude of the Nervii, mentioned in Book II.

21. **publice**: *as a nation.* **laudem**: predicate accusative with *esse*, the subject being *vacare agros.*

22. **vacare agros**: *to have unoccupied territory;* but in the Latin it should be noted that *vacare* is intransitive, and that *agros* is its subject. **significari**: object of *putant.*

23. **non posse**: *are unable;* subject of *significari.*

24. **una ex parte**: namely, to the east. **a Suebis**: with *vacare.*

25. **ad alteram partem**: namely, to the west or northwest.

26. **captus**: *standard.*

30. **moribus**: in the same construction as *officio*, p. 80, line 19.

Page 82. 1. **vectigales**: predicate accusative with *hos.*

3. **in eadem causa**: *i.e.* in the same state of subjection to the Suebi as were the Ubii.

5. **multis locis**: *over many districts.*

6. **triennium**: the Latin regularly says *triennium*, not *tres annos;* see note on p. 3, line 5. **quas regiones**: *i.e. to the districts which.*

10. **trans flumen**: *i.e.* on the east bank.

11. **transire**: *from crossing.* The infinitive is the regular construction with *prohibeo* in Caesar and Cicero.

12. **vi contendere**: *to force a passage.*

15. **viam**: Cognate Accusative. **reverterunt**: note that this verb, though passive in its present system, regularly has active forms in the perfect.

16. **confecto**: with *itinere.*

20. **priusquam certior fieret**: for the subjunctive, see B. 292, 1, *b;* A. 551, *b*; G. 577; H. 605, II.

23. **partem**: Accusative of Duration of Time. **copiis**: *supplies.*

26. **nihil his committendum (esse)**: *that no trust ought to be reposed in these.*

27. **Gallicae consuetudinis**: predicate Genitive of Quality. **uti cogant, quaerant, circumsistat, cogant**: Substantive Clauses of Result in apposition with *hoc;* translate, *to compel, to ask, etc.*

28. **quid . . . cognoverit**: indirect questions.

Page 83. 2. **mercatores**: object of *circumsistat*. Note that only a few verbs compounded with the preposition *circum* take the dative; most such compounds become transitive and take the direct object as here; B. 175, 2, *a*, 1); A. 388, *b*; G. 331; H. 406. **quibusque**: the *-que* connects *circumsistat* and *cogant*.

4. **cogant**: plural because its subject, *vulgus*, is a collective noun; yet the singular is used in *circumsistat*. The singular suggests the crowd as a whole, the plural the individual questioners. **his rebus atque auditionibus**: hardly more than *this gossip;* literally, *things and gossip;* but the 'things' are the 'gossip.'

5. **quorum eos**, *etc.*: *which they are immediately forced to repent of.* For the genitive *quorum*, see B. 209, 1; A. 354, *b*; G. 377; H. 457; *eos* is the object of *paenitere*, which is the subject of *necesse est.*

7. **plerique**: *i.e.* most of those questioned. **ad voluntatem . . . ficta respondeant**: *give answers made up to satisfy their wishes;* literally, *reply things made up, etc.; eorum* refers to the questioners.

8. **graviori bello**: *i.e.* such a war as would break out, if the Gauls and Germans should make common cause.

11. **missas (esse)**, *etc.*: the infinitives explain the preceding *ea facta (esse)*.

12. **uti . . . discederent**: *i.e.* to withdraw from the Rhine and advance into Gaul to attack the Romans.

13. **omniaque quae postulassent**, *etc.*: *and that everything would be done by them* (the Gauls) *which they* (the Germans) *should demand.* A condensed form of expression for 'the Gauls promised that all things,' *etc.* On the form of the infinitive *fore parata* (future perfect), see B. 270, 4; H. 619, 4.

19. **constituit**: *i.e.* announced his determination; he had already reached it some time before.

22. **a quibus**: referring to *locis*, not to *Germanis.*

24. **neque priores . . . inferre**: *neither were the first to wage, etc.*

25. **recusare quin contendant**: *refused to contend;* for the *quin*-clause, see B. 298; A. 558; G. 555; H. 595, **1.** **lacessantur, contendant, sit**, *etc.*: note the employment of the present subjunctives after an historical tense (*repraesentatio*); this occurs especially in impassioned passages for the purpose of greater vividness.

26. **sit**: present subjunctive; *tradita* is here the participle.

27. **quicumque**: as antecedent understand *eis*, indirect object of *resistere.* **neque deprecari**: *and not to ask for quarter.*

Page 84. 1. **dicere, venisse, posse**: in strictness, the subject *se* should have been expressed with all these infinitives.

2. **eis**: the Romans.

3. **attribuant vel patiantur**: imperative clauses in indirect discourse. **eos**: object of *tenere*, the subject of which is omitted.

4. **possederint**: *had got possession of, had won;* from *possido*, not *possideo*.

6. **reliquum**: note the emphatic position.

7. **possint**: this is a Clause of Characteristic, and would stand in the subjunctive even in the direct discourse.

8. **quae visum est**: *what it seemed fitting; quae* is the object of *respondere*, to be supplied in thought as the subject of *visum est*.

10. **verum**: *right*.

11. **qui**: its antecedent is *eos* understood, to be supplied as the subject of *occupare*. **potuerint, possint, velint**, *etc.*: observe the *repraesentatio*; see note on p. 83, line 25.

18. **post diem tertium**: *the next day but one;* when employing ordinal numerals with *post* or *ante*, the Romans reckoned inclusively; we should say *the second day after*.

19. **ne moveret**: a Substantive Clause Developed from the Volitive (*let him not move*).

23. **trans Mosam**: *i.e.* to the left bank. Caesar himself was between the Rhine and the Meuse. **ejus rei causa**: *i.e.* to await their return.

25. **Mosa profluit**, *etc.*: the bulk of this chapter seems an aimless digression. Caesar begins with a description of the course of the Meuse, which is entirely fitting, as reference has been made to this river at the end of the preceding chapter. But the description of the Meuse involves a reference to the Rhine, and Caesar then proceeds to give an account of the course of that river, mentioning also the character of the tribes dwelling near its mouth, — details which have no bearing on this part of his narrative. **ex monte Vosego**: the statement is inaccurate; the Meuse rises some distance to the west of the Vosges Mountains.

26. **parte quadam**: *a certain tributary*.

27. **Vacalus**: the modern Waal.

Page 85. 1. **ab eo**: *i.e.* from the point where the Waal enters the Meuse. **milibus**: either the Ablative of Comparison with *longius* or the Ablative of Degree of Difference with *ab eo*. If taken in the latter way, *longius* does not affect the construction of the sentence.

2. **longo spatio**: *by a long course.*

3. **Nantuatium**: apparently an error. In Book III., chapter 1, the Nantuates are located on the Rhone.

4. **citatus**: *swiftly.*

6. **multis ingentibusque**: *many large;* for the Latin idiom, see B. 241, 3.

9. **capitibus**: here *mouths.* When applied to rivers, *caput* usually means *source.*

11. **milibus**: see note above on line 1. **ut erat constitutum**: with *revertuntur.*

12. **ne progrederetur**: a Substantive Clause developed from the Volitive (*let him not advance further*).

14. **antecessissent**: Subjunctive by Attraction. **praemitteret**: the object (*men, messengers*) is omitted.

15. **sibi**: *them*, the Usipetes and Tencteri.

16. **quorum**: referring to the Ubii.

17. **fecisset**: representing a future perfect indicative of direct discourse; *fecisset* agrees in number with the nearer subject.

18. **quae . . . ferretur**: *which was proposed by Caesar.* The reference is to the proposition that the Usipetes and Tencteri should settle in the territory of the Ubii.

19. **daret**: imperative clause in indirect discourse.

20. **eodem illo pertinere**: *had the same object;* explained by the following purpose clause.

21. **qui abessent**: Subjunctive by Attraction; the antecedent of *qui* is *equites*, not *eorum.*

24. **convenirent**: imperative clause in indirect discourse.

25. **cognosceret**: *i.e.* examine and decide.

26. **qui (nuntiarent)**: its antecedent is the omitted object of *mittit.* **nuntiarent**: here in the sense of *direct, order.*

27. **proelio lacesserent**: for the ablative, see B. 218, 7.

28. **sustinerent**: *i.e. ut sustinerent.* **exercitu**: *i.e.* the infantry.

29. **accessisset**: this would be in the subjunctive also in the direct discourse; B. 293, III, 2; A. 553; G. 572; H. 603, II.

Page 86. 1. **ubi primum**: *as soon as.*

2. **quinque milium**: predicate genitive, where we should expect the nominative.

3. **equites**: *amplius* does not affect the construction.

6. **indutiis**: Dative of Purpose.

8. **rursus**: not *again*, but *in turn.* **his**: the Romans.

10. **ita perterritos**: Caesar's cavalry, it must be remembered, were Gauls. Disciplined Romans would not have become panic-stricken under such circumstances.

12. **venissent**: Subjunctive by Attraction; after negative clauses the indicative is regularly used with *antequam* and *priusquam*.

13. **ex equitibus**: instead of the Genitive of the Whole, *ex* with the Ablative is commonly used with cardinals.

15. **genere**: Ablative of Source.

23. **neque jam**: *no longer.*

26. **exspectare vero . . . judicabat**: *he thought it was the height of folly to wait until, etc.; exspectare* is the subject of *esse; summae dementiae* is a predicate Genitive of Quality. **dum reverteretur**: the subjunctive would also have been used in direct discourse; B. 293, III, 2; A. 553; G. 572; H. 603. II.

Page 87. 2. **nihil spati**: *no time.*

4. **cum legatis**: *to the lieutenants.*

5. **ne . . . praetermitteret**: a substantive clause in apposition with *consilio*, — (*his purpose*) *not to let any chance* (literally, *day*) *of battle pass.*

7. **eadem simulatione . . . usi**: the circumstances indicate that this charge of treachery is not justified. Caesar is apparently endeavoring to offer an excuse for his own attack upon the Usipetes and Tencteri. The attack of the previous day upon the Roman cavalry could hardly have been deliberately planned; it was rather the sudden act of a few impetuous Germans; otherwise ambassadors would scarcely have ventured to come at all.

9. **simul . . . simul**: *partly . . . partly.* **sui purgandi causa**: *for the purpose of clearing themselves.* For the use of the singular form of the gerundive with the plural pronoun, see B. 339, 5; A. 504, *c*; G. 428, R. 1; H. 626, 3.

10. **contra atque esset dictum**: *contrary to what had been said;* B. 341, 1, *c*; A. 324, *c*; G. 643; H. 508, 5, and 516, 3.

13. **quos . . . oblatos**: *that they had been delivered into his hands.*

14. **quod existimabat**: to be taken with *jussit.*

17. **acie triplici instituta**: in order to be ready for action.

18. **prius . . . quam possent**: B. 292, 1, *b*; A. 550, 551, *b*; G. 577; H. 605, II.

20. **et . . . et**: correlative; *celeritate* and *discessu* are explanatory of *omnibus rebus.* **discessu suorum**: referring to the absence of those who had come as ambassadors to Caesar.

21. **habendi, capiendi**: the former is the gerundive, the latter the gerund.

22. **perturbantur**: *were thrown into perplexity.* **copiasne . . . praestaret**: indirect question.

28. **reliqua . . . mulierumque**: *i.e. the remaining throng consisting of women and children.*

Page 88. 1. **quos**: referring to *multitudo;* construction according to sense.

Plutarch tells us that, when it was proposed in the Roman senate to vote a public thanksgiving in recognition of Caesar's German campaign, Cato opposed the action and even went so far as to urge that Caesar be delivered up to the barbarians, in order to atone for the violation of the truce and to turn the consequences upon the guilty.

3. **clamore audito**: *i.e.* the shrieks of the defenceless women and children whom Caesar's cavalry were slaughtering.

4. **viderent**: *realized;* they could hardly be witnesses to the actual slaughter.

5. **ad confluentem**, *etc.*: *i.e.* to the junction of the Meuse with the branch of the Rhine, already mentioned, namely, the Waal.

6. **reliqua fuga desperata**: *despairing of further flight.*

9. **ad unum**: *to a man.*

11. **CCCCXXX milium**: predicate Genitive of Possession.

13. **veriti**: *fearing.* The perfect passive participle of deponents often has the force of a present.

15. **libertatem**: *i.e.* the privilege of so doing.

17. **illa**: explained by the following *quod*-clause.

18. **justissima**: *the most cogent.*

19. **suis rebus**: *for their own interests.*

20. **cum intellegerent**: *i.e.* as they would do when they should know; *intellegerent* represents a future indicative of direct statement.

21. **accessit etiam**: *a further reason was.*

26. **quos**: referring to the Sugambri.

28. **dederent**: Substantive Clause Developed from the Volitive (*let them surrender*); for the absence of *ut*, see B. 295, 8; A. 565, *a*; G. 546, R. 2; H. 562, 1, N.

Page 89. 1. **imperium, Rhenum**: the former is the object, the latter the subject, of *finire.* **se invito**: *without his permission.*

2. **transire non aequum**: *transire* is the object of *existimaret;*

aequum is predicate accusative. **cur postularet**: treated as a real question in indirect discourse; hence the subjunctive.

3. **sui . . . potestatis**: *that anything belong to his control or power;* predicate Genitive of Possession.

5. **qui**: subject of *miserant*, *fecerant*, and *dederant*.

7. **quod premerentur**: the reason advanced by the Suebi.

8. **id facere**: *from doing that;* governed by *prohiberetur;* with *prohibere* the infinitive is more usual than a subjunctive clause introduced by *ne*, *quin*, or *quominus*. **occupationibus rei publicae**: *by business of state.*

9. **transportaret**: imperative clause in indirect discourse.

10. **reliqui temporis**: *in the future.*

11. **satis futurum**: *would suffice;* dependent upon the notion of saying involved in *orabant*.

12. **ejus exercitus**: *of his army.*

19. **suae dignitatis**: *in accordance with his dignity.*

21. **faciendi pontis**: *in building a bridge.* **latitudinem**: the point where Caesar constructed his bridge is located with most probability between Coblentz and Andernach; here the river is fully a quarter of a mile in width.

22. **id**: *i.e.* the construction of the bridge.

25. **rationem hanc**: *the following plan.* For the engineers, who had charge of the construction of bridges, forts, *etc.*, see Introd. § 15. **tigna bina**: *pairs of beams.* The distributive is used because several pairs are implied; *tigna* is the object of *jungebat*.

26. **ab imo**: *at the bottom.* **praeacuta**: that they might the more easily be driven into the bed of the river. **dimensa ad altitudinem**: *proportioned to the depth of the river; i.e.* using longer piles where the water was deep, shorter ones where it was shallower. Note the passive use of the perfect participle of the deponent verb.

27. **intervallo pedum duorum**: *two feet apart;* this refers to the distance of the two beams from each other, not to the distance between the several pairs, which were naturally separated by much longer intervals. **inter se jungebat**: *fastened together.*

28. **immissa . . . defixerat**: *had let down into the river and fixed there; defixerat* and *adegerat* denote repeated action (B. 288, 3; G. 584; H. 601, 4); *i.e.* as often as he had let down one pair and made them secure, he would set a similar pair opposite these.

29. **sublicae modo**: *like a pile; i.e.* perpendicular, as explained in the following words.

30. **ut . . . procumberent**: *so as to lie according to the current of*

the stream; i.e. the pairs of beams here mentioned all slanted down the stream.

Page 90. 1. **his contraria**: *opposite these.* **duo**: understand *tigna; i.e.* other pairs; *bina* would have been more exact.

2. **intervallo pedum quadragenum**, *etc.: forty feet distant at the bottom; i.e.* forty feet is the distance on the bed of the river between the opposite pairs of beams; *quadragenum* is the genitive plural of the distributive *quadrageni.* For the form, see B. 63, 2; A. 49, *d*; G. 97, 1; H. 169. The use of the distributive is determined by the principle already stated in the note on *bina* above.

4. **haec utraque**, *etc.: these pairs* (*of beams*) *were kept apart at the ends by letting in, from above, timbers two feet thick* (*the distance between the beams*), *with pairs of bolts on each side.* There seem to have been *two* pairs of bolts at each end of the cross-timbers. See the Plan.

5. **trabibus immissis**: Ablative Absolute denoting means. **quantum**: its antecedent is *duo pedes*, involved in *bipedalibus; quantum* is Accusative of Extent of Space. **eorum tignorum junctura distabat**: literally, (*as*) *the juncture of those beams was apart, i.e.* as far apart as those beams were where they came near together.

7. **quibus disclusis**: *when these were held apart; quibus* refers to the opposite pairs of piles.

9. **quo major**, *etc.: the greater the force of the water that rushed on, the more tightly were they* (the opposite pairs of piles) *held bound together.*

10. **haec**: the horizontal two-foot timbers. **derecta materia injecta**: *with timbers laid lengthwise; derecta* is in predicate agreement with *materia.*

11. **longuriis cratibusque**: the *longurii* ran cross-wise, at right angles with the *derecta materia.* The wicker-work was laid over all.

12. **nihilo setius**: *nevertheless, i.e.* despite the other means adopted to insure the safety and security of the structure. **et**: *also.* **ad inferiorem partem fluminis**: *down the stream*, or *on the down-stream side.*

13. **agebantur**: *were driven in.* **quae . . . exciperent**: *in order that, set as buttresses and united with the whole structure, they might withstand.*

14. **aliae item**: understand *agebantur.*

15. **mediocri spatio**: Ablative of Degree of Difference with the comparative notion involved in *supra pontem.*

16. **essent missae**: representing a future perfect indicative of more direct statement; the subjunctive is due to attraction.

17. **earum rerum**: tree trunks or boats. **neu**: *neu* (*neve*), and not *neque*, is proper here; B. 282, 1, *e*; G. 543, 4; H. 568, 6.

19. **diebus decem quibus**, *etc.*: *within ten days from the time when.* **coepta erat**: the passive form is used because the dependent infinitive is in the passive; B. 133, 1; A. 205, *a*; G. 423, N. 3; H. 299, 1.

21. **ad utramque partem**: *i.e.* at each end.

22. **Sugambrorum**: these dwelt to the northeast of the point where Caesar constructed his bridge.

23. **quibus**: governed by *respondet.*

26. **hortantibus eis quos**: *at the suggestion of those whom.*

27. **ex Tencteris**, *etc.*: their own experience with Caesar had naturally impressed them with a terror of the Roman name.

28. **in solitudinem ac silvas**: the accusative rather than the ablative is used, in consequence of the idea of motion involved in *abdiderant.*

Page 91. 1. **eorum**: *i.e.* of the Sugambri.

4. **si premerentur**: subordinate clause of indirect discourse, representing a future indicative of direct statement.

7. **uti demigrarent, deponerent, convenirent**: Substantive Clauses Developed from the Volitive, dependent upon the idea of urging involved in *nuntios dimisisse* (*let them move away, place, assemble*).

9. **hunc . . . medium**: *that this place which had been chosen was the centre; medium* is in predicate agreement with *hunc;* literally, *this had been chosen the centre.*

11. **hic, ibi**: both refer to the same place.

12. **decertare**: as regularly, of a decisive engagement.

13. **rebus**: *business, purposes.*

15. **ut iniceret**, *etc.*: substantive clauses in apposition with *rebus.*

16. **obsidione**: *i.e.* from the oppression of the Suebi.

18. **profectum (esse)**: here from *proficio*, not *proficiscor.*

20. **exigua parte reliqua**: Ablative Absolute.

21. **ad septentriones vergit**: *i.e.* is situated toward the north as compared with Italy.

23. **bellis**: Ablative of Time.

24. **sumministrata auxilia**: it is not probable that any large number of British troops had assisted the Gauls in their struggles against Caesar.

26. **arbitrabatur**: this also depends upon *quod.* **si adisset**, *etc.*: the *si* clauses are the logical subjects of *fore.*

Page 92. 2. **neque enim**: *nor indeed;* see note on p. 50, line 5. **temere** = *facile;* so frequently with a negative.

3. **illo adit**: *lands there; illo* is the adverb. **eis ipsis**: the traders.

5. **Gallias**: the plural, to call attention to the different divisions of Gaul.

6. **quanta esset**: this and the following indirect questions depend upon *reperire.*

11. **priusquam periculum faceret**: *before he made the trial;* for the subjunctive, see B. 292, 1, *a*; A. 551, *b*; G. 577; H. 605, II.

12. **idoneum arbitratus**: Caesar thought him competent; the sequel showed that he was not.

13. **praemittit**: as object understand *eum.* **ut revertatur**: Substantive Clause Developed from the Volitive (*let him return*).

15. **inde**: *from there;* namely, the territory of the Morini; *i.e.* the vicinity of the modern Calais or Boulogne.

16. **in Britanniam**: for the prepositional phrase with adjective force, see note on p. 3, line 8.

17. **quam classem**: for the incorporation of the antecedent with the relative, see B. 251, 4, *a*; A. 307, *b*; G. 616, 1; H. 399, 3.

21. **dare**: equivalent to *se daturos esse,* which would be the regular construction with *polliceor.*

22. **imperio**: dative with *obtemperare.*

25. **Atrebatibus superatis**: in the fight with the Nervii at the river Sabis, two years previously. **ibi**: *i.e.* among the Atrebates.

28. **magni habebatur**: *was highly valued;* B. 203, 3; A. 417; G. 380; H. 448, 1.

29. **possit**: Subjunctive by Attraction. **adeat, horteturque**: for the substantive clause without *ut,* see B. 295, 8; A. 565, *a*; G. 546, R. 2; H. 562, 1, N. **ut fidem sequantur**: *to seek the protection;* the clause depends upon *hortetur.*

30. **seque**: *se* refers to Caesar, the subject of the main clause.

Page 93. 1. **quantum ei facultatis**, *etc.*: *so far as opportunity was afforded to a man who did not venture;* a reflection on Volusenus's courage; *facultatis* is Genitive of the Whole with *quantum; ei* is used indefinitely; *qui auderet* is a Clause of Characteristic.

7. **de superioris temporis consilio**: referring to their conduct of the previous summer, as related in chapters 28 and 29 of Book III.

8. **homines barbari et imperiti**: *being barbarous men and ignorant of our practice;* by *nostrae consuetudinis* Caesar apparently means

the Roman practice of treating as friends all who submitted to the Roman people.

13. **neque has**, *etc.: and because he did not think that concern with these trivial matters, etc.; has*, which grammatically limits *occupationes*, belongs logically with *rerum;* this figure is called Hy-pál-la-ge.

14. **Britanniae**: *i.e.* the invasion of Britain.

15. **eis imperat**: *levied upon them.*

18. **duas legiones**: the seventh and the tenth. **quod . . . habebat**: *all the ships of war he had besides.*

19. **praefectis**: commanders of allied troops.

20. **huc accedebant**: *in addition to this there were;* literally, *to this were added.*

21. **a milibus**, *etc.: eight miles away.* **tenebantur**: in the double sense of *delayed* (by the wind) and *prevented* (from coming).

22. **quominus possent**: B. 295, 3; A. 558, *b*; G. 549; H. 568, 8. *venire possent* is redundant for *venirent.* **in eundem portum**: *i.e.* the same harbor to which Caesar himself came.

24. **in Menapios**: limiting *ducendum.*

27. **eo . . . quod** = *tanto . . . quantum,* — *as great as.*

Page 94. 2. **tempestatem**: *weather*, the original meaning of the word. **tertia fere vigilia**: shortly after midnight. **naves solvit**: *set sail.*

3. **ulteriorem portum**: eight miles to the east of the harbor from which Caesar himself sailed.

4. **cum paulo tardius**, *etc.: action being taken somewhat slowly;* the *cum*-clause here is purely circumstantial and has no temporal force; owing to head winds the cavalry were delayed for three days after Caesar's departure.

6. **Britanniam attigit**: the following description shows that Caesar must have landed near Dover.

8. **haec**: *such.* **montibus**: *cliffs.*

11. **dum convenirent**: *for the rest of the ships to come;* B. 293, III, 2; A. 553; G. 572; H. 603, II, 2. **ad horam nonam**: about the middle of the afternoon.

13. **et . . . et**: correlatives.

14. **monuitque**, *etc.: and admonished them that all things be done by them at the command and promptly, precisely as the principle of military service and particularly naval manœuvres demand, since the latter involve sudden and unsteady motion; administrarentur* is a substantive clause without *ut* used as the object of ***monuit; ut postula-***

rent is a clause of comparison attracted into the subjunctive; *ut quae haberent* is a Clause of Characteristic with the accessory notion of cause, the antecedent of *quae* being *res;* B. 283, 3, *a*; A. 535, *e*; G. 633; H. 592.

19. **secundum**: *favorable.*

20. **ab eo loco**: *i.e.* from the vicinity of Dover.

21. **aperto ac plano litore**: probably near Deal. For the Ablative of Place without *in*, see B. 228, *b*; A. 429, 2; G. 385, N. 1; H. 485, 2.

23. **quo genere**: *classes of warriors which;* referring to both horsemen and charioteers.

24. **reliquis copiis**: Ablative of Accompaniment without *cum.*

25. **egredi**: *from disembarking.*

26. **difficultas**: *embarrassment.* **in alto**: *in deep water.*

27. **militibus**: Dative of Agent with *desiliendum* (*erat*), *etc.*

29. **et . . . et . . . et**: the Polysyndeton (B. 341, 4, *b*) lends emphasis.

Page 95. 1. **cum**: *while*, with a suggestion of *although;* hence the subjunctives, *conicerent*, *incitarent.* **illi**: the Britons.

9. **ad usum expeditior**: *more convenient to handle.*

11. **ad latus apertum**: *on the exposed* (right) *flank;* see note on p. 53, line 19.

12. **inde**: *i.e.* from the ships of war. **tormentis**: such as catapults and ballistae; see Introd. § 48.

17. **qui . . . ferebat**: *i.e.* the standard-bearer of the tenth legion; the antecedent of *qui* is *is* understood. the subject of *inquit.*

18. **obtestatus deos**, *etc.: praying the Gods that the enterprise result, etc.; ut eveniret* is a Substantive Clause Developed from the Optative, used as one of the objects of *obtestatus;* B. 296, 1; A. 563, *b*; G. 546; H. 565.

20. **certe**: to be joined closely with *ego*, — *I at any rate, I at least.* no matter what the others do.

21. **praestitero**: the future perfect is not infrequently used in Latin in place of a stronger future, — *shall surely* or *straightway perform.* **cum**: the conjunction, not the preposition.

23. **inter se**: *each other;* for the omission of the direct object with *cohortati*, see B. 245, 1, *a.* **ne admitteretur**: Substantive Clause Developed from the Volitive (*let not so great a shame be perpetrated*); under *tantum dedecus* we are to understand the loss of the standard.

24. **universi**: *i.e. all together, all at once.*

25. **ex proximis navibus**: limiting *ei* understood, the subject of *conspexissent*.

27. **utrisque**: *both sides;* B. 355, 2, *a*, 2).

28. **firmiter insistere**: *secure a solid footing;* for the form *firmiter* (from *firmus*), see B. 77, 4; A. 214, *c*; G. 99, 2.

Page 96. 1. **alius alia ex navi**: *one from one vessel, another from another.*

3. **ubi conspexerant**: *whenever they saw* (*had seen*); for the pluperfect indicative of recurring action, see B. 287, 2.

4. **singulares**: *in small bodies.*

10. **simul**: for *simul ac*, — *as soon as.*

12. **neque potuerunt**: *but they could not; neque* here has adversative force.

13. **insulam capere**: *reach* or *make the island.*

14. **fortunam**: Caesar's good fortune had been unvarying in the past, and he had evidently come to depend upon it as something certain.

18. **quaeque** = *et quae;* the antecedent of *quae* is *ea* understood, the object of *facturos.*

21. **oratoris modo**: *in the character of envoy.*

24. **ejus rei**: the seizure of Commius.

25. **ut ignosceretur**: *that they be pardoned;* literally, *that it be pardoned* (*to them*). Note that verbs governing the dative in the active are used in the passive only impersonally.

27. **cum petissent**: *though they had sought.* **in continentem**: *i.e.* to Gaul.

28. **bellum sine causa intulissent**: hardly without cause to the minds of the Britons, who probably interpreted Caesar's coming as a hostile invasion; for the subjunctive, see B. 286, 1; A. 540; G. 541; H. 588, I, II.

29. **ignoscere**: as subject understand *se.*

Page 97. 3. **post diem quartum**, *etc.: the fourth day after he had arrived;* according to our reckoning this was the third day after. See the note on p. 84, line 18.

6. **superiore portu**: the same as the *ulterior portus* of chapter 22. **leni vento**: *with a gentle breeze;* Ablative of Attendant Circumstance. **solverunt**: *set sail.*

12. **quae cum complerentur**: *when they began to fill.* **tamen**: limiting *ancoris jactis; i.e.* in their desire to be near Caesar, they cast anchor in spite of the storm.

13. adversa nocte: *in the face of the night* or *the darkness.*

15. eadem nocte accidit: it has been reckoned that this full moon occurred on the night of August 30. **qui dies**: namely, the day of full moon.

16. aestus maximos: the tides in this part of the English Channel are particularly high, rising sometimes as much as twenty or even twenty-five feet; the average full moon tide at most points on our Atlantic Coast is under ten feet. In the Mediterranean, the only waters with which the Romans were familiar, the rise of the tide is scarcely perceptible.

18. exercitum curaverat: B. 337, 8, *b*, 2; A. 500, 4; G. 430; H. 622.

21. administrandi: *of handling them* (the ships).

24. quod . . . accidere: *as was inevitable; quod* is the subject of *accidere*, which in turn is the subject of *necesse erat.* For the phrase *id quod*, where *id* stands in apposition with the entire clause, see B. 247, 1, *b*; A. 307, *d*, N.; G. 614, R., 2; H. 399, 6.

26. quibus possent: Clause of Characteristic.

Page 98. 1. in hiemem: *for the winter.*

3. principes: subject of *duxerunt* in line 9.

8. optimum factu duxerunt: *considered it was best;* literally, *it was best to do;* for *factu*, which is here redundant, see B. 340, 2; A. 510, N. 1; G. 436; H. 635.

9. rebellione facta: *resuming hostilities.*

10. rem: *the struggle, operations.*

11. his superatis, *etc.*: the Ablatives Absolute are equivalent to conditional clauses, — *if these were conquered, etc.*

13. rursus: not in the sense of a second time, but merely to denote the change from peace to war. **ex castris discedere**: hitherto they had frequented the Roman camp; now they manifest their disaffection by gradually withdrawing.

14. suos . . . deducere: *i.e.* to muster their partisans, gathering them from the farms to central points.

16. ex eo quod: *from the circumstance that.*

17. dare: object of *intermiserant;* B. 328, 1; A. 457; G. 423; H. 609, 1. **suspicabatur**: *i.e. was beginning to suspect.*

19. quae naves: incorporation of the antecedent in the relative clause; we may translate as though the Latin read *earum navium*, — *the timber of those ships which.*

21. ad eas res: *for those purposes*, namely, the repair of the ships.

23. **administraretur**: *the work was carried on;* literally, *it was done.*

24. **reliquis ut . . . effecit**: *made it possible to sail with the others fairly well;* literally, *brought about that it could be sailed.*

26. **frumentatum**: the supine denoting purpose. **neque ulla**: *and no;* the Latin avoids *et nullus.*

27. **cum remaneret, ventitaret**: *some of the men remaining, others continuing to come;* circumstantial *cum*-clauses without temporal force.

Page 99. 1. **hominum**: the Britons. **ventitaret**: notice the force of the frequentative.

2. **in statione**: *on guard.*

3. **quam consuetudo ferret**: *than was usual.*

5. **id quod erat**: *the truth; id* is further explained by *aliquid initum (esse).*

6. **cohortes quae . . . erant**: there were presumably four of these, one at each of the four gates of the camp.

7. **reliquis**: four in number; four had set out with Caesar, two were left on guard; there were ten cohorts in all.

8. **armari**: *to arm themselves;* for the passive with reflexive force, see B. 256, 1; A. 156, *a*; G. 218; H. 517.

10. **paulo longius**: *some little distance.*

11. **aegre sustinere**: *were scarcely holding their ground.*

13. **partibus**: *tracts.*

14. **huc**: namely, to the remaining tract.

15. **dispersos, occupatos**: these limit *eos* understood, the object of *adorti.* **depositis armis**: *with their arms stacked.*

17. **incertis ordinibus**: *with their ranks in confusion.*

19. **ex essedis pugnae**: for the prepositional phrase limiting a noun, see note on p. 3, line 8.

21. **terrore equorum**: *equorum* is Subjective Genitive, *i.e.* the terror which the horses cause. **ordines**: *i.e.* the ranks of the foe.

22. **equitum turmas**: referring to the enemy.

25. **premantur**: Subjunctive by Attraction.

30. **brevi**: in a temporal sense, *speedily;* Ablative of Time within which.

Page 100. 1. **jugo**: *i.e.* the yoke connecting the two horses of the team.

3. **quibus rebus, novitate**: *rebus* is Ablative of Means; *novitate*, of Cause. **nostris**: Dative of Indirect Object of *tulit.*

6. **quo facto**: *though this was accomplished*, namely, the temporary checking of the enemy and the recovery of our troops from fright.

8. **suo loco**: *in a favorable place.*

10. **qui . . . reliqui**: the reference is to the Britons; the antecedent of *qui* is *ei* understood, the subject of *discesserunt.*

11. **quae continerent**: Clause of Characteristic.

16. **sui liberandi**: for the singular of the gerundive, see B. 339, 5; A. 504, *c*; G. 428, R. 1; H. 626, 3.

21. **ut effugerent**: explanatory of *idem.*

26. **ac** = *sed*, as not infrequently.

27. **tanto spatio quantum**: *as long a distance as;* the ablative is sometimes used, as here, instead of the accusative to denote extent of space. **cursu et viribus**, *etc.*: *i.e.* as far as they were strong enough to run.

Page 101. 2. **his**: Dative of Reference.

4. **propinqua die aequinocti**: *in view of the nearness of the equinox* (about September 20th), the time of the autumn gales; *propinqua die* is Ablative Absolute denoting cause. Caesar apparently stayed in Britain about three weeks.

5. **hiemi navigationem**, *etc.*: *did not think the voyage ought to be exposed to storms.*

9. **capere**: *reach.* **paulo infra**: *i.e.* further to the south.

11. **quibus ex navibus**: this refers to the two transports mentioned at the conclusion of the preceding chapter.

12. **in castra**: *i.e.* the camp of Rufus mentioned at the close of chapter 22.

14. **primo**: correlative with *postea* below, in line 22. **non ita magno**: *not so very large.*

15. **circumsteterunt**: as object understand *eos*, referring to the Romans. **sese interfici nollent**: for the passive infinitive with subject accusative dependent upon *nolle*, see B. 331, IV, *a*; *si nollent* is a subordinate clause in indirect discourse.

16. **ponere**: in the sense of *deponere*, *lay down.* **orbe facto**: *forming a* (hollow) *circle*, so as to present a front to the enemy on all sides.

17. **ad clamorem**: *at their shouting.*

22. **postea . . . quam** = *postquam.*

Page 102. 1. **rebellionem**: here in the sense of *rebellion*, for the Morini had already submitted to the Romans; see chapter 22. **sicci-**

tates: note the plural, which is used because several swamps are referred to.

2. **quo reciperent**: *etc.: had no place to which to retreat;* Relative Clause of Purpose. **quo perfugio**: *a refuge of which they had availed themselves the previous year; quo perfugio* refers to *paludum.*

3. **fuerant usi** = *usi erant.*

7. **quod abdiderant**: to be joined in thought with *se receperunt.*

12. **dierum viginti supplicatio**: exceeding by five days the thanksgiving mentioned at the close of Book II., which was the longest public thanksgiving hitherto decreed. See note on p. 60, line 11. The length of the present thanksgiving was probably determined by the fact that the Roman arms had penetrated into unknown lands, thus giving hopes of new conquests, — hopes that were ultimately realized, though not by Caesar himself.

VOCABULARY.

Regular verbs of the first conjugation are indicated by the numeral 1 following the present indicative. — Roots are in small capitals.

A. = *Aulus*, a Roman first name or *praenomen*.

ā, ab, abs, prep. with abl., *from, away from; at, on;* with passive verbs, *by;* of time, *from, since, after.* Before words beginning with a consonant, either **ā** or **ab** may be used; before words beginning with a vowel or *h*, **ab** only is permissible.

ā, ab, adv., *away, off.*

abditus, a, um, [partic. of **abdō**], adj., *concealed, remote.*

abdō, dere, didī, ditus, [ab + dō, *put*], *put away; hide, conceal.*

abdūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, [ab + dūcō], *lead away, carry off.*

abeō, īre, iī, itūrus, *go away.*

abesse, see **absum**.

abiciō, icere, jēcī, jectus, [ab + jaciō], *throw away, throw down.*

abiēs, ietis, f., *spruce, fir.*

abjungō, ere, jūnxī, jūnctus, [ab + jungō], *unyoke, detach.*

abscīdō, cīdere, cīdī, cīsus, [abs + caedō], *cut off, tear away.*

absēns, [partic. of **absum**], adj., *absent.*

absimilis, e, [ab + similis], adj., *unlike.*

absistō, ere, stitī, [ab + sistō], *withdraw, go away; desist.*

abstineō, tinēre, tinuī, tentus, [abs + teneō], *hold back; abstain from, refrain from; spare.*

abstrahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctus, [abs + trahō], *drag away, drag off.*

absum, esse, āfuī, āfutūrus, [ab + sum], *be distant, be absent* or *away from.*

abundō, [ab + undō, from **unda**, *wave*], 1, *overflow; abound in, be supplied with.*

ac, see **atque**.

accēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, [ad + cēdō], *come to, draw near, approach; be added.*

accelerō, [ad + celerō, from **celer**], 1, *hasten.*

acceptus, a, um, [perf. pass. partic. of **accipiō**], adj., *acceptable, beloved, popular.*

accidō, cidere, cidī, [ad + cadō], *happen, occur; fall, befall, fall to the lot of.* **accidit**, *it happens.*

accīdō, cīdere, cīdī, cīsus, [ad + caedō], *cut into.*

accipiō, cipere, cēpī, ceptus, [ad + capiō], *take to oneself, receive, accept; incur, suffer; learn.*

acclīvis, e, [ad, cf. **clīvus**], adj., *sloping up, rising, sloping.*

acclīvitās, tātis, [acclīvis], f., *rising slope, ascent.*

Accō, ōnis, m., a leader of the Senones.

accommodātus, a, um, [partic. of **accommodō**], adj., *suited, fitted, adapted.*

accommodō, [ad + commodō, from **commodus**, *convenient*], 1, *adjust, put on.*

accūrātē, [accūrātus], adv., *with pains, carefully.*

accurrō, currere, cucurrī or currī, cursum, [ad + currō], *run to, rush to, hasten to.*

accūsō, [ad + causa], 1, *accuse.*

acerbē, [acerbus], adv., *harshly; with suffering.*

acerbitās, tātis, [acerbus], f., *bitterness;* pl., *hardships, afflictions.*

acerbus, a, um, [ācer], adj., *bitter, hard.*

ācerrimē, superl. of **ācriter.**

acervus, ī, [AC, *sharp;* hence *pointed pile*], m., *heap, pile.*

aciēs, ēī, [AC, *sharp*], f., *sharp edge; keenness of glance; line of battle; army in line of battle; battle.*

acquīrō, quīrere, quīsīvī, quīsītus, [ad + quaerō], *secure* or *obtain in addition.*

ācriter, [ācer], adv., *sharply, vehemently, eagerly, fiercely.*

āctuārius, a, um, [agō], adj., *easily moved, swift.*

āctus, perf. pass. partic. of **agō.**

acūtus, a, um, [**acuō**, *sharpen*], adj., *sharpened, sharp; pointed.*

ad, prep. with acc., *to, towards; near, in the vicinity of, at, by, among; till, to, up to; for, for the purpose of; in regard to, according to.*

ad, adv., *about.*

adāctus, perfect pass. partic. of **adigō.**

adaequō, [ad + aequō, from **aequus**], 1, *make equal to, equal, be equal.*

adamō, [ad + amō], 1, *fall in love with, take a fancy to.*

addō, dere, didī, ditus, [ad + dō, *put*], *put to, add, join.*

addūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, [ad + dūcō], *lead to, bring to; haul taut; induce, persuade.*

adēmptus, perf. pass. partic. of **adimō.**

adeō, īre, iī, itus, [ad + eō]. *go to, approach; visit, land; accost; attack.*

adeō, [ad + eō, *to that place*], adv., *to that degree; so, so much, so very.*

adeptus, perf. pass. partic. of **adipīscor.**

adequitō, [ad + equitō, from **eques**], 1, *ride towards; ride up to.*

adhaerēscō, haerēscere, haesī, [ad + haerēscō], *cling to.*

adhibeō, hibēre, hibuī, hibitus, [ad + habeō], *hold toward; summon, admit; apply, use, employ.*

adhortor, [ad + hortor], 1, *encourage, urge, exhort.*

adhūc, [ad + hūc], adv., *hitherto, as yet, till now.*

Adiatunnus, ī, m., a chief of the Sotiates.

adiciō, icere, jēcī, jectus, [ad + jaciō], *throw to, cast; put to, add to; put* or *place near.*

adigō, igere, ēgī, āctus, [ad + agō], *drive, hurl, drive in, move forward; bind.*

adimō, imere, ēmī, ēmptus, [ad + emō], *take to oneself, take away, remove.*

adipīscor, ipīscī, eptus, [ad + apīscor, *attain*], *obtain, win.*

aditus, ūs, [adeō], m., *a going to, approach, access; means of access.*

adjaceō, jacēre, jacuī, ——, [ad + jaceō], *lie near, border upon, be adjacent.*

adjūdicō, [ad + jūdicō], 1, *award, assign, adjudge.*

adjungō, jungere, jūnxī, jūnctus, [ad + jungō], *join to, unite with; add, annex.*

adjūtor, ōris, [adjuvō], m., *helper, assistant.*

adjuvō, juvāre, jūvī, adjūtus, [ad + juvō], *help, aid, assist, support.*

Admagetobriga, ae, f., a town in Gaul.

admātūrō, [ad + mātūrō, from mātūrus], 1, *hasten.*

administer, trī, [ad + minister], m., *assistant.*

administrō, [ad + ministrō], 1, *care for, attend to, manage, handle, conduct; execute.*

admīror, [ad + mīror], 1, *wonder at, be surprised at; admire.*

admittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, [ad + mittō], *let go, let loose; admit, commit, incur.*

admodum, [ad + acc. of modus], adv., lit. *up to the measure, to a degree; quite, very; entirely, fully.*

admoneō, ēre, uī, itus, [ad + moneō], *remind, warn, admonish.*

adolēscō, olēscere, olēvī, ultus, [ad + olēscō, *grow*], *grow up.*

adorior, orīrī, ortus, [ad + orior], *fall upon, attack.*

adortus, perf. pass. partic. of adorior.

adsum, esse, adfuī, [ad + sum], *be at hand, be present, be near; appear, assist, help.*

Aduatuca, ae, f., a fortress in the territory of the Eburones.

Aduatucī, ōrum, m., a Belgian tribe.

adulēscēns, entis, [adolēscō], as adj., *young;* as noun, m., *young man, youth.*

adulēscentia, ae, [adulēscēns], f., *youth.*

adulēscentulus, ī, [dim. of adulēscēns], m., *very young man, stripling.*

adventus, ūs, [adveniō], m., *approach, arrival.*

adversārius, a, um, [adversor], *turned toward* or *against, opposed, hostile;* as noun, **adversārius**, ī, m., *opponent, enemy.*

adversus, a, um, [perf. pass. partic. of advertō], *turned toward, in front of, facing, face to face, opposite; unfavorable.*

adversus, prep. with acc., *opposite to; against.*

advertō, tere, tī, sus, [ad + vertō], *turn to* or *toward.* **animum advertō**, *notice.*

advocō, [ad + vocō], 1, *call.*

advolō, [ad + volō, *fly*], 1, *fly to; hasten to, rush upon.*

aedificium, ī, [aedificō], n., *building.*

aedificō, [aedēs, *building*, + FAC, *make*], 1, *build.*

aeger, gra, grum, *sick; feeble.*

aegerrimē, superl. of **aegrē**.

aegrē, [aeger], adv., *with difficulty, barely, scarcely, hardly.*

Aemilius, ī, m., *Lucius Aemilius*, a decurion commanding Gallic cavalry under Caesar.

aequāliter, [aequālis, *equal*], adv., *evenly.*

aequinoctium, ī, [aequus + nox], n., *equinox.*

aequitās, tātis, [aequus], f., *evenness; fairness, justice.* **animī aequitās**, *evenness of spirit, composure.*

aequō, [aequus], 1, *make equal with.*

aequus, a, um, adj., *level; fair, just, equal; undecided, indecisive; favorable.* With **animus**, *composed, equable.*

aerāria, ae, [aerārius, *of copper*], f., *copper mine.*

aes, aeris, n., *copper; bronze, money.* **aes aliēnum**, (*another's money*), *debt.*

aestās, tātis, f., *summer.*

aestimātiō, ōnis, [aestimō], f., *valuation.*

aestimō, [aes], 1, *rate, value, estimate; regard, reckon.*

aestīvus, a, um, [aestās], adj., *of summer.*

aestuārium, ī, [aestus], n., *estuary, marsh.*

aestus, ūs, m., *heat; tide.*

aetās, tātis, [= **aevitās**, from **aevum**, *age*], f., *age, time of life; old age.*

aeternus, a, um, [= **aeviternus**, from **aevum**, *age*], adj., *everlasting, perpetual, lasting.*

afferō, ferre, attulī, allātus, [ad + ferō], *bring to, bring, carry; bring forward, allege, announce; occasion, cause.*

afficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectus, [ad + faciō], *do something to, treat; affect, visit with, afflict; fill with, involve in.*

affīgō, fīgere, fīxī, fīxus, [ad + fīgō], *fasten to.*

affingō, fingere, fīnxī, fictus, [ad + fingō], *invent in addition.*

affīnitās, tātis, [affīnis, *relative by marriage*], f., *relationship by marriage.*

affīrmātiō, ōnis, [affīrmō, *assert*], f., *assurance.*

affīxus, perf. pass. partic. of **affīgō**.

afflictō, [afflīgō], 1, *shatter; wreck.*

afflīgō, flīgere, flīxī, flictus, [ad + flīgō, *strike*], *dash against; throw down; damage.*

affore, fut. infin. of **adsum**.

Āfricus, a, um, [Āfrica], adj., *of Africa, African.* As noun, **Āfricus**, ī, m., (*i.e.* **ventus**), the *southwest wind*, which blew from Africa towards Italy.

āfuisse, āfuturus, see **absum**.

Agēdincum, ī, n., chief city of the Senones; the modern *Sens.*

ager, agrī, m., *land, field, territory, district; country.*

agger, geris, [ad + gerō], m., originally, *what is brought to a place;* hence, *earth, timber, materials* for a mound or wall; *earth wall, mound, rampart, dike, embankment;* especially, *siege-terrace.*

aggredior, gredī, gressus, [ad + gradior, *walk, go*], *advance upon, approach; attack.*

aggregō, [ad + gregō; **grex**, *herd*], 1, *collect* in a flock or herd; *join, attach.*

agitō, [agō], 1, *set in motion, set going; discuss, consider.*

agmen, minis, [agō], n., *army on the march, column; march, line of march.* **novissimum agmen**, *the rear.* **prīmum agmen**, *the van.*

agō, agere, ēgī, āctus, *drive, move forward; pursue; drive away; do, act; manage, conduct, hold; discuss, treat, parley, negotiate.*

arrange. **conventūs agere**, *to hold court.* **grātiās agere**, *to render thanks, to thank.*

alacer, cris, cre, adj., *lively, eager, resolute.*

alacritās, tātis, [alacer], f., *liveliness; eagerness.*

ālārius, a, um, [āla, *wing*], adj., *of the wing.* As noun, **alāriī**, ōrum, m., pl., *auxiliary troops*, since the auxiliaries were stationed on the wings of the army.

albus, a, um, adj., *white.* **plumbum album**, *tin.*

alcēs, is, f., *elk.*

Alesia, ae, f., a city of the Mandubii; the modern *Alise-Sainte-Reine.*

aliās, [alius], adv., *at another time.* **aliās . . . aliās**, *at one time . . . at another, now . . . now, sometimes . . . sometimes.*

aliēnō, [aliēnus], 1, *alienate, estrange; craze, make crazy.*

aliēnus, a, um, [alius], adj., *belonging to* or *of another, another's, of others; strange; unfavorable; inappropriate.*

aliō, [alius], adv., *elsewhere, to another place.*

aliquamdiu, [aliquam + diū], adv., *for some time, for quite a while.*

aliquandō, [ali- + quandō], adv., *sometime; finally.*

aliquantus, a um, [ali- + quantus], adj., *some, considerable.* As noun, **aliquantum**, *somewhat, a good deal.* **aliquantō**, abl. of degree of difference, *somewhat, considerably.*

aliquī, aliqua, aliquod, [ali- + quī], indef. adj. pron., *some, any.*

aliquis, aliqua, aliquid, [ali- + quis], indef. pron., *some one, any one, anybody;* pl., *some, any.* Neut., **aliquid**, *something, anything.*

aliquot, [ali- + quot], indecl. adj., *several, some.*

aliter, [alius], adv., *otherwise, differently.* **aliter ac**, *otherwise than.*

alius, a, ud, adj., *another, some other, other, different, else.* **alius . . . alius**, *one . . . another, the one . . . the other;* pl., **aliī . . . aliī**, *some . . . other.*

allātus, perf. pass. partic. of **afferō**.

alliciō, licere, lexī, lectus, [ad + laciō, *entice*], *lure, attract.*

Allobrogēs, um, m., a Gallic tribe living in the northeastern part of "the Province."

alō, alere, aluī, altus or alitus, *nourish, increase; maintain, keep, raise, support; keep up; foster, cherish.*

Alpēs, ium, f., *Alps.*

alter, era, erum, adj., *one of two, the other, another; second.* **alter . . . alter**, *the one . . . the other.* **alterī . . . alterī**, *the one party . . . the other.*

alternus, a, um, [alter], adj., *alternate.*

altitūdō, inis, [altus], f., *height; depth; thickness.*

altus, a, um, [partic. of alō], adj., *high; deep.* As noun, **altum**, ī, n., *the deep, the deep sea.*

alūta, ae, f., *soft leather.*

ambactus, ī, m., *vassal, retainer.*

Ambarrī, ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe living on the Arar (Saône); kinsmen of the Haedui.

Ambiānī, ōrum, m., a Belgian tribe.

Ambibariī, ōrum, m., a tribe of northwestern Gaul.

Ambiliatī, ōrum, m., a tribe dwelling near the mouth of the Loire.

Ambiorīx, īgis, m., a chieftain of the Eburones.

Ambivaretī, ōrum, m., a tribe on the upper Loire, dependents of the Haedui.

Ambivaritī, ōrum, m., a Belgian tribe dwelling on the Meuse.

ambō, ae, ō, adj., *both.*

āmentia, ae, [āmēns, from ā + mēns], f., *madness, folly.*

āmentum, ī, n., *thong, strap for hurling javelins.*

amfrāctus, ūs, [ambi + frangō], m., *bend in the road.*

amīcitia, ae, [amīcus], f., *friendship.*

amīcus, a, um, [amō], adj., *friendly, devoted.*

amīcus, ī, [amō], m., *friend, ally.*

āmittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, [ā + mittō], *let go; lose.*

amor, ōris, [amō], m., *love, affection.*

amplē, [amplus], adv., *largely, fully.* Comparative **amplius**, *more, further.*

amplificō, [amplus + faciō], 1, *increase.*

amplitūdō, inis, [amplus], f., *greatness, size, extent; dignity, importance.*

amplus, a, um, adj., *large, extensive; important, distinguished, splendid, noble.* As noun, **amplius**, n., *more.*

an, interrog. conj., introducing second member of a double question, *or.* **-ne . . . an**, or **utrum . . . an**, (*whether*) . . . *or.*

Anartēs, ium, m., a Dacian tribe.

Ancalitēs, um, m., a British tribe.

anceps, cipitis, [ambō + caput], adj., *two-headed, double, two-fold.*

ancora, ae, f., *anchor.*

Andecumborius, ī, m., a chieftain of the Remi.

Andēs, ium, or **Andī**, ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe dwelling to the north of the Loire.

angulus, ī, m., *angle, corner.*

angustē, [angustus], adv., *closely, compactly; meagrely, scantily.*

angustiae, ārum, [angustus], f., *narrowness; narrow place, narrow pass, narrow way; straits, difficulties.*

angustus, a, um, [angō, *squeeze, cramp*], adj., *cramped, contracted, narrow, small, close.*

anima, ae, f., *breath; soul.*

animadvertō, tere, tī, sus, [animus + advertō], *turn the mind to, attend to; punish; notice.*

animal, ālis, [anima], n., *living being, animal.*

animus, ī, m., *soul, spirit; mind; purpose, disposition, feelings, heart; courage, spirit, temper, mood; consciousness.*

annōtinus, a, um, [annus], adj., *of the year before.*

annus, ī, m., *year.*

annuus, a, um, [annus], adj., *of a year, for a year, annual.*

ānser, eris, m., *goose.*,

ante, adv. and prep.: 1) As adv., *before, previously.* 2) As prep. with acc., *before, in front of.*

anteā, [ante + eā], adv., *previously, before, formerly.*

antecēdō, cēdere, cessī, [ante + cēdo], *go before, go in advance, exceed, surpass, excel, be superior.*

antecursor, ōris, [antecurrō], m., *one who runs on ahead;* pl., *advance guard.*

anteferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, [ante + ferō], *place before, prefer.*

antemna, ae, f., [**ante**, *opposite* + AP- *fasten; fastened at opposite ends*], *sail-yard.*

antepōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, [ante + pōnō], *place before; prefer.*

antequam, [ante + quam], *before.* Sometimes written separately, **ante . . . quam.**

antevertō, tere, tī, [ante + verto], *place before; prefer.*

antīquitus, [antīquus], adv., *in former times, long ago, anciently; from time immemorial.*

antīquus, a, um, [ante], adj., *ancient, early, old, former.*

Antistius, ī, m., *Gaius Antistius Reginus*, a lieutenant of Caesar.

Antōnius, ī, m.: 1) *Marcus Antonius, Mark Antony*, a lieutenant and devoted friend of Caesar. 2) *C. Antonius*, a brother of Marcus, and also a lieutenant of Caesar.

aperiō, perīre, peruī, pertus, *open.*

apertē, [apertus], adv., *openly.*

apertus, a, um, adj., *open, uncovered; unprotected, exposed.*

Apollō, inis, m., a Greek and Roman divinity identified by Caesar with the Gallic god of healing.

apparō, [ad + parō], 1, *prepare, make ready, get ready.*

appellō, pellere, pulī, pulsus, [ad + pellō], *drive to, bring up, bring to land;* passive, *land.*

appellō, 1, *address, name, accost, call; appeal to.*

appetō, petere, petīvī or petiī, petītus, [ad + petō], *seek, strive after; draw near.*

Appius, ī, m., a Roman first name.

applicō, plicāre, plicāvī or plicuī, plicātus, [ad + plicō, *fold*], *fasten to;* with sē, *lean against.*

apportō, [ad + portō], 1, *bring.*

approbō, [ad + probō], 1, *approve.*

appropinquō, [ad + propinquō], 1, *approach, come near, draw near.*

appulsus, perf. pass. partic. of **appellō.**

Aprīlis, e, [aperiō], adj., *of April.*

aptus, a, um, [AP-, *fasten*], adj., *fitted, suited, suitable, adapted.*

apud, prep. with acc., *at, with, near, by; among, in the presence of.*

aqua, ae, f., *water.*

aquātiō, ōnis, [aquor, *get water*], f., *getting water.*

aquila, ae, f., *eagle; standard, ensign.*

Aquilēia, ae, f., a city at the head of the Adriatic Sea.

aquilifer, erī, [aquila + ferō], m., *bearer of the eagle, standard-bearer.*

Aquītānia, ae, f., *Aquitania*, one of the three general divisions of Gaul.

Aquītānus, a, um, adj., *of Aquitania.* As noun, Aquītānus, ī, m., *Aquitanian;* pl., *Aquitanians, Aquitani.*

Arar, aris, acc. im, abl. ī, m., *Arar* River, the modern *Saône.*

arbiter, trī, m., *umpire, judge.*

arbitrium, ī, [arbiter], n., *decision, choice, option; fancy, whim.*

arbitror, [arbiter], 1, dep., *think, judge, believe, consider.*

arbor, oris, f., *tree.*

arcessō, sere, sīvī, sītus, *cause to come, summon, send for, call in, invite.*

ārdeō, ēre, ārsī, ārsūrus, *be on fire, burn; be eager; be hot, be indignant.*

Arduenna, ae, f., *the Ardennes*, a a forest-covered hill district in northeastern Gaul.

arduus, a, um, adj., *steep, difficult.*

Arecomicī, ōrum, m., a branch of the Volcae, living in "the Province."

Aremoricus, a, um, [Celtic 'by the sea'], adj., *Aremorican*, name applied to the sea-coast states of northwestern Gaul.

argentum, ī, n., *silver; silverware.*

argilla, ae, f., *clay.*

āridus, a, um, [āreō, *be dry*], adj., *dry.* As noun, **āridum**, ī, n., *dry land, shore.*

ariēs, ietis, m., *ram; battering-ram; buttress, shore.*

Ariovistus, ī, m., a German king.

Aristius, ī, m., *Marcus Aristius*, a tribune of soldiers.

arma, ōrum, n., *implements; arms, weapons;* of a ship, *rigging, tackle.*

armāmenta, ōrum, [armō], n., *implements; equipment.*

armātūra, ae, [armō], f., *armor, equipment.*

armātus, a, um, [armō], adj., *armed, equipped.* As noun, **armātī**, ōrum, m., pl., *armed men.*

armō, [arma], 1, *arm; equip.*

Arpinēius, ī, m., *Gaius Arpineius*, a Roman knight.

arripiō, ripere, ripuī, reptus, [ad + rapiō], *seize, snatch.*

arroganter, [arrogāns], adv., *presumptuously, insolently.*

arrogantia, ae, [arrogāns], f., *arrogance, insolence.*

ars, artis, f., *art, science.*

artē, [artus], adv., *closely, tightly, securely.*

articulus, ī, [artus, *joint*], m., *joint.*

artificium, ī, [artifex, *artist*], n., *an art; trick.*

artus, a, um, [arceō, *confine*], adj., *thick, dense.*

Arvernus, a, um, adj., *of the Arverni, Arvernian.* As noun, **Arvernī**, ōrum, m., pl., *Arvernians, the Arverni*, an important tribe of Central Gaul.

arx, arcis, f., *citadel, fortress, stronghold.*

ascendō, scendere, scendī, scēnsum, [ad + scandō, *climb*], *ascend, climb up; scale.*

ascēnsus, ūs, [ascendō], m., *climbing up, ascent; means of ascent, way up.*

ascīscō, ascīscere, ascīvī, ascītus, [ad + scīscō, *decree,*], *admit to, receive.*

aspectus, ūs, [aspiciō, *look at*], m., *appearance, view, sight.*

asper, era, erum, *rough; difficult.*

assiduus, a, um, [ad + SED, *sit*], adj., *continuous, constant.*

assistō, ere, astitī, [ad + sistō], *stand near, appear.*

assuēfaciō, facere, fēcī, factus, [assuētus + faciō], *accustom, train.*

assuēscō, suēscere, suēvī, suētus, [ad + suēscō, *become accustomed*], *become accustomed to.*

at, conj., *but; yet, at least.*

atque, ac, [ad + que], conj., *and, and also;* with comparatives and words of likeness or difference, *as, than.*

Atrebās, ātis, m., *an Atrebatian;* pl., *Atrebatians, the Atrebates,* a Belgian tribe.

Ātrius, ī, m., *Quintus Atrius,* a Roman officer.

attexō, ere, texui, textus, [ad + texō, *weave*], *weave on, join on, add.*

attingō, tingere, tigī, tāctus, [ad + tangō], *touch upon, touch; reach; border upon, adjoin.*

attribuō, uere, uī, ūtus, [ad + tribuō], *assign, allot.*

attulī, see **afferō.**

auctor, ōris, [augeō], m., *originator, author, instigator, counsellor, promoter.*

auctōritās, tātis, [auctor], f., *authority, power, influence, weight; prestige; authoritative example.*

auctus, a, um, (positive not used in prose), [partic. of **augeō**], adj., *increased, advanced.*

audācia, ae, [audāx], f., *boldness, daring.*

audācter, [audāx], adv., *boldly, courageously.*

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, semidep., *dare, venture, risk; undertake.*

audiō, īre, īvī or iī, ītus, *hear, listen to; hear of.* **dictō audiēns,** *obedient.*

audītiō, ōnis, [audiō], f., *hearing, report.*

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctus, *increase, augment; magnify.*

Aulercūs, ī, m., *an Aulercan;* pl., *the Aulerci,* a people of Central Gaul, divided as follows: **Brannovīcēs, Cēnomanī, Diablintēs, Eburovīcēs.**

Aulus, ī, m., a Roman first name.

aureus, a, um, [aurum], adj., *of gold, golden.*

aurīga, ae, [aurea, *bridle,* + agō], m., *charioteer.*

auris, is, f., *ear.*

Aurunculēius, ī, m., *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta,* a lieutenant of Caesar.

Auscī, ōrum, m., an Aquitanian tribe.

ausus, perf. pass. partic. of **audeō.**

aut, conj., *or.* **aut . . . aut,** *either . . . or.*

autem, conj., *on the other hand, but; however, now; moreover.*

autumnus, ī, m., *autumn.*

auxiliāris, e, [auxilium], adj., *auxiliary.* As noun, **auxiliārēs,** ium, m., *auxiliaries.*

auxilior, [auxilium], ī, dep., *help, render help.*

auxilium, ī, [cf. **augeō**], n., *aid, help, assistance; remedy.* Pl., **auxilia,** *auxiliaries, reinforcements.*

Avaricēnsis, e, adj., *of* or *pertaining to Avaricum.*

Avaricum, ī, n., a city of the Bituriges.

avāritia, ae, [avārus, *greedy*], f., *avarice.*

āvehō, vehere, vexī, vectus, [ā + vehō], *carry off.*

āversus, a, um, [āvertō], adj., *turned away; in retreat.*

āvertō, tere, tī, sus, [ā + vertō], *turn away, turn aside, estrange.*

avis, is, f., *bird.*

avus, ī, m., *grandfather.*

Axona, ae, m., a Belgian river, now the *Aisne.*

Bācēnis, is, (silva), f., a forest in Germany.

Baculus, ī, m., *Publius Sextius Baculus*, a centurion.

Baleārēs, ium, m., inhabitants of the Balearic Isles; famous as slingers.

balteus, ī, m., *belt.*

Balventius, ī, m., *Titus Balventius*, a centurion.

barbarus, a, um, adj., *foreign; rude, rough, uncouth, uncivilized, barbarous.* As subst., **barbarī**, ōrum, m., pl., *barbarians, foreigners.*

Basilus, ī, m., *Lucius Minucius Basilus*, one of Caesar's officers.

Batāvī, ōrum, m., pl., *the Batavians*, a people dwelling near the mouth of the Rhine.

Belgae, ārum, m., pl., *the Belgians, Belgae*, inhabitants of one of the three general divisions of Gaul.

Belgium, ī, n., *the country of the Belgae.*

bellicōsus, a, um, [bellicus], adj., *warlike, fond of war.*

bellicus, a, um, [bellum], adj., *of war, military.*

bellō, [bellum], 1, *wage war, fight.*

Bellovacī, ōrum, m., pl., a Belgian tribe.

bellum, ī, [for **dvellum**, from **duo**], n., *war.*

bene, [bonus], adv., *well, successfully.*

beneficium, ī, [bene + faciō], n., *kindness, favor, service.*

benevolentia, ae, [benevolus], f., *good-will, kind feeling.*

Bibracte, is, n., a Gallic town, capital of the Haedui.

Bibrax, actis, f., a town of the Remi.

Bibrocī, ōrum, m., a British tribe.

bīduum, ī, [bis + diēs], n., *two days.*

biennium, ī, [bis + annus], n., *two years.*

Bigerriōnēs, ōnum, m., an Aquitanian tribe.

bīnī, ae, a, [bis], distrib. adj., *two by two, two each.*

bipedālis, e, [bis + pedālis, from pēs], *two feet* thick.

bipertītō, [bis + partītus], adv., *in two divisions.*

bis, [for **dvis**; cf. **duo**], adv., *twice.*

Biturīgēs, um, m., a Gallic tribe dwelling near the Loire.

Boduognātus, ī, m., leader of the Nervii.

Bōjī, ōrum, m., a Celtic nation.

bonitās, tātis, [bonus], f., *goodness, fertility.*

bonus, a, um, *good, excellent, advantageous, useful; well-disposed, friendly.* As noun, **bonum**, n., *advantage, profit;* pl., **bona**, ōrum, *goods, property, possessions.*

bōs, bovis, gen. pl. boum, c., *ox, bull, cow;* pl., *cattle.*

bracchium, ī, n., *arm, forearm.*

Brannovīcēs, um, see **Aulercī**.

Brātuspantium, ī, n., chief town of the Bellovaci.

brevis, e, adj., *short, brief.*

brevitās, tātis, [brevis], f., *shortness; low stature.*

breviter, [brevis], adv., *briefly.*

Britannī, ōrum, m., *Britons.*

Britannia, ae, f., *Britain.*

Britannicus, a, um, adj., *of Britain, British.*

brūma, ae, [for **brevuma** (superl.

of **brevis**), *i.e.* **diēs**], f., *shortest day; winter solstice.*

Brūtus, ī, m., *Decimus Junius Brutus*, lieutenant of Caesar, and one of the conspirators against him.

C, = *centum, one hundred.*

C. = *Gāius.*

Cabillōnum, ī, n., a city of the Haedui.

Cabūrus, ī, m., *Gaius Valerius Caburus*, a Gaul who had received Roman citizenship.

cacūmen, ĭnis, n., *top, point.*

cadāver, eris, [cadō], n., *corpse.*

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsūrus, *fall; fall dead, be slain.*

Cadūrcī, ōrum, m., pl., an Aquitanian tribe.

caedēs, is, [caedō], f., *killing, slaughter, murder.*

caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesus, *cut, cut down.*

caelestis, e, [caelum], adj., *heavenly.* As noun, **caelestēs**, ium, m., *heavenly beings, gods.*

caerimōnia, ae, f., *rite.*

Caerōsī, ōrum, m., pl., a Belgian tribe.

caeruleus, a, um, [for **caeluleus**, from **caelum**], adj., *dark blue.*

Caesar, aris, m. : 1) *Gaius Julius Caesar*, author of the *Gallic War.* 2) *Lucius Julius Caesar*, a kinsman of (1).

caespes, itis, [caedō], m., *sod, turf.*

calamitās, tātis, f., *disaster; misfortune, defeat.*

Caletī, ōrum, also **Caletēs**, um, m., a Gallic tribe living near the mouth of the Seine.

callidus, a, um, [calleō, *be skilful*], adj , *skilful; shrewd, clever.*

cālō, ōnis, m., *soldier's servant, camp-follower.*

campester, tris, tre, [campus], adj., *of* or *on level ground, level.*

campus, ī, m., *open field, plain, level country.*

Camulogenus, ī, m., an Aulercan chieftain.

Canīnius, ī, m., *Gaius Caninius Rebilus*, a lieutenant of Caesar.

canō, canere, cecinī, ——, *sing, play; sound* a signal (on a horn).

Cantabrī, ōrum, m., pl., a Spanish tribe.

Cantium, ī, n., *Kent*, in England.

capillus, ī, [cf. **caput**], m., *hair of the head, hair.*

capiō, capere, cēpī, captus, *take, get; seize, capture; occupy, take possession of, gain; choose; deceive; receive, suffer; reach.*

capra, ae, [caper], f., *she-goat.*

captīvus, ī, [capiō], m., *captive, prisoner.*

captus, a, um, perf. pass. partic. of **capiō**.

captus, ūs, [capiō], m., *capacity; conception, standard.*

caput, itis, n., *head; person; life;* of a river, *mouth.*

Carcasō, ōnis, m., *Carcaso*, a town.

careō, ēre, uī, itūrus, *be without, lack.*

carīna, ae, f., *keel.*

Carnutēs, um, m., pl., a Gallic tribe dwelling north of the Loire.

carō, carnis, f., *flesh, meat.*

carpō, ere, sī, tus, *pluck; criticise.*

carrus, ī, m., *cart, wagon.*

cārus, a, um, *dear, valuable.*

Carvilius, ī, m., a British chieftain.

casa, ae, f., *hut;* pl., *barracks.*

cāseus, ī, m., *cheese.*

Cassī, ōrum, m., pl., a British tribe.

Cassiānus, a, um, [Cassius], adj., *of Cassius.*

cassis, idis, f., *helmet.*

Cassius, ī, m., *Lucius Cassius Longinus*, defeated by the Helvetii 107 B.C.

Cassivellaunus, ī, m., *Cassivellaunus, Caswallon*, British chieftain.

castellum, ī, [dim. of **castrum**], n., *stronghold, redoubt, fort.*

Casticus, ī, m., a Sequanian.

castra, ōrum, n., [pl. of **castrum**, *fortress*], *camp, encampment.*

cāsus, ūs, [cadō], m., *fall; chance, occurrence, fortune; outcome, issue, event; accident, disaster, mischance, death.* **cāsū**, *by chance.*

Catamantāloedis, is, m., a Sequanian chieftain.

catēna, ae, f., *chain, fetter.*

Caturīgēs, um, m., a Gallic tribe dwelling in the eastern part of "the Province."

Catuvolcus, ī, a chief of the Eburones.

causa, ae, f., *cause, occasion, ground, reason; excuse, pretext; situation, condition; matter, case.* **causā**, with gen., *on account of, as a mark of, for the sake of.*

cautē, adv., *cautiously.*

cautēs, is, f., *sharp rock, reef.*

Cavarillus, ī, m., a Haeduan.

Cavarinus, ī, m., a chieftain of the Senones.

caveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautūrus, *be on one's guard, take care; give security.*

Cebenna, ae, f., the *Cévennes*, a range of mountains in southern Gaul.

cēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, *yield, withdraw, retreat, give way, fall back.*

celer, eris, ere, adj., *swift, speedy; sudden.*

celeritās, tātis, [celer], f., *swiftness, speed, rapidity.*

celeriter, [celer], adv., *quickly, swiftly, speedily.*

cēlō, 1, *conceal, hide.*

Celtae, ārum, m., pl., *Celts*, inhabitants of the central division of Gaul.

Celtillus, ī, m., a chieftain of the Arverni, the father of Vercingetorix.

Cēnabēnsēs, ium, [Cēnabum], m., the inhabitants of Cenabum.

Cēnabum, ī., n., a city of the Carnutes, the modern Orléans.

Cēnimagnī, ōrum, m., a British tribe.

Cēnomanī, ōrum, see **Aulercī.**

cēnseō, ēre, uī, us, *estimate; think; decree, determine; advocate.*

cēnsus, ūs, [cēnseō], m., *count, enumeration, census.*

centum, indecl. adj., *hundred.*

centuriō, ōnis, [centuria], m., *centurion.*

cernō, cernere, ——, ——, *separate; see, perceive.*

certāmen, inis, [certō], n., *contest, combat, strife.*

certē, [certus], adv., *certainly, surely; at least, at any rate.*

certus, a, um, [partic. of **cernō**], adj., *certain, sure, fixed, definite; undoubted, unquestionable; trustworthy.*

cervus, ī, m., *stag; chevaux-de-frise*, a military obstruction.

cēterī, ae, a, (sing., not used by Caesar), adj., *the others, the*

rest, all the rest; neuter, **cētera,** as noun, *everything else.*

Ceutronēs, um, m.: 1) A tribe dwelling in the eastern part of "the Province." 2) A Belgian tribe.

Chēruscī, ōrum, m., a German tribe.

cibāria, ōrum, [cibārius, from cibus], n., *provisions, food.*

cibus, ī, m., *food.*

Cicerō, ōnis, m., *Quintus Tullius Cicero,* the brother of Cicero, the orator; a lieutenant of Caesar.

Cimberius, ī, m., a chieftain of the Suebi.

Cimbrī, ōrum, m., pl., a Germanic tribe.

Cingetorīx, īgis, m.: 1) A chief of the Treveri; 2) A British chief.

cingō, cingere, cīnxī, cīnctus, *surround, encircle; invest.*

cippus, ī, m., *stake, post.*

circinus, ī, m., *pair of compasses.*

circiter, [circus, *ring*], adv. and prep. with acc., *around, about, near.*

circuitus, ūs, [circumeō], m., *a going around; circuit, circumference; way around.*

circum, [acc. of **circus,** *ring*], prep. with acc., *around, about; near, in the neighborhood of.*

circumcīdō, cīdere, cīdī, cīsus, [circum + caedō], *cut around, cut out.*

circumcīsus, a, um, [circumcīdō], adj., *steep, precipitous.*

circumclūdō, dere, sī, sus, [circum + claudō], *enclose, encircle.*

circumdō, dare, dedī, datus, [circum + dō, *put*], *place around, build around, surround.*

circumdūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, [circum + dūcō], *draw around; lead around; trace.*

circumeō, īre, iī, itus, [circum + eō], *go around, pass around; make the rounds of, inspect, visit.*

circumfundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus, [circum + fundō], *pour around; surround;* pass., reflexively, *pour around, crowd around.*

circumiciō, icere, jēcī, jectus, [circum + jaciō], *throw around.*

circummittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, [circum + mittō], *send around.*

circummūniō, īre, īvī, ītus, [circum + mūniō], *surround by a wall; protect.*

circumplector, plectī, ——, *embrace, surround.*

circumsistō, sistere, stetī or stitī, ——, [circum + sistō], *stand around, gather around, surround, beset.*

circumspiciō, icere, exī, ectus, [circum + speciō, *look*], *look around; look about for; consider.*

circumvāllō, [circum + vāllō], 1, *surround with a wall, invest.*

circumvehor, vehī, vectus, [circum + vehō], *ride around.*

circumveniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus, [circum + veniō], *come around; surround, invest; ensnare.*

cis, prep. with acc., *on this side of.*

Cisalpīnus, a, um, [cis + Alpīnus, from **Alpēs**], adj., *cisalpine, lying on this* (the south) *side of the Alps.*

Cisrhēnānus, a, um, [cis + Rhēnus], adj., *on this* (the western) *side of the Rhine.*

Cita, *C. Fufius Cita*, a Roman knight.

citātus, a, um, [citō, *set in motion*], adj., *swift.*

citerior, us, [citer; cf. **cis**], comp. adj., *on this side, nearer, hither.* **Gallia citerior**, *Cisalpine Gaul.* **Hispānia citerior**, *Hither Spain.*

cito, [citus], adv., *quickly, rapidly.*

citrā, [citer; cf. **cis**], prep. with acc., *on this side of.*

citrō, [citer; cf. **cis**], adv., *hither.* **ultrō citrōque**, *to and fro.*

cīvis, is, c., *citizen, fellow-citizen.*

cīvitās, tātis, [cīvis], f., *state, tribe, nation; citizenship.*

clam, [cf. **cēlō**], adv., *secretly.*

clāmitō, [clāmō], 1, *shout, cry out.*

clāmor, ōris, [cf. **clāmō**, *cry out*], m., *outcry, shout; battle cry.*

clandestīnus, a, um, [clam], adj., *secret.*

clārus, a, um, adj., *clear; loud.*

classis, is, f., *fleet.*

Claudius, ī, m., *Appius Claudius Pulcher*, consul in 54 B.C.

claudō, claudere, clausī, clausus, *shut, close.* **agmen claudere**, *bring up the rear.*

clāvus, ī, m., *nail, spike.*

clēmentia, ae, [clēmēns], f., *mercy, clemency.*

cliēns, entis, [for **cluēns**, from **clueō**, *hear, obey*], m., *dependent, subject, adherent.*

clientēla, ae, [cliēns], f., *clientship, vassalage;* pl., *body of clients, clients, dependencies.*

clīvus, ī, m., *slope, declivity.*

Clōdius, ī, m., *Publius Clodius Pulcher*, a popular leader, slain by Milo.

Cn., = *Gnaeus*, a Roman first name.

coacervō, [com- + acervō], 1, *heap up; crowd together.*

coāctus, perf. pass. partic. of **cōgō**.

coāctus, ūs, [cōgō], m., used only in the abl. sing.; *compulsion.*

coagmentō, [coagmentum, cōgō], 1, *fasten together.*

coartō, [com- + artō, *compress*], 1, *crowd together.*

Cocosātēs, um, m., an Aquitanian tribe.

coëmō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus, [com- + emō], *buy up, purchase.*

coëō, īre, īvī or iī, itum, [com- + eō], *come together, combine.*

coepī, isse, coeptus, *begin, commence.*

coërceō, ercēre, ercuī, ercitus, [com- + arceō, *confine*], *confine; restrain.*

cōgitō, [com- + agitō], 1, *consider, think; intend, design, purpose.*

cognātiō, ōnis, [cognatus], f., *blood-relationship, kinship; connections.*

cognōscō, gnōscere, gnōvī, cognitus, [com- + (g)nōscō], *become acquainted with, learn, hear, ascertain; see, notice, observe; recognize; investigate, examine.* **cognōvī**, *know.*

cōgō, cōgere, coēgī, coāctus, [com- + agō], *bring together, collect; compel, force.*

cohors, hortis, f., *cohort*, division of a legion.

cohortātiō, ōnis, [cohortor], f., *encouraging, address of encouragement.*

cohortor, [com- + hortor], 1, *encourage, cheer, urge, exhort.*

collātus, perf. pass. partic. of **cōnferō**.

collaudō, [com- + laudō], 1, *praise, commend; cheer.*

colligō, [com- + ligō, *bind*], 1, *bind together, fasten together.*

colligō, ligere, lēgī, lēctus, [com- + legō, *gather*], *bring together, collect, assemble; secure, obtain.* **sē colligere**, *recover themselves, rally.*

collis, is, m., *hill.*

collocō, [com- + locō, *place*], 1, *place, put, post, station, settle, quarter; arrange; give* in marriage.

colloquium, i, [colloquor], n., *conference, interview.*

colloquor, loquī, locūtus, [com- + loquor], *talk with, confer.*

colō, colere, coluī, cultus, *cultivate, till; worship.*

colōnia, ae, [colōnus], f., *colony, settlement.*

color, ōris, m., *color; complexion.*

combūrō, ūrere, ussī, ūstus, [com- + ūrō, *burn*], *burn, burn up.*

comes, itis, [com- + eō], c., *companion, attendant.*

comitia, ōrum, [comitium, *meeting-place* for elections], n., *election.*

comitor, [comes], 1, *accompany, attend.*

commeātus, ūs, [commeō], m., *going to and fro; passage, trip, voyage; supplies.*

commemorō, [com- + memorō], 1, *call to mind, mention, recount.*

commendō, [com-+mandō], 1, *intrust; recommend.*

commeō, [com- + meō, *go*], 1, *go to and fro, visit.*

commīlitō, onis, [com- + mīles], m., *fellow-soldier, comrade.*

comminus, [com- + manus], adv., *hand to hand, at close quarters.*

commissūra, ae, [committō,] f., *juncture, joint.*

committō, mittere, mīsī, missus, [com- + mittō], *bring together, join; intrust; commit, do, perpetrate; cause, allow, permit.* **proelium committere**, *to join battle.*

Commius, i, m., an Atrebatian.

commodē, [commodus], adv., *easily, conveniently, readily.*

commodus, a, um, [com- + modus], adj., *advantageous; good; fitting, advisable.* As subst., **commodum**, i, n., *advantage, profit, convenience.*

commonefaciō, facere, fēcī, factus, [commoneō + faciō], *remind.*

commoror, [com- + moror], 1, *stay, linger.*

commoveō, movēre, mōvī, commōtus, [com- + moveō], *move, disturb, alarm, agitate, excite, influence.*

commūnicō, [commūnis], 1, *share, share with; communicate; discuss in common, consult with.*

commūniō, īre, īvī or iī, ītus, [com- + mūniō], *fortify (strongly), intrench.*

commūnis, e, [com- + mūnus], adj., *common, in common, general, public.*

commūtātiō, ōnis, [commūtō], f., *change.*

commūtō, [com- + mūtō], 1, *change, alter; exchange.*

comparō, [com- + parō], 1, *prepare, make ready, get ready; acquire, secure, obtain, win, procure, gain.*

comparō, [compar, *like*], 1, *compare.*

compellō, pellere, pulī, pulsus, [com- + pellō], *drive together, collect; force back.*

compendium, ī, [com- + pendō], n., *saving; gain.*

comperiō, perīre, perī, pertus, [com- + pariō, *acquire, obtain*], *learn, discover, find out, ascertain.*

compertus, a, um, [comperiō], adj., *settled, certain.*

complector, plectī, plexus, [com- + plectō, *braid*], *embrace; include, enclose.*

compleō, plēre, plēvī, plētus, [com- + pleō, *fill*], *fill, fill up; fill out, complete, occupy, cover.*

complūrēs, a, [com- + plūrēs], adj., *several, a good many, many.*

comportō, [com- + portō], 1, *bring together, bring, bring in, collect.*

comprehendō, hendere, hendī, hēnsus, [com- + prehendō], *seize, grasp; catch, lay hold of, arrest, capture.*

comprobō, [com- + probō], 1, *approve (fully), vindicate.*

cōnātum, ī, [cōnor], n., *attempt, undertaking.*

cōnātus, ūs, [cōnor], m., *attempt.*

cōnātus, perf. pass. partic. of cōnor.

concēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, [com- + cēdō], *withdraw; yield, concede, make concession; allow, grant, give over, permit.*

concertō, [com- + certō, *contend*], 1, *contend.*

concessus, ūs, [concēdō], m., found only in abl. sing.; *permission.*

concidō, cidere, cidī, ——, [com- + cadō], *fall down, fall* in battle.

concīdō, cīdere, cīdī, cīsus, [com- + caedō], *cut up, cut off; cut down, cut to pieces, kill.*

conciliō, [concilium], 1, *win over, make friendly; acquire, secure, procure.*

concilium, ī, [com- + calō, *call*], n., *assembly, meeting; council.*

concitō, [com- + citō], 1, *rouse, stir up.*

conclāmō, [com- + clāmō], 1, *shout, shout aloud, cry, cry out.*

conclūsus, a, um, [conclūdō], adj., *shut in, confined.*

Conconnetodumnus, ī, m., a chieftain of the Carnutes.

concrepō, āre, uī, itum, [com- + crepō, *rattle*], *clash, rattle.*

concurrō, currere, cucurrī or currī, cursum, [com- + currō], *run together, hasten together, rush, charge.*

concursō, [concurrō], 1, *run* or *rush to and fro.*

concursus, ūs, [concurrō], m., *running together, running about; meeting; collision; onset, charge, rush.*

condemnō, [com- + damnō], 1, *condemn, find guilty (of).*

condiciō, ōnis, [com- + dicō, *declare*], f., *condition, agreement, proposal, terms; situation, state.*

condōnō, [com- + dōnō], 1, *give up; leave unpunished, pardon.*

Condrūsī, ōrum, m., pl., a Belgian tribe.

condūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, [com- + dūcō], *bring together, collect; hire.*

cōnfectus, perf. pass. partic. of **cōnficiō**.

cōnferciō, īre, fersī, fertus, [com- + farciō, *pack*], *crowd together.*

cōnferō, ferre, tulī, collātus, [com- + ferō], *bring together, gather, collect; compare; attribute, ascribe; defer, postpone.* **sē cōnferre**, *betake oneself.* **culpam cōnferre**, *lay the blame.*

cōnfertus, a, um, partic. of **cōnferciō**, and adj., *crowded together, dense, solid, compact, in close array.*

cōnfestim, adv., *immediately, at once, without delay.*

cōnficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectus, [com- + faciō], *do thoroughly; complete, finish, accomplish, perform; exhaust, wear out;* of leather, *prepare, dress;* of time, *spend, pass;* of troops, *bring together, furnish.*

cōnfīdō, fīdere, fīsus sum, [com- + fīdō, *trust*], semi-dep., *trust (fully), confide in, rely upon; be confident, be assured.*

cōnfīgō, fīgere, fīxī, fīxus, [com- + fīgō, *fasten*], *fasten together.*

cōnfīnis, e, [com- + fīnis], adj., *bordering on, adjoining.*

cōnfīnium, ī, [cōnfīnis], n., *boundary, border.*

cōnfīō, fierī, ——, [com- + fīō], for **cōnficior**, pass. of **cōnficiō**, *be done, be accomplished.*

cōnfīrmātiō, ōnis, [cōnfīrmō], f., *assertion.*

cōnfīrmō, [com- + fīrmō], 1, *make strong; strengthen, confirm, arrange, set, establish; encourage; assure; assert, declare.* **se cōnfīrmāre**, *determine.*

cōnfīsus, a, um, perf. pass. partic. of **cōnfīdō**.

cōnfiteor, fitērī, fessus, [com- + fateor, *confess*], dep., *confess, admit.*

cōnfīxus, a, um, perf. pass. partic. of **cōnfīgō**.

cōnflagrō, [com- + flagrō, *blaze*], 1, *be on fire.*

cōnflīctō, [cōnflīgō], 1, *assail, harass.*

cōnflīgō, flīgere, flīxī, flīctus, [com- + flīgō, *strike*], *dash together; contend, fight.*

cōnfluēns, entis, [cōnfluō], m., meeting-place of two rivers, *confluence.*

cōnfluō, fluere, flūxī, [com- + fluō], *flow together; flock together.*

cōnfugiō, fugere, fūgī, [com- + fugiō], *flee, flee for refuge.*

cōnfundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsus, [com- + fundō], *pour together; bring together.*

congredior, gredī, gressus, [com- + gradior, *step*], *come together, meet, encounter; engage in battle.*

congressus, a, um, perf. pass. partic. of **congredior**.

congressus, ūs, [congredior], m., *meeting; encounter.*

coniciō, icere, jēcī, jectus, [com- + jaciō], *hurl, cast, throw; drive; place, station.* **in fugam conicere**, *put to flight.*

conjectūra, ae, [coniciō], f., *conjecture.*

conjūnctim, [conjungō], adv., *jointly, in common.*

conjūnctus, a, um, [conjungō], adj., *united, connected; allied.*

conjungō, jungere, jūnxī, jūnctus, [com- + jungō], *join together, combine, unite, connect.*

conjūnx, conjugis, [conjungō], f., *wife.*

conjūrātiō, ōnis, [conjūrō], f., *league; conspiracy, plot.*

conjūrō, [com- + jūrō], 1, *take oath together; form a league, conspire.*

cōnor, 1, dep., *try, attempt, undertake; endeavor, strive.*

conquiēscō, ere, quiēvi, quiētūrus, [com- + quiēscō, *rest*], *rest, repose.*

conquīrō, quīrere, quīsīvī, quīsītus, [com- + quaerō], *search for, collect, bring together.*

conquīsītus, perf. pass. partic. of **conquīrō.**

cōnsanguineus, a, um, [com- + sanguis], adj., *of the same blood, kindred.* As noun, *kinsman.*

cōnscendō, scendere, scendī, scēnsus, [com- + scandō, *climb*], *mount, go aboard* (a vessel), *embark.*

cōnscientia, ae, [cōnsciō], f., *consciousness.*

cōnscīscō, scīscere, scīvī, scītus, [com- + scīscō, *decree*], *decree, resolve upon.*

cōnscius, a, um, [com- + sciō], adj., *conscious, aware.*

cōnscrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, [com- + scrībō], *write; enroll, enlist.*

cōnscrīptus, perf. pass. partic. of **conscrībō.**

cōnsecrātus, a, um, [cōnsecrō], adj., *consecrated, sacred.*

cōnsector, [cōnsequor], 1, dep., *follow eagerly, follow, pursue.*

cōnsecūtus, perf. pass. partic. of **cōnsequor.**

cōnsēnsiō, ōnis, [cōnsentiō], f., *unanimity.*

cōnsēnsus, ūs, [cōnsentiō], m., *agreement, consent, unanimity.*

cōnsentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsūrus, [com- + sentiō], *agree with; combine, unite, make common cause with.*

cōnsequor, sequī, secūtus, [com- + sequor], dep., *follow up, follow, pursue; overtake; reach, secure, gain, attain.*

cōnservō, [com- + servō], 1, *save, spare, protect, rescue; observe, keep, maintain.*

Cōnsidius, ī, m., *Publius Considius*, an officer of Caesar.

cōnsīdō, sīdere, sēdī, sessum, [com- + sīdō, *sit*], *sit down; halt, encamp, take post; settle.*

cōnsilium, ī, [cōnsulō], n., *deliberation; deliberative assembly, council; counsel, advice; decision, plan, design, purpose; discretion, prudence.* **cōnsilium inīre, capere, habēre,** *form a plan.*

cōnsimilis, e, [com- + similis], adj., *very similar, quite like.*

cōnsistō, sistere, stitī, stitum, [com- + sistō, *set, place*], *post oneself, take a position, gain a footing, stand; stay, remain, stop, halt; dwell, settle; consist of, depend on;* of vessels, *ride at anchor.* **in orbem cōnsistere,** *to form a circle.*

cōnsobrīnus, ī, [com- + svesor, = soror], m., *son of a mother's sister, cousin.*

cōnsōlor, [com- + sōlor, *comfort*], 1, dep., *comfort, cheer, encourage.*

cōnspectus, ūs, [cōnspiciō], m., *sight, view; presence.*

cōnspiciō, spicere, spexī, spectus, [com- + speciō, *look*], *view, observe, behold, see, perceive.*

cōnspicor, 1, dep., *catch sight of, see, perceive.*

cōnspīrō, [com- + spīrō, *breathe*], 1, *form a league; combine.*

cōnstanter, [cōnstāns], adv., *resolutely, uniformly.*

cōnstantia, ae, [cōnstāns], f., *steadfastness, firmness.*

cōnsternō, [com- + sternō], 1, *alarm, dismay.*

cōnsternō, sternere, strāvī, strātus, [com- + sternō], *strew, cover.*

cōnstīpō, [com- + stīpō, *press*], 1, *pack together.*

cōnstituō, stituere, stituī, stitūtus, [com- + statuō], *station, place, arrange, draw up; stop; appoint, fix, establish; decide, resolve, determine, settle.*

cōnstō, stāre, stitī, stātūrus, [com- + stō], 1, *remain unchanged; depend on; cost.* **cōnstat**, impers., *it is certain, evident, clear, established, it is agreed.*

cōnsuēscō, suēscere, suēvī, suētus, [com- + suēscō, *become accustomed*], *become accustomed;* perf. *be accustomed, be wont.*

cōnsuētūdō, inis, [cōnsuēscō], f., *habit, practice, custom; manner of living.*

cōnsuētus, perf. pass. partic. of cōnsuēscō.

cōnsul, ulis, m., *consul*, one of the two chief Roman magistrates.

cōnsulātus, ūs, [cōnsul], m., *consulship.*

cōnsulō, sulere, suluī, sultus, *take counsel, deliberate, consider;* with dat., *look out for, take thought for.*

cōnsultō, adv., *designedly, with deliberation, purposely.*

cōnsultō, [freq. of cōnsulō], 1, *deliberate, take counsel.*

cōnsultum, ī, [cōnsulō], n., *deliberation; decree, decision.*

cōnsūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, [com- + sūmō], *consume, use up, destroy.*

cōnsūmptus, perf. pass. partic. of cōnsūmō.

cōnsurgō, surgere, surrēxī, surrēctus, [com- + surgō, *rise*], *rise, arise.*

contabulō, [com- + tabula, *board*], 1, *floor over, build in stories.*

contāgiō, ōnis, [contingō], f., *contact.*

contāminō, [com- + TAG, *touch*], 1, *contaminate, pollute.*

contegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus, [com- + tegō], *cover, conceal.*

contemnō, temnere, tempsī, temptus, [com- + temnō, *despise*], *esteem lightly, despise.*

contemptiō, ōnis, [contemnō], f., *contempt, disregard of consequences.*

contemptus, ūs, [contemnō], m., *contempt.* **contemptuī esse**, *be an object of contempt.*

contendō, tendere, tendī, tentum, [com- + tendō], *put forth one's strength, endeavor, strive for, strive; hasten, hurry, march hurriedly, march; fight, contend, struggle, dispute; maintain; demand.*

contentiō, ōnis, [contendō], f., *exertion, effort; strife, rivalry; fighting, fight, struggle.*

contentus, a, um, [contineō], adj., *contented.*

contexō, texere, texuī, textus, [com- + texō, *weave*], *weave together; bind together; make of wicker-work.*

continēns, entis, [partic. of **contineō**], adj., *continuous, unbroken.* As noun (with *terra* understood), f., *the continent of Europe, mainland.*

continenter, [continēns], adv., *continuously; continually, without interruption.*

continentia, ae, [continēns], f., *self-control.*

contineō, tinēre, tinuī, tentus, [com- + teneō], *keep together, bind, hold together; restrain, keep in bounds; hold fast, detain, keep; confine, hem in, surround, enclose, fill, contain, bound;* pass., *consist of.*

contingō, tingere, tigī, tāctus, [com- + tangō], *touch, border on; happen, fall to the lot of.*

continuātiō, ōnis, [continuō], f., *continuation.*

continuō, [continuus], adv., *immediately.*

continuus, a, um, [com-, cf. **teneō**], adj., *successive, in succession.*

cōntiō, ōnis, [for **coventiō**, com- + veniō, *a coming together*], f., *assembly; speech, address.*

contrā, [com-]: 1) Adv., *on the other hand; differently; in opposition; on the contrary.* **contrā atque**, *otherwise than, contrary to what.* 2) Prep. with acc., *opposite, facing; contrary to, against; in spite of; in reply to.*

contrahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctus, [com- + traho], *draw together, collect, gather; contract, make smaller.*

contrārius, a, um, [contrā], adj., *opposite.* **ex contrāriō**, *on the contrary.*

contrōversia, ae, [contrōversus], f., *strife, contention, controversy.*

contumēlia, ae, f., *insult, indignity; buffeting, shock, violence.*

convalēscō, valēscere, valuī, [com- + valēscō, from **valeō**], *get well.*

convallis, is, [com- + vallis], f., *valley.*

cōnvehō, vehere, vexī, vectus, [com- + vehō], *bring together.*

conveniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus, [com- + veniō], *come together, assemble; come; be agreed upon;* impers., *be fitting;* trans., *meet.*

conventus, ūs, [cf. **conveniō**], m., *assembly, court, assize.*

conversus, perf. pass. partic. of **convertō**.

convertō, vertere, vertī, versus, [com- + vertō,] *turn, turn about, turn around; change.*

Convictolitavis, is, m., a Haeduan chieftain.

convictus, perf. pass. partic. of **convincō**.

convincō, vincere, vīcī, victus, [com- + vincō], *prove.*

convocō, [com- + vocō], 1, *call together, summon.*

coörior, orīrī, ortus, [com- + orior], dep., *arise; rise; break out.*

coörtus, perf. pass. partic. of **coörior**.

cōpia, ae, [for **co-opia**, from com- + ops], f., *abundance, plenty,*

supply, quantity, number, amount, multitude. Pl., **cōpiae, ārum,** *means, riches; troops, forces.*

cōpiōsus, a, um, [cōpia], adj., *rich.*

cōpula, ae, [com- + AP, *fasten*], f., *grappling-hook, grapnel.*

cor, cordis, n., *heart.*

cōram, [com- + ōs, *face*], adv., *in person, with one's own eyes.*

Coriosolitēs, um, m., a tribe dwelling in northwestern Gaul.

corium, ī, n., *skin, hide.*

cornū, ūs, n., *horn; wing of an army.*

corōna, ae, f., *crown, garland; circle, line.* **sub corōnā vēndere,** *to sell as slaves.*

corpus, oris, n., *body.* **tōtum corpus,** *the whole line of works.*

corrumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptus, [com- + rumpō, *break*], *destroy.*

cortex, corticis, m. and f., *bark.*

Cōrus, ī, m., *northwest wind.*

cotīdiānus, a, um, [cotīdiē], adj., *daily; usual, customary.*

cotīdiē, [quot + diēs], adv., *daily, every day.*

Cotta, ae, m., see **Aurunculēius.**

Cotus, ī, m., a Haeduan.

crassitūdō, inis, [crassus, *thick*], f., *thickness.*

Crassus, ī, m.: 1) *Marcus Licinius Crassus,* political ally of Caesar, and member of the First Triumvirate. 2) *Publius Licinius Crassus,* younger son of (1); a lieutenant of Caesar. 3) *Marcus Licinius Crassus,* elder son of (1); quaestor under Caesar.

crātēs, is, f., *wicker-work; hurdle; fascine.*

crēber, bra, brum, adj., *thick, crowded, numerous, frequent.*

crēbrō, [crēber], adv., *constantly.*

crēdō, crēdere, crēdidī, crēditum, *believe, think; intrust.*

cremō, 1, *burn.*

creō, 1, *make; appoint, choose.*

crēscō, crēscere, crēvī, crētus, *increase; grow strong;* of a stream, *grow high.*

Crētēs, um, m., acc. pl. **Crētās,** *Cretans,* inhabitants of Crete.

Critognātus, ī, m., an Arvernian.

cruciātus, ūs, [cruciō, *torture*], m., *torment, torture, suffering, punishment.*

crūdēlitās, tātis, [crūdēlis], f., *cruelty, severity.*

crūdēliter, [crūdēlis], adv., *cruelly.*

crūs, crūris, n., *leg.*

cubīle, is, [cubō, *lie down*], n., *bed, resting-place.*

culmen, inis, n., *height, crest, summit.*

culpa, ae, f., *blame, fault.*

cultūra, ae, [colō], f., *tilling, cultivation.*

cultus, ūs, [colō], m., *cultivation, care; way of life, civilization.*

cum, prep. with abl., *with, in the company of, together with.*

cum, conj., temporal, *when, while, as, whenever;* causal, *since;* adversative, *though, although.* **cum . . . tum,** *while . . . at the same time, not only . . . but also.* **cum prīmum,** *as soon as.*

cunctātiō, ōnis, [cunctor], f., *delay.*

cunctor, 1, dep., *delay, hesitate, hold back.*

cūnctus, a, um, [for **conjūnctus, conjungō**], adj., *all.*

cuneātim, [cuneus], adv., *in the form of a wedge.*

cuneus, ī, m., *wedge; wedge-shaped mass of troops.*

cunīculum, ī, n., *mine.*

cupidē, [cupidus], adv., *eagerly.*

cupiditās, tātis, [cupidus], f., *eagerness, desire.*

cupidus, a, um, [cupiō], adj., *desirous, eager, fond of.*

cupiō, cupere, cupīvī, cupītus, *desire; wish well to, favor.*

cūr, adv., *why? wherefore?*

cūra, ae, f., *care, attention.*

cūrō, [cūra], 1, *care for, provide for, attend to;* with gerundive, *cause to be done, have done, superintend.*

currus, ūs, [currō], m., *chariot.*

cursus, ūs, [currō], m., *running; speed; run, course.*

cūstōdia, ae, [cūstōs], f., *watch; custody, guard.*

cūstōdiō, īre, īvī, ītus, [cūstōs], *guard.*

cūstōs, tōdis, c., *guard.*

D, 500.

D., *Decimus.*

Dācī, ōrum, m., *Dacians*, a tribe dwelling on the Danube.

damnō, [damnum], *condemn;* partic. as noun, **damnātī**, *those condemned, convicts.*

damnum, ī, n., *loss.*

Dānuvius, ī, m., *the Danube.*

dē, prep. with abl., *from, down from, away from; out of, of; for, on account of; about, concerning; after, during, in, in the course of.* **dē imprōvīsō**, *unexpectedly.*

dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitus, [dē + habeō], *owe;* with dependent infin., *ought, must;* pass., *be due.*

dēcēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, [dē + cēdō], *go away, withdraw; retire; die.*

decem, *ten.*

dēceptus, perf. pass. partic. of **dēcipiō**.

dēcernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus, [dē + cernō], *decide, pass judgment; vote, decree.*

dēcertō, [dē + certō, *contend*], 1, *fight* a decisive battle.

dēcessus, ūs, [dēcēdō], m., *departure; falling, ebbing.*

Decetia, ae, f., a Haeduan town on the Loire; the modern Decize.

dēcidō, cidere, cidī, [dē + cadō], *fall, fall off.*

decimus, a, um, [decem], num. adj., *tenth.*

Decimus, ī, m., a Roman first name.

dēcipiō, cipere, cēpī, ceptus, [dē + capiō], *deceive.*

dēclārō, [dē + clārō, from **clārus**], 1, *declare, announce.*

dēclīvis, e, [dē + clīvus], adj., *sloping.* As noun, **dēclīvia**, n., pl., *declivities, descents.*

dēclīvitās, tātis, [dēclīvis], f., *declivity, descent.*

dēcrētum, ī, [dēcernō], n., *decree, decision.*

decumānus, a, um, [decimus], adj., *of* or *belonging to a tenth part, decuman.* **decumāna porta**, *the decuman gate* of a Roman camp.

decuriō, ōnis, [decuria, *company of ten*], m., *decurion*, a cavalry officer in charge of a *decuria.*

dēcurrō, currere, cucurrī or currī, cursūrus, [dē + currō], *run down, hasten, hurry.*

dēdecus, oris, [dē + decus, *honor*], n., *shame, shameful act.*

dēditīcius, ī, [dēditus, dēdō], adj., *that has surrendered.* As noun,

dēditīciī, ōrum, m., *prisoners; hostages.*

dēditiō, ōnis, [dēdō], f., *surrender.*

dēditus, a, um, [dēdō], adj., *devoted to, given up to.*

dēdō, dere, didī, ditus, [dē + dō], *give up, surrender; devote.*

dēdūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, [dē + dūcō], *lead down; lead away; lead, influence; conduct, bring; launch; bring home* a bride, *marry.*

dēfatīgātiō, ōnis, [dēfatīgō], f., *exhaustion.*

dēfatīgō, [dē + fatīgō, *weary*], 1, *weary, exhaust.*

dēfectiō, ōnis, [dēficiō], f., *desertion, revolt, defection.*

dēfendō, fendere, fendī, fēnsus, [dē + fendō, *strike*], *ward off, repel; defend, protect.* **bellum dēfendere**, *wage a defensive war.*

dēfēnsiō, ōnis, [dēfendō], m., *defence, protection.*

dēfēnsor, ōris, [dēfendō], m., *defender, protector; defence, guard.*

dēfēnsus, perf. pass. partic. of **dēfendō**.

dēferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, [dē + ferō], *bear away, carry; bring, convey; confer upon; report, refer;* pass., *be driven, arrive.*

dēfessus, a, um, [partic. of **dēfetīscor**], adj., *wearied, exhausted.*

dēfetīscor, ī, dēfessus, [dē + fatīscor, *tire*], dep., *become weary.*

dēficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectus, [dē + faciō], *fail, revolt.* **dēficere animō**, *lose courage.*

dēfīgō, fīgere, fīxī, fīxus, [dē + fīgō, *fasten*], *drive in, fasten in.*

dēfīniō, īre, īvī, ītus, [dē + fīniō], *set, fix.*

dēfore, see **dēsum**.

dēfōrmis, e, [dē + fōrma], adj., *misshapen; hideous, ugly.*

dēfugiō, fugere, fūgī, [dē + fugiō], *flee away, shun, avoid.*

dēiciō, icere, jēcī, jectus, [dē + jaciō], *throw down, tear down; drive away; destroy, kill.*

deinceps, [deinde + CAP, *take*], adv., *one after the other, in succession; uninterruptedly.*

deinde, [dē + inde], adv., *thereupon, then.*

dējectus, perf. pass. partic. of **dēiciō**.

dējectus, ūs, [dējciō], m., *descent, slope, declivity.*

dēlātus, perf. pass. partic. of **dēferō**.

dēlectō, [freq. of **dēliciō**, *allure*], 1, *delight;* pass., *take pleasure in.*

dēlēctus, perf. pass. partic. of **dēligō**.

dēleō, ēre, ēvī, ētus, *wipe out; destroy, annihilate.*

dēlīberō, [dē + lībra, *balance*], 1, *deliberate, consider.*

dēlībrō, [dē + liber, *bark*], 1, *remove the bark, peel.*

dēlictum, ī, [partic. of **dēlinquō**, *do wrong*], n., *crime, offence.*

dēligō, [dē + ligō, *bind*], 1, *bind, fasten, tie.*

dēligō, lĭgere, lēgī, lēctus, [dē + legō], *choose, select, detail.*

dēlitēscō, litēscere, lituī, [dē + latēscō, inchoative of **lateō**], *hide oneself.*

dēmentia, ae, [dēmēns], f., *folly.*

dēmessus, perf. pass. partic. of **dēmetō**.

dēmetō, metere, messuī, messus, [dē + metō], *reap.*

dēmigrō, [dē + migrō, *depart*], 1, *move out, move away; depart.*

dēminuō, minuere, minuī, minūtus, [dē + minuō], *lessen, diminish, weaken; impair; take away.*

dēmissus, a um, [dēmittō], adj., *low.*

dēmittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, [dē + mittō], *let down, thrust down; drop, bow.* **sē animō dēmittere**, *become discouraged.*

dēmō, dēmere, dēmpsī, dēmptus, [dē + emō], *take, take down.*

dēmōnstrō, [dē + mōnstrō, *show*], 1, *point out, mention, designate; explain, show.*

dēmoror, [dē + moror], 1, dep., *delay; hinder.*

dēmptus, perf. pass. partic. of **dēmō.**

dēmum, adv., *at length.*

dēnegō, [dē + negō], 1, *deny, refuse.*

dēnī, ae, a, [decem], distrib. adj., *ten each, ten apiece.*

dēnique, adv., *at last, finally; in a word, in short, in fine; at least.*

dēnsus, a, um, adj., *dense, thick, compact.*

dēnūntiō, [dē + nūntiō], 1, *announce, declare; order.*

dēpellō, pellere, pulī, pulsus, [dē + pellō], *drive away, avert.*

dēperdō, dere, didī, ditus, [dē + perdō, *destroy*], *lose, forfeit.*

dēpereō, īre, iī, itūrus, [dē + pereō], *perish utterly, be destroyed; be lost.*

dēpōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, [dē + pōnō], *lay aside, place, put, deposit, leave with, leave; abandon, give up, resign, renounce.*

dēpopulor, [dē + populor], 1, dep., *lay waste, plunder.*

dēportō, [dē + portō], 1, *carry off.*

dēposcō, poscere, poposcī, [dē + poscō], *demand (earnestly).*

dēpositus, perf. pass. partic. of **dēpōnō.**

dēprecātor, ōris, [dēprecor], m., *intercessor, mediator.*

dēprecor, [dē + precor, *pray*], 1, dep., *entreat; beg to be delivered from; beg for mercy, call for quarter.*

dēprehendō, hendere, hendī, hēnsus, [dē + prehendō], *seize, catch; surprise.*

dēprehēnsus, perf. pass. partic. of **dēprehendō.**

dēpūgnō, [dē + pūgnō], 1, *fight to the death.*

dēpulsus, perf. pass. partic. of **dēpello.**

dērēctē, [dērēctus], adv., *straight.*

dērēctus, a, um, [dērigo], adj., *straight; perpendicular.*

dērigō, rigere, rēxī, rēctus, [dē + regō], *draw up, arrange.*

dērīvō, [dē + rivus, *stream*], 1, *draw off.*

dērogō, [dē + rogō], 1, *take away.*

dēscendō, scendere, scendī, scēnsum, [dē + scandō, *climb*], *come down, descend; determine upon, resort to, proceed to.*

dēsecō, cāre, cuī, ctus, [dē + secō], *cut off.*

dēserō, serere, seruī, sertus, [dē + serō, *join*], *leave, forsake, desert, abandon.*

dēsertor, ōris, [dēserō], m., *deserter.*

dēsertus, perf. pass. partic. of **dēserō.**

dēsertus, a, um, [dēserō], adj., *deserted, lonely.*

dēsiderō, 1, *long for, note the absence of, miss, desire;* pass., *be lost.*

dēsidia, ae, [dēses, *idle*], f., *indolence.*

dēsignō, [dē + signō, *mark*], 1, *designate, mean.*

dēsiliō, silīre, siluī or siliī, sultum, [dē + saliō, *leap*], *jump down, dismount.*

dēsistō, sistere, stitī, stitūrus, [dē + sistō] *desist, cease.*

dēspectus, perf. pass. partic. of **dēspiciō.**

dēspectus, ūs, [dēspiciō], m., *outlook, view.*

dēspērātiō, ōnis, [dēspērō], f., *hopelessness, despair.*

dēspērātus, a, um, [dēspērō], adj., *desperate.*

dēspērō, [dē + spērō], 1, *give up hope of, despair of.*

dēspiciō, spicere, spexī, spectus, [dē + speciō, *look*], *look down, look down upon; despise.*

dēspoliō, [dē + spoliō], 1, *despoil, deprive.*

dēstinō, 1, *make fast, fasten; appoint.*

dēstituō, stituere, stituī, stitūtus, [dē + statuō], *abandon, desert.*

dēstrictus, perf. pass. partic. of **dēstringō.**

dēstringō, stringere, strīnxī, strictus, [dē + stringō, *draw tight*], *strip off; unsheathe, draw.*

dēsum, dēesse, dēfuī, [dē + sum], *be wanting, be lacking, fail.*

dēsuper, [dē + super], adv., *from above.*

dēterior, us, comp. adj., [dē], *worse, poorer.*

dēterreō, terrēre, terruī, territus, [dē + terreō], *frighten off, deter, prevent.*

dētestor, [dē + testor, *call to witness*], 1, dep., *curse.*

dētineō, tinēre, tinuī, tentus, [dē + teneō], *hold back; detain.*

dētrāctus, perf. pass. partic. of **dētrahō.**

dētrahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctus, [dē + trahō], *draw off, take off; withdraw, detach, snatch, seize.*

dētrectō, [dē + tractō, *handle*], 1, *refuse, avoid.*

dētrīmentōsus, a, um, [dētrīmentum], adj., *injurious, disadvantageous.*

dētrīmentum, ī, [dē + terō, *wear away*], n., *loss, injury; repulse, defeat, reverse.*

dēturbō, [dē + turbō, *disturb*], 1, *drive off, drive away.*

deūrō, ūrere, ussī, ūstus, [dē + ūrō, *burn*], *burn up.*

deus, ī, m., *god.*

dēvehō, vehere, vexī, vectus, [dē + vehō], *carry away, bring, convey.*

dēveniō, venīre, vēnī, ventūrus, [dē + veniō], *come, arrive.*

dēvexus, a, um, [dēvehō], adj., *sloping.* As noun, **dēvexa**, n., pl., *slopes.*

dēvincō, vincere, vīcī, victus, [dē + vincō], *thoroughly subdue.*

dēvocō, [dē + vocō], 1, *call away; bring.*

dēvōtus, [dēvoveō], adj., *devoted.* As noun, **dēvōtī**, ōrum, m., pl., *devoted adherents.*

dēvoveō, vovēre, vōvī, vōtus, [dē + voveō], *devote; offer.*

dexter, tra, trum, adj., *right.*

dextra, ae, [*i.e.* **manus**], f., *right hand.*

Diablintēs, um, m., see **Aulercī**.

diciō, ōnis, nom. sing. not in use, [dicō, *appoint*], f., *power, might, sway.*

dicō, 1, *dēdicate, devote.*

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus, *say, speak, tell; plead* (a case); *name, set, fix.* **jūs dīcere**, *administer justice.*

dictiō, ōnis, [dīcō], f., *pleading.*

dictum, ī, [dīcō], n., *word, utterance; command.* **dictō audiēns**, *obedient.*

dīdūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, [dis- + dūcō], *lead apart, distribute.*

diēs, diēī, m. and f., *day; time.* **in diēs**, *day by day, daily.*

differō, differre, distulī, dīlātus, [dis- + ferō], *bear in different directions, scatter, spread; put off, postpone; differ.*

difficilis, e, [dis- + facilis], adj., *hard, difficult.*

difficultās, tātis, [difficilis], f., *difficulty, trouble.*

difficulter, [difficilis], adv., *with difficulty.*

diffīdō, fīdere, fīsus sum, [dis- + fīdō, *trust*], semi-dep., *distrust, mistrust, lack confidence in, despair of.*

diffīsus, a, um, perf. pass. partic. of **diffīdō**.

diffluō, fluere, fluxī, [dis- + fluō], *flow (in different directions).*

diffundō, funderē, fūdī, fūsus, [dis- + fundō], *pour forth; spread out.*

digitus, ī, m., *finger;* as a measure, *a finger's breadth*, the 16th part of a Roman foot. **digitus pollex**, *thumb.*

dignitās, tātis, [dignus], f., *dignity, worth; standing, rank, honor, authority.*

dignus, a, um, adj., *worthy, deserving, suitable.*

dījūdicō, [dis- + jūdicō], 1, *decide.*

dīlēctus, perf. pass. partic. of **dīligō**.

dīlēctus, ūs, [dīligō, *choose*], m., *levy.*

dīligenter, [dīligēns], adv., *carefully, with pains, punctually.*

dīligentia, ae, [dīligēns], f., *care, pains, punctuality.*

dīligō, ligere, lēxī, lēctus, [dis- + legō, *choose*], *choose out; love, cherish.*

dīmēnsus, perf. pass. partic. of **dīmētior**.

dīmētior, mētīrī, mēnsus, [dis- + mētior], dep., *measure, measure off; lay out, stake out.*

dīmicātiō, ōnis, [dīmicō], f., *contest, fight, struggle.*

dīmicō, [dis- + micō], 1, *contend, fight, struggle.*

dīmidius, a, um, [dis- + medius], adj., *half.* As noun, **dīmidium**, ī, n., *half.*

dīmittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, [dis- + mittō], *send in different directions, send away; dismiss, disband, discharge, release; let go, let slip, let pass, lose; abandon, give up.*

dirimō, imere, ēmī, ēmptus, [dis- + emō, *take*], *take apart; break up, break off.*

dīripiō, ripere, ripuī, reptus, [dis- + rapiō, *snatch*], *plunder, pillage.*

dis- or **di-**, inseparable particle, *apart, asunder, in different directions; among, between;* often with negative force.

Dīs, Dītis, m., *god of the lower world.*

discēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, [dis- + cēdō], *go apart, disperse; retire, depart, leave, go away; forsake, fail.*

disceptātor, ōris, [disceptō, *decide*], m., *judge.*

discernō, cernere, crēvī, crētus, [dis- + cernō], *distinguish.*

discessus, ūs, [discēdō], m., *departure, withdrawal.*

disciplīna, ae, [discipulus], f., *training, discipline; doctrine.*

disclūdō, clūdere, clūsī, clūsus, [dis- + claudō], *hold apart, separate.*

discō, discere, didicī, *learn.*

discrīmen, inis, [discernō], n., *crisis, danger.*

discutiō, cutere, cussī, cussus, [dis- + quatiō, *shake*], *shake apart; clear away.*

disiciō, icere, jēcī, jectus, [dis- + jaciō], *tear apart; scatter, rout.*

disjectus, perf. pass. partic. of disiciō.

dispār, paris, [dis- + pār], adj., *unequal.*

disparō, [dis- + parō], 1, *separate.*

dispergō, spergere, spersī, spersus, [dis- + spargō, *scatter*], *scatter.*

dispersus, perf. pass. partic. of dispergō.

dispōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, [dis- + pōnō], *place here and there; distribute, post, station.*

disputātiō, ōnis, [disputō], f., *discussion.*

disputō, [dis- + putō], 1, *discuss, treat.*

dissēnsiō, ōnis, [dissentiō], f., *disagreement, dissension, feud.*

dissentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus, [dis- + sentiō], *differ in opinion, disagree.*

disserō, serere, [dis- + serō, *sow*], *plant here and there, plant at intervals.*

dissimulō, [dis- + simulō], 1, *conceal.*

dissipō, 1, *scatter, disperse.*

dissuādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsūrus, [dis- + suādeō], *advise against, oppose.*

distineō, tinēre, tinuī, tentus, [dis- + teneō], *keep apart, hold apart; prevent, hinder.*

distō, āre, [dis- + stō], 1, *be apart, be distant.*

distrahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctus, [dis- + trahō, *draw*], *tear apart.*

distribuō, tribuere, tribuī, tribūtus, [dis- + tribuō], *distribute, assign, divide.*

dītissimus, superl. of dīves.

diū, adv., *long, for a long time.*

diurnus, a, um, [cf. **dies**], adj., *of the day, in the daytime, by day.*

diūtinus, a, um, [diū], adj., *long, lasting, of long duration.*

diūtissimē, superl. of diū.

diutius, compar. of diū.

diūturnitās, tātis, [diūturnus], f., *length, duration.*

diūturnus, a, um, [diū], adj., *long, long continued.*

dīversus, a, um, [dīvertō], partic. of dīvertō and adj., *separated; separate; opposite; different.*

dīvertō, ere, tī, sum, [dis- + vertō], *separate.*

dīves, itis, adj., *rich.*

Dīvicō, ōnis, m., an Helvetian chieftain.

dīvidō, videre, vīsī, vīsus, *divide, separate.*

dīvīnus, a, um, [dīvus], adj., *divine, holy, sacred.*

Dīvitiācus, ī, m.: 1) A Haeduan

chieftain, brother of Dumnorix. 2) A chieftain of the Suessiones.

dō, dăre, dedī, datus, *give, give up, grant, allow; offer, furnish, afford, bestow, assign; put.*

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctus, *teach; inform; show, tell, declare.*

documentum, ī, [doceō], n., *lesson, warning.*

doleō, dolēre, doluī, dolitūrus, *suffer; be grieved.*

dolor, ōris, [doleō] m., *pain, grief, distress, annoyance, resentment.*

dolus, ī, m., *deception, cunning.*

domesticus, a, um, [domus], adj., *of one's own household* or *country; one's own; internal, civil* (*war*).

domicilium, ī, [domus], n., *dwelling, dwelling-place, abode.*

dominor, [dominus], 1, dep., *be master, rule.*

dominus, ī, [domō, *subdue*], m., *lord, master.*

Domitius, ī, m., *Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus*, consul in 54 B.C.

domus, ūs, f., *house, home.*

Donnotaurus, ī, m., *Gaius Valerius Donnotaurus*, a Helvian leader.

dōnō, [dōnum], 1, *give, bestow, present.*

dōnum, ī, [dō], n., *gift, present.*

dorsum, ī, n., *back; ridge.*

dōs, dōtis, [dō], f., *dowry.*

Druidēs, um, m., *Druids*, Gallic priests.

Dubis, is, m., a river of Gaul, flowing into the Arar; now the Doubs.

dubitātiō, ōnis, [dubitō], f., *doubt, hesitation.*

dubitō, [dubius], 1, *doubt, be uncertain; hesitate.*

dubius, a, um, adj., *doubtful, uncertain.*

ducentī, ae, a, [duo + centum], adj., *two hundred.*

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, *lead, guide, conduct, bring; run, build* (a trench); *protract, put off; hold, regard, believe, think, consider, reckon; lead* as bride, *marry.*

ductus, ūs, [dūcō], m., *lead, leadership.*

dum, conj., *while; until.*

Dumnorīx, īgis, m., a Haeduan leader, brother of Divitiacus.

duo, ae, o, adj., *two.*

duodecim, [duo + decem], indecl., *twelve.*

duodecimus, a, um, [duodecim], adj., *twelfth.*

duodēnī, ae, a, [duodecim], distrib. adj., *twelve at a time, twelve each.*

duodēvīgintī, ae, a, [duo + dē + vīgintī], adj., *eighteen.*

duplex, icis, [duo + plicō, *fold*], adj., *twofold, double.*

duplicō, [duplex], 1, *double, make double.*

dūritia, ae, [dūrus], f., *hardness; hardship.*

dūrō, [dūrus], 1, *harden, toughen.*

Dūrocortorum, ī, n., capital of the Remi, the modern Rheims.

dūrus, a, um, adj., *hard, difficult; severe.*

Dūrus, ī, m., *Quintus Laberius Durus*, a tribune.

dux, ducis, [dūcō, *lead*], m., *leader, guide; commander, general.*

ē, see **ex**.

eā, adv., *there, by that way.*

Eburōnēs, um, m., a Belgian tribe.

Eburovīcēs, um, m., see **Aulercī**.

ēdiscō, discere, didicī, [ex + discō], *learn by heart, commit to memory.*

ēditus, a, um, [ēdō], adj., *elevated, lofty, high.*

ēdō, dere, didī, ditus, [ex + dō], *put forth, inflict.*

ēdoceō, docēre, docuī, doctus, [ex + doceō], *teach, instruct, show.*

ēdūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, [ex + dūcō], *lead out, lead forth; draw* a weapon.

effēminō, [ex + fēmina, *woman*], 1, *make effeminate, weaken, demoralize, enfeeble.*

effer(ciō, īre, effertus, [ex + farciō, *stuff*], *fill up.*

efferō, ferre, extulī, ēlātus, [ex + ferō], *take out, take, carry out; publish, make known, report; raise up, elevate;* pass. *be elated.*

efficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectus, [ex + faciō], *bring about, bring to pass, accomplish, cause, produce; make, render; get ready, bring together; construct.*

effodiō, fodere, fōdī, fossus, [ex + fodiō, *dig*], *dig out, tear out.*

effossus, perf. pass. partic. of **effodiō**.

effugiō, fugere, fūgī, [ex + fugiō], *escape.*

egēns, egentis, [partic. of **egeō**], adj., *needy.*

egeō, egēre, eguī, *need.*

egēstās, tātis, [egēns], f., *want, destitution.*

ego, meī, personal pron., *I;* **nōsmet**, emphatic for **nōs**.

ēgredior, gredī, gressus, [ex + gradior, *step*], dep., *go out, march out, march forth, leave; disembark, land.*

ēgregiē, [ēgregius], adv., *excellently, admirably.*

ēgregius, a, um, [ex + grex, *herd, crowd*], adj., *excellent, admirable, superior.*

ēgressus, perf. pass. partic. of **ēgredior**.

ēgressus, ūs, [ēgredior], m., *landing, landing-place.*

ēiciō, icere, jēcī, jectus, [ex + jaciō], *cast out, drive out; cast up, strand.* **sē ēicere**, *to rush out.*

ēlābor, lābī, lāpsus, [ex + lābor], dep., *slip away; escape.*

ēlātus, perf. pass. partic. of **efferō**.

Elaver, Elaveris, n., a river of central Gaul, the modern *Allier.*

ēlēctus, a, um, [ēligō], adj., *chosen, picked.*

elephantus, ī, m., *elephant.*

Eleutetī, ōrum, m., pl., a Gallic tribe.

ēliciō, licere, licuī, [ex + laciō, *entice*], *lure forth.*

Elusātēs, ium, m., an Aquitanian tribe.

ēmigrō, [ex + migrō, *depart*], 1, *emigrate.*

ēmineō, minēre, minuī, *stand out, project.*

ēminus, [ex + manus, *hand*], adv., *from far off, at a distance.*

ēmittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, [ex + mittō], *send out; let out, let go; hurl, throw, discharge; throw away.*

emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptus, *buy, purchase.*

ēnāscor, nāscī, nātus, [ex + nāscor], dep., *grow out, grow forth.*

enim, [nam], postpositive conj., *for;* with **neque**, *indeed, in fact.*

ēnūntiō, [ex + nūntiō], 1, *announce, report, divulge, reveal.*

eō, [is], adv., *to that place, thither, there.*

eō, īre, īvī or iī, itūrus, *go, march, pass, proceed.*

eōdem, [īdem], adv., *to the same place; to the same end* or *object.*

ephippiātus, a, um, adj., *with saddles.*

ephippium, ī, n., *saddle-cloth, saddle.*

epistula, ae, f., *letter.*

Eporēdorīx, īgis, m., name of two Haeduan chieftains.

epulae, ārum, f., pl., *banquet.*

eques, itis, [equus], m., *horseman, cavalryman; knight.*

equester, tris, tre, [eques], adj., *of cavalry, equestrian, cavalry.*

equitātus, ūs, [equitō, *ride*], m., *cavalry.*

equus, ī, m., *horse.*

Eratosthenēs, is, m., a Greek philosopher and geographer of the third century B.C.

ērēctus, a, um, [ērigō], adj., *high.*

ēreptus, perf. pass. partic. of **ēripiō.**

ergā, prep. with acc., *towards.*

ergō, adv., *therefore, then.*

ērigō, rigere, rēxī, rēctus, [ex + regō], *raise up.*

ēripiō, ripere, ripuī, reptus, [ex + rapiō, *seize*], *snatch away, take away; rescue, free.*

errō, 1, *wander; be mistaken.*

ērumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptus, [ex + rumpō, *break*], *break forth, rush forth, sally forth.*

ēruptiō, ōnis, [ērumpō], f., *a breaking forth; sally, sortie.*

essedārius, ī, [essedum], m., *chariot-fighter.*

essedum, ī, n., *war-chariot.*

Esuviī, ōrum, m., a tribe dwelling in northwestern Gaul.

et, conj., *and.* **et . . . et**, *both . . . and.*

etiam, [et + jam], conj., *also; even; further.* **nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam**, *not only . . . but also.*

etsī, [et + sī], conj., *even if; although, though.*

ēvādō, vādere, vāsī, vāsūrus, [ex + vādō], *escape.*

ēvellō, vellere, vellī, vulsus, [ex + vellō, *pluck*], *pull out.*

ēveniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, [ex + veniō], *turn out, fall out.*

ēventus, ūs, [ēveniō], m., *outcome, issue; chance, vicissitude, mischance; accident.*

ēvocātus, ī, [ēvocō], m., *a veteran* who voluntarily reëntered the service after his discharge; *volunteer.*

ēvocō, [ex + vocō], 1, *call out, call forth, summon; invite.*

ēvolō, [ex + volō, *fly*], 1, *fly out, rush out, dash out.*

ex, **ē**, (but *ē* is not used before vowels), prep. with abl., *from, out of; of; since, after; because of, on account of; according to, on.*

exāctus, perf. pass. partic. of **exigō.**

exagitō, [ex + agitō, freq. of **agō**], 1, *harass.*

exāminō, [exāmen, *tongue of a balance*], 1, *weigh.*

exanimō, [exanimus], 1, *deprive of breath* or *life, kill;* pass., *be exhausted, be out of breath.*

exārdēscō, ārdēscere, ārsī, ārsūrus, [ex + ārdēscō], *flare up; be incensed.*

exaudiō, dīre, dīvī, dītus, [ex + audiō], *hear, hear clearly.*

excēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, [ex + cēdō], *go out, go away, withdraw, depart.*

excellō, cellere, celsum, *be eminent, surpass.*

excelsus, a, um, [excellō], adj., *high.*

exceptō, [freq. of excipiō], 1, *catch up, pick up.*

exceptus, perf. pass. partic. of **excipiō.**

excīdō, cīdere, cīdī, cīsus, [ex + caedō], *cut down.*

excipiō, cipere, cēpī, ceptus, [ex + capio], *take up, pick up; catch, cut off; meet, cope with, withstand; follow, succeed; hear; relieve.*

excitō, [ex + citō, *set in motion*], 1, *raise, rear; rouse, fire, kindle.*

exclūdō, clūderę, clūsī, clūsus, [ex + claudō], *shut out, cut off; hinder, detain, keep from.*

excōgitō, [ex + cōgitō], 1, *think out, devise.*

excruciō, [ex + cruciō, *torture*], 1, *torture.*

excubitor, ōris, [excubō], m., *sentinel.*

excubō, cubāre, cubuī, cubitus, [ex + cubō, *lie down*], *lie outside the camp* or *tent; keep watch.*

exculcō, [ex + calcō, *trample*], 1, *tread down.*

excursiō, ōnis, [ex + currō], f., *a running out; sally.*

excūsātiō, ōnis, [excūsō], f. *excuse.*

excūsō, [ex + causa], 1, *excuse.*

exemplum, ī, [eximō, *take out*], n., *example, practice, precedent; punishment.*

exeō, īre, iī, itūrus, [ex + eō], *go forth, go out, emigrate, go away, withdraw, depart.*

exerceō, ercēre, ercuī, ercitus, [ex + arceō, *restrain*], *train, practice.*

exercitātiō, ōnis, [exercitō], f., *practice, training, exercise.*

exercitātus, a, um, [exercitō], adj., *trained, experienced.*

exercitus, ūs, [exerceō], m., *army*, as a trained body of troops.

exhauriō, haurīre, hausī, haustus, [ex + hauriō, *drain*], *draw out, take out.*

exigō, igere, ēgī, āctus, [ex + agō], *drive out; spend, pass.*

exiguē, [exiguus], adv., *scarcely.*

exiguĭtās, ātis, [exiguŭs], f., *scantiness, shortness; small number.*

exiguŭs, a, um, [exigō], adj., *small, brief, scanty.*

eximius, a, um, [eximō], adj., *conspicuous, special.*

exīstimātiō, ōnis, [exīstimō], f., *opinion, judgment.*

exīstimō, [ex + aestimō, *reckon*], 1, *consider, think, judge, suppose.*

exitus, ūs, [exeō], m., *a going out, way out, exit; end, outcome, issue.*

expediō, pedīre, pedīvī, pedītus, [ex + pēs], *extricate, get ready.*

expedītiō, ōnis, [expediō], f., *expedition.*

expedītus, a, um, [expediō], adj., *unencumbered, light-armed, without baggage; ready, easy, unoccupied.*

expellō, pellere, pulī, pulsus, [ex + pellō], *drive out, expel, dispel, banish, drive away.*

experior, perīrī, pertus, dep., *try, make the experiment, make trial of.*

expiō, [ex + piō, *appease*], 1, *expiate, atone for.*

expleō, plēre, plēvī, plētus, [ex + pleō, *fill*], *fill out, complete, fill up; make good.*

explōrātor, ōris, [explōrō], m., *scout.*

explōrātus, -a, um, [explōrō], adj., *assured, certain, sure.*

explōrō, [ex + plōrō, *bring complaint*], 1, *examine, investigate, learn, discover; reconnoitre.*

expōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, [ex + pōnō], *set out; array, draw up; land; set forth, explain, describe, communicate.*

exportō, [ex + portō], 1, *carry off.*

exposcō, poscere, poposcī, [ex + poscō], *demand (eagerly).*

exprimō, primere, pressī, pressus, [ex + premō], *press out; wring, extort; raise up.*

expugnātiō, ōnis, [expugnō], f., *taking by storm, capture by assault.*

expugnō, [ex + pugnō], 1, *take by storm, take by assault.*

expulsus, perf. pass. partic. of **expellō**.

exquīrō, quīrere, quīsīvī, quīsītus, [ex + quaerō], *examine into; ask for.*

exquīsītus, perf. pass. partic. of **exquīrō**.

exsequor, sequī, secūtus, [ex + sequor], dep., *follow up, maintain, vindicate.*

exserō, serere, seruī, sertus, [ex + serō], *thrust out; bare.*

exsertus, perf. pass. partic. of **exserō**.

exsistō, sistere, stitī, [ex + sistō], *stand forth; arise; project.*

exspectō, [ex + spectō], 1, *look for, await, wait for, expect.*

exspoliō, [ex + spoliō], 1, *rob, deprive.*

exstinguō, stinguere, stīnxī, stīnctus, [ex + stinguō, *put out*], *extinguish.*

exstō, stāre, [ex + stō], *stand out, be above.*

exstruō, struere, strūxī, strūctus, [ex + struō, *pile*], *pile up, raise up; rear, build.*

exsul, ulis, [ex + SAL, *leap, dance; out of the dance*], m., *exile.*

exter or exterus, a, um, [ex], adj., *outer, outside, foreign.* Superl. **extrēmus**, *furthest, remotest, last, extreme, at the rear, at the end.*

exterreō, ēre, uī, itus, [ex + terreō], *frighten (thoroughly).*

extimēscō, timēscere, timuī, [ex + timēscō], *fear greatly, dread.*

extorqueō, torquēre, torsī, tortus, [ex + torqueō, *twist*], *wrest from, force from.*

extrā, [exter], prep. with acc., *outside, outside of, beyond.*

extrahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctus, [ex + trahō, *draw*], *draw out; drag out, waste.*

extrūdō, trūdere, trūsī, trūsus, [ex + trūdō], *thrust out; keep out.*

exuō, uere, uī, ūtus, *strip off, despoil, deprive.*

exūrō, ūrere, ussī, ūstus, [ex + ūrō, *burn*], *burn up.*

faber, fabrī, m., *mechanic, artisan, workman.*

Fabius, ī, m.: 1) *Quintus Fabius Maximus*, who conquered the Allobroges and Arverni in 121 B.C. 2) *C. Fabius*, a lieutenant of Caesar. 3) *Lucius Fabius*, a centurion.

facile, facilius, facillimē, [facilis], adv., *easily, readily, without difficulty.*

facilis, e, [faciō], adj., *easy, convenient.*

facinus, oris, [faciō], n., originally *deed;* then *evil deed, crime.*

faciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *make, do; act; prepare, build, erect, construct; occasion, cause, bring about; form; furnish; execute, accomplish, perform;* pass., fiō, fierī, factus sum. **certiōrem facere**, *to inform.*

factiō, ōnis, [faciō], f., *faction; party, clique.*

factum, ī, [faciō], n., *act, deed, exploit, achievement.*

facultās, ātis, [facilis], f., *ability; opportunity, permission, privilege; abundance, supply;* pl., *means, resources, wealth.*

fāgus, ī, f., *beech-tree.*

fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsus, *deceive; disappoint.*

falsus, a, um, [partic. of **fallō**], adj., *false, groundless.*

falx, falcis, f., *sickle; hook.*

fāma, ae, [fārī, *to speak*], f., *report; reputation, fame.*

famēs, is, f., *hunger, starvation.*

familia, ae, [famulus, *slave*], f., *body of slaves* or *retainers; household, house, family.* **māter familiae**, *matron.*

familiāris, e, [familia], adj., *belonging to the family, private.* **rēs familiāris**, *private property.* As noun, **familiāris**, is, m., *friend, intimate.*

familiāritās, ātis, [familiāris], f., *intimacy, intimate friendship.*

fās, [fārī, *to speak*], indecl., n., with *est, it is right, lawful, destined.*

fastīgātē, [fastīgātus], adv., *slanting.*

fastīgātus, a, um, [fastīgium], adj., *sloping.*

fastīgium, ī, n., *peak; height; slope.*

fātum, ī, [fārī, *to speak, foretell*], n., *fate.*

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautūrus, *be favorable, favor, support.*

fax, facis, f., *torch, firebrand.*

fēlīcitās, ātis, [fēlīx], f., *happiness, good fortune.*

fēlīciter, [fēlīx], adv., *fortunately, favorably.*

fēmina, ae, f., *woman, female.*

femur, oris and inis, n., *thigh.*

fera, ae, [ferus], f., *wild beast.*

ferāx, ācis, [ferō], adj., *fertile.*

ferē, adv., *about, almost, nearly; roughly speaking, as a rule, usually, generally.*

ferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, *bear, carry, bring, carry forward, advance; endure, suffer, admit; carry off, carry away, remove; propose, offer; inflict; win, gain, receive; report;* pass. *rush, hurry, flow.*

ferrāmentum, ī, [ferrum], n., *iron tool.*

ferrāria, ae, [ferrum], f., *iron mine.*

ferreus, a, um, [ferrum], adj., *of iron, made of iron.*

ferrum, ī, n., *iron; sword.*
fertilis, e, [ferō], adj., *fertile.*
fertilitās, ātis, [fertilis], f., *fertility.*
ferus, a, um, adj., *wild; savage.*
fervefaciō, facere, fēcī, factus, [ferveō + faciō], *make hot, set a burning.*
ferveō, ēre, *be hot, burn.*
festūca, ae, f., *rammer, pile-driver.*
fībula, ae, [fīgō, *fasten*], f., *pin; bolt.*
fidēlis, e, [fidēs], adj., *faithful, trusty.*
fidēs, eī, f., *faith, trust, confidence, belief, credit; honor, promise; loyalty, devotion; protection.*
fīdūcia, ae, [fīdus], f., *confidence, reliance, assurance.*
figūra, ae, [fingō], f., *shape, form.*
fīlia, ae, f., *daughter.*
fīlius, ī, m., *son.*
fingō, fingere, fīnxī, fictus, *make up, fashion; invent; control.*
fīniō, fīnīre, fīnīvī, fīnītus, [fīnis], *bound, limit; measure.*
fīnis, is, m., *end, border, boundary;* pl., *country, land, territory.*
fīnitimus, a, um, [fīnis], adj., *bordering on, adjoining to, neighboring.* Noun, **fīnitimī**, ōrum, m., *neighbors.*
fīō, fierī, factus, *be made, be done; become, occur, arise, take place, happen, come about.* **certior fierī**, *to be informed.*
fīrmiter, [fīrmus], adv., *solidly, firmly.*
fīrmitūdō, inis, [fīrmus], f., *solidity, staunchness.*
fīrmō, [fīrmus], 1, *make solid, strengthen.*
fīrmus, a, um, adj., *sturdy, strong; powerful; stout, thick.*
Flaccus, ī, see **Valerius.**
flāgitō, 1, *demand.*
flamma, ae, [flagrō, *burn*], f., *flame, fire.*
flectō, flectere, flexī, flexus, *bend, turn.*
fleō, flēre, flēvī, flētus, *weep.*
flētus, ūs, [fleō], m., *weeping.*
flō, 1, *blow.*
flōrēns, entis, [flōreō], adj., *blooming, flourishing; influential.*
flōs, flōris, m., *flower.*
flūctus, ūs, [fluō], m., *wave; water.*
flūmen, inis, [fluō], n., *river, stream.* **flūmine adversō**, *up the stream.*
fluō, fluere, flūxī, flūxum, *flow.*
fodiō, fodere, fōdī, fossus, *dig.*
foedus, foederis, [fidēs], n., *treaty.*
fore = **futūrum esse.** *to be about to be*
forem = **essem.**
forīs, [foris, *door*], adv., *out of doors; outside.*
fōrma, ae, f., *shape, form.*
fors, fortis, [ferō, *bring*], f., *chance.*
forte, [abl. of **fors**], adv., *by chance, by accident.*
fortis, e, adj., *strong, sturdy, brave, courageous, gallant.*
fortiter, [fortis], adv., *sturdily, bravely, courageously.*
fortitūdō, inis, [fortis], f., *bravery.*
fortuītō, [fortuītus], adv., *by chance.*
fortūna, ae, [fors], f., *fortune, chance, luck; good fortune; lot, fate, condition;* pl., *fortunes, property, possessions; misfortune.*
fortūnātus, a, um, [fortūna], adj., *prosperous, fortunate.*
forum, ī, n., *market-place, forum.*
fossa, ae, [fodiō], f., *trench, ditch.*

fovea, ae, f., *pitfall.*
frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctus, *break; wreck, shatter.*
frāter, tris, m., *brother.*
frāternus, a, um, [frāter], adj., *brotherly, of a brother.*
fraus, fraudis, f., *fraud, deception.*
fremitus, ūs, [fremō], m., *uproar, noise.*
frequēns, entis, adj., *numerous, in numbers.*
frētus, a, um, adj., *relying on.*
frīgidus, a, um, [frīgeō], adj., *cold.*
frīgus, frīgoris, n., *cold, cold weather.*
frōns, frontis, f., *forehead; front.*
frūctuōsus, a, um, [frūctus], adj., *fertile.*
frūctus, ūs, m., *fruit, product; income; advantage.*
frūgēs, um, f., pl., *fruits, crops, produce.*
frūmentārius, a, um, [frūmentum], adj., *pertaining to grain* or *grain supplies; abounding in grain.* **rēs frūmentāria**, *grain supplies.*
frūmentātiō, ōnis, [frūmentor], f., *getting grain; foraging, foraging expedition.*
frūmentor, [frūmentum], 1, dep., *procure grain.*
frūmentum, ī, n., *grain;* pl., *grain-crops.*
fruor, fruī, fruitūrus, dep., *enjoy.*
frūstrā, adv., *in vain, without effect.*
Fūfius, ī, m., *Gaius Fufius Cita*, a Roman knight.
fuga, ae, f., *flight.*
fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus, *flee; avoid, shun, flee from; escape.*
fugitīvus, a, um, [fugiō], adj., *fleeing;* noun, **fugitīvus**, ī, m., *runaway slave.*
fugō, [fuga], 1, *put to flight, rout.*
fūmō, [fūmus], 1, *smoke.*
fūmus, ī, m., *smoke.*
funda, ae, f., *sling.*
funditor, ōris, [funda], m., *slinger.*
fundō, fundere, fūdi, fūsus, *pour; hurl, throw; scatter, rout.*
fungor, fungī, fūnctus, dep., *perform, discharge.*
fūnis, is, m., *rope; cable; stay;* pl., *halyards.*
fūnus, eris, n., *funeral;* pl., *obsequies.*
furor, ōris, [furō], m., *madness, rage.*
fūrtum, ī, [fūr, *thief*], n., *theft.*
fūsilis, e, [fundō], adj., *molten, liquid.*
futūrus, a, um, fut. partic. of **sum.**

Gabalī, ōrum, m., a tribe of southeastern Gaul.
Gabīnius, ī, m., *Aulus Gabinius*, consul in 58 B.C.
gaesum, ī, n., *a heavy javelin.*
Gāius, ī, [abbreviated C.], m., a Roman first name.
Galba, ae, m.: 1) *Servius Sulpicius Galba*, a lieutenant of Caesar. 2) *Galba*, a chief of the Suessiones.
galea, ae, f., *helmet.*
Gallia, ae, [Gallus], f., *Gaul.*
Gallicus, a, um, [Gallus], adj., *of Gaul, Gallic.*
gallīna, ae, [gallus, *cock*], f., *hen.*
Gallus, a, um, adj., *Gallic;* noun, m., *a Gaul.* Also see **Trebius.**
Garumna, ae, m., *Garonne*, a river of southwestern France.
Garumnī, ōrum, m., an Aquitanian tribe.
Gatēs, ium, m., an Aquitanian tribe.

gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, semi-dep., *rejoice, be glad.*

gāvīsus, perf. partic. of **gaudeō.**

Geidumnī, ōrum, m., a Belgian tribe.

Genava, ae, f., a city of the Allobroges, on Lake Lemannus, the modern Geneva.

gener, generī, m., *son-in-law.*

generātim, [genus], adv., *by tribes.*

gēns, gentis, f., [GEN, *beget*], *clan, tribe, nation, people.*

genus, generis, n., [GEN, *beget*], *birth, descent; race; kind, method, manner, character, nature.*

Gergovia, ae, f., *Gergovia*, chief stronghold of the Arverni.

Germānia, ae, [Germānus], f., *Germany.*

Germānicus, a, um, [Germānī], adj., *German.*

Germānus, a, um, adj., *German;* noun, **Germānī**, ōrum, m., pl., *Germans.*

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestus, *do, carry on, conduct, manage, attend to, consider; accomplish, perform; wage;* of offices, *fill.*

gestus, perf. pass. partic. of **gerō.**

gladius, ī, m., *sword.*

glāns, glandis, f., *acorn; bullet.*

glēba, ae, f., *clod of earth; mass.*

glōria, ae, f., *renown, reputation, glory.*

glōrior, [glōria], 1, dep., *boast, boast of.*

Gnaeus, ī, m., a Roman first name.

Gobannitiō, ōnis, m., an Arvernian.

Gorgobina, ae, f., a town of the Boji in the country of the Haedui.

Graecus, a, um, adj., *Greek, Grecian;* noun, **Graecus**, ī, m., *a Greek.*

Graiocelī, ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe inhabiting the Alps.

grandis, e, adj., *large.*

grātia, ae, [grātus], f., *favor, goodwill; popularity, regard; gratitude; influence;* pl., **grātiae**, ārum, *thanks.* **grātiā**, *for the sake of, on account of.*

grātulātiō, ōnis, [grātulor], f., *rejoicing, congratulation.*

grātulor, ārī, ātus, [grātus], 1, dep., *congratulate.*

grātus, a, um, adj., *pleasing, welcome.*

gravis, e, adj., *heavy, burdensome; hard, dangerous, serious, severe, difficult; important.*

gravitās, ātis, [gravis], f., *weight; importance, power.*

graviter, [gravis], adv., *heavily, with effect; severely, bitterly; greatly, seriously; with reluctance, unwillingly.* **graviter ferre**, *be distressed at, annoyed at.*

gravō, [gravis], 1, *weigh down;* pass., *hesitate, be reluctant.*

Grudiī, ōrum, m., a Belgian tribe.

gubernātor, ōris, [gubernō, *steer*], m., *pilot.*

gustō, [gustus, *tasting*], 1, *taste, eat of.*

Gutruātus, ī, m., a chieftain of the Carnutes.

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitus, *have, possess, keep; regard, consider, reckon; treat, hold; make, involve; entertain, feel; deliver; know.*

Haeduī, ōrum, m., *the Haedui.*

Haeduus, a, um, *Haeduan.*

haesitō, [freq. of haereō], 1, *stick fast.*

hāmus, ī, m., *hook.*

harpagō, ōnis, m., *grappling-hook.*

Harūdēs, um, m., pl., a Germanic tribe.

haud, adv., *not at all, not.*

Helvēticus, a, um, adj., *Helvetian.*

Helvētius, a, um, adj., *of the Helvetii, Helvetian;* noun, **Helvētiī**, ōrum, m., pl., *the Helvetii, Helvetians.*

Helviī, ōrum, m., a Gallic people in "the Province."

Hercynius, a, um, adj., *Hercynian.* **Silva Hercynia**, an extensive forest of southern Germany.

hērēditās, ātis, [hērēs, *heir*], f., *inheritance.*

Hibernia, ae, f., *Ireland.*

hībernus, a, um, [hiems], adj., *of winter;* noun, **hīberna**, ōrum, (*i.e.* **castra**), n., pl., *winter-quarters.*

hīc, haec, hōc, dem. pron., *this; he, she, it; the following.*

hīc, [hīc], adv., *here, in this place.*

hiemō, [hiems], 1, *pass the winter, winter.*

hiems, hiemis, f., *winter; stormy season; storm.*

hinc, [hīc], adv., *hence, from this place.*

Hispānia, ae, f., *Spain.*

Hispānus, a, um, adj., *Spanish.*

homō, hominis, c., *human being, man.*

honestus, a, um, [honōs], adj., *honored, honorable, worthy.*

honōrificus, a, um, [honōs + faciō], adj., *conferring honor, honorable.*

honōs, or **honor**, ōris, m., *honor, respect; post of honor, office.*

hōra, ae, f., *hour*, a twelfth part of the day, from sunrise to sunset, varying in length according to the time of year.

horreō, horrēre, horruī, *tremble at, shudder at.*

horribilis, e, [horreō], adj., *awful, dreadful.*

horridus, a, um, [horreō], adj., *frightful.*

hortor, 1, dep., *urge, exhort, encourage, cheer, fire.*

hospes, hospitis, m., *stranger, guest-friend.*

hospitium, ī, [hospes], n., *guest-friendship, friendship.*

hostis, is, m., *enemy.*

hūc, [hīc], adv., *hither, here, to this, to these.*

hūmānitās, ātis, [hūmānus], f., *humanity; refinement, cultivation.*

hūmānus, a, um, [homō], adj., *cultivated, civilized.*

humilis, e, [humus], adj., *low, shallow; weak, lowly, unimportant.*

humilitās, ātis, [humilis], f., *lowness, shallowness; insignificance.*

ibi, [is], adv., *in that place, there.*

Iccius, ī, m., a chief of the Remi.

ictus, ūs, [icō, *strike*], m., *stroke, thrust, blow.*

Id., = **Īdūs.**

idcircō, [id + abl. of circus], adv., *on that account, therefore.*

īdem, eadem, idem, dem. pron., *the same.*

identidem, [idem et idem], adv., *again and again, repeatedly.*

idōneus, a, um, adj., *suitable, fit, suited, favorable.*

Īdūs, uum, f., pl., *the Ides*, the fifteenth of March, May, July, and October; the thirteenth of the other months.

īgnis, is, m., *fire.*

ignōbilis, e, [in- + (g)nōbilis], adj., *unknown; obscure.*

ignōminia, ae, [in- + nōmen], f., *disgrace, dishonor.*

ignōrō, [cf. **ignōscō**], *be ignorant of, not to know;* pass. *pass unnoticed.*

ignōscō, gnōscere, gnōvī, gnōtus, [in- + (g)nōscō, *know*], *pardon.*

ignōtus, a, um, [in- + (g)nōtus], adj., *unknown.*

illātus, perf. pass. partic. of **īnferō.**

ille, illa, illud, dem. pron., *that; he, she, it.*

illīc, [ille], adv., *there, in that place.*

illigō, [in + ligō, *bind*], 1, *bind; fasten.*

illō, [ille], adv., *thither, there, to that place; to that end.*

illūstris, e, [in + lūx], adj., *distinguished, prominent.*

Illyricum, ī, n., *Illyricum*, a Roman province to the east of the Adriatic Sea.

imbēcillitās, ātis, [imbēcillus], f., *weakness.*

imber, imbris, m., *rain, rainstorm.*

imitor, 1, dep., *copy, imitate.*

immānis, e, [in + mānus, *good*], adj., *monstrous, enormous, huge.*

immineō, minēre, [in + mineō, *overhang*], *overhang; threaten.*

immittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, [in + mittō], *send in, send forward against; hurl; let in, let down, lower.*

immolō, [in + mola, *sacrificial meal*], 1, lit. *sprinkle with meal; sacrifice.*

immortālis, e, [in- + mortālis], adj., *immortal.*

immūnis, e, [in + mūnus], adj., *free from burdens, free from taxes.*

immūnitās, ātis, [immūnis], f., *freedom from burdens, immunity.*

imparātus, a, um, [in- + parātus], adj., *unprepared.*

impedīmentum, ī, [impediō], n., *hindrance, obstacle;* pl., **impedīmenta**, ōrum, n., *baggage, belongings; pack horses.*

impediō, pedīre, pedīvī, pedītus, [in- + pēs], *hinder, impede, obstruct, block, embarrass, interfere with; engage, occupy.*

impedītus, a, um, [impediō], partic. and adj., *hindered, hampered, embarrassed, obstructed; difficult, impassable.*

impellō, pellere, pulī, pulsus, [in + pellō], *impel, induce, move.*

impendeō, pendēre, [in + pendeō], *overhang.*

impēnsus, a, um, [impendō], adj., *expensive, high.*

imperātor, ōris, [imperō], m., *commander-in-chief, general.*

imperātum, ī, [imperō], n., *command, order, bidding.*

imperfectus, a, um, [in- + perfectus], adj., *unfinished, incomplete.*

imperītus, a, um, [in- + perītus], adj., *inexperienced, unskilled, unfamiliar.*

imperium, i, [imperō], n., *command, order; power, rule, government, dominion, empire.*

imperō, 1, *command, order; demand, levy; exercise power; hold command.*

impetrō, [in + patrō, *perform*], 1, *obtain one's request, obtain, secure.*

impetus, ūs, [in + petō], m., *attack, assault, onset; vehemence, fury.*

impius, a, um, [in- + pius], adj., *impious.*

implicō, āre, āvī or uī, ātus or itus, [in + plicō, *fold*], *entwine; combine.*

implōrō, [in + plōrō, *cry out*], 1, *implore, beseech.*

impōnō, pōnĕre, posuī, positus, [in + pōnō], *place in, place on; mount.*

importō, [in + portō], 1, *bring in, import.*

improbus, a, um, [in- + probus, *good*], adj., *bad, unprincipled.*

improvīsō, [improvīsus], adv., *unexpectedly.*

improvīsus, a, um, [in- + prōvideō], adj., *unexpected.* **dē improvīsō**, *unexpectedly, suddenly.*

imprūdēns, entis, [in- + prōvideō], adj., *not foreseeing, unaware, off one's guard.*

imprūdentia, ae, [imprūdēns], f., *want of foresight, indiscretion, ignorance.*

impūbes, eris, [in- + pūbēs, *manhood*], adj., *youthful; unmarried.*

impugnō, [in + pugnō], 1, *attack, charge.*

impulsus, ūs, [impellō], m., *impulse, instigation.*

impulsus, perf. pass. partic. of **impellō.**

impūne, [impūnis], adv., *without punishment, with impunity.*

impūnitās, ātis, [impūnis], f., *exemption from punishment, impunity.*

īmus, superl. of **īnferus.**

in, prep.: 1) With acc.: *into, to, on, upon; against, towards; till, up to; with reference to, concerning; for; over; according to; among.* **in diēs**, *daily.* 2) With abl.: *in, on, at, upon, among; in case of, with reference to; in the course of, within.*

inānis, e, adj., *empty; light.*

incautē, [incautus], adv., *incautiously, heedlessly.*

incautus, a, um, [in- + cautus], adj., *careless, off one's guard.*

incendium, ī, [incendō], n., *fire, burning.*

incendō, cendere, cendī, cēnsus, [in, cf. **candeō**, *shine*], *set fire to, rouse.*

incēnsus, perf. pass. partic. of **incendō.**

inceptus, perf. pass. partic. of **incipiō.**

incertus, a, um, [in- + certus], adj., *uncertain; indefinite; untrustworthy; in confusion.*

incidō, cidere, cidī, [in + cadō], *fall on, fall upon; fall in with; befall, occur.*

incīdō, cīdere, cīdī, cīsus, [in + caedō], *cut into.*

incipiō, cipere, cēpī, ceptus, [in + capiō], *begin, commence, undertake.*

incīsus, perf. pass. partic. of **incīdō.**

incitō, [in + citō, *set in motion*], 1, *set in motion, quicken; urge, urge on, rouse, infuriate.* **sē incitāre**, *rush in, rush on.*

incognitus, a, um, [in- + partic. of cognōscō], adj., *unknown.*

incolō, colere, coluī, [in + colō], *inhabit; dwell.*

incolumis, e, [in + CEL, *strike*], adj. *unhurt, uninjured, safe, without loss.*

incommodē, [incommodus], adv., *disadvantageously, unfortunately.*

incommodum, ī, [incommodus], *disadvantage, inconvenience; injury, harm; disaster, defeat.*

incrēdibilis, e, [in- + crēdibilis], adj., *incredible, marvellous.*

increpitō, āre, [freq. of increpō, *blame*], *blame; mock, taunt.*

incumbō, ere, incubuī, incubitum, [in + CUB, *lie*], *bend to; devote oneself to.*

incursiō, ōnis, [incurrō], f., *raid, inroad, attack.*

incursus, ūs, [incurrō], m., *advance, approach, attack.*

incūsō, [in + causa], 1, *reproach, censure.*

inde, adv., *from there, thence; thereupon, then.*

indicium, ī, [indicō, *show*], n., *information, evidence.*

indīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus, [in + dīcō], *declare, announce; appoint.*

indictus, perf. pass. partic. of **indīcō**.

indictus, a, um, [in- + dictus], adj., *unsaid; undefended, untried.*

indignē, [indignus], adv., *shamefully.*

indignitās, ātis, [indignus], f., *shame, disgrace; indignity.*

indignor, [indignus], 1, dep., *deem unworthy; be indignant.*

indignus, a, um, [in- + dignus], adj., *unworthy.*

indīligēns, entis, [in- + dīligēns], adj., *careless, negligent.*

indīligenter, [indīligēns], adv., *carelessly.*

indīligentia, ae, [indīligēns], f., *negligence, neglect.*

indūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, [in + dūcō], *lead in; induce, impel; cover.*

inductus, perf. pass. partic. of **indūcō**.

indulgentia, ae, [indulgēns], f., *kindness, favor.*

indulgeō, dulgēre, dulsī, dultum, *favor, indulge.*

induō, duere, duī, dūtus, *put on;* **sē induere**, *impale oneself.*

industriē, [industrius], adv., *actively.*

indūtiae, ārum, f., pl., *truce, armistice.*

Indutiomārus, ī, m., a chief of the Treveri.

ineō, īre, īvī or iī, itus, [in + eō], *begin, enter upon, undertake; secure, win; reckon up, compute.*

inermis, e, [in- + arma], adj., *unarmed.*

iners, ertis, [in- + ars], adj., *without skill; indolent; unmanly.*

īnfāmia, ae, [īnfāmis, from in- + fāma], f., *shame, disgrace.*

īnfāns, antis, [in- + for, *speak*], *infant, young child.*

īnfectus, a, um, [in- + factus], adj., *unaccomplished.*

īnferō, ferre, intulī, illātus, [n + ferō], *bring in, import; place upon, put upon; bring; wage; inflict; bring forward, allege; cause, occasion.*

īnferus, a, um, adj., found in Caesar only in the comparative, **īnferior**, and the superlative, **īnfimus** or **īmus**. 1) Comp., *lower, lower part of; inferior, weaker.* 2) Superl., *lowest, lowest part of, bottom.*

īnfēstus, a, um, [in + fendō, *strike*], *hostile.*

īnficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectus, [in + faciō], *stain, dye.*

īnfidēlis, e, [in- + fidēlis], adj., *untrustworthy, faithless.*

īnfīgō, fīgere, fīxī, fīxus, [in + fīgō], *fasten in, fix in.*

īnfimus, superl. of **īnferus.**

īnfīnītus, a, um, [in + fīnītus, from fīniō], adj., *boundless, vast.*

īnfīrmitās, ātis, [īnfīrmus], f., *weakness; fickleness.*

īnfīrmus, a, um, [in- + fīrmus], adj., *weak; disheartened, timid.*

īnflectō, flectere, flexī, flexus, [in + flectō], *bend, bend down.*

īnflexus, perf. pass. partic. of **īnflectō.**

īnfluō, fluere, fluxī, fluxum, [in + fluō], *flow into.*

īnfodiō, fodere, fōdī, fossus, [in + fodiō, *dig*], *bury.*

īnfrā, [īnferus], adv. and prep. with acc., *below.*

ingēns, entis, adj., *huge, vast, large.*

ingrātus, a, um, [in- + grātus], adj., *unwelcome.*

ingredior, gredī, gressus, [in + gradior, *step*], dep., *enter, pass.*

iniciō, icere, jēcī, jectus, [in + jac], *throw in; lay on; inspire.*

inimīcitia, ae, [inimīcus], f., *enmity.*

inimīcus, a, um, [in- + amīcus], adj., *unfriendly, hostile;* noun, **inimīcus**, ī, m., *enemy, personal enemy* as opposed to **hostis**, *a public enemy.*

inīquitās, ātis, [inīquus], f., *unevenness, difficulty, unfavorable character; unfairness, injustice.*

inīquus, a, um, [in- + aequus], adj., *uneven; unfavorable, disadvantageous; unfair.*

initium, ī, [ineō], n., *beginning, origin, commencement;* pl. *first principles.*

injectus, perf. pass. partic. of **iniciō.**

injungō, jungere, jūnxī, jūnctus, [in + jungō], *fasten to, impose.*

injūria, ae, [injūrius, in- + jūs], f., *wrong, damage, injury, outrage, injustice.*

(**injussus**, ūs), [in- + jussus], m., used only in abl.; *without the command.*

innāscor, nāscī, nātus, [in + nāscor], dep., *be born in, spring up.*

innātus, a, um, [innāscor], adj., *inborn.*

innītor, nītī, nīxus or nīsus, [in + nītor], dep., *lean on, rest on.*

innīxus, perf. pass. partic. of **innītor.**

innocēns, entis, [in- + nocēns], adj., *innocent.*

innocentia, ae, [innocēns], f., *blamelessness, integrity.*

inopia, ae, [inops, *needy*], f., *lack, want, need, dearth, privation.*

inopīnāns, antis, [in- + opīnāns], adj., *not expecting, off one's guard, unawares.*

inquam, defective, *say.*

īnsciēns, entis, [in- + sciēns], adj., *not knowing, ignorant.*

īnscientia, ae, [īnsciēns], f., *igno-*

rance, lack of knowledge, lack of familiarity with.

īnscius, a, um, [in- + sciō], adj., *not knowing, ignorant, not aware.*

īnsecūtus, perf. pass. partic. of **īnsequor.**

īnsequor, sequī, secūtus, [in + sequor], dep., *follow after, pursue.*

īnserō, serere, seruī, sertus, [in + serō], *insert.*

īnsidiae, ārum, [īnsideō], f., pl., *ambush, ambuscade; deception, stratagem, deceit.*

īnsidior, [īnsidiae], 1, dep., *lie in wait for.*

īnsigne, is, [īnsignis], n., *sign, mark; decoration, badge.*

īnsignis, e, [in + signum], adj., *marked, notable, signal.*

īnsiliō, silīre, siluī, [in + saliō, *leap*], *leap upon.*

īnsimulō, [in + simulō], 1, *charge, accuse.*

īnsinuō, [in + sinuō, *wind*], 1, *push in.* **sē īnsinuāre**, *work one's way in.*

īnsistō, sistere, stitī, [in + sistō], *stand upon; pursue, devote oneself.*

īnsolenter, [īnsolēns], adv., *arrogantly, insolently.*

īnspectō, [in + spectō], 1, *look at.* **īnspectantibus nōbīs**, *before our eyes.*

īnstabilis, e, [in- + stabilis], adj., *unsteady.*

īnstar, n., indecl., *likeness;* with gen., *like.*

īnstīgō, [in + STIG, *prick*], 1, *goad on.*

īnstituō, stituere, stituī, stitūtus, [in + statuō], *set up; draw up, array, arrange; determine upon; establish, institute; build, erect; get ready, prepare; begin; teach, train.*

īnstitūtum, ī, [īnstituō], n., *institution; arrangement, plan; custom.*

īnstō, stāre, stitī, stātūrus, [in + stō], *press on; be at hand, approach, threaten.*

īnstrūmentum, ī, [īnstruō], n., *stock, equipment, furniture.*

īnstruō, struere, strūxī, strūctus, [in + struō, *build*], *build; draw up; fit out, get ready, equip.*

īnsuēfactus, a, um, [īnsuēscō + faciō], adj., *trained.*

īnsuētus, a, um, [partic. of **īnsuēscō**], adj., *unaccustomed.*

īnsula, ae, f., *island.*

īnsuper, [in + super], adv., *above, on top.*

integer, gra, grum, [in- + TAG, *touch*], adj., *untouched, whole; unharmed; fresh.*

integō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus, [in + tegō], *cover.*

intellegō, legere, lēxī, lēctus, [inter + legō], *perceive, understand, know.*

intentus, a, um, [intendō], adj., *intent, bent on.*

inter, prep. with acc., *between, among; during.*

intercēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, [inter + cēdō], *go between; lie between, intervene; pass, elapse; occur, exist.*

intercipiō, cipere, cēpī, ceptus, [inter + capiō], *capture; cut off, intercept.*

interclūdō, clūdere, clūsī, clūsus, [inter + claudō], *cut off, shut off, block.*

interdīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictus, [in-

ter + dīcō], *forbid, prohibit, exclude.*

interdiū, [inter + diēs], adv., *by day.*

interdum, [inter + dum], adv., *at times.*

intereā, [inter + eā], adv., *in the meantime, meanwhile.*

intereō, īre, iī, itūrus, [inter + eō], *die, perish, be killed.*

interficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectus, [inter + faciō], *destroy, slay, kill.*

intericiō, icere, jēcī, jectus, [inter + jaciō], *place, put, pile, plant between;* passive, *lie between, intervene.*

interjectus, perf. pass. partic. of intericiō.

interim, [inter], adv., *in the meantime, meanwhile.*

interior, ius, [inter], *inner, interior.* **interiōrēs**, um, m., *those in the interior* of a land, or *inside* a town.

interitus, ūs, [intereō], m., *death.*

intermittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, [inter + mittō], *place between, let pass, stop, cease, relax;* pass. *be left vacant, not be occupied; stop, cease; be abandoned; intervene.*

interneciō, ōnis, [internecō, *kill*], f., *destruction, annihilation.*

interpellō, [inter + pellō, *speak*], 1, *interrupt, interfere with.*

interpōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, [inter + pōnō], *place between, interpose; pledge;* pass. *intervene, occur.*

interpres, pretis, m., *interpreter.*

interpretor, [interpres], 1, dep., *explain, interpret.*

interrogō, [inter + rogō], 1, *ask, question.*

interrumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptus, [inter + rumpō], *break down.*

interscindō, scindere, scidī, scissus, [inter + scindō], *tear down, destroy.*

intersum, esse, fuī, *be between; participate in.* **interest**, *it concerns, is important.*

intervāllum, ī, [inter + vāllum], n., *space between two palisades; interval, distance.*

intervenīō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, [inter + veniō], *arrive.*

interventus, ūs, [interveniō], m., *coming between, intervention.*

intexō, texere, texuī, textus, [in + texō, *weave*], *interweave.*

intoleranter, [intolerāns], adv., *violently.*

intrā, [cf. **inter**], prep. with acc., *inside of, within.*

intrītus, [in- + terō, *rub*], adj., *not wearied.*

intrō, [intrō, *within*], 1, *enter.*

introdūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, [intrō + dūcō], *lead into.*

introeō, īre, īvī, ——, [intrō + eō], *enter in.*

introitus, ūs, [introeō], m., *entrance.*

intrōmissus, perf. pass. partic. of intrōmittō.

intrōmittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, [intrō + mittō], *send in, let in.*

intrōrsus, [intrō + versus], adv., *within, on the inside, into the country.*

intrōrumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptus, [intrō + rumpō], *burst in.*

intueor, tuērī, tuitus, [in + tueor], dep., *look upon.*

intus, adv., *within.*

inūsitātus, a, um, [in- + partic. of ūsitor, freq. of ūtor], adj., *unusual, strange.*

inūtilis, e, [in- + ūtilis], adj., *useless, disadvantageous.*

inveniō, venīre, vēnī, ventus, [in + veniō], *come upon, find, discover; find out, learn.*

inventor, ōris, [inveniō], m., *inventor, author, originator.*

inveterāscō, veterāscere, veterāvī, [in + veterāscō, from vetus], *grow old; become established.*

invictus, a, um, [in- + partic. of vincō], adj., *unconquerable, invincible.*

invideō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus, [in + videō], *look askance at; be jealous of.*

invidia, ae, [invidus], f., *envy, jealousy.*

inviolātus, a, um, [in- + partic. of violō], adj., *inviolate, sacred.*

invītō, 1, *invite; attract.*

invītus, a, um, adj., *unwilling, reluctant.*

ipse, a, um, dem. pron., *self; himself, herself, itself;* pl. *themselves.*

īrācundia, ae, [īrācundus], f., *anger, rage.*

īrācundus, a, um, [īra, *anger*], adj., *passionate.*

irrīdeō, rīdēre, rīsī, rīsus, [in + rīdeō, *laugh*], *laugh at, deride.*

irrīdiculē, [in- + rīdiculē, from rīdeō, *laugh*], adv., *without wit.*

irrumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptus, [in + rumpō, *break*], *break in, break into, dash into.*

irruptiō, ōnis, [irrumpō], f., *raid, incursion; attack.*

is, ea, id, dem. pron., *that, this; such; he, she, it;* pl., *they.*

iste, a, ud, dem. pron., *that, that of yours.*

ita, [cf. is], adv., *so, thus; in such a way, to such an extent.* **nōn ita**, *not so very.*

Italia, ae, f., *Italy.*

itaque, [ita + que], adv., *and so, accordingly, therefore.*

item, adv., *likewise, in like manner, also.*

iter, itineris, [īre], n., *journey, march; way, road, route.*

iterum, adv., *again, a second time.*

Itius (portus), harbor whence Caesar embarked for Britain; either Wissant or Boulogne.

jaceō, jacēre, jacuī, jacitūrus, *lie; lie dead.* **jacentēs**, ium, m., *the fallen, the dead.*

jaciō, jacere, jēcī, jactus, *throw, hurl; throw up.* **ancorās jacere**, *cast* or *drop anchor.*

jactō, [freq. of jaciō], 1, *throw; toss about; discuss.*

jactūra, ae, [jaciō], f., *throwing away; loss, sacrifice.*

jaculum, ī, [jaciō], n., *javelin.*

jam, adv., *now, already; at once, straightway, immediately; at length; actually, even;* with negatives, *no more, no longer.*

juba, ae, f., *mane.*

jubeō, jubēre, jussī, jussus, *order, command, bid.*

jūdicium, ī, [jūdex], n., *judgment, decision; trial, court; opinion, wisdom; intention, purpose.*

jūdicō, [jūdex], 1, *decide, judge, determine; be of the opinion, believe; declare.*

jugum, ī, [JUG, *join*], n., *yoke; ridge* or *crest* of a hill.

jūmentum, ī, [JUG, *join*], n., *beast of burden, pack-animal.*
jūnctūra, ae, [jungō], f., *joint.*
jūnctus, perf. pass. partic. of **jungō**.
jungō, jungere, jūnxī, jūnctus, *join.*
jūnior, comp. of **juvenis**.
Jūnius, ī, m., *Quintus Junius*, a Spaniard in Caesar's service. See also **Brūtus**.
Juppiter, Jovis, m., *Jupiter*, chief Roman divinity.
Jūra, ae, m., *Jura*, a range of mountains in eastern Gaul.
jūrō, [jūs], 1, *swear.*
jūs, jūris, n., *right, law, justice, authority.*
jūs jūrandum, [jūrō], jūris jūrandī, n., *oath.*
(**jussus**, ūs), [jubeō], m.; abl. sing., *at the order, at the command.*
jūstitia, ae, [jūstus], f., *justice, fairness.*
jūstus, a, um, [jūs], adj., *just, fair; cogent, valid; regular.*
juvenis, e, adj., *young.* **jūniōrēs**, um, m., *younger men*, fit for service in war.
juventūs, ūtis, [juvenis], f., *youth, i.e. period of youth; young men.*
juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtus, *help, aid.*
jūxtā, adv., *near by.*

Kal. = Kalendae.
Kalendae, ārum, f., *Calends*, the first day of the month.

L. = Lūcius.
Laberius, ī, m., *Quintus Laberius Durus*, a tribune.
Lābiēnus, ī, m., *Titus Labienus*, a lieutenant of Caesar.
lābor, lābī, lāpsus, dep., *slip; fall away; revolt; be disappointed.*
labor, ōris, m., *work, toil, exertion, labor; suffering, hardship.*
labōrō, [labor], 1, *toil, strive; be in distress* or *danger, be hard pressed.*
labrum, ī, [LAB; cf. **lambō**, *lick*], n., *lip; edge; rim.*
lac, lactis, n., *milk.*
lacessō, ere, īvī, ītus, [laciō, *entice*], *harass, attack; challenge, provoke.*
lacrima, ae, f., *tear.*
lacrimō, [lacrima], 1, *weep.*
lacus, ūs, m., *lake.*
laedō, laedere, laesī, laesus, *injure; break.*
laetitia, ae, [laetus], f., *joy, gladness.*
laetus, a, um, adj., *glad, joyful.*
languidē, [languidus], adv., *feebly, without energy.*
languidus, a, um, [langueō, *be weak*], adj., *weak, exhausted.*
languor, ōris, [langueō, *be weak*], m., *weakness; exhaustion.*
lapis, idis, m., *stone.*
lāpsus, perf. pass. partic. of **lābor**.
laqueus, ī, m., *noose.*
largior, largīrī, largītus, [largus, *abundant*], dep., *give freely, bestow; bribe.*
largiter, [largus, *abundant*], adv., *richly, abundantly.*
largītiō, ōnis, [largior], f., *generosity, free-handedness.*
lassitūdō, inis, [lassus, *weary*], f., *weariness, exhaustion.*
lātē, [lātus], adv., *widely, broadly.*
latebra, ae, [lateō], f., *hiding-place.*
lateō, latēre, latuī, *lurk, be concealed; escape notice, lie hid; be unnoticed.*

lātitūdō, inis, [lātus], f., *breadth, width, extent.*

Latobrīgī, ōrum, m., a tribe dwelling near the Helvetii.

latrō, ōnis, m., *robber, freebooter.*

latrōcinium, ī, [latrōcinor, *plunder*], n., *robbery, brigandage, freebooting.*

lātus, a, um, adj., *broad, wide; extensive.*

lātus, perf. pass. partic. of **ferō**.

latus, eris, n., *side; flank.*

laudō, [laus], 1, *praise.*

laus, laudis, f., *praise, glory.*

lavō, āre, lāvī, lautus and lōtus, *wash;* pass. *bathe.*

laxō, 1, *loosen, extend, open up.*

lēgātiō, ōnis, [lēgō, *despatch*], f., *embassy.*

lēgātus, ī, [lēgō, *despatch*], m., *envoy, ambassador; lieutenant, deputy.*

legiō, ōnis, [legō, *collect*], f., *legion.*

legiōnārius, a, um, [legiō], adj., *of a legion, legionary.*

Lemannus (lacus), ī, m., *Lake Lemannus* (Lake Geneva).

Lemovīcēs, um, m., a tribe of central Gaul.

lēnis, e, adj., *gentle, smooth.*

lēnitās, ātis, [lēnis], f., *smoothness.*

lēniter, [lēnis], adv., *gently.*

Lepontiī, ōrum, m., an Alpine tribe.

lepus, oris, m., *hare.*

Leucī, ōrum, m., a tribe of central Gaul.

Levacī, ōrum, m., a Belgian tribe.

levis, e, adj., *light, slight, trivial, unimportant; silly, foolish.*

levitās, ātis, [levis], f., *lightness; fickleness, instability.*

levō, [levis], 1, *lighten; relieve.*

lēx, lēgis, f., *law, decree.*

Lexoviī, ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe dwelling near the mouth of the Seine.

libenter, [libēns, *glad*], adv., *willingly, gladly, readily.*

līber, era, erum, adj., *free, independent; unhampered.*

līberālitās, ātis, [līberālis], f., *generosity.*

līberāliter, [līberālis], adv., *generously, courteously, graciously.*

līberē, [līber], adv., *freely, fearlessly, readily.*

līberī, ōrum, [līber], m., pl., *children.*

līberō, [līber], 1, *free, set free; deliver.*

lībertās, ātis, [līber], f., *freedom, liberty, independence.*

lībrīlis, e, [lībra, *pound*], adj., *weighing a pound.*

licentia, ae, [licēns, from **licet**], f., *license; lawlessness; presumption.*

liceor, licērī, licitus, dep., *bid*, at auction.

licet, licēre, licuit and licitum est, impers., *it is allowed, it is permitted, it is lawful.*

Liger, eris, m., *the Loire*, the chief river of central Gaul.

lignātiō, ōnis, [lignor, from **lignum**, *wood*], f., *getting wood.*

lignātōr, ōris, [lignor, from **lignum**], m., *wood-cutter.*

līlium, ī, n., '*lily*,' a military device.

līnea, ae, [līneus, from līnum, *flax, linen*], f., *line.*

Lingonēs, um, m., pl., a tribe of central Gaul.

lingua, ae, f., *tongue; language.*

lingula, ae, [dim. of **lingua**], f., *tongue of land, spit.*

linter, tris, f., *canoe, skiff.*

līnum, ī, n., *flax, linen.*

līs, lītis, f., *strife; suit; damages.*

Liscus, ī, m., a magistrate of the Haedui.

Litaviccus, ī, m., a Haeduan chieftain.

littera, ae, f., *letter* of the alphabet; pl. **litterae**, ārum, *writing; letter, despatch; documents, records.*

lītus, oris, n., *shore, coast.*

locus, ī, m., pl. loca, ōrum, n., *place; locality, region; post, position; rank, origin; condition, occasion, opportunity.*

locūtus, perf. pass. partic. of **loquor.**

longē, [longus], adv., *at a distance, far off, far, by far.* **longius**, *further, longer.*

longinquus, a, um, [longus], adj., *remote, distant; long, long-continued.*

longitūdō, inis, [longus], f., *length.*

longurius, ī, [longus], m., *long pole.*

longus, a, um, *long, long-continued; late, distant; tedious.* **nāvis longa**, *ship of war.*

loquor, loquī, locūtus, dep., *speak, say.*

lōrīca, ae, [lōrum, *strap*], f., *coat of mail; breastworks.*

Lūcānius, ī, m., *Quintus Lucanius*, a centurion.

Lucterius, ī, m., one of the Cadurci.

Lugotorīx, īgis, m., a Briton.

lūna, ae, [for **lūcsna**; cf. **lūx**], f., *moon;* also *the moon-goddess.*

Lutetia, ae, f., a city of the Parisii on the Seine; the modern Paris.

lūx, lūcis, f., *light, daylight.* **prīmā luce**, *at dawn.*

lūxuria, ae, [lūxus, *excess*], f., *luxury, self-indulgence.*

M = 1000.

M. = *Marcus.*

māceria, ae, [mācerō, *soften*], f., originally *a wall of soft clay; wall.*

māchinātiō, ōnis, [māchinor, *contrive*], f., *engine, contrivance.*

maestus, a, um, [maereō, *be sad*], adj., *sad.*

magis, sup. **maximē**, [magnus], comp. adv., *more, rather.*

magistrātus, ūs, [magister], m., *magistracy, office; magistrate, official.* **magistrātūs**, *the authorities.*

magnificus, a, um, [magnus + faciō], adj., *magnificent, splendid.*

magnitūdō, inis, [magnus], f., *greatness, size, extent; magnitude, importance; severity.*

magnopere [for **magnō opere**], adv., *greatly; earnestly; thoroughly, completely.*

magnus, a, um, adj., *great, large, extensive, mighty, powerful, important, heavy, serious, loud.* **magnī**, *of great importance, of great account.*

majestās, ātis, [mājor], f., *greatness, majesty.*

majōrēs, um, or **majōrēs nātū**, [magnus], *ancestors, forefathers.*

malacia, ae, f., *calm.*

male, [malus], adv., *badly, unfortunately.*

maleficium, ī, [maleficus], n., *mischief, damage.*

mālō, mālle, māluī, ——, [magis + volō], *prefer.*

mālus, ī, m., *post; mast.*

mandātum, ī, [mandō], n., *commission, order, instruction; despatch.*

mandō, [manus + dō], 1, *consign, commit; order, direct, command.*

Mandubiī, ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe.

Mandubracius, i, m., a British chieftain.

māne, adv., *in the morning.*

maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, *remain, stay, continue; abide by.*

manipulāris, e, [manipulus], adj., *of a maniple;* noun, **manipulārēs**, m., pl., *soldiers of the same maniple.*

manipulus, ī, [manus + PLE, *full*], m., originally *handful* or *wisp* of straw, serving as standard of a military company; then *company, maniple.*

Manlius, ī, m., *Lucius Manlius*, a Roman commander.

mānsuēfaciō, facere, fēcī, factus, [mānsuētus, *tame* + faciō], *make tame, tame.*

mānsuētūdō, inis, [mānsuētus, *tame*], f., *kindness, gentleness.*

manus, ūs, f., *hand; band, force.*

Marcomannī, ōrum, m., a German tribe.

Mārcus, ī, m., a Roman first name.

mare, is, n., *the sea.*

maritimus, a, um, [mare], adj., *belonging to the sea, on the sea, near the sea; maritime, sea.*

Marius, ī, m., *Gaius Marius*, a Roman general; he defeated the Cimbrians and Teutons in 102 and 101 B.C.

Mārs, Mārtis, m., *Mars*, god of war; figuratively, *battle.*

mās, maris, m., *male.*

matara, ae, f., *javelin, spear.*

māter, tris, f., *mother.* **māter familiae**, *matron.*

māteria, ae, and **māteriēs**, ēī, f., *wood, building-wood, timber.*

māterior, [māteria], 1, dep., *procure timber.*

Matiscō, ōnis, f., a city of the Haedui, the modern *Mâcon.*

mātrimōnium, ī, [māter], n., *motherhood; marriage.*

Matrona, ae, m., *the Marne*, a tributary of the Seine.

mātūrē, [mātūrus], adv., *early.*

mātūrēscō, [mātūrus], ere, mātūruī, *grow ripe.*

mātūrō, [mātūrus], 1, *hasten.*

mātūrus, a, um, adj., *ripe; early.*

maximē, [maximus], superl. adv., *most, especially, particularly, very.*

maximus, superl. of **magnus.**

medeor, ērī, dep., *heal; relieve.*

mediocris, cre, [medius], adj., *middling; common, ordinary; slight, moderate.*

mediocriter, [mediocris], adv., *in an ordinary degree.*

Mediomatricī, ōrum, or **Mediomatricēs**, um, m., a tribe of central Gaul.

mediterrāneus, a, um, [medius + terra], adj., *inland.*

medius, a, um, adj., *middle, middle of, midst of; midway between.* **media nox**, *midnight.*

Meldī, ōrum, m., pl., *the Meldi*, a Gallic tribe.

melior, comp. of **bonus.**

melius, adv., comp. of **bene.**

membrum, ī, n., *limb.*

meminī, isse, defective, *remember.*

memoria, ae, [memor, *mindful*], f., *memory, recollection, remembrance; tradition.*

Menapiī, ōrum, m., pl., a Belgian tribe.

mendācium, ī, [mendāx, *false*], n., *lie, falsehood.*

mēns, mentis, f., *mind, temper, spirit, feeling; thought, attention.*

mēnsis, is, m., *month.*

mēnsūra, ae, [mētior], f., *measuring, measurement.*

mentiō, ōnis, [MEN in meminī], f., *mention.*

mercātor, ōris, [mercor, *trade*], m., *trader.*

mercātūra, ae, [mercor, *trade*], f., *trade.*

mercēs, ēdis, [mereō, *earn*], f., *pay, hire.*

Mercurius, ī, [cf. **merx**, *merchandise*], m., *Mercury*, originally the god of gain and trade.

mereō, ēre, uī, itus, and **mereor**, ērī, itus, dep., *earn, deserve; serve.*

merīdiānus, a, um, [merīdiēs], adj., *of mid-day.*

merīdiēs, ēī, [from **merī diē**, loc. of **merus diēs**, *in the clear day, broad day*], m., *mid-day; south.*

meritum, ī, [mereō], n., *desert, merit; service, favor.*

Messāla, ae, m., *Marcus Valerius Messala*, consul 61 B.C.

mētior, mētīrī, mēnsus, dep., *measure, deal out.*

Metiosēdum, ī, n., a town of the Senones, on an island of the Seine.

Metius, ī, m., *Marcus Metius*, sent by Caesar to Ariovistus.

metō, metere, messuī, messus, *reap.*

metus, ūs, m., *fear, dread.*

meus, a, um, [mē], adj., *my, mine.*

mīles, itis, m., *soldier.*

mīlitāris, e, [mīles], adj., *of soldiers, military.*

mīlitia, ae, [mīles], f., *military service.*

mīlle, indecl. adj., *a thousand;* pl., **mīlia**, ium, n.

Minerva, ae, f., *Minerva*, goddess of wisdom and the arts.

minimē, superl. of **parum**, *least; by no means.*

minimus, a, um, superl. of **parvus**; *smallest, least.*

minor, us, comp. of **parvus**; *smaller, less.*

Minucius, see **Basilus.**

minuō, uere, uī, ūtus, *lessen; end, abolish; grow less, fall, ebb.*

minus, comp. of **parum**, *less; not.*

mīror, [mīrus], 1, dep., *wonder, wonder at.*

mīrus, a, um, [mīror], adj., *wonderful, surprising, marvellous.*

miser, era, erum, [cf. **maes-tus**], adj., *wretched, pitiful.*

misericordia, ae, [misericors], f., *pity, compassion, mercy.*

miseror, ārī, ātus, [miser], 1, dep., *bewail.*

(**missus**, ūs), [mittō], m., only in abl. sing.; *a sending.*

mītissimē, [mītis, *mild*], superl. adv., *in most friendly fashion.*

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, *send, despatch; let go, release; hurl, throw.*

mōbilis, e, [moveō], adj., *changeable, fickle.*

mōbilitās, tātis, [mōbilis], f., *swiftness; fickleness.*

mōbiliter, [mōbilis], adv., *quickly; easily.*

moderor, [modus], 1, dep., *control; rein in; hold in check.*

modestia, ae, [modestus], f., *self-control; subordination, obedience.*

modo, [modus], adv., *only, merely, even; just, just now, recently.* **nōn modo . . . sed etiam**, *not only . . . but also.*

modus, ī, m., *measure, amount; kind, sort, nature, character; manner, way, fashion.* **ad hunc (eundem) modum**, *in this way, in the same way.*

moenia, ium, n., *walls; fortifications.*

mōlēs, is, f., *mass;* plu., *massive works.*

molestē, [molestus, *troublesome*], adv., *with trouble.* **ferre molestē**, *be vexed.*

mōlīmentum, ī, [mōlior, *strive*], n., *effort, exertion.*

molitus, perf. pass. partic. of **molō.**

mollīō, īre, īvī, ītus, [mollis], *make soft; make easy.*

mollis, e, adj., *soft; smooth; weak.*

mollitia, ae, and **mollitiēs**, ēī, [mollis], f., *softness; feebleness, weakness.*

molō, ere, uī, itus, *grind.*

mōmentum, ī, [for **movimentum**, from **moveō**], n., *movement; weight, influence; importance.*

Mona, ae, f., the island of *Anglesey* (Isle of Man) in the Irish Sea.

moneō, ēre, uī, itus, *advise, warn; direct, urge, remind.*

mōns, montis, m., *mountain, mount.*

mora, ae, f., *delay.*

morbus, ī, [cf. **morior**, *die*], m., *sickness, disease.*

Morini, ōrum, m., a Belgian tribe.

morior, morī, mortuus, dep., *die.*

Moritasgus, ī, m., a chieftain of the Senones.

moror, [mora], 1, dep., *delay, linger, stop, stay; check, impede.*

mors, mortis, f., *death.*

mortuus, a, um, perf. pass. partic. of **morior.**

mōs, mōris, m., *custom, usage.*

Mosa, ae, m., the river *Meuse.*

mōtus, ūs, [moveō], m., *motion, movement; commotion, uprising, tumult.*

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus, *move; influence, affect.*

mulier, eris, f., *woman.*

mūliō, ōnis, [mūlus], m., *mule-driver, muleteer.*

multitūdō, inis, [multus], f., *number; multitude, crowd, numbers; the populace.*

multō, [multa, *a fine*], 1, *fine; deprive of.*

multum, [multus], adv., *much.*

multus, a, um, adj., *much;* pl. *many.* **multō**, *by much, by far, far.* **multō diē**, *late in the day.*

mūlus, ī, m., *mule.*

Mūnātius, see **Plancus.**

mundus, ī, m., *world.*

mūnīmentum, ī, [mūniō], n., *fortification, defense.*

mūniō, īre, īvī, ītus, [moenia], *fortify, strengthen; guard, protect;* of a road, *build, construct.*

mūnītiō, ōnis, [mūniō], f., *a fortifying; fortification, fort, works, defenses.*

mūnītus, a, um, [mūniō], adj., *fortified, protected, strongly fortified.*

mūnus, eris, n., *service, duty; gift, present.*

mūrālis, e, [mūrus], adj., *of a wall, wall-.*

mūrus, ī, m., *wall.*

mūsculus, ī, [dimin. of **mūs**], m., *little mouse; shed, mantlet.*

mutilus, a, um, adj., *maimed; lacking.*

nactus, a, um, perf. pass. partic. of **nancīscor.**

nam, conj., *for.*

Nammēius, ī, m., an Helvetian.

Namnetēs, um, m., a Gallic tribe.

namque, [nam + que], conj., *for.*

nancīscor, cīscī, nactus and nanctus, dep., *find, secure, obtain, gain.*

Nantuātēs, um, m., an Alpine Gallic tribe.

Narbō, ōnis, m., chief city and capital of "the Province"; the modern *Narbonne.*

nāscor, nāscī, nātus, dep., *be born; be found; rise, spring, result from; arise.*

Nasua, ae, m., a chieftain of the Suebi.

nātālis, e, [nātus], adj., *of birth.* **diēs nātālis**, *birthday.*

nātiō, ōnis, [nāscor], f., *a being born, birth; tribe, nation, people.*

nātīvus, a, um, [nātus], adj., *natural.*

nātūra, ae, [nāscor], f., *nature, natural character, character; (physical) constitution;* abl., **nātūrā**, *naturally.*

nātus, ūs, [nāscor], m., confined to abl. sing.; *birth.* **mājōrēs nātū**, *older.*

nauta, ae, [for **nāvita** from **nāvis**], m., *sailor.*

nauticus, a, um, [nauta], adj., *naval, nautical.*

nāvālis, e, [nāvis], adj., *naval.*

nāvicula, ae, [dim. of **nāvis**], f., *small boat, skiff.*

nāvigātiō, ōnis, [nāvigō], f., *sailing, seamanship; voyage.*

nāvigium, ī, [nāvigō], n., *vessel, ship, boat.*

nāvigō, [nāvis + agō], 1, *sail.*

nāvis, is, f., *ship, vessel.* **nāvis longa**, *war-ship, galley.* **nāvis onerāria**, *a transport.*

nāvō, [(g)nāvus, *active*], 1, *do with energy.* **operam nāvāre**, *to act vigorously, distinguish oneself.*

nē, adv., *not.* **nē . . . quidem**, *not . . . even.*

nē, negative adv. and conj., *not; that . . . not, in order that not, lest;* after words of fearing, *lest, that.* **nē quis**, *lest any one, that no one.*

-ne, enclitic interrog. particle, *whether.*

nec, conj., see **neque.**

necessāriō, [necessārius], adv., *necessarily, of necessity.*

necessārius, a, um, [necesse], adj., *necessary; critical, pressing;* as noun, **necessārius**, ī, m., *relative, kinsman.*

necesse, [NEC, *connect*], indecl. adj., *necessary, inevitable.*

necessitās, tātis, [necesse], f., *necessity, need.*

necessitūdō, inis, [necesse], f., *connection, union; friendship.*

necne, [nec + -ne], conj., *or not.*

necō, 1, *kill, put to death.*

nēcubi, [nē + cubi = ubi], conj., *that nowhere, lest anywhere.*

nefārius, a, um, [nefās], adj., *infamous, nefarious.*

nefās, [ne, *not* + fās], n., indecl., *unrighteousness, wrong.* **nefās est**, *it is impious.*

neglegō, legere, lēxī, lēctus, [nec = nōn + legō], *neglect, omit, overlook, disregard.*

negō, 1, *say no, refuse, say . . . not, deny.*

negōtior, [negōtium], 1, dep., *do business.*

negōtium, ī, [nec = nōn + ōtium], n., *business, affair, matter, enterprise, task; difficulty, trouble.*

Nemetēs, um, m., pl., a German tribe dwelling on the west bank of the Rhine.

nēmō, ——, dat. **nēminī**, [nē + hemō = homō], m., *no one, nobody.*

nēquāquam, [nē + quāquam], adv., *by no means.*

neque or **nec**, [ne, *not* + que], adv., *nor, and . . . not.* **neque (nec) . . . neque (nec)**, *neither . . . nor.*

nēquīquam, [nē + quīquam], adv., *in vain, without reason.*

Nervicus, a, um, adj., *of the Nervii.*

Nerviī, orum, m., *the Nervii*, a Belgian tribe. **Nervius**, ī, *a Nervian.*

nervus, ī, m., *muscle, sinew;* pl. *power.*

neu, see **nēve**.

neuter, tra, trum, [nē + uter], pron. adj., *neither (of two).*

nēve, or **neu**, [nē + -ve, *or*], conj., *and not, and that not, nor.*

nex, necis, f., *a killing; death.*

nihil, [ne, *not* + hilum, *trifle*], n., indecl., *nothing;* adverbially, *not at all, not.*

nihilum, ī, [ne, *not* + hilum, *trifle*], n., *nothing.* **nihilō minus**, *none the less.* **nihilō sētius**, *nevertheless.*

nimius, a, um, [nimis], adj., *excessive.*

nisi, [ne = nōn + sī], conj., *if not, unless, except.*

Nitiobrogēs, um, m., an Aquitanian tribe.

nītor, nītī, nīxus and nīsus, dep., *rely on, depend on; strive, endeavor.*

nix, nivis, f., *snow.*

nōbilis, e, [(g)nōscō], *well known; noble, eminent;* as noun, **nōbilēs**, ium, m., *nobles, nobility.*

nōbilitās, tātis, [nōbilis], f., *eminence, rank; nobility, nobles.*

nocēns, entis, [noceō], adj., *guilty.*

noceō, ēre, uī, itūrus, *harm, damage, injure.*

noctū, [cf. **nox**], adv., *by night.*

nocturnus, a, um, [nox], adj., *of the night; at night, by night, night.*

nōdus, ī, m., *knot; node* of a bone.

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, ——, [ne, *not* + volō], *be unwilling, not wish.*

nōmen, inis, n., *name, title; fame.* **nōmine**, *on account of, on the score of.*

nōminātim, [nōminō], adv., *by name.*

nōminō, [nōmen], 1, *name, call; mention.*

nōn, adv., *not, no.*

nōnāgintā, indecl. adj., *ninety.*

nōndum, [nōn + dum], adv., *not yet.*

nōnnihil, *somewhat.*

nōnnūllus, a, um, *some; a few.*

nōnnumquam, *sometimes, often.*

nōnus, a, um, [novem], adj., *ninth.*

Nōrēia, ae, f., a town of the Norici.

Nōricus, a, um, adj., *of the Norici, Noric.* **Nōrica**, ae, f., *a Noric woman.*

nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtus, *become acquainted with;* in perfect system, *know.*

nōsmet, emphatic for **nōs.**

noster, tra, trum, [nōs], possessive pron., *our, our own;* as noun, **nostrī**, ōrum, m., *our men, our troops.*

nōtitia, ae, [nōtus], f., *knowledge.*

nōtus, a, um, [nōscō], partic. and adj., *known, familiar.*

novem, adj., *nine.*

Noviodūnum, ī, n., name of three Gallic cities, one in the territory of the Haedui, another in that of the Bituriges, a third in that of the Suessiones.

novitās, tātis, [novus], f., *newness, novelty, strangeness.*

novus, a, um, adj., *new; unusual, strange, unexpected;* **novissimus**, *last, in the rear;* **novae rēs**, *revolution, change of government.*

nox, noctis, f., *night.*

noxia, ae [noceō], f., *crime, offense.*

nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūpta, *veil oneself, marry.*

nūdō, [nūdus], 1, *lay bare, expose, bare, strip; deprive.*

nūdus, a, um, adj., *bare; unprotected.*

nūllus, a, um, [ne, *not* + ūllus], adj., *none, no.*

num, interrog. particle, expecting the answer Nō.

nūmen, inis, [nuō, *nod*], n., *(divine) will; (divine) power.*

numerus, ī, m., *number, amount, quantity, list; position, rank; importance.*

Numidae, ārum, m., *Numidians*, a tribe of northern Africa.

nummus, ī, m., *coin, money.*

numquam, [ne, *not* + umquam], adv., *never.*

nunc, adv., *now.*

nūntiō, [nūntius], 1, *announce, report; order.*

nūntius, ī, m., *messenger; message, report, announcement.*

nūper, adv., *lately, recently.*

nūsquam, [ne, *not* + ūsquam], adv., *nowhere.*

nūtus, ūs, [nuō, *nod*], m., *nod; command.*

ob, prep. with acc., *on account of, for.*

obaerātus, a, um, [ob + aes], adj., *involved in debt;* as noun, **obaerātus**, ī, m., *debtor.*

obdūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, [ob + dūcō], *draw in front of; extend, run, construct.*

obeō, īre, iī, itus, [ob + eō], *go to meet; perform.*

obiciō, icere, jēcī, jectus, [ob + jaciō], *throw in the face of; throw up; present, expose.* **objectus**, a, um, *lying opposite.*

obitus, ūs, [obeō], m., *destruction.*

objectus, perf. pass. partic. of **obiciō.**

oblātus, perf. pass. partic. of **offerō.**

oblīquē, [oblīquus], adv., *obliquely, slanting.*

oblīquus, a, um, adj., *oblique, diagonal.*

oblīviscor, līviscī, lītus, dep., *forget.*

obsecrō, [ob + sacrō], 1, *beseech, entreat, implore.*

obsequentia, ae, [obsequēns], f., *compliance, complaisance.*

observō, [ob + servō], 1, *watch, observe; reckon.*

obses, idis, [obsideō], c., *hostage.*

obsessiō, ōnis. [obsideō], f., *blockade, siege.*

obsessus, perf. pass. partic. of **obsideō.**

obsideō, sidēre, sēdī, sessus, [ob + sedeō], *besiege, beset, block.*

obsidiō, ōnis, [obsideō], f., *siege, blockade; oppression.*

obsīgnō, [ob + sīgnō], 1, *seal.*

obsistō, sistere, stitī, [ob + sistō], *resist.*

obstinātē, [obstinātus], adv., *stubbornly, firmly.*

obstrictus, a, um, perf. pass. partic. of **obstringō.**

obstringō, stringere, strīnxī, strictus, [ob + stringō, *bind*], *bind, lay under obligations.*

obstruō, struere, strūxī, strūctus, [ob + struō], *block up, obstruct.*

obtemperō, [ob + temperō], 1, *obey.*

obtestor, [ob + testor], 1, dep., *entreat, implore.*

obtineō, tinēre, tinuī, tentus, [ob + teneō], *hold, occupy, maintain; secure possession of, secure, obtain.*

obveniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, [ob + veniō], *come in the way of, meet; fall to the lot of.*

obviam, [ob + viam], adv., *in the way of; to meet.*

occāsiō, ōnis, [occidō], f., *opportunity.*

occāsus, ūs, [occidō], m., *setting.* **sōlis occāsus**, *sunset; the west.*

occidō, cidere, cidī, cāsūrus, [ob + cadō], *fall, perish.* **occidēns sōl**, *the setting sun, the west.*

occīdō, cīdere, cīdī, cīsus, [ob + caedō], *kill, slay.*

occultātiō, ōnis, [occultō], f., *concealment.*

occultē, [occultus], adv., *secretly.*

occultō, [freq. of **occulō**, *cover*], 1, *conceal, hide.*

occultus, a, um, [occulō, *hide*], adj., *concealed, hidden, secret;* as noun, **occultum**, ī, n., *hiding, ambush.*

occupātiō, ōnis, [occupō], f., *occupation;* pl. *affairs.*

occupō, [ob, cf. **capiō**], 1, *seize, take possession of; occupy; engage, busy.*

occurrō, currere, currī, or cucurrī, cursūrus, [ob + currō], *run against, run to meet, meet, encounter; meet with, come upon, fall in with, find; counteract, baffle; occur.*

Ōceanus, ī, m., *the Ocean.*

Ocelum, ī, n., a town of the Graioceli.

octāvus, a, um, [octō], adj., *eighth.*

octingentī, ae, a, [octō + centum], adj., *eight hundred.*

octō, indecl. adj., *eight.*

octōdecim, [octō + decem], indecl. adj., *eighteen.*

Octodūrus, ī, m., a town of the Veragri.

octōgēnī, ae, a, [octō], distrib. adj., *eighty apiece, eighty at a time.*

octōgintā, [octō], indecl. adj., *eighty.*

octōnī, ae, a, [octō], distrib. adj., *eight apiece, eight at a time.*

oculus, ī, m., *eye.*

ōdī, ōdisse, ōsūrus, *hate.*

odium, ī, [ōdī], n., *hatred.*

offendō, fendere, fendī, fēnsus, *strike against, injure; wound, offend.*

offēnsiō, ōnis, [offendō], f., *offense, affront.*

offerō, offerre, obtulī, oblātus, [ob + ferō], *present, offer, afford; put in the hands of, deliver; confer.* **sē offerre**, *expose oneself, throw oneself upon.*

officium, ī, [for **opificium**, ops + FAC, *do*], n., *duty, service; allegiance, obligation; fidelity.*

Ollovicō, ōnis, m., a king of the Nitiobroges.

omittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, [ob + mittō], *let go, throw aside, pass by, neglect, disregard.*

omnīnō, [omnis], adv., *entirely, altogether, in all; only;* with negatives, *at all.*

omnis, e, adj., *all, every.*

onerārius, a, um, [onus], adj., *of burden.* **nāvis onerāria**, *transport.*

onerō, [onus], 1, *load.*

onus, eris, n., *load, burden, cargo; weight.*

opera, ae, [opus], f., *exertion, pains; service, help; assistance.* **dare operam**, *take pains.*

opīniō, ōnis, [opīnor, *think*], f., *conception, notion, opinion; impression; reputation; expectation.*

oportet, oportēre, oportuit, impers., *it behooves, ought; it is fitting; it is needful.*

oppidānus, a, um, [oppidum], adj., *of the town;* as noun, **oppidānī**, ōrum, m., *townspeople.*

oppidum, ī, n., *walled town, town; stronghold.*

oppōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, [ob + pōnō], *place against, place opposite, oppose.*

opportūnē, [opportūnus], adv., *opportunely.*

opportūnitās, ātis, [opportūnus], f., *favorableness, timeliness; advantage.*

opportūnus, a, um, adj., *favorable, advantageous.*

oppositus, a, um, perf. pass. partic. of **oppōnō**.

opprimō, primere, pressī, pressus, [ob + premō], *press upon; crush, defeat, overwhelm; surprise.*

oppugnātiō, ōnis, [oppugnō], f., *storming, assault, attack, siege; mode of siege.*

oppugnō, [ob + pugnō], 1, *attack, assault.*

ops, opis, (nom. and dat. sing. not in use), f., *help, assistance;* pl., **opēs**, um, *resources, power; energy; help.*

optātus, a, um, [optō], adj., *longed for; welcome.*

optimē, superl. of **bene**.

optimus, superl. of **bonus**.

opus, [ops], n., used only in nom. and acc., *necessity, need.* **opus est**, *there is need, it is necessary.*

opus, operis, n., *work, a work, works, structure, fortifications.*

ōra, ae, f., *coast, shore.*

ōrātiō, ōnis, [ōrō], f., *speech, utterance, remarks, representations, words, plea.*

ōrātor, ōris, [ōrō], m., *speaker; messenger, envoy.*

orbis, is, m., *circle.* **orbis terrārum**, *the world.*

Orcynia, ae, f., another form of **Hercynia.**

ōrdō, inis, m., *line, row; layer, rank; order, arrangement; position, status; century; centurion.*

Orgetorīx, īgis, m., an Helvetian leader.

orior, orīrī, ortus, dep., *rise, arise; begin, spring from, be descended from.* **oriēns sōl**, *the rising sun, the east.*

ōrnāmentum, ī, [ōrnō], n., *decoration; honor.*

ōrnātus, a, um, [ōrnō], adj., *equipped.*

ōrnō, 1, *furnish; honor.*

ōrō, [ōs, *mouth*], 1, *beg, entreat.*

ortus, ūs, [orior], m., *rising.*

ortus, perf. pass. partic. of **orior.**

ōs, ōris, n., *mouth; face.*

Osismī, ōrum, m., a tribe of northwestern Gaul.

ostendō, tendere, tendī, tentus, [obs + tendō], *stretch before; show, exhibit, point out; set forth, explain, declare.*

ostentātiō, ōnis, [ostentō], f., *display; pride.*

ostentō, [freq. of **ostendō**], 1, *exhibit, display.*

ōtium, ī, n., *repose, quiet.*

ōvum, ī, n., *egg.*

P. = *Publius*, a Roman first name.

pābulātiō, ōnis, [pābulor], f., *procuring fodder, foraging.*

pābulātor, ōris, [pābulor], m., *forager.*

pābulor, [pābulum], 1, dep., *obtain fodder, forage.*

pābulum, ī, n., *fodder.*

pācātus, a, um, [pācō], adj., *peaceful.*

pācō, [pāx], 1, *pacify, subdue.*

pactum, ī, [pacīscor], n., *agreement; manner.*

Padus, ī, m., the *Po*, in northern Italy.

Paemānī, ōrum, m., a Belgian tribe.

paene, adv., *almost, nearly.*

paenitet, ēre, uīt, *it causes repentance.* **quōrum eōs paenitēre necesse est**, *of which they are forced to repent.*

pāgus, ī, m., *canton, district.*

palam, adv., *openly, publicly.*

palma, ae, f., *palm of the hand, hand.*

palūs, ūdis, f., *marsh, bog, swamp.*

palūster, tris, tre, [palūs], adj., *marshy, swampy.*

pandō, pandere, pandī, passus, *spread out, stretch out.*

pār, paris, adj., *equal, like, similar; a match for.*

parātus, a, um, [parō], adj., *ready, prepared; equipped.*

parcē, [parcus], adv., *sparingly.*

parcō, parcere, pepercī, and parsī, parsūrus, *spare, save.*

parēns, entis, [pariō], c., *parent.*

parentō, [parēns], 1, *offer a sacrifice in honor of the dead; avenge.*

pāreō, pārēre, pāruī, pāritūrus, *obey, submit to.*

pariō, parere, peperī, partus, *bring forth; acquire, win, gain.*

Parīsiī, ōrum, m., pl., a Gallic tribe dwelling on the Seine.

parō, 1, *prepare, get ready, get ready for; procure, get, obtain; purchase.*

pars, partis, f., *part, portion, share; division, quarter, region, district; direction, side; party.*

partim, [acc. of **pars**], adv., *partly, in part.* **partim . . . partim, . . . some . . . others.**

partior, partīrī, partītus, [pars], dep., *divide, share.*

partus, perf. pass. partic. of **pariō.**

parum, [cf. **parvus**], adv., *too little.*

parvulus, a, um, [dim. of **parvus**], adj., *very small; trifling, unimportant; young.*

parvus, a, um, adj., *small, slight, unimportant.*

passim, [pandō], adv., *here and there, in all directions.*

passus, ūs, m., *a stretching; step, pace;* as a measure of length, two steps, or 5 Roman feet. **mīlle passūs**, [pl. **mīlia passuum**], *a* (Roman) *mile.*

passus, perf. pass. partic. of **pandō.**

patefaciō, facere, fēcī, factus, pass., **patefīō**, fierī, factus, [pateō + faciō], *open, open up.*

patēns, entis, [pateō], adj., *open.*

pateō, patēre, patuī, *be open; extend.*

pater, tris, m., *father;* pl. *ancestors.*

patienter, [patiēns], adv., *patiently.*

patientia, ae, [patiēns], f., *endurance, patience.*

patior, patī, passus, dep., *suffer, endure; permit, allow.*

patrius, a, um, [pater], adj., *of a father; of one's ancestors.*

patrōnus, ī, [pater], m., *protector.*

patruus, ī, [pater], m., *father's brother, uncle.*

paucitās, ātis, [paucus], f., *fewness, small number.*

paucī, ae, a, (sing. rare), *few.*

paulātim, [paulum], adv., *little by little, gradually, by degrees.*

paulisper, [paulum + per], adv., *for a short time; for a little while.*

paulō, [paulus], adv., *by a little, a little.*

paululum, [paulus], adv., *a very little, slightly.*

paulum, [paulus], adv., *a little, somewhat.*

pāx, pācis, f., *peace.*

peccō, [pēs, ped-is], 1, *stumble; do wrong.*

pectus, oris, n., *breast.*

pecūnia, ae, [pecus, *cattle*], f., *property; money.*

pecus, oris, n., *cattle; flesh of cattle, meat.*

pedālis, e, [pēs], adj., *a foot thick.*

pedes, itis, [pēs], m., *foot-soldier;* pl. *infantry.*

pedester, tris, tre, [pēs], adj., *on foot, of foot-soldiers; on land.* **pedestre proelium**, *battle on land.* **pedestria itinera**, *approaches by land.*

peditātus, ūs, [pedes], m., *infantry.*

Pedius, ī, m., *Quintus Pedius*, grandnephew of Caesar and lieutenant in his army.

pejor, comp. of **malus.**

pellis, is, f., *skin, hide; tent.*

pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsus, *drive out, expel; rout, defeat.*

pendō, pendere, pependī, pēnsus, *weigh out; pay.*

penes, prep. with acc., *in the possession of, in the hands of.*

penitus, adv., *far within, far away.*

per, prep. with acc., *through; over, along, among; throughout, during, in the course of; by, through the instrumentality of; because of; by way of.* **per manūs**, *from hand to hand.* **per fidem**, *in violation of good faith.*

peragō, agere, ēgī, āctus, [per + agō], *do thoroughly, finish, complete.*

perangustus, a, um, [per + angustus], adj., *very narrow.*

perceptus, perf. pass. partic. of **percipiō.**

percipiō, cipere, cēpī, ceptus, [per + capiō], *reap, receive, gain; hear of, learn.*

percontātiō, ōnis, [percontor, *inquire*], f., *asking, inquiry.*

percurrō, currere, cucurrī or currī, cursūrus, [per + currō], *run through; run along.*

percussus, perf. pass. partic. of **percutiō.**

percutiō, cutere, cussī, cussus, [per + quatiō, *shake*], *strike through, pierce.*

perdiscō, discere, didicī, ——, [per + discō], *learn thoroughly, learn by heart.*

perditus, a, um, [perdō, *ruin*], adj., *abandoned, desperate.*

perdūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, [per + dūcō], *lead through, bring, conduct; bring to, win over; continue, prolong; construct, run, extend.*

perendinus, a, um, [perendiē, *day after to-morrow*], adj., *of the day after to-morrow.* **perendinō diē**, *day after to-morrow.*

pereō, īre, iī, itūrus, [per + eō], *perish, die.*

perequitō, [per + equitō, *ride*], 1, *ride through; ride about.*

perexiguus, a, um, [per + exiguus], adj., *very small.*

perfacilis, e, [per + facilis], adj., *very easy.*

perfectus, perf. pass. partic. of **perficiō.**

perferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, [per + ferō], *carry, convey, report; endure, bear, suffer, withstand, submit to.*

perficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectus, [per + faciō], *do thoroughly; execute, accomplish, finish, perform, carry out; make; bring about.*

perfidia, ae, [perfidus], f., *faithlessness, perfidy, treachery.*

perfringō, fringere, frēgī, frāctus, [per + frangō], *break through.*

perfuga, ae, [perfugiō], m., *deserter.*

perfugiō, fugere, fūgī, ——, [per + fugiō], *flee for refuge, desert.*

perfugium, ī, [perfugiō], n., *place of refuge.*

pergō, pergere, perrēxī, perrēctus, [per + regō], *proceed, advance.*

perīclitor, [perīculum], 1, dep., *make trial, make trial of; run risk, be exposed to danger.*

perīculōsus, a, um, [perīculum], adj., *dangerous.*

perīculum, ī, n., *trial; attempt; danger, risk, peril.*

perītus, a, um, adj., *experienced, skilled; familiar with.*

perlātus, perf. pass. partic. of **perferō.**

perlēctus, perf. pass. partic. of **perlegō.**

perlegō, legere, lēgī, lēctus, [per + legō], *read through.*

perluō, luere, luī, lūtus, [per + luō, *wash*], *wash;* pass. *bathe.*

permāgnus, a, um, [per + māgnus], adj., *very large, very great.*

permaneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsūrus, [per + maneō], *remain, continue; abide (by).*

permisceō, miscēre, miscuī, mixtus, [per + misceō, *mix*], *mix (thoroughly), mingle.*

permittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, [per + mittō], *intrust, commit; permit, allow.*

permixtus, perf. pass. partic. of **permisceō**.

permōtus, perf. pass. partic. of **permoveō**.

permoveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus, [per + moveō], *move deeply, move, influence, sway; disquiet, excite, arouse; astonish, alarm.*

permulceō, ēre, sī, sus, [per + mulceō, *soothe*], *calm, quiet.*

permulsus, perf. pass. partic. of **permulceō**.

perniciēs, ēī, [per, cf. **nex**], f., *destruction, ruin.*

perpaucī, ae, a, [per + paucī], adj., *very few.*

perpendiculum, ī, [perpendō], n., *plumb-line.*

perpetior, petī, pessus, [per + patior], dep., *bear to the end, bear patiently, bear, endure.*

perpetuō, [perpetuus], adv., *uninterruptedly, permanently.*

perpetuus, a, um, [per + petō], adj., *continuous, uninterrupted, whole, unbroken, permanent, perpetual.* **in perpetuum**, *forever.*

perquīrō, ere, quīsīvī, perquīsītus, [per + quaerō], *make diligent inquiry about.*

perrumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptus, [per + rumpō, *break*], *break through, force a passage.*

perruptus, perf. pass. partic. of **perrumpō**.

perscrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, [per + scrībō], *write, describe in writing, report.*

persequor, sequī, secūtus, [per + sequor], dep., *follow up, pursue; punish, avenge.*

persevērō, [persevērus, *very stern*], 1, *persist, continue.*

persolvō, solvere, solvī, solūtus, [per + solvō], *pay (in full), pay.*

perspectus, perf. pass. partic. of **perspiciō**.

perspiciō, spicere, spexī, spectus, [per + speciō, *gaze*], *see through; see, observe, notice, ascertain, learn, understand.*

perstō, stāre, stitī, stātūrus, [per + stō], *stand fast, persist.*

persuādeō, suādēre, suāsī, suāsum, [per + suādeō, *advise*], *persuade; inculcate.*

peterreō, terrerē, terruī, territus, [per + terreō], *terrify (greatly), frighten.*

pertinācia, ae, [pertināx], f., *stubbornness, stubborn purpose.*

pertineō, tinēre, tinuī, [per + teneō], *stretch, extend; pertain to, concern, belong; tend.*

perturbātiō, ōnis, [perturbō], f., *disturbance, commotion.*

perturbō, [per + turbō, *disturb*], 1, *throw into confusion, agitate, disturb.*

pervagor, [per + vagor], 1, dep., *rove about.*

perveniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, [per + veniō], *come to, reach, arrive at; fall to.*

pēs, pedis, m., *foot.*

petītus, perf. pass. partic. of **petō**.

petō, petere, petīvī or petiī, petītus, *seek, seek to reach; attack; beg, ask, request, make a request.*

Petrocoriī, ōrum, m., a tribe of central Gaul north of the Garonne.

Petrōnius, ī, m., *Marcus Petronius*, a centurion.

Petrosidius, ī, m., *Lucius Petrosidius*, a Roman standard-bearer.

phalanx, angis, f., *phalanx, solid mass of troops.*

Pictonēs, um, m., a coast tribe of Gaul.

pietās, ātis, [pius, *dutiful*], f., *devotion; patriotism.*

pīlum, ī, n., *javelin.*

pīlus, ī, [pīlum], m., *maniple of the triarii;* Introd. § 24.

pinna, ae, f., *feather; battlement.*

Pīrustae, ārum, m., pl., an Illyrian tribe.

piscis, is, m., *fish.*

Pīsō, ōnis, m.: 1) *Lucius Calpurnius Piso Caesoninus*, consul 112 B.C.; 2) *Lucius Calpurnius Piso*, consul 58 B.C.; father-in-law of Caesar; 3) *Marcus Pupius Piso Calpurnianus*, consul 61 B.C.; 4) *Piso*, an Aquitanian.

pix, picis, f., *pitch.*

placeō, placēre, placuī, placitus, *please;* in Caesar only impersonally, **placet**, *it pleases, it seems good, it is determined.*

placidē, [placidus], adv., *quietly.*

plācō, 1, *appease.*

Plancus, ī, m., *Lucius Munatius Plancus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

plānē, [plānus], adv., *plainly, clearly; entirely.*

plānitiēs, ae, [plānus], f., *level ground, plain.*

plānus, a, um, adj., *level, flat.*

plēbs, plēbis, (or **plēbēs**, eī), f., *common people, people, populace.*

plēnē, [plēnus], adv., *entirely.*

plēnus, a, um. adj., *full.*

plērumque, [plērusque], adv., *generally, mostly, for the most part.*

plērusque, aque, umque, [plērus, *very many*], adj., chiefly in pl., *very many, most.*

Pleumoxiī, ōrum, m., a Belgian tribe.

plumbum, ī, n., *lead.* **plumbum album**, *tin.*

plūrēs, **plūrimus**, comp. and superl. of **multus.**

plūs, comp. of **multus.**

pluteus, ī, m., *breastwork; (movable) shed.*

pōculum, ī, n., *drinking-vessel, cup.*

poenā, ae, f., *payment; fine; punishment, penalty.*

pollex, pollicis, m., *thumb.* **digitus pollex**, *thumb.*

polliceor, licērī, licitus, [por, = prō, + liceor, *offer*], dep., *promise, offer.*

pollicitātiō, ōnis, [pollicitor, freq. of **polliceor**], f., *promise, offer.*

pollicitus, perf. pass. partic. of **polliceor.**

Pompejus, eī, m.: 1) *Gnaeus Pompeius Magnus, Pompey*, Caesar's father-in-law and rival for supremacy; 2) *Gnaeus Pompeius*, an interpreter employed by Sabinus.

pondus, ponderis, [pendō], n., *weight.*

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, *place, put, set, pitch; lay down; lay aside;* pass., *be situated, be located, lie.*

pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*

populātiō, ōnis, [populor], f., *plundering, pillaging.*

populor, [populus], 1, dep., originally *go on a tribal raid;* hence, *ravage, lay waste:*

populus, ī, m., *people, tribe, nation.*
porrigō, rigere, rēxī, rēctus, [por, = prō, + regō], *stretch out, extend.*
porrō, adv., *further, furthermore.*
porta, ae, f., *gate, entrance.*
portō, 1, *carry, bring.*
portōrium, ī, n., *toll, impost, customs duty.*
portus, ūs, m., *harbor, port.*
poscō, poscere, poposcī, *demand.*
positus, a, um, see **pōnō**.
possessiō, ōnis, [possideō], f., *possession.*
possideō, sidēre, sēdī, sessus, [por, = prō, + sedeō], *hold, occupy.*
possīdō, sīdere, sēdī, sessus, [por, = prō, + sīdō], *take possession of.*
possum, posse, potuī, [potis, *able*, + sum], *be able, can; have influence, avail, be powerful.*
post, adv. and prep. with acc., *after, afterwards; behind; since.*
posteā, [post eā], adv., *afterwards.*
posteāquam, conj., *after.*
(**posterus**, a, um,) [post], adj., nom. sing. not used; *following;* as noun, **posterī**, ōrum, m., *descendants.*
postpōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, [post + pōnō], *place after, consider of less account.*
postpositus, perf. pass. partic. of **postpōnō**.
postquam, [post + quam], conj., *after;* often separated, — **post . . . quam.**
postrēmō, [postrēmus], adv., *finally, at last.*
postrīdiē, [locative of posterus diēs], adv., *on the following day.*
postulātum, ī, [postulō], n., *demand.*
postulō, 1, *demand, require, request.*
potēns, entis, [possum], adj., *powerful.*
potentātus, ūs, [potēns], m., *chief power, mastery.*
potentia, ae, [potēns], f., *power, influence.*
potestās, ātis, [potis], f., *power; opportunity, possibility; permission, privilege.*
potior, potīrī, potītus, [potis, *able*], dep., *obtain possession of, secure.*
potius, comp. adv., [potis], *rather.*
prae, prep. with abl., *in comparison with; on account of.*
praeacūtus, a, um, [praeacuō], adj., *sharpened at the end, pointed.*
praebeō, ēre, praebuī, praebitus, [prae + habeō], *hold before; furnish, afford, give; occasion.*
praecaveō, cavēre, cāvī, cautus, [prae + caveō], *take precautions.*
praecēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, [prae + cēdō], *go before; excel, surpass.*
praeceps, cipitis, [prae + caput], adj., *headlong; precipitous.*
praeceptum, ī, [praecipiō], n., *injunction, command.*
praecipiō, cipere, cēpī, ceptus, [prae + capiō], *anticipate; enjoin, command.*
praecipitō, [praeceps], 1, *throw headlong, hurl down.*
praecipuē, [praecipuus], adv., *especially.*
praecipuus, a, um, [prae + CAP, *take*], adj., *especial.*
praeclūdō, clūdere, clūsī, clūsus, [prae + claudō], *block up, block.*
praecō, ōnis, m., *herald, crier.*

Praecōnīnus, see **Valerius.**

praecurrō, currere, cucurrī or currī, [prae + currō], *run* or *hurry forward; hurry on ahead; get the start of.*

praeda, ae, [prae + HED, *grasp*], f., *plunder, booty.*

praedicō, [prae + dicō], 1, *assert, declare, emphasize, claim; boast.*

praedor, [praeda], 1, dep., *plunder, pillage.*

praedūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, [prae + dūcō], *draw, extend, construct.*

praefectus, perf. pass. partic. of **praeficiō.**

praefectus, ī, [praeficiō], m., *commander, praefect.*

praeferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, [prae + ferō], *put before, prefer;* **sē praeferre**, *outdo.*

praeficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectus, [prae + faciō], *place at the head; put in charge, put in command.*

praefīgō, fīgere fīxī, fīxus, [prae + fīgō, *fasten*], *set in front.*

praemetuō, ere, [prae + metuō, *fear*], *be anxious.*

praemittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, [prae + mittō], *send ahead, send in advance.*

praemium, ī, [prae + emō, *first choice*], n., *reward, distinction.*

praeoccupō, [prae + occupō], 1, *seize first.*

praeoptō, [prae + optō, *choose*], 1, *prefer.*

praeparō, [prae + parō], 1, *get ready, prepare.*

praepōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, [prae + pōnō], *place in charge of.*

praerumpō, rumpere, rūpī, ruptus, [prae + rumpō, *break*], *break off.*

praeruptus, a, um, [praerumpō], adj., *steep.*

praesaepiō, saepīre, saepsī, saeptus, [prae + saepiō], *fence in, barricade.*

praescrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, [prae + scrībō], *write out; prescribe, direct.*

praescrīptum, ī, [praescrībō], n., *order, command.*

praesēns, entis, [praesum], adj., *at hand, in person, present.* **in praesentia** (**tempora**), *for the present.*

praesentia, ae, [praesēns], f., *presence.*

praesentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus, [prae + sentiō], *perceive beforehand.*

praesertim, [prae + serō, *join*], adv., *especially, particularly.*

praesidium, ī, [praeses, *guard*], n., *protection, assistance, support; guard, garrison; post, station, intrenchment, fortification.*

praestō, stāre, stitī, stitus, [prae + stō], 1, *surpass, be superior; furnish, afford; exhibit, show; fulfil, perform;* impers. **praestat**, *it is better.*

praestō, adv., *present, at hand.* **praestō esse**, *to meet.*

praesum, esse, fuī, [prae + sum], *be at the head of, be in command of, be in charge of, be in authority.*

praeter, prep. with acc., *past, beyond; contrary to; besides, except.*

praetereā, [praeter + eā], adv., *besides, moreover.*

praetereō, īre, īvī or iī, itus, [praeter + eō], *pass over.* **praeteritus**, a, um, *past.*

praetermittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, [praeter + mittō], *pass by, let pass, neglect.*

praeterquam, [praeter + quam], adv., *other than, besides.*

praetor, ōris, [praeitor, from **praeeō**], m., *general.*

praetōrius, a, um, [praetor], adj., *of the general, praetorian.* **praetōria cohors**, *praetorian cohort* (the general's body-guard).

praeūstus, a, um, [praeūrō], adj., *burnt at the end.*

praevertō, vertere, vertī, ——, [prae + vertō], *anticipate, prevent.*

prāvus, a, um, adj., *crooked; bad, evil; poor, inferior.*

premō, ere, pressī, pressus, *press, press upon, harass, oppress;* pass., *be hard pressed, be burdened, be distressed, be beset.*

prēndō, [prae + HED, *grasp*], prēndere, prēndī, prēnsus, *seize, grasp.*

pretium, ī, n., *price.*

(**prex**, precis), f., nom. and gen. obsolete; used mostly in plu., *prayers, entreaties; curses.*

prīdiē, adv., *the day before, the previous day.*

prīmipīlus, ī, [prīmus + pīlus], m., *first centurion of the first cohort* (*pīlus*).

prīmō, [abl. of **prīmus**], adv., *at first.*

prīmum, [acc. of **prīmus**], adv., *first, at first.* **quam prīmum**, *as soon as possible.*

prīmus, superl. of **prior**, *first, first part of, foremost, front, beginning of.*

prīnceps, ipis, [prīmus + CAP, *take*], adj., *first, chief;* as noun, m., *chief, chieftain; leader, head; instigator.*

prīncipātus, ūs, [prīnceps], m., *leadership, headship, supremacy.*

prior, us, comp. adj., [cf. **prō**], *former, first;* as noun, **priōrēs**, um, m., pl., *those in front.*

prīstinus, a, um, [cf. **prīmus**], adj., *former, pristine, previous.*

prius, [prior], adv., *before, sooner, previously, earlier.*

priusquam, [prius + quam], conj., *before, sooner than;* often written **prius . . . quam.**

prīvātim, [prīvātus], adv., *privately, personally.*

prīvātus, a, um, [partic. of **prīvō**, *set apart*], adj., *private, individual;* as noun, **prīvātus**, ī, m., *a private individual.*

prō, [cf. **prae**], prep. with abl., *before, in front of, on the front part of; in behalf of, for; instead of, in place of; as; in return for; in proportion to, in comparison with, according to, in consideration of, in view of; in the name of.*

probō, [probus], 1, *approve; prove; make plausible, show, represent.*

prōcēdō, cēdere, cessī, [prō + cēdō], *go forward, advance, proceed.*

prōclīnō, [prō + clīnō, *bend*], 1, *bend forward;* pass., *totter to a fall; be desperate.*

prōcōnsul, ulis, [prō + cōnsul], m., *proconsul*, an ex-consul as provincial governor.

procul, adv., *far off, at a distance, from afar.*

prōcumbō, cumbere, cubuī, cubitus, [prō + CUB, *lie*], *lie down; sink down; fall down; lie, lean, slant; prostrate oneself.*

prōcūrō, [prō + cūrō], 1, *take care of, administer.*

prōcurrō, currere, cucurrī or currī, cursum, [prō + currō], *run forward.*

prōdeō, īre, īvī or iī, itum, [prō(d) + eō], *come forward, come forth, advance.*

prōdesse, see **prōsum.**

prōditiō, ōnis, [prōdō], f., *treason, treachery.*

prōditor, ōris, [prodō], m., *traitor.*

prōditus, perf. pass. partic. of **prōdō.**

prōdō, dẹre, didī, ditus, [prō + dō], *give up, betray, abandon; hand down, transmit.*

prōdūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, [prō + dūcō], *lead forth, lead out; prolong.*

proelior, [proelium], 1, dep., *fight.*

proelium, ī, n., *battle, fight.*

profectiō, ōnis, [proficīscor], f., *departure, setting forth.*

prōfectus, perf. pass. partic. of **prōficiō.**

profectus, perf. pass. partic. of **proficīscor.**

prōferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, [prō + ferō], *bring forth, bring out, produce.*

prōficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectus, [prō + faciō], *accomplish, achieve.*

proficīscor, ficīscī, fectus, [prŏ, collateral form of prō + FAC, *make*], dep., *set forth, depart, march out, proceed.*

profiteor, fitērī, fessus, [prŏ, a collateral form of prō, + fateor, *confess*], dep., *promise, offer, volunteer.*

prōflīgō, [prō + flīgō, *strike*], 1, *overthrow, overcome.*

prōfluō, fluere, fluxī, [prō + fluō], *flow forth, rise.*

profugiō, fugere, fūgī, [prŏ, a collateral form of prō, + fugiō], *flee, escape.*

prōfuī, see **prōsum.**

prōgnātus, a, um, [prō + (g)nāscor], adj., *sprung, descended.*

prōgredior, gredī, gressus, [prō + gradior, *step*], dep., *march forward, advance, proceed.*

prohibeō, hibēre, hibuī, hibitus, [prō + habeō], *hold back, hold in· check, restrain, keep from, hinder; prevent; defend, protect; cut off, shut off.*

prōiciō, icere, jēcī, jectus, [prō + jaciō], *throw in front, throw, cast; throw down, lay down, throw away; abandon.*

proinde, [prō + inde], adv., *therefore, accordingly.*

prōmineō, minēre, minuī, [prō + obsolete mineō, *project*], *bend forward.*

prōmiscuē, [prōmiscuus], adv., *promiscuously, together.*

prōmissus, a, um, [prōmittō], adj., *long, flowing.*

prōmoveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus, [prō + moveō], *move forward, advance.*

prōmptus, a, um, [prōmō, *bring forth*], adj., *ready, quick.*

prōmunturium, ī, [prōmineō, *jut out*], n., *promontory.*

prōnē, [prōnus], adv., *bending forward, inclined.*

prōnūntiō, [prō + nūntiō], 1, *announce, declare, make known; pronounce.*

prope, adv. and prep. with acc., *near, almost, well-nigh.*

prōpellō, pellere, pulī, pulsus, [prō + pellō], *drive back, repel, rout.*

properō, [properus, *quick*], 1, *hasten, hurry.*

propinquitās, ātis, [propinquus], f., *nearness; kinship, relationship.*

propinquus, a, um, [prope], adj., *near, neighboring; related;* as noun, *kinsman, relative.*

propior, us, comp. adj., [prope], *nearer.*

propius, adv., comp. of **prope**.

prōpōnō, pōnere, posuī, positus, [prō + pōnō], *set out; set up, raise; set forth, explain; offer; propose.*

proprius, a, um, [prope], adj., *one's own, peculiar, special, characteristic.*

propter, prep. with acc., *on account of.*

propterea, [propter + eā], adv., *on that*, or *this account.* **propterea quod**, *because.*

prōpugnātor, ōris, [prōpugnō], m., *defender.*

prōpugnō, [prō + pugnō], 1, *rush forth to the attack; defend oneself.*

prōpulsō, [freq. of **prōpellō**], 1, *drive back; ward off.*

prōra, ae, f., *prow.*

prōruō, ere, uī, utus, [prō + ruō], *tear down.*

prōsequor, sequī, secūtus, [prō + sequor], dep., *follow, pursue; address.*

prōspectus, ūs, [prōspiciō], m., *view.*

prōspiciō, spicere, spexī, spectus, [prō + speciō, *look*], *look ahead, look out for, take care.*

prōsternō, sternere, strāvī, strātus, [prō + sternō, *stretch out*], *destroy, ruin.*

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, [prō, prōd-, + sum], *be of service.*

prōtegō, tegere, tēxī, tēctus, [prō + tegō], *protect.*

prōterreō, ēre, uī, itus, [prō + terreō], *frighten away.*

prōtinus, [prō + tenus, *as far as*], adv., *at once, immediately, straightway.*

prōturbō, [prō + turbō, *disturb*], 1, *drive off, rout, repulse.*

prōvectus, perf. pass. partic. of **prōvehō**.

prōvehō, vehere, vexī, vectus, [prō + vehō], *carry forward;* pass., *put forth, set sail.*

prōveniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, [prō + veniō], *come forth; grow.*

prōventus, ūs, [prōveniō], m., *outcome, issue; success.*

prōvideō, vidēre, vidī, vīsus, [prō + videō], *see ahead, have foresight; provide for, look out for.*

prōvincia, ae, f., *province;* often *the Province*, the Roman province in Gaul.

prōvinciālis, e, [prōvincia], adj., *of the province.*

prōvīsus, perf. pass. partic. of **prōvideō**.

prōvolō, [prō + volō, *fly*], 1, *fly forward, rush forth.*

proximē, superl. of **prope**; *lately, recently.*

proximus, a, um, superl. of **propior**; *nearest, next, following; last.*

prūdentia, ae, [prūdēns, from prōvidēns, *foreseeing*], f., *foresight, prudence.*

Ptiāniī, ōrum, m., an Aquitanian tribe.

pūber or **pūbes**, eris, adj., *grown up.*

pūblicē, [pūblicus], adv., *publicly, for the people, as a state.*

pūblicō, [pūblicus], 1, *make belong to the people; confiscate.*

pūblicus, a, um, [pūbēs, *youth, able bodied young men, citizens*], adj., *of the people* or *state, public.* **rēs pūblica**, *the government, the state.*

Pūblius, ī, m., a Roman first name.

pudet, pudēre, puduit or puditum est, impers., *it shames.*

pudor, ōris, [cf. pudeō], m., *shame, honor.*

puer, puerī, m., *boy.* **ā puerīs**, *from boyhood.*

puerīlis, e, [puer], adj., *of a child, youthful.*

pugna, ae, f., *fight, battle.*

pugnō, [pugna], 1, *fight, engage in combat.*

pulcher, chra, chrum, adj., *beautiful, fair; noble.*

Pullō, ōnis, m., a centurion.

pulsus, perf. pass. partic. of **pellō**.

pulsus, ūs, [pellō], m., *stroke.*

pulvis, pulveris, m., *dust.*

puppis, is, f., *stern.*

pūrgō, [for **pūrigō**; pūrus + agō], 1, *make clean; excuse, exonerate, clear.* **pūrgātus**, a, um, *blameless.*

putō, *think, deem, regard, consider, believe.*

Pȳrēnaeus, a, um, adj. **Pȳrēnaei montēs**, *the Pyrenees Mountains.*

Q. = *Quintus*, a Roman first name.

quā, [abl. of **quī**], adv., *where.*

quadrāgēnī, ae, a, [quadrāgintā] distributive adj., *forty each, forty apiece.*

quadrāgintā, [quattuor], indecl. adj., *forty.*

quadringentī, ae, a, [quattuor + centum], adj., *four hundred.*

quaerō, ere, quaesīvī, quaesītus, *seek; ask, inquire; look into, consider.*

quaestiō, ōnis, [quaerō], f., *questioning; investigation.*

quaestor, ōris, [for **quaesitor**, from **quaerō**], m., *quaestor;* at Rome, the state-treasurer; in the army, a quartermaster and paymaster.

quaestus, ūs, [quaerō], m., *gaining, gain.*

quālis, e, [cf. **quī**], interrog. adj, *of what sort? of what nature?*

quam, [quī], adv. and conj., *how; than, as.* **quam diū**, *as long as.* With superlatives, *as possible.*

quam ob rem, *on account of which thing, wherefore, why.*

quamquam, *although.*

quamvīs, [quam + vīs, from **volō**], adv., *as much as you wish, however much, however.*

quandō, adv., *at any time, ever.*

quantus, a, um, [quam], interrog. and rel. adj., *how great, how much; as great as, as much as;* with **tantus**, *as.* **quantō opere**, *how greatly.*

quantusvīs, quantavīs, quantumvīs, [quantus + vīs, from **volō**], adj., *as large as you please, however great.*

quārē, *wherefore, why, on account of which.*

quārtus, a, um, [quattuor], adj., *fourth.*

quasi, [quam + sī], conj., *as if.*

quattuor, indecl. adj., *four.*

quattuordecim, [quattuor + decem], indecl. adj., *fourteen.*

-que, conj., *and.*

quem ad modum, or **quemadmodum**, *in what way, how? as.*

queror, querī, questus, dep., *complain; complain of, bewail.*

questus, perf. pass. partic. of **queror.**

1. **quī**, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who, which, what.*

2. **quī**, quae, quod, inter. adj., *what? what sort of?*

quicquam, see **quisquam.**

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. pron. and adj., *whoever, whatever, whichever.*

quid, see **quis.**

quīdam, quaedam, quiddam, indef. pron. and adj., *a certain.*

quidem, adv., *indeed, to be sure, at least.* **nē . . . quidem**, *not even.*

quiēs, ētis, f., *rest, sleep.*

quiētus, a, um, [quiēscō, *repose*], adj., *tranquil, quiet, peaceful.*

quīn, [abl. quī + -ne], conj., *by which not, that not, that, from, to, without;* also as indecl. rel. pron., *who . . . not, which . . . not.* **quīn etiam**, *in fact, moreover.*

quīncūnx, uncis, [quīnque + ūncia], f., *quincunx*, the five spots on a die. **in quīncūncem**, *in diagonal parallel lines.*

quīndecim, [quīnque + decem], indecl. adj., *fifteen.*

quīngentī, ae, a, [quīnque + centum], adj., *five hundred.*

quīnī, ae, a, [quīnque], distrib. adj., *five each, five apiece.*

quīnquāgintā, [quīnque], indecl. adj., *fifty.*

quīnque, indecl. adj., *five.*

quīntus, a, um, [quīnque], adj., *fifth.*

Quīntus, ī, m., a Roman first name.

quis, quid, inter. pron., *who? what?* **quid**, *why?*

quis or **quī**, qua or quae, quid, quod, indef. pron. and adj., *any one, anything, any.*

quisnam or **quīnam**, quaenam, quidnam or quodnam, inter. pron. and adj., *who, pray? what, pray?*

quispiam, quaepiam, quidpiam, quodpiam, indef. pron. and adj., *any one, anything, any.*

quisquam, quicquam, indef. pron., *any one, anything.*

quisque, quaeque, quidque, quodque, indef. pron. and adj., *each.*

quisquis, quicquid, indef. rel. pron., *whoever, whatever.*

quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs, quodvīs, [quī + vīs, from **volō**], indef. pron. and adj., *any whatever.*

1. **quō**, [quī], interrog., rel., and indef. adv., *whither, to which place, where, to any place.*

2. **quō**, [quī], conj., *in order that, that.*

quoad, [quō + ad], conj., *as long as; until, till.*

quod, [quī], conj., *because, since; that; as to the fact that.*

quōminus, *by which the less, by which not, in order that not, from.*

quoniam, [quom (= cum) + jam], conj., *inasmuch as, since, because.*

quoque, adv., *also, too.*

quōqueversus, *in all directions.*

quot, indecl. adj., *how many? as many as.*

quotannīs, [quot + annus], adv., *every year, yearly.*

quotiēns, [quot], interrog. and rel. adv., *how often? as often as.*

rādīx, īcis, f., *root; foot, bottom, base.*

rādō, ere, rāsī, rāsus, *shave.*

raeda, ae, f., (*a four-wheeled*) *wagon.*

rāmus, ī, m., *branch, twig, bough.*

rapiditās, ātis, [rapidus, *swift*], f., *swiftness.*

rapīna, ae, [rapiō, *seize*], f., *plundering, pillaging.*

rārus, a, um, adj., *far between, scattered, here and there.*

rāsus, perf. pass. partic. of **rādō**.

ratiō, ōnis, [reor, *reckon*], f., *reckoning, account, enumeration; measure; way, means; plan; character; condition, situation; regard, consideration; planning, strategy; reason, cause, ground; knowledge; theory, principles.*

ratis, is, f., *raft.*

Rauracī, ōrum, m., a tribe dwelling near the Rhine.

rebelliō, ōnis, [rebellis, *renewing hostilities*], f., *renewal of war, revolt, uprising, rebellion.*

recēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, [re- + cēdō], *withdraw.*

recēns, entis, adj., *fresh, new; recent.*

recēnseō, ēre, recēnsuī, ——, [re- + cēnseō], *review.*

receptāculum, ī, [receptō], n., *place of refuge, refuge, retreat.*

receptus, perf. pass. partic. of **recipiō**.

receptus, ūs, [recipiō], m., *retreat; means of retreat.*

recessus, ūs, [recēdō], m., *retreat; opportunity of retreat.*

recidō, cidere, cidī, cāsūrus, [re- + cadō], *fall back; fall upon.*

recipiō, cipere, cēpī, ceptus, [re- + capiō], *take back, recover; admit, receive; allow.* **sē recipere**, *retreat; recover.*

recitō, [re- + citō, *call out*], 1, *read aloud.*

reclīnō, [re- + -clīnō, *bend*], 1, *bend back;* pass. or **sē reclīnāre**, *to lean back, lean.*

rēctē, [rēctus], adv., *rightly; without danger.*

rēctus, a, um, [regō], adj., *straight.*

recuperō, [re-, cf. **capio**], *recover, regain.*

recūsō, [re-, cf. **causa**], 1, *refuse, reject, object.*

redāctus, perf. pass. partic. of **redigō**.

redditus, perf. pass. partic. of **reddō**.

reddō, dere, didī, ditus, [red- + dō], *give back, return; give up, deliver; offer; render.*

redēmptus, perf. pass. partic. of **redimō**.

redeō, īre, iī, itum, [red- + eō], *go back, return; sink back; be referred; be reduced.*

redigō, igere, ēgī, āctus, [red- + agō], *drive back; reduce, bring; render.*

redimō, imere, ēmī, ēmptus, [red- + emō], *take in return; secure; purchase; buy up, farm.*

redintegrō [red- + integer, *whole*], 1, *renew; restore.*

reditiō, ōnis, [redeō], f., *returning.*

reditus, ūs, [redeō], m., *return.*

Redonēs, um, m., pl., a tribe of northwestern Gaul.

redūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, [re- + dūcō], *draw back; lead back, bring back; extend back.*

refectus, perf. pass. partic. of **reficiō**.

referō, ferre, rettulī, lātus, [re- + ferō], *bear back, bring back, carry back; bring backward; announce, report; refer.* **sē referre**, *return.* **pedem referre**, *to retreat.* **grātiam referre**, *return gratitude, make requital.*

reficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectus, [re- + faciō], *make new, refresh; repair.*

refrāctus, perf. pass. partic. of **refringō**.

refringō, fringere, frēgī, frāctus, [re- + frangō], *break; break down.*

refugiō, fugere, fūgī, ——, [re- + fugiō], *flee back, flee.*

Rēgīnus, see **Antistius**.

regiō, ōnis, [regō, *direct*], f., *direction, line; region, district, tract, country.* **ē regiōne**, *opposite.*

rēgius, a, um, [rēx], adj., *royal.*

rēgnō, [rēgnum], 1, *reign.*

rēgnum, ī, [regō], n., *royal power; kingdom; absolute power.*

regō, ere, rēxī, rēctus, *direct, guide, control.*

reiciō, icere, jēcī, jectus, [re- + jaciō], *hurl back, drive back; throw down; cast off; throw away; cast away.*

relanguēscō, ĕre, languī, [re- + languēscō], *become feeble.*

relātus, perf. pass. partic. of **referō**.

relēgō, [re- + lēgō, *despatch*], 1, *banish.*

relīctus, perf. pass. partic. of **relinquō**.

religiō, ōnis, f., *religion, religious observance; superstition; misgivings.*

relinquō, linquere, līquī, līctus, [re- + linquō, *leave*], *leave, leave behind; abandon;* imperś. **relinquitur**, *it remaïns.*

reliquus, a, um, [relinquō], adj., *remaining, remainder of, the rest; future.*

remaneō, manēre, mānsī, ——, [re- + maneō], *remain behind, remain.*

rēmex, igis, [rēmus + agō], m., *rower.*

Rēmī, ōrum, m., pl., a Belgian tribe.

rēmigō, [rēmex], 1, *row.*

remigrō, [re- + migrō, *move*], 1, *move back, go back.*

reminīscor, minīscī, [re- + MEN in **me-min-ī**], dep., *remember.*

remissus, a, um, [remittō], adj., *relaxed; mild.*

remittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, [re- + mittō], *send back, hurl back; give back; relax; stop.*

remollēscō, lēscere, [re- + mollēscō, *grow soft*], *become soft, become feeble.*

remōtus, a, um, [removeō], adj., *distant, remote.*

removeō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus, [re- + moveō], *move away, send away, remove, dismiss.*

remūneror, [re- + mūnus], 1, dep., *reward, recompense.*

rēmus, ī, m., *oar.*

Rēmus, ī, m., *one of the Remi.*

rēnō, ōnis, m., *reindeer skin.*

renovō, [re- + novus], 1, *renew.*

renūntiō, [re- + nūntiō], 1, *bring back tidings, report, proclaim, announce; declare elected.*

repellō, pellere, reppulī, repulsus, [re- + pellō], *drive back, repulse, repel; disappoint.*

repente, [repēns, *sudden*], adv., *suddenly.*

repentīnus, a, um, [repēns, *sudden*], adj., *unexpected, sudden.*

reperiō, perīre, repperī, repertus, [re- + pariō, *secure*], *find, find out; discover, learn.*

repetō, petere, petīvī or petiī, petītus, [re- + petō], *ask back, ask again; exact.*

repleō, plēre, plēvī, plētus, [re- + pleō, *fill*], *fill full; supply.*

reportō, [re- + portō], 1, *carry back, convey back.*

reposcō, poscere, [re- + poscō], *demand.*

repraesentō, [re- + praesentō, from praesēns], 1, *bring back to the present, do at once.*

reprehendō, hendere, hendī, hēnsus, [re- + prehendō], *hold back; chide, blame.*

repressus, perf. pass. partic. of **reprimō**.

reprimō, primere, pressī, pressus, [re- + premō], *hold in check, prevent.*

repudiō, [re- + pēs, *foot*], 1, *trample on; spurn; reject.*

repugnō, [re- + pugnō], 1, *fight against, resist, oppose.*

repulsus, perf. pass. partic. of **repellō**.

requīrō, quīrere, quīsīvī, quīsītus, [re- + quaerō], *seek; demand; miss, long for.*

rēs, reī, f., *thing, matter, affair; situation, consideration, fact; circumstance.* **rēs mīlitāris**, *warfare, art of war.* **rēs pūblica**, *republic, government, state.*

rescindō, scindere, scidī, scissus, [re- + scindō], *tear down, break down.*

rescīscō, scīscere, scīvī or sciī, scītus, [re- + scīscō, *inquire*], *learn, find out.*

rescrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, [re- + scrībō], *enroll.*

reservō, [re- + servō], 1, *reserve, keep back.*

resideō, sidēre, sēdī, ——, [re- + sedeō, *sit*], *remain, remain behind, be left.*

resīdō, sīdere, sēdī, [re- + sīdō, *sit down*], *settle down, quiet down.*

resistō, sistere, stitī, [re- + sistō, *set*], *remain behind, stop, stay; resist, withstand, oppose.*

respiciō, spīcere, spexī, spectus, [re- + speciō, *look*], *look back; have regard for, consider.*

respondeō, spondēre, spondī, spōnsus, [re- + spondeō, *promise*], *reply, answer.*

respōnsum, ī, [respondeō], n., *reply, answer.*

res pūblica, see **rēs**.

respuō, spuere, spuī, [re- + spuō, *spit*], *spit out; reject.*

restinguō, stinguere, stīnxī, stīnctus, [re- + stinguō, *quench*], *put out, extinguish.*

restituō, uere, uī, ūtus, [re- + statuō], *restore, renew; rebuild.*

retentus, perf. pass. partic. of **retineō**.

retineō, tinēre, tinuī, tentus, [re- + teneō], *hold back, keep back, retain, detain; maintain, hold.*

retrahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctus, [re- + trahō], *haul back, bring back.*

revellō, vellere, vellī, vulsus, [re- + vellō, *pull*], *tear away, tear out, pull up.*

reversus, perf. partic. of **revertor.**

revertor, ī, revertī, reversūrus, [re- + vertō], semi-dep., *turn back; return, come back, go back.*

revinciō, vincīre, vinxī, vinctus, [re- + vinciō], *bind securely, brace, bind, fasten.*

revocō, [re- + vocō], 1, *call back, recall.*

rēx, rēgis, [regō, *rule*], m., *king.*

Rhēnus, ī, m., *the Rhine.*

Rhodanus, ī, m., *the Rhone.*

rīpa, æ, f., *bank.*

rīvus, ī, m., *stream, brook.*

rōbur, oris, n., *oak.*

rogō, 1, *ask, beg, request.*

Rōma, æ, f., *Rome.*

Rōmānus, a, um, adj., *Roman;* noun, **Rōmānus**, ī, m., *a Roman.*

Rōscius, ī, m., *Lucius Roscius*, a Roman lieutenant.

rōstrum, ī, [rōdō, *gnaw*], n., *beak; ship's beak.*

rota, ae, f., *wheel.*

rubus, ī, m., *bramble-bush.*

Rūfus, ī, see **Sulpicius.**

rūmor, ōris, m., *rumor, hearsay, report.*

rūpēs, is, [rumpō], f., *cliff, rock.*

rūrsus, [for **revorsus**, from **revertō**], adv., *again, anew; in turn, on the other hand.*

Rutēnī, ōrum, m., pl., a tribe of central Gaul.

Rutilus, ī, m., see **Semprōnius.**

Sabīnus, see **Titūrius.**

Sabis, is, m., *the Sambre*, a river in the territory of the Belgae.

sacerdōs, dōtis, [sacer, cf. **dō**, *put, place*], c., *priest.*

sacrāmentum, ī, [sacrō, *make sacred*], n., *oath.*

sacrificium, ī, [sacra, *sacred rites* + FAC, *make*], n., *sacrifice.*

saepe, [abl. of **saepēs**, *density, thickness, frequency*], adv., *often, frequently.*

saepenumerō, *often, frequently.*

saepēs, is, f., *hedge.*

saeviō, īre, iī, ītum, [**saevus**, *fierce*], *rage, be violent.*

sagitta, ae, f., *arrow.*

sagittārius, ī, [sagitta], m., *archer, bowman.*

sagulum, ī, [dim. of **sagum**, *mantle*], n., *military cloak.*

saltus, ūs, m., *woodland tract, thicket; pass.*

salūs, ūtis, [cf. **salvus**, *safe*], f., *welfare, health, preservation, safety, deliverance.*

Samarobrīva, ae, f., a town of the Ambiani.

sanciō, sancīre, sānxī, sānctus, *make sacred; make binding, ordain.*

sānctus, a, um, [sanciō], adj., *sacred, solemn.*

sanguis, inis, m., *blood.*

sānitās, tātis, [sānus], f., *soundness; sanity; sober sense.*

sānō, [sānus], 1, *make sound; heal, remedy.*

Santonēs, um, or **Santonī**, ōrum, m., a tribe of central Gaul.

sānus, a, um, adj., *sound, sensible.*

sapiō, ere, īvī, *taste; have taste; have sense, have judgment.*

sarcina, ae, [sarciō], f., *pack, bundle, load, baggage.*

sarciō, īre, sarsī, sartus, *patch, mend; repair.*

sarmentum, ī, [sarpō, *cut, trim*], n., *twig;* pl. *fagots.*

satis, adv. and noun, *enough, sufficiently, sufficient, quite, altogether, somewhat, rather.*

satisfaciō, facere, fēcī, factus, *satisfy, give compensation, make amends, make restitution; apologize.*

satisfactiō, ōnis, [satisfaciō], f., *apology.*

satus, perf. pass. partic. of **serō**.

saucius, a, um, adj., *wounded.*

saxum, ī, n., *rock.*

scālae, ārum, [scandō, *climb*], f., pl., *ladder, scaling-ladder.*

Scaldis, is, m., *the Scheldt*, a river flowing through the territory of the Belgae.

scapha, ae, f., *skiff.*

scelerātus, a, um, [scelerō, *defile*], adj., *wicked, criminal.*

scelus, sceleris, n., *crime, wickedness.*

scienter, [sciēns], adv., *skilfully.*

scientia, ae, [sciēns], f., *knowledge, understanding, skill.*

scindō, ere, scidī, scissus, *tear; tear down.*

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītus, *know, understand.*

scorpiō, ōnis, m., *a scorpion*, an engine for hurling missiles.

scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptus, *write.*

scrobis, is, m. and f., *pit, pitfall.*

scūtum, ī, n., *shield.*

sēbum, ī, n., *tallow.*

secō, āre, uī, tus, 1, *cut.*

sēcrētō, [sēcrētus], adv., *privately, in private.*

sectiō, ōnis, [secō], f., *booty.*

sector, [freq. of **sequor**], 1, dep., *pursue, hunt after.*

sectūra, ae, [secō], f., *stone quarry; shaft, mine.*

secundum, [sequor], prep. with acc., *along; according to; besides.*

secundus, a, um, [sequor], adj., *following, next, second; favorable, successful.*

secūris, is, [secō], f., *axe.*

sed, conj., *but; yet.*

sēdecim, [sex + decem], indecl. adj., *sixteen.*

sēdēs, is, [sedeō, *sit*], f., *seat; dwelling-place, home, habitation, abode.*

sēditiō, ōnis, [sēd-, *apart* + īre, *go*], f., *dissension; revolt, outbreak.*

sēditiōsus, a, um, [sēditiō], adj., *seditious, revolutionary.*

Sedulius, ī, m., a leader of the Lemovices.

Sedūnī, ōrum, m., an Alpine tribe.

Sedusiī, ōrum, m., pl., a German tribe.

seges, etis, f., *grain-field.*

Segnī, ōrum, m., pl., a German tribe dwelling in Belgian Gaul.

Segontiācī, ōrum, m., a British tribe.

Segovax, actis, m., a Briton.

Segusiāvī, ōrum, m., a tribe of central Gaul.

semel, adv., *once.* **semel atque iterum**, *again and again.*

sēmentis, is, [sēmen, *seed*], f., *sowing, planting.*

sēmita, ae, f., *path, by-path.*

semper, [sem-, *one* + per, *through, in one continuous act*], adv., *always, continually.*

Semprōnius, *M. Sempronius Rutilus*, a Roman officer.

senātor, ōris, [senex], m., *senator.*

senātus, ūs, [senex], m., *senate.*

senex, is, m., *old man.*

sēnī, ae, a, [sex], distrib. adj., *six apiece, six each.*

Senonēs, um, m., a tribe of central Gaul, dwelling near the Seine.

sententia, ae, [sentiō], f., *opinion, view, conviction; proposition, proposal; verdict, decision; purport.*

sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsus, *perceive, notice; think, judge; know.*

sentis, is, f., *thorn-bush, brier-bush.*

sēparātim, [sēparātus], adv., *separately, apart.*

sēparātus, a, um, [sēparō], adj., *separate, held in severalty.*

sēparō, [sē- + parō], 1, *separate, divide.*

septem, indecl. adj., *seven.*

septentriōnēs, um, [septem + triō, *plough-ox*], m., pl., *the seven plough-oxen*, a constellation near the pole; *the north;* sometimes **septentriō**, ōnis.

septimus, a, um, [septem], adj., *seventh.*

septingentī, ae, a, [septem + centum], adj., *seven hundred.*

septuāgintā, indecl. adj., *seventy.*

sepultūra, ae, [sepeliō, *bury*], f., *burial.*

Sēquana, ae, f., *the Seine.*

Sēquanī, ōrum, m., pl., *the Sequani*, an important state of eastern Gaul.

Sēquanus, a, um, adj., *Sequanian, of the Sequani;* as noun, **Sēquanus**, ī, m., *a Sequanian.*

sequor, quī, cūtus, dep., *follow, attend, follow after; pursue; seek; attach oneself to; gain, attain.*

Ser. = *Servius.*

sermō, ōnis, [serō, *weave*], m., *conversation, talk.*

sērō, [sērus, *late*], adv., *late, too late.*

serō, serere, sēvī, satus, *sow, plant.*

Sertōrius, ī, m., *Quintus Sertorius*, a Roman popular leader.

servīlis, e, [servus], adj., *servile, of slaves.*

serviō, īre, iī, ītum, [servus], *be the slave of; pay heed to.*

servitūs, tūtis, [servus], f., *slavery, bondage.*

Servius, ī, m., a Roman first name.

servō, 1, *save; keep, preserve, observe, maintain, watch.*

servus, ī, m., *slave.*

sēsquipedālis, e, [sēsqui-, *one and a half,* + pedālis, *of a foot*], adj., *a foot and a half* thick, *etc.*

sētius, comp. adv., *otherwise, less.* **nihilō sētius**, *none the less, nevertheless.*

seu, see **sīve**.

sevēritās, tātis, [sevērus, *strict*], f., *strictness.*

sēvocō, [sē- + vocō], 1, *call apart, call aside.*

sex, indecl. adj., *six.*

sexāgintā, indecl. adj., *sixty.*

sexcentī, ae, a, [sex + centum], adj., *six hundred.*

Sextius, ī, m.: 1) *Publius Sextius Baculus*, a centurion; 2) *Titus Sextius*, a Roman lieutenant.

sī, conj., *if, whether.* **quod sī**, *but if.*

Sibuzātēs, um, m., an Aquitanian tribe.

sīc, adv., *so, thus, in this manner.*

siccitās, tātis, [siccus, *dry*], f., *dryness, drouth.*

sīcut or **sīcutī**, [sīc + utī], adv., *just as, as.*

sīdus, eris, n., *constellation;* pl. **sīdera**, *heavenly bodies.*

signifer, ferī, [signum + ferō], m., *standard-bearer.*

significātiō, ōnis, [significō], f., *sign, signal, indication; demeanor.*

significō, [signum + FAC, *make*], 1, *make a sign; show, indicate, signify, imply, tell.*

signum, ī, n., *sign, signal; standard.*

Sīlānus, ī, m., *Marcus Silanus*, a Roman lieutenant.

silentium, ī, [silēns, *silent*], n., *silence, stillness.*

Sīlius, ī, m., *Titus Silius*, a military tribune.

silva, ae, f., *wood, forest.*

silvestris, e, [silva], adj., *wooded.*

similis, e, adj., *like, similar.*

similitūdō, inis, [similis], f., *similarity, resemblance.*

simul, adv., *at the same time, at once; as soon as.* **simul atque**, *as soon as.* **simul . . . simul**, *both . . . and, partly . . . partly.*

simulācrum, ī, [simulō], n., *likeness, image.*

simulātiō, ōnis, [simulō] f., *a pretending, pretence, deceit.*

simul atque, see **simul.**

simulō, [similis], 1, *pretend.*

simultās, tātis, [simul], f., *hostility, rivalry.*

sīn, [sī + affirmative -ne], conj., *but if.*

sincērē, [sincērus, *pure*], adv., *sincerely, with sincerity.*

sine, prep. with abl., *without.*

singillātim, [singulī], adv., *one by one, individually, singly.*

singulāris, e, [singulī], adj., *single; in groups; extraordinary, distinguished, superior.*

singulī, ae, a, [SEM, *one*], distrib. adj., *one apiece, one each; single, separate, each, several.*

sinister, tra, trum, adj., *left.*

sinistra, ae, [sc. **manus**], f., *left hand.* **sub sinistrā**, *on the left.*

sinistrōrsus, [sinister + vorsus, from **vertō**], adv., *to the left.*

situs, ūs, [sinō], m., *situation, location.*

sīve or **seu**, [sī + ve], conj., *or if.* **sīve (seu) . . . sīve (seu)**, *if . . . or if, whether . . . or, either . . . or.*

socer, erī, m., *father-in-law.*

societās, tātis, [socius], f., *alliance.*

socius, ī, m., *partner, ally.*

sōl, sōlis, m., *the sun; the sun-god.*

sōlācium, ī, [sōlor, *console*], n., *comfort, solace.*

soldurius, ī, m., *retainer, vassal.*

soleō, ēre, itus sum, semi-dep., *be accustomed, be wont.*

sōlitūdō, inis, [sōlus], f., *waste, wilderness.*

sollertia, ae, [sollers, *skilful*], f., *skill, cleverness.*

sollicitō, [sollicitus, *agitated*], 1, *excite, arouse; tamper with, tempt, solicit.*

sollicitūdō, inis, [sollicitus], f., *anxiety, concern.*

solum, ī, n., *ground, soil; bottom.*

sōlum, [sōlus], adv., *only.* **nōn sōlum . . . sed etiam**, *not only . . . but also.*

sōlus, a, um, *only, alone.*

solvō, ere, solvī, solūtus, [sē- + luō, *loose*], *loose; unmoor, set sail.*

sonitus, ūs, [sonō, *sound*], m., *sound, noise.*

sonus, ī, m., *sound.*

soror, ōris, f., *sister.*

sors, sortis, f., *lot.*

Sōtiātēs, um, m., an Aquitanian tribe.

spatium, ī, n., *space, distance, stretch; interval, time, duration, period; long continuance.*

speciēs, iēī, [speciō, *gaze*], f., *appearance, sight, show.*

spectō, [freq. of **spēciō**, *gaze*], 1, *look at; consider, regard; lie, face.*

speculātor, tōris, [speculor], m., *spy.*

speculātōrius, a, um, [speculātor], adj., *spying.* **speculātōrium nāvigium**, *spy boat.*

speculor, [specula, *watch-tower*], 1, dep., *spy out, spy.*

spērō, [spēs], 1, *hope, expect.*

spēs, speī, f., *hope, expectation.*

spīritus, ūs, [spīrō, *breathe*], m., *breath, spirit;* pl., *arrogance.*

spoliō, [spolium, *booty*], 1, *strip, deprive.*

sponte, abl. of an obsolete **spōns**, f., *of one's own accord, on one's own initiative, voluntarily; by one's own efforts.*

stabiliō, īre, īvī, ītus, [stabilis, *steady*], *make steady; fix firmly.*

stabilitās, tātis, [stabilis, *steady*], f., *stability, firmness.*

statim, [stō], adv., *on the spot, forthwith, immediately, straightway, at once.*

statiō, ōnis, [stō], f., *station, post; guard, picket.*

statuō, uere, uī, ūtus, [status], *place, set; think, consider, judge; decide, determine, resolve; pass judgment.*

statūra, ae, [stō], f., *height* of a person, *stature.*

status, ūs, [stō], m., *condition, status.*

stimulus, ī, [STIG, *prick*], m., *goad; caltrop.*

stīpendiārius, a, um, [stīpendium], adj., *tributary, subject to tribute;* as noun, **stīpendiāriī**, ōrum, m., pl., *tributaries, subjects, dependents.*

stīpendium, ī, [stips, *coin*, + pendō, *weigh*], n., *tribute.*

stīpes, itis, m., *tree trunk, stake.*

stirps, is, f., *trunk, stem; race, stock.*

stō, stāre, stetī, statum, *stand; abide by.*

strāmentum, ī, [sternō, *strew*], n., *straw; pack-saddle.*

strepitus, ūs, [strepō, *rattle*], m., *noise, clatter, uproar.*

studeō, ēre, uī, *be eager, be desirous for, be fond of, be devoted to, pay attention to; desire.*

studiōsē, [studiōsus, *eager*], adv., *eagerly, zealously.*

studium, ī, [studeō], n., *zeal, eagerness, desire, devotion, interest, diligence; pursuit.*

stultitia, ae, [stultus, *foolish*], f., *folly.*

sub, prep. with acc. and abl.: 1) with acc., after words denoting motion, *under, up towards; toward, just before*; 2) with abl., *under, at foot of; on, close by; at time of.*

subāctus, perf. pass. partic. of **subigō**.

subdolus, a, um, [sub + dolus], adj., *crafty, wily, cunning.*

subdūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, [sub + dūcō], *withdraw; haul up on land.*

subductiō, ōnis, [subdūcō], f., *hauling up on land.*

subeō. īre, iī, itus, [sub + eō], *come under; approach, come up; undergo, submit to.*

subfodiō, fodere, fōdī, fossus, [sub + fodiō, *dig*], *stab underneath.*

subiciō, icere, jēcī, jectus, [sub + jaciō], *place underneath, place; bring under, subject to; expose to; hurl from underneath;* pass., **subjectus**, *placed near, lying near.*

subigō, igere, ēgī, āctus, [sub + agō], *drive under; reduce.*

subitō, [subitus], adv., *suddenly.*

subitus, a, um, [subeō], adj., *sudden.*

subjectus, perf. pass. partic. of **subiciō**.

sublātus, perf. pass. partic. of **tollō**.

sublevō, [sub + levō], 1, *lift up, support; relieve, help, lighten, assist.*

sublica, ae, f., *stake, pile.*

subluō, luere, lūtus, [sub + luō], *wash.*

subruō, ruere, ruī, rutus, [sub + ruō, *hurl down*], *undermine.*

subsequor, sequī, secūtus, [sub + sequor], dep., *follow after; succeed.*

subsidium, ī, [subsīdō], n., *reserve; reinforcement; help, assistance, aid; remedy, resource.*

subsīdō, sīdere, sēdī, sessum, [sub + sīdō, *sit*], *remain behind.*

subsistō, sistere, stitī, ——, [sub + sistō, *set*], *make a stand; hold out.*

subsum, esse, [sub + sum], *be near, be at hand.*

subtrahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctus, [sub + trahō], *withdraw; secretly remove.*

subvectiō, ōnis, [subvehō], f., *hauling, transportation.*

subvehō, vehere, vexī, vectum, [sub + vehō], *bring up.*

subveniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, [sub + veniō], *come to the support of, come to the rescue of.*

succēdō, cēdere, cessī, cessūrus, [sub + cēdō], *come up, draw near, approach, advance; succeed; take the place of; come next, border.*

succendō, cendere, cendī, cēnsus, [sub, cf. **candeō**], *set fire to.*

succīdō, cīdere, cīdī, cīsus, [sub + caedō], *cut down.*

succumbō, cumbere, cubuī, ——, [sub + cuв, *lie*], *give way, succumb.*

succurrō, currere, currī, cursūrus, [sub + currō], *rush to help.*

sudis, is, f., *stake.*

sūdor, ōris, [sūdō, *sweat*], m., *sweat; labor.*

Suēba, ae, [cf. **Suēbī**], f., *Swabian woman.*

Suēbī, ōrum, m., *the Swabians*, a German tribe.

Suessiōnēs, um, m., pl., a Belgian tribe.

sufficiō, ficere, fēcī, fectum, [sub + faciō], *suffice, hold out.*

suffrāgium, ī, n., *vote.*

Sugambrī, ōrum, m., a German tribe.

suggestus, ūs, [suggerō, *build up*], m., *platform.*

suī, reflex. pron., *himself, herself, itself, themselves; him, her, it; them.*

Sulla, ae, m., *Lucius Cornelius Sulla*, the dictator.

Sulpicius, ī, m., *Publius Sulpicius Rufus*, a Roman lieutenant.

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *be.*

summa, ae, [summus], f., *sum, whole, total; supreme control; management, administration; conduct.*

sumministrō, [sub + ministrō, *serve*], 1, *supply, furnish.*

summittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, [sub + mittō], *send as help, send.*

summoveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtus, [sub + moveō], *push back, dislodge, repulse.*

summus, superl. of **superus**, *highest, greatest, very great, most distinguished, most important, complete; top of;* as noun, **summum**, ī, n., *top, summit, end.*

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptus, *take, assume, undertake;* **supplicium sūmere**, *inflict punishment.*

sūmptuōsus, a, um, [sūmptus], adj., *expensive, costly.*

sūmptus, tūs, [sūmō], m., *expense.*

superbē, [superbus, *proud*], adv., *arrogantly.*

superior, ōris, [super], adj., comp. of **superus**, *higher, upper; earlier, former, previous; superior, mightier, stronger, more powerful.*

superō, [super], 1, *be superior; surpass, prevail; conquer, defeat, overcome; surmount; overtop; survive;* pass., *be at disadvantage.*

supersedeō, sedēre, sēdī, sessum, [super + sedeō, *sit*], *refrain from.*

supersum, esse, fuī, [super + sum], *be over, be left, remain, survive.*

suppetō, petere, petīvī or petiī, petītus, [sub + petō], *be at hand; hold out.*

supplēmentum, ī, [suppleō, *fill up*], n., *reinforcements.*

supplex, icis, [cf. **supplicō**, *bend (the knee)*], c., *suppliant.*

supplicātiō, ōnis, [supplicō, *bend (the knee)*], *thanksgiving.*

suppliciter, [supplex], adv., *suppliantly, humbly.*

supplicium, ī, [supplex], n., *punishment, penalty, death-penalty.*

supportō, [sub + portō], 1, *bring, provide, supply.*

suprā: 1) adv., *above; before, previously*; 2) prep. with acc., *above; before.*

suscipiō, cipere, cēpī, ceptus, [subs (= sub) + capiō], *take up, undertake, begin; take upon oneself.*

suspectus, a, um, adj., *suspected, an object of suspicion.*

suspīciō, ōnis, [sub + speciō, *gaze*], f., *suspicion.*

suspicor, [cf. **suspīciō**], 1, dep., *suspect.*

sustentō, [freq. of **sustineō**], 1, *hold out, sustain, endure.*

sustineō, tinēre, tinuī, tentus, [subs, = sub, + teneō], *hold up; withstand, endure, sustain; hold out; check, halt, stop.*

sustulī, see **tollō**.

suus, a, um, [cf. **suī**], poss. pron., *his, her, its, one's, their; his own, her own, etc.* **suus locus**, *a favorable place.* **sua clēmentia**, *his customary lenity;* as noun, **suī**, ōrum, *his men, their men.* **sua**, ōrum, *his property, their property, etc.*

T. = *Titus.*

tabernāculum, ī, [taberna, *hut*], n., *tent.*

tabula, ae, f., *board, tablet; list.*

tabulātum, ī, [tabula], n., *floor, story.*

taceō, ēre, uī, itus, *be silent, be silent about.*

tacitus, a, um, [partic. of taceō], adj., *silent.*

tālea, ae, f., *rod, bar.*

tālis, e, adj., *such.*

tam, adv., *so, so very.*

tamen, adv., *yet, nevertheless, still, however.*

Tamesis, is, m., *the Thames.*

tametsī, [tamen + etsī], conj., *although, though.*

tandem, [tam], adv., *at length;* in questions, *pray.*

tangō, tangere, tetigī, tāctus, *touch, border on.*

tantopere, [tantō opere], adv., *so greatly, so much, so earnestly.*

tantulus, a, um, [dim. of **tantus**], adj., *so small, so slight, so trivial.*

tantum, [tantus], adv., *only.* **tantum modo**, *only.*

tantundem, [tantusdem], adv., *so much, so far.*

tantus, a, um, [tam], adj., *so great, so much; as great, as much.*

Tarbellī, ōrum, m., an Aquitanian tribe.

tardē, [tardus], adv., *slowly.*

tardō, [tardus], 1, *check, stop, hinder.*

tardus, a, um, adj., *slow.*

Tarusātēs, ium, m., pl., an Aquitanian tribe.

Tasgetius, ī, m., a chief of the Carnutes.

taurus, ī, m., *bull.*

Taximagulus, ī, m., a British chief.

taxus, ī, f., *yew.*

Tectosagēs, um, m., a Gallic tribe dwelling in "the Province."

tēctum, ī, [tegō], n., *roof, shelter; dwelling, house.*

tegimentum, ī, [tegō], n., *covering.*

tegō, ĕgere, tēxī, tēctus, *cover; protect, conceal.*

tēlum, ī, n., *missile, dart, spear.*

temerārius, a, um, [temere], adj., *rash, hasty, reckless.*

temere, adv., [loc. of obsolete **temus**, *darkness;* lit. *in the dark*], *blindly, rashly, hastily, easily; without good reason.*

temeritās, tātis, [temere], f., *rashness, heedlessness, thoughtlessness.*

tēmō, ōnis, m., *pole* (of a chariot).

temperantia, ae, [temperāns, temperō], f., *moderation, self-control.*

temperātus, a, um, [temperō], adj., *temperate, moderate, mild.*

temperō, 1, *control oneself, refrain.*

tempestās, tātis, [tempus], f., *weather; stormy weather, tempest, storm.*

temptō, [freq. of **tendō**], 1, *try, attempt; attack; solicit.*

tempus, oris, n., *time, period, season; moment, occasion, juncture, emergency, circumstances.*

Tencterī, ōrum, m., a German tribe.

tendō, tendere, tetendī, tentus, *stretch, stretch out, extend; tent.*

tenebrae, ārum, f., pl., *darkness.*

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, *hold, keep; occupy; restrain, hold back; hold fast, bind; detain.* **memoriā tenēre**, *hold in memory, remember.* **sē tenēre**, *keep oneself, stay.*

tener, era, erum, adj., *tender, young.*

tenuis, e, adj., *thin; worthless; slight; feeble.*

tenuitās, ātis, [tenuis], f., *thinness; poverty.*

tenuiter, [tenuis], adv., *thinly.*

ter, adv., *three times.*

teres, etis, [terō, *rub*], adj., *smooth; tapering.*

tergum, ī, n., *back.* **ā tergo**, **post tergum**, *in the rear.*

ternī, ae, a, [ter], distrib. adj., *three apiece, three each.*

terra, ae, f., *earth, ground; land, country, region.* **orbis terrārum**, *the circle of lands, the world.*

Terrasidius, ī, m., a Roman tribune.

terrēnus, a, um, [terra], adj., *of earth.*

terreō, ēre, uī, itus, *frighten, alarm, terrify; prevent by terror, deter.*

territō, [freq. of **terreō**], 1, *terrify, fill with terror, cause fear.*

terror, ōris, [terreō], m., *fear, terror, fright.*

tertius, a, um, [ter], ord. adj., *third.*

testāmentum, ī, [testor], n., *will.*

testimōnium, ī, [testis], n., *testimony, proof.*

testis, is, c., *witness.*

testūdō, inis, [testa, *shell*], f., *tortoise; testudo*, a military formation in which the soldiers' shields overlapped; see Introd. § 49; *a shed*, used as a protection in siege operations.

Teutomatus, ī, m., king of the Nitiobroges.

Teutonī, gen. um, m., *Teutons.*

tignum, ī, n., *beam, timber.*

Tigurīnus, a, um, adj., *of the Tigurini;* as noun, **Tigurīnī**, ōrum, m., *the Tigurini*, an Helvetian canton.

timeō, ēre, uī, *fear, be afraid, be afraid of; be concerned.*

timidē, [timidus], adv., *timidly.*

timidus, a, um, [timeō], adj., *timid.*

timor, ōris, [timeō], m., *fear, dread, alarm, apprehension.*

Titūrius, ī, m., *Quintus Titurius Sabinus*, a Roman lieutenant.

tolerō, 1, *bear, support, endure; relieve; hold out.*

tollō, tollere, sustulī, sublātus, *lift up, raise, weigh* (anchor); *take on board, take; take away, remove, carry off; destroy; allay; break up;* pass., *be elated.*

Tolōsa, ae, f., an important town of the Tectosages, in "the Province"; the modern Toulouse.

Tolōsātēs, ium, [Tolōsa], m., the inhabitants of Tolosa.

tormentum, ī, [torqueō, *twist*], n., *engine* for hurling missiles; Introd. § 48; *windlass; rack; torture; missiles* hurled by engines.

torreō, torrēre, torruī, tostus, *roast; scorch.*

tot, indecl. adj., *so many.*

totidem [tot], indecl. adj., *just as many, the same number.*

tōtus, a, um, adj., *the whole, entire, all.*

trabs, trabis, f., *beam, timber.*

trāctus, perf. pass. partic. of **trahō**.

trādō, dere, didī, ditus, [trāns + dō], *give up, turn over, hand over, surrender, deliver; commit, intrust; communicate, pass on; commend; hand down, transmit, teach.*

trādūcō, dūcere, dūxī, ductus, [trāns + dūcō], *lead across, lead over, bring over, lead (through); win over; transfer.*

trāgula, ae, f., *javelin, spear.*

trahō, trahere, trāxī, trāctus, *haul, drag, draw along.*

trāiciō, icere, jēcī, jectus, [trāns + jaciō], *throw across; pierce, wound.*

trājectus, perf. pass. partic. of **trāiciō**.

trājectus, ūs, [trāiciō], m., *passage, voyage.*

trānō, [trāns + nō, *swim*], 1, *swim across.*

tranquillitās, ātis, [tranquillus, *still*], f., *calm, stillness.*

trāns, prep. with acc., *across, over; on the other side of.*

Trānsalpīnus, a, um, [trāns + Alpīnus, from **Alpēs**], adj., *beyond the Alps, transalpine.*

trānscendō, scendere, scendī, [trāns + scandō, *climb*], *climb across; board, climb over.*

trānseō, īre, iī, itūrus, [trāns + eō], *go across, go over, pass over, march across, cross, go through; pass by, elapse.*

trānsferō, ferre, tulī, lātus, [trāns + ferō], *carry across; transfer.*

trānsfīgō, fīgere, fīxī, fīxus, [trāns + fīgō, *fix*], *transfix, pierce.*

trānsfodiō, fodere, fōdī, fossus, [trāns + fodiō], *transfix, pierce.*

trānsgredior, gredī, gressus, [trāns + gradiōr, *step*], dep., *step over, cross.*

trānsitus, ūs, [trānseō], m., *going across, passage, crossing.*

trānslātus, perf. pass. partic. of **trānsferō**.

trānsmarīnus, a, um, [trāns + mare], adj., *across the sea.*

trānsmissus, ūs, [trānsmittō], m., *crossing, passage.*

trānsmittō, mittere, mīsī, missus, [trāns + mittō], *send across, set across.*

trānsportō, [trāns + portō], 1, *set across, bring over, transport.*

Trānsrhēnānus, a, um, [trāns + Rhēnus], adj., *across the Rhine;* as noun, **Trānsrhēnānī**, ōrum, m., *those dwelling across the Rhine.*

trānstrum, ī, [trāns], n., *cross-piece, cross-beam.*

trānsversus, [trānsvertō], adj., *crosswise, cross.*

Trebius, ī, m., *Marcus Trebius Gallus*, a Roman officer.

Trebōnius, ī, m.: 1) *Gaius Trebonius*, a Roman lieutenant; 2) *Gaius Trebonius*, a Roman knight.

trecentī, ae, a, [trēs + centum], adj., *three hundred.*

trepidō, [trepidus], 1, *bustle about, be confused, be agitated.*

trēs, tria, adj., *three.*

Trēverī, ōrum, m., a Belgian tribe.

Tribocēs, um, or **Tribocī**, ōrum, m., a German tribe in the territory of the Belgae.

tribūnus, ī, [tribus, *tribe*], m., *tribune;* Introd. § 22.

tribuō, ere, uī, ūtus, *assign, allot, confer; attribute, ascribe; attach; render; do for the sake of.*

tribūtum, ī, [tribuō], n., *tribute, tax.*

trīduum, ī, [trēs + diēs], n., *three days.*

triennium, ī, [trēs + annus], n., *three years.*

trīgintā, indecl. adj., *thirty.*

trīnī, ae, a, [trēs], distrib. adj., *three apiece, three each; triple.*

Trinovantēs, um, m., a British tribe.

tripertītō, [tripertītus; ter + partītus], adv., *in three divisions.*

triplex, icis, [trēs + plicō, *fold*], adj., *threefold, triple.*

triquetrus, a, um, adj., *three-cornered, triangular.*

trīstis, e, adj., *sad, dejected.*

trīstitia, ae, [trīstis], f., *sadness, dejection.*

Troucillus, ī, m., *Gaius Valerius Troucillus*, a Gaul.

truncus, ī, m., *tree trunk.*

tū, tuī, pers. pron., *thou, you.*

tuba, ae, f., *trumpet.*

tueor, tuērī, dep., *watch; secure, maintain, protect, guard, defend.*

tulī, see **ferō**.

Tulingī, ōrum, m., a German tribe.

tum, adv., *then, at that time, thereupon; further, besides.*

tumultuor, [tumultus], 1, dep., *make a tumult.* **tumultuātur**, *there is confusion.*

tumultuōsē, [tumultuōsus], adv., *with disorder, with noise.*

tumultus, ūs, m., [tumeō, *swell, rise up*], *uprising, revolt, insurrection; noise, tumult, confusion.*

tumulus, ī, m., *mound, hillock.*

tunc, adv., *then, at that time.*

turma, ae, f., *troop, squadron.*

Turonī, ōrum, m., a tribe of central Gaul, dwelling on the Loire.

turpis, e, adj., *ugly; base, disgraceful, shameful.*

turpiter, [turpis], adv., *shamefully, disgracefully.*

turpitūdō, inis, [turpis], f., *shame, disgrace.*

turris, is, f., *tower.*

tūtō, [tūtus], adv., *safely, in safety.*

tūtus, [tueor], adj., *safe, secure, protected.*

tuus, a, um, [tū], poss. pron., *thy, your.*

ubi, adv., *where; when, as.* **ubi prīmum**, *as soon as.*

ubīque, [ubī + que], adv., *anywhere, everywhere.*

Ubius, a, um, adj., *of the Ubii;* as noun, **Ubiī**, ōrum, m., a German tribe.

ulcīscor, ulcīscī, ultus, dep., *take vengeance on, punish; avenge.*

ūllus, a, um, [diminutive of **ūnus**], adj., *any, any one.*

ulterior, ius, [ultrā], comp. adj., *farther, remoter, beyond.*

ultimus, [ultrā], superl. adj., *farthest, remotest, most distant; last, in the rear.*

ultrā, prep. with acc., *beyond, on the farther side of.*

ultrō, adv., *beyond; besides, furthermore; actually; voluntarily, spontaneously, of one's own accord; wantonly.* **ultrō citrōque**, *hither and thither, to and fro, back and forth.*

ultus, perf. pass. partic. of **ulcīscor**.

ululātus, ūs, [ululō, *shriek*], m., *yell, cry.*

umerus, ī, m., *shoulder.*

umquam, adv., *at any time, ever.*

ūnā, [ūnus], adv., *together with, along with, with, at the same time.* **ūnā cum**, *together with, along with.*

unde, adv., *whence, from which.*

ūndecim, [ūnus + decem], indecl. adj., *eleven.*

ūndecimus, a, um, [undecim], ord. adj., *eleventh.*

ūndēquadrāgintā, [ūnus + dē + quadrāgintā], indecl. adj., *thirty-nine.*

undēvīgintī, [ūnus + dē + vīgintī], indecl. adj., *nineteen.*

undique, [unde + que], adv., *from all sides, on all sides, everywhere.*

ūniversus, a, um, [ūnus + versus, partic. of vertō], adj., *all together, whole, entire.*

ūnus, a, um, adj., *one; only one, only, alone, sole, single; same.*

urbānus, a, um, [urbs], adj., *of the city, in the city* (Rome).

urbs, urbis, f., *city; the city* (Rome).

urgeō, urgēre, ursī, *press; oppress; press hard.*

ūrus, ī, m., *wild ox.*

Usipetēs, um, m., a German tribe.

ūsitātus, a, um, [ūsitor], adj., *customary, familiar.*

ūsque, adv., *as far as; even.* **ūsque ad**, *up to, until.* **ūsque eō**, *to such a degree, to such an extent.*

ūsus, perf. pass. partic. of **ūtor.**

ūsus, ūs, [ūtor], m., *use, application, handling, employment; training, practice, experience, familiarity; utility, advantage; need, necessity.* **ūsū venīre**, *happen.*

ut, utī, adv. and conj.: 1) interrog. adv., *how?* 2) relative adv., *as, just as;* 3) conj., *when, as; that, in order that; so that; though.* **ut prīmum**, *as soon as.* **ut . . . sīc**, *as . . . so, while . . . yet.*

uter, utra, utrum, adj., *which (of two), which.*

uterque, traque, trumque, [uter + que], adj., *each, both.*

utī, see **ut.**

ūtilis, e, [ūtor], adj., *useful, effective.*

ūtilitās, ātis, [ūtilis], f., *usefulness, advantage.*

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus, dep., *use, employ, make use of, follow, avail oneself of, have, possess, enjoy; exhibit, show.*

utrimque, [uterque], adv., *on both sides.*

utrum, [uter], conj., *whether.*

uxor, ōris, f., *wife.*

Vacalus, ī, m., *the Waal*, a branch of the Rhine.

vacātiō, ōnis, [cf. **vacō**], f., *exemption.*

vacō, 1, *be empty; be unoccupied.*

vacuus, a, um, [vacō], adj., *empty, unoccupied; destitute of.*

vadum, ī, n., *shallow place, ford; shoal.*

vāgīna, ae, f., *sheath, scabbard.*

vagor, 1, dep., *wander about, move about, roam, rove.*

valeō, ēre, uī, itūrus, *be strong; avail, be of weight, have influence; prevail.*

Valerius, ī, m.: 1) *Gaius Valerius Flaccus*, a governor of Gaul. 2) *Lucius Valerius Praeconinus*, a Roman commander. 3) *Gaius Valerius Caburus*, a Gaul who had been rewarded with Roman citizenship by 1. 4) *Gaius Valerius Procillus*, son of 3. 5) *Gaius Valerius Donnotaurus*, son of 3, 6) *Gaius Valerius Troucillus*, a Gaul.

Valetiācus, ī, m., a Haeduan.
valētūdō, inis, [valeō], f., *health; ill health.*
vallēs, vallis, is, f., *valley.*
vāllum, ī, [vāllus], n., *wall of stakes, palisade, wall, rampart, intrenchment.*
vāllus, ī, m., *stake.*
Vangionēs, um, m., a German tribe.
varietās, ātis, [varius], f., *variety, diversity; mottled surface.*
varius, a, um, adj., *various, diverse.*
vāstō, [vastus], 1, *ravage, lay waste, harry.*
vāstus, *a, um*, adj., *waste; wild, vast.*
vāticinātiō, ōnis, [vāticinor, *prophesy*], f., *prophecy.*
-ve, enclitic conj., *or.*
vectīgal, alis, [vehō, *carry*], n., *impost* on goods carried; *tax, tribute; revenue.*
vectīgālis, e, [vectīgal], adj., *tributary.*
vectōrius, a, um, [vehō], adj., *suited for carrying.* **vectōrium nāvigium**, *transport.*
vehementer, [vehemēns], adv., *eagerly, earnestly, vigorously, vehemently, impetuously; very greatly, greatly.*
vel, [volō, *wish*], conj., originally, *if you wish; or.* **vel . . . vel**, *either . . . or;* adv., *even.*
Velānius, ī, m., *Quintus Velanius*, a Roman tribune.
Veliocassēs, ium, also **—ī, ōrum**, a Belgian tribe.
Vellaunodūnum, ī, n., a city of the Senones.
Vellaviī, ōrum, m., a tribe of central Gaul.
vēlōcitās, ātis, [vēlōx], f., *swiftness, speed.*
vēlōciter, [vēlōx], adv., *swiftly.*
vēlōx, ōcis, adj., *swift.*
vēlum, ī, n., *sail.*
velut, [vel + ut], adv., *just as.*
vēnātiō, ōnis, [vēnor, *hunt*], f., *hunting.*
vēnātor, ōris, [vēnor, *hunt*], m., *hunter.*
vēndō, dere, didī, ditus, [vēnum, *sale*, + dō], *offer for sale, sell.*
Venellī, ōrum, m., a tribe of northwestern Gaul.
Venetī, ōrum, m., a tribe of northwestern Gaul.
Venetia, ae, f., *the country of the Veneti.*
Veneticus, a, um, [Venetia], adj., *of the Veneti.*
venia, ae, f., *indulgence; permission; pardon.*
veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, *come, approach, advance.*
ventitō, [freq. of **veniō**], 1, *come frequently, come often, resort.*
ventus, ī, m., *wind.*
vēr, vēris, n., *spring.*
Veragrī, ōrum, m., an Alpine tribe.
Verbigenus, ī, m., an Helvetian canton.
verbum, ī, n., *word.* **verba facere**, *to speak.*
Vercassivellaunus, ī, m., an Arvernian chieftain.
Vercingetorīx, īgis, m., an Arvernian chieftain, commander of the Gauls in their final struggle against the Romans.
vereor, ērī, itus, dep. *fear, dread, be afraid of; be anxious.*
vergō, ere, *slope, stretch; lie, be situated.*

vergobretus, ī, m., *vergobret*, chief magistrate of the Haedui.

veritus, perf. pass. partic. of **vereor**.

vērō, [vērus], adv., *in truth, in fact, really; but, but in truth, but in fact.*

versō, [freq. of **vertō**], 1, *turn often; treat, deal with;* pass. as dep., *be turned about; turn about, move about, be busy, be engaged, engage, be involved; stay, remain.*

versus, ūs, [vertō], m., *line.*

versus, [vertō], prep. with acc. *towards, in the direction.* **in . . . versus, ad . . . versus**, *toward.*

Verticō, ōnis, m., a Nervian.

vertō, vertere, vertī, versus, *turn.* **terga vertere**, *to flee.*

Verucloetius, ī, m., an Helvetian envoy.

vērus, a, um, *true; right;* noun, **vērum**, ī, n., *the truth.* **vērī similis**, *likely.*

verūtum, ī, [verū, *spit*], n., *dart, javelin.*

Vesontiō, ōnis, m., a town of the Sequani; the modern Besançon.

vesper, erī, m., *evening.*

vester, tra, trum, [vōs], poss. pron., *your, yours.*

vēstīgium, ī, n., *footprint, footstep, track; place, spot, moment* **in vēstīgiō**, *forthwith.*

vestiō, īre, īvī, ītus, [vestis], *clothe; cover.*

vestis, is, f., *clothing.*

vestītus, ūs, [vestiō], m., *clothing.*

veterānus, a, um, [vetus], adj., *old, veteran.*

vetō, āre, uī, itus, 1, *forbid.*

vetus, eris, adj., *old, former, ancient; veteran; long-standing.*

vēxillum, ī, [cf. **vēlum**], n., *banner, flag.*

vexō, [freq. of **vehō**], 1, *harass; ravage.*

via, ae, f., *way, road; march, journey.*

viātor, ōris, [via], m., *traveller.*

vīcēnī, ae, a, [vīgintī], distrib. adj., *twenty apiece, twenty each, twenty.*

vīcēsimus, a, um, [vīgintī], adj., *twentieth.*

vīciēs, [vīgintī], num. adj., *twenty times.*

vīcīnitās, ātis, [vīcīnus, *near*], f., *neighborhood;* pl., *neighbors.*

vicis, is, f., (defective), *change, alternation.* **in vicem**, *in turn.*

victima, ae, f., *animal for sacrifice, victim.*

victor, ōris, [vincō], m., *victor, conqueror;* adj., *victorious.*

victōria, ae, [victor], f., *victory.*

victus, perf. pass. partic. of **vincō**.

victus, ūs, [vīvō], m., *living; food.*

vīcus, ī, m., *village.*

videō, vidēre, vīdī, vīsus, *see, note, perceive;* pass., *be seen, seem, appear; seem best.*

Vienna, ae, f., a town of the Allobroges; the modern Vienne.

vigilia, ae, [vigil, *watchman*], f., *a watching, vigil; watch,* a fourth part of the night.

vīgintī, indecl. adj., *twenty.*

vīmen, inis, n., *pliant shoot, osier.*

vinciō, vincīre, vinxī, vinctus, *bind.*

vincō, vincere, vīcī, victus, *conquer, be victorious; defeat, overcome, overpower; have one's way; exceed.*

vinculum, ī, [vinciō], n., *bond, chain, fetter.*

vindicō, [vindex, *champion*], 1, *claim; maintain; inflict punishment.*

vīnea, ae, f., *vine arbor; shed*, used to protect soldiers in siege operations.

vīnum, ī, n., *wine.*

violō, [vīs], 1, *injure, wrong, ravage; lay waste.*

vir, virī, m., *man; husband.*

vīrēs, see **vīs.**

virgō, inis, f., *maiden.*

virgultum, [virga, *rod*], ī, n., *brushwood.*

Viridomārus, ī, m., a Haeduan.

Viridovīx, īcis, m., a chieftain of the Venelli.

virītim, [vir], adv., *man by man, to each man.*

Viromanduī, ōrum, m., a Belgian tribe.

virtūs, ūtis, [vir], f., *manliness, character; bravery, courage, heroism, valor, endurance; ability, energy;* pl. *merits, heroic deeds.*

vīs, f., *strength, power, might; violence, force, influence; number, multitude;* pl. *strength, powers.*

vīsus, perf. pass. partic. of **videō.**

vīta, ae, [vīvō], f., *life.*

vītō, 1, *avoid, escape.*

vitrum, ī, n., *woad*, a plant yielding a blue dye.

vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, vīctūrus, *live; live on.*

vīvus, a, um, [vīvō], adj., *living, alive.*

vix, adv., *hardly, scarcely, barely, with difficulty.*

Vocātēs, ium, m., an Aquitanian tribe.

Vocciō, ōnis, m., a king of the Norici.

vocō, [vōx], 1, *call, call to, summon.*

Vocontiī, ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe dwelling in "the Province."

Volcae, ārum, m., a Gallic tribe dwelling in "the Province." There were two divisions: the Arecomici and the Tectosages.

Volcātius, ī, m., *Gaius Volcatius Tullus*, a Roman officer.

volō, velle, voluī, *be willing, wish, desire; purpose, intend.*

voluntārius, a, um, [√volō], adj., *willing, voluntary;* as noun, **voluntārius**, ī, m., *volunteer.*

voluntās, ātis, [volō], f., *will, wish, desire; permission, consent; good-will, attachment, devotion.*

voluptās, ātis, [volō], f., *pleasure.*

Volusēnus, ī, m., *Gaius Volusenus Quadratus*, a military tribune.

Vorēnus, ī, m., *Lucius Vorenus*, a centurion.

Vosegus, ī, m., *the Vosges mountains.*

voveō, vovēre, vōvī, vōtus, *vow.*

vōx, vōcis, f., *voice; word, utterance.*

Vulcānus, ī, m., *Vulcan*, god of fire.

vulgō, [vulgus], adv., *generally, usually, everywhere.*

vulgus, ī, n., *common people, people, multitude.* **vulgus mīlitum**, *the common soldiers.*

vulnerō, [vulnus], 1, *wound.*

vulnus, eris, n., *wound.*

vultus, ūs, [volo], m., *look, glance; face, features.*

BENNETT'S LATIN SERIES.

LATIN GRAMMAR. 12mo, cloth, 288 pages.

LATIN LESSONS. 16mo, cloth, 191 pages.

FIRST YEAR LATIN (preparatory to Caesar). 12mo, cloth, 291 pages.

FOUNDATIONS OF LATIN. 12mo, cloth, 250 pages.

PREPARATORY LATIN WRITER (based on Caesar). 16mo, cloth, 202 pages.

LATIN COMPOSITION (based on Cicero). 16mo, cloth, 172 pages.

QUANTITATIVE READING OF LATIN POETRY. 12mo, paper, 49 pages.

CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR, Books I.-IV. 12mo, cloth, 354 pages.

CICERO'S SELECTED ORATIONS. 12mo, cloth, 374 pages.

VIRGIL'S AENEID, Books I.-VI. 12mo, cloth, 491 pages.

First Year Latin: Preparatory to Cæsar

By Professor CHARLES E. BENNETT, of Cornell University. 12mo, cloth, 293 pages. Price, $1.00.

THE object of First Year Latin is to prepare more directly for the second year work than is ordinarily done with the usual beginning Latin book.

As the work of the second year is generally the reading of Cæsar with the aid of the grammar, it is manifestly of advantage to become familiar with these two books as far as is possible in the first year. The following features of First Year Latin will show that a determined effort has been made to do this:

I. The Vocabulary contains only words used often in Cæsar.

II. The treatment of forms and syntax is in the regular order of the Latin grammars.

III. Exercises in connected reading, which begin as soon as the verb is taken up, cover the First Book of Cæsar in simplified and abbreviated form. These exercises occur in every other lesson. At the end of the book, instead of the ordinary reading of fables and stories, there is presented the Second Book of Cæsar simplified in part.

First Year Latin leaves no gap between the beginning book and Cæsar. When the pupil has finished it he will have become familiar with the First Book of Cæsar in outline and the Second Book practically as it stands. He will have a vocabulary of all the usual Cæsar words and will have learned his forms and syntax in such an order that the arrangement of the grammar will be familiar to him.

The reading material from Cæsar will be found as attractive to young pupils as that ordinarily provided in a first year Latin book. The beginner is most interested in what he can read with most facility, and the arrangement of vocabulary and syntax in this book is such that he will find the selections well within the scope of his abilities.

No effort has been spared to make the book as attractive as possible. There are numerous pictures illustrating the reading passages, and a double-page colored map.

A Latin Grammar

By Professor CHARLES E. BENNETT, Cornell University. 12mo, cloth, 290 pages. Price, 80 cents.

IN this book the essential facts of Latin grammar are presented within the smallest compass consistent with scholarly standards. Not only the work of the preparatory school is covered, but also that of the required courses in college and university. By confining himself to the best usage the author has found it possible to treat the subject with entire adequacy in the compass of 250 pages, exclusive of indexes. In the German schools books of this scope are found to meet fully the exacting demands of the entire gymnasial course, which is much more extended than that of American academies, and in both the French lycées and the English schools the popular Latin grammars are of the size of Bennett and tend to grow smaller rather than larger. Besides its compact size, the grammar has the merit of clear and simple statement illustrated by brief and intelligible examples.

Pupils find it easier to master Latin with the help of a book which is lucid in statement, and which omits the mass of unnecessary detail which made the older grammars so confusing. The fact that the pupil himself sees that Bennett's Grammar can be mastered as a whole, lends a directness and focus to the study which is impossible of attainment with a bulky book.

That schools demand a simple and concise grammar receives ample proof in the wide success of Professor Bennett's work. To-day it is used by more of the Latin pupils in the United States than any other.

In a word, the appeal of Bennett's Latin Grammar is universal. The schoolboy likes it because it makes easy the finding of the rules, which are put in language that he can understand. The teacher welcomes it because it gives him just the body of syntax on which he knows the pupil should be drilled. The college professor is glad to have a book which contains the grammar that he may justly *require* his students to know, and beyond which they enter the realm of the specialist.

The Latin Language: A Historical Outline of its Sounds, Inflections, and Syntax

By Professor CHARLES E. BENNETT, Cornell University. 12mo, cloth, 272 pages. Price, $1.00.

THIS is a text-book in advanced Latin Grammar for colleges and universities. It is a complete revision of the Appendix to Bennett's Latin Grammar, a book which was first prepared in 1896, from a series of lectures to advanced students on subjects not covered by any Latin Grammar published in America. The title, Appendix, was found to be misleading, and the author has given to the revision the new name of The Latin Language. The book gives such information regarding the history and development of the language as experience has shown to be of service to students who are specializing in Latin.

The subjects treated are: —

The Latin Alphabet	Accent	Inflections
Pronunciation	Orthography	Adverbs and Prepositions
Hidden Quantity	The Latin Sounds	Syntax

Of these subjects, those of Hidden Quantity, Inflections, and Syntax receive special attention.

The author has been most successful in gathering under one cover, and in convenient form, the most interesting results of recent classical investigation at home and abroad. These he has set forth fully and clearly, but in compact form.

The Quantitative Reading of Latin Poetry

By Professor CHARLES E. BENNETT. 12mo, paper, 49 pages. Price, 25 cents.

BELIEVING that with the aid of a few simple precepts, faithfully carried out, the oral reading of Latin Poetry may be made easy and enjoyable, Professor Bennett has prepared this little monograph emphasizing the importance of the knowledge of quantities as well as of rhythm. It will be of service not only to pupils but also to many teachers of Latin.

The Foundations of Latin

A book for beginners. Revised Edition. By Professor CHARLES E. BENNETT, of Cornell University. 12mo, cloth, 250 pages. Price, 90 cents.

THE Foundations of Latin follows the plan of a systematic development, first of the forms, then of the syntax, of the Latin language. The order of subjects is that common to all the Latin grammars. Forms and principles which belong together and which will always be associated are given together. Until the inflections are thoroughly learned, peculiarities of syntax are kept in the background. Thus the pupil learns his grammar at the outset in the form which it must finally take in his mind.

Some other features of the Foundations are: —

(1) There is a working vocabulary of only 750 words, all found fifteen times in Cæsar.

(2) English-Latin exercises are deferred until the forms have been mastered.

(3) Beginning with the eighteenth lesson, Latin stories occur at frequent intervals.

(4) At the end of the book are eighteen pages of reading.

(5) Review lessons are frequent.

At the age when he begins Latin, the use of the memory is one of the easiest mental exercises of the pupil. The Foundations of Latin takes advantage of this by making the memorizing of forms the first step in learning Latin.

Latin Lessons

By Professor CHARLES E. BENNETT, of Cornell University. 16mo, cloth, 191 pages. Price, 70 cents.

THIS book is on the same systematic plan as the Foundations. It differs from the other book in that it necessitates the use of Bennett's Grammar as a companion book in the first year. The pupil learns forms and rules directly from the Grammar, and is made familiar at once with the reference book which he is to use throughout his high school course.

Preparatory Latin Writer

By Professor CHARLES E. BENNETT, of Cornell University. 16mo, cloth, 202 pages. Price, 80 cents.

THE Latin Writer has been prepared with the conviction that the primary function of Latin Composition in high schools is to extend and strengthen the pupil's knowledge of Latin Grammar. The principles of syntax are arranged in the systematic order of the grammars and are illustrated by disconnected sentences.

Each lesson contains first grammatical principles, with references to the standard grammars. These are followed by simple illustrative sentences, a vocabulary, and then by well graded sentences to be put into Latin. No effort has been spared to make the sentences as attractive as possible.

The book combines the writing of continuous discourse with the systematic study of the principles. There are forty exercises in connected composition.

Other features are frequent foot-notes, remarks, and suggestions, which illuminate the exercises.

The words are all taken from Cæsar; but it is not expected that the use of the book will be confined to classes in Cæsar. Sufficient material is provided for all the Latin composition ordinarily given in a high school course.

Latin Composition

By Professor CHARLES E. BENNETT, of Cornell University. 16mo, cloth, 172 pages. Price, 80 cents.

IN scope and plan the Composition is the same as the Latin Writer; the grammatical principles illustrated are identical; and the book can be used in alternate years with the other. The difference is that the words in the Latin Composition are taken mainly from Cicero, while those in the Latin Writer are from Cæsar.

Like the Latin Writer the Latin Composition contains as much material as is ordinarily given in a high school course.

Cæsar's Gallic War

Books I–IV. Indicated quantities, Introduction, Notes, Vocabulary, Illustrations, and colored Maps and Plans. Edited by Professor CHARLES E. BENNETT, of Cornell University. 12mo, cloth, 355 pages. Price, $1.00.

THE special feature of Bennett's Cæsar is the notes, which are fuller than in other editions, and which make it their province not only to clear up difficulties but to give a running commentary on the narrative, and thus to keep the setting of the campaigns constantly before the pupil. The occurrence of each proper name is made the text for interesting comment; at intervals the situation is summarized for the pupil; every effort is made that the narrative shall seem vivid and attractive. The drill on syntax by means of grammatical references is very thorough.

Professor Bennett is particularly happy in choosing for comment exactly those passages which are stumbling blocks to young pupils.

The introduction has a sketch of Cæsar's life and an illustrated description of the art of war in his time.

The text is broken by brief headings in English which show the trend of the narrative.

Long vowels are marked throughout.

There are ten colored maps and plans, illustrating every campaign.

In the vocabulary the basal meaning of the word is given first.

The price is more reasonable than that of most editions of Cæsar.

Classroom Texts

PAMPHLETS, containing the text only, have been prepared to accompany the following books: Bennett's Cæsar, Cicero, Virgil; Kelsey's Cæsar, Cicero, Ovid; Comstock's Virgil; Rolfe's Viri Romæ, Nepos, and Junior Latin Book. They will be furnished free when ordered in connection with these books.

Cicero's Orations

Indicated quantities, full Introduction, Notes, Vocabulary, Illustrations, and two colored Maps. Edited by Professor CHARLES E. BENNETT, of Cornell University. 12mo, cloth, 379 pages. Price, $1.00.

THIS edition contains seven orations — the four against Catiline, the Manilian Law, Archias, and Marcellus.

As in the Cæsar, the notes are the special feature of the book. They give fully the setting of each oration and contain a commentary on all allusions to the history of the times. This has been found much more practical than referring constantly to a historical outline in the Introduction. The notes also keep the pupil in touch with the logic of the argument and give an adequate explanation of all points of Roman law and custom. Aided by them, students cannot fail to see the speeches as masterpieces of the art of oratory.

The Introduction has an outline of Cicero's life, and sections on Cicero as a Man of Letters, Cicero's Character, Roman Public Antiquities, and the Roman Forum.

There are eighteen illustrations, including portraits of the prominent men of the time. There is also a plan and a reproduction of the Forum as it appeared in Cicero's time (found only in this edition), and pictures of the Forum of to-day.

There are colored maps of Italy and Asia Minor.

The long vowels are marked throughout the text.

The text is broken by brief headings in English, showing the progress of the argument.

The price is very low, when the general excellence of the edition is considered.

One Hundred and Twenty Epigrams of Martial

Edited by Professor JOHN H. WESTCOTT, of Princeton University. 16mo, paper, 81 pages. Price, 30 cents.

THIS selection is intended for rapid reading, or even for sight-reading with students of sufficient ability. The notes have been placed on the pages with the text.

Virgil's Æneid: Books I–VI

Edited by Professor CHARLES E. BENNETT. With Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary. 12mo, cloth, 491 pages. Price, $1.20.

AS in Bennett's Cæsar and Cicero the important feature of the Virgil is the elaborate notes. At short intervals headings describe the incidents which are to follow. Every allusion to mythology is fully explained, and the progress of the story is kept before the pupil. Professor Bennett has the gift of selecting for comment the passages which are likely to be difficult to the student, and of giving just the right amount of explanation.

The Introduction treats of Virgil's life and works, and gives a full explanation of the quantitative reading of Latin poetry, together with classified verses for practice.

The long vowels are marked throughout Book I.

There are sixteen illustrations, handsomely reproduced from ancient statuary, and two maps — the Wanderings of Æneas and the Lake of Avernus.

Selections from Viri Romæ

With Notes, Exercises, Maps, and a Vocabulary, by Professor JOHN C. ROLFE, University of Pennsylvania. 16mo, cloth, 312 pages. Price, 75 cents.

THIS book will appeal to teachers who wish to insert easy reading between the beginning book and Cæsar. The advantage in its use lies in the fact that it is full of variety and interest, and that, in an attractive form, it gives the pupil a sketch of Roman history from Romulus to Augustus, together with many allusions to the customs of Roman life.

Full notes have been prepared for twenty of the twenty-five selections contained in the book; while the other five are arranged for sight reading, with hints for translation at the bottom of the page.

In the text, the quantity of the long vowels is marked. Exercises for translation of English into Latin, based on the text, are given.

Latin Composition

By BERNARD M. ALLEN and JOHN L. PHILLIPS, of Phillips Academy, Andover. 16mo, cloth, 240 pages. Price, $1.00.

THIS manual is designed to combine in one book the best features of Latin Compositions based on a text, and of those aiming at systematic study of Latin grammar.

Those constructions are emphasized which occur most often in second year Latin, and to determine these, the authors have tabulated the grammatical points found in Cæsar's Gallic War.

These common constructions are treated twice in connection with sentences based on the first three books of Cæsar. Sentences based on the fourth book furnish a review.

Less frequent constructions have due consideration and are illustrated by sentences based on Cicero. These are treated in the systematic order of the grammars.

The authors give in their own words a very simple statement of syntactical points, and also refer to the various grammars.

First Latin Reader

Including Principles of Syntax and Exercises for Translation. By JARED W. SCUDDER, Latin Master in the Albany Academy. 16mo, cloth, 300 pages. Price, 90 cents.

THIS is a beginning Latin book in which the points of syntax are illustrated, not by disconnected sentences, but by Latin stories. The aim is to provide the incentive of enjoyable reading, and so lighten the burden of grammatical drill. To bring the pupil into sympathy with Latin literature the stories are taken from early Roman mythology.

Passages for sight reading are included in every lesson after the nineteenth. There are questions in English, reviewing the important points of each lesson, and questions in Latin on the text. The necessary principles of English grammar are given in the body of the book.

verbs " " " " " Per. & No.